

MARIN COUNTY FREE LIBRARY

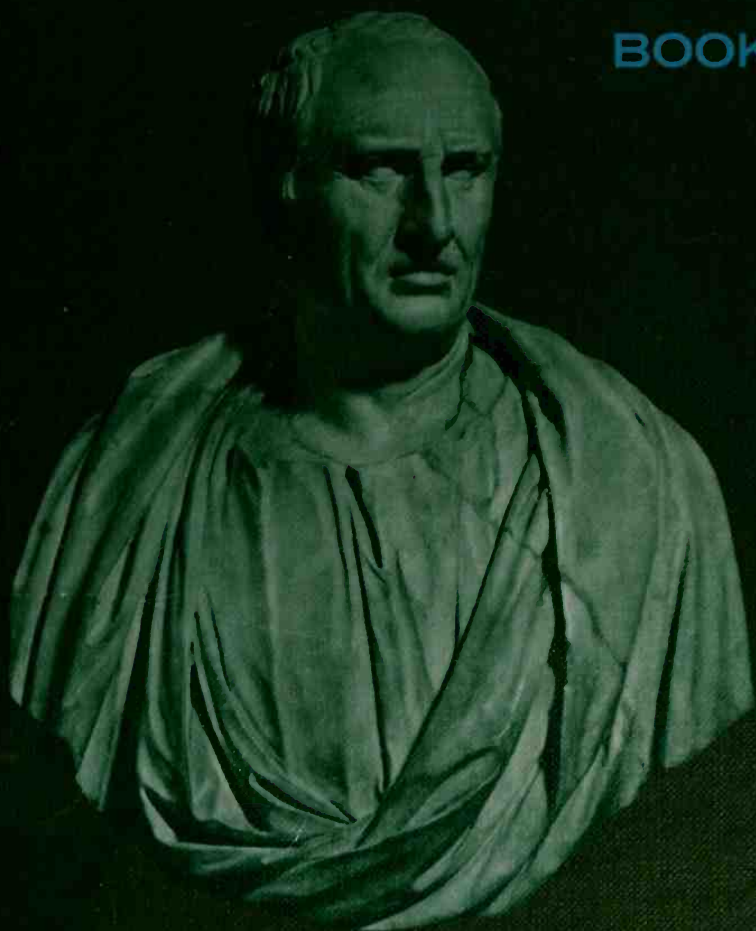


31111010421285

# LATIN

## Our Living Heritage

BOOK II



Breslove

Hooper

Barrett





# CIVIC CENTER



3 1111 01042 1285

## DATE DUE

AUG 4 1988

AUG 27 1988

FEB 27 1990

MAR 05 1990

MAR 08 1991

JUN 06 1994

JUL 10 1996

MAR 14 1997

MAR 12 1998

APR 01 1998 R

MAR 12 1999

JUL 28 1999

APR 12 2000





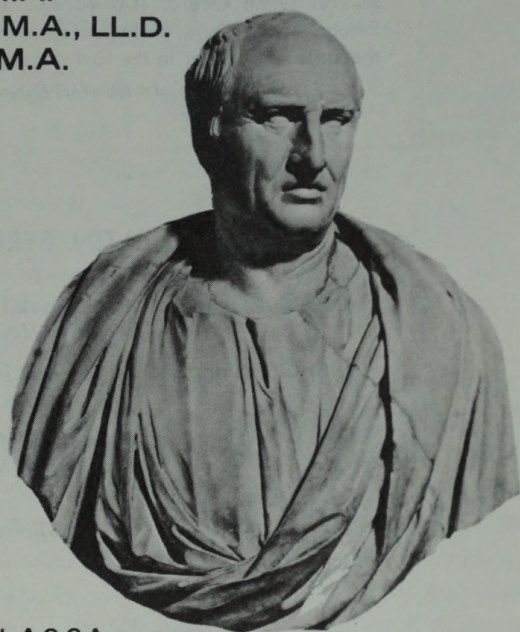
Revised Edition

# LATIN

## Our Living Heritage

BOOK II

David Breslove, M.A.  
Arthur G. Hooper, M.A., LL.D.  
Mary A. Barrett, M.A.



Drawings by Vernon Mould, A.O.C.A.

CHARLES E. MERRILL PUBLISHING CO.  
A Bell & Howell Company  
Columbus, Ohio

### COVER PHOTOGRAPH

Marcus Tullius Cicero, 106-43 B.C., the greatest of Roman orators and a dedicated statesman, served the state with honor in the last days of the Republic:

*Alinari Photo, Art Reference Bureau, Inc.*

### MERRILL LATIN SERIES

Latin: Our Living Heritage Book I

*Breslove, Hooper, Barrett*

Latin: Our Living Heritage Book II

*Breslove, Hooper, Barrett*

Latin: Our Living Heritage Book III

*Gillingham, Barrett*

An Ovid Reader

*Gillingham, Baade*

ISBN 0-675-06259-4

Published by

CHARLES E. MERRILL PUBLISHING CO.

A Bell & Howell Company

Columbus, Ohio 43216

Copyright © 1969 by Bell & Howell Company

*All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced in any form, electronic or mechanical, including photocopy, recording, or any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher.*

Printed in the United States of America



## PREFACE

Books I and II of *LATIN: Our Living Heritage* provide a complete program for the first two years of Latin. Each volume has been designed to make it possible for the teacher to adapt the subject matter to meet the abilities and interests of particular classes. Both rate and depth of coverage can be adjusted without departing from the framework of the typical Latin curriculum. Although Book II is designed to follow Book I of the same series, it is highly suitable for use following any other first-year Latin text.

Part One contains twenty-six lessons that review and develop the essentials of Latin grammar. The first eight lessons consist of review material touching all important aspects of the previous year's work. All the inflections and major syntactical constructions are presented and reinforced through appropriate exercises. In these lessons, approximately one hundred new words are added to the vocabulary, and many of the words from Book I are reviewed.

In Lessons nine through eleven of this text, the syntax presented in Lessons 51 through 53 of Book I is repeated for the benefit of students who did not study the subjunctive mood during their previous year. Special attention has been given to the uses of the subjunctive. Because it is presented first in its independent uses, the student will understand from the beginning the functions of the subjunctive mood and will be able to attach its various forms to the correct English equivalents. This approach has been proven logically and historically sound.

From Lesson 12 through Lesson 26, new material in syntax is presented. Temporal clauses, conditional sentences, gerund and gerundive, and impersonal passive are amply demonstrated by examples. The authors have kept material in this section clear of minute details and difficult constructions rarely encountered in subsequent readings. The selections that accompany the lessons on syntax are, with few exceptions,

authentic passages from Latin literature, modified where necessary to avoid difficulties.

Part Two consists of reading selections from the military accounts of Livy and Caesar, the prose of Caesar providing the greatest single block of material; the poetry of Ovid and Horace, sufficiently easy for second-year students; the narrative prose of Gellius; the epistles of Cicero and Pliny; and the *Vulgate* of Jerome, as an example of post-Classical Latin. Latin teachers will recognize that the extent and variety of material is greater than that previously available in second-year texts and that the wide scope of readings will enable them to plan a balanced reading program for the year's work.

Historical and grammatical notes appear below each page of readings. These notes are intended to assist the student, but never to burden him. For easy reference, words of low frequency are listed with their meanings on the page where they first occur in the text. These words constitute a reading vocabulary only and should not be emphasized for detailed study.

Lives of the authors and pertinent help in literary appreciation of the various selections are given, along with an article on the scansion of the verse of Ovid and Horace. The section on the Roman army of Caesar's time should be read in conjunction with Caesar's own description of his campaigns.

Illustrations by Vernon Mould evoke the spirit of the reading selections. The many photographs provide the student with accurate evidence of the architectural remains of Greek and Roman civilization. Frequent reference to the maps that appear in the text will enrich the reader's understanding. Virtually every geographic name appearing within the text may be located in one or more of the maps.

The appendix includes a summary of syntactical constructions, a full set of inflections, a list of Latin phrases currently in use, and comprehensive vocabularies.

The authors wish to acknowledge the invaluable assistance of Mr. Kenneth R. Evans, a teacher of Latin at the Columbus Academy, who cooperated in the preparation of the new drills and exercises for the revision.

D.B., A.H., M.B.



# CONTENTS

## Part One: Lessons in Grammar

- |   |  |    |
|---|--|----|
| 1 | Reading: <b>Cupīdō et Psȳchē</b> . Nouns: cases.<br>Dative of possession. Prepositions. Word study.                | 1  |
| 2 | Reading: <b>Cupīdō et Psȳchē</b> . Verbs: indicative and<br>imperative moods. Deponent and semi-deponent<br>verbs. | 7  |
| 3 | Reading: <b>Cupīdō et Psȳchē</b> . Possum and eō.<br>Subordinate clauses. Questions and answers.<br>Word study.    | 14 |
| 4 | Reading: <b>Cupīdō et Psȳchē</b> . Adjectives. Predi-<br>cate accusative. Word study.                              | 21 |
| 5 | Reading: <b>Cupīdō et Psȳchē</b> . Adverbs. Time and<br>place. Word study.   | 30 |
| 6 | Reading: <b>Cupīdō et Psȳchē</b> . Pronouns. Pronom-<br>inal adjectives. Word study.                               | 39 |

7	Reading: <b>Cupīdō et Psȳchē</b> . Participles. Ablative absolute. Word study.	48
8	Reading: <b>Cupīdō et Psȳchē</b> . Infinitives. Indirect statement. Word study.	56
9	Reading: <b>Dē Cincinnātō dictātōre</b> . The subjunctive mood. Present subjunctive. Hortatory and jussive subjunctive. Word study.	67
10	Reading: <b>Dē Cincinnātō dictātōre</b> . Imperfect subjunctive. Deliberative questions. Subjunctive in wishes. Genitive case.	74
11	Reading: <b>Dē Cincinnātō dictātōre</b> . Perfect and pluperfect subjunctive. Subjunctive in wishes regarding the past. Genitive case. Word study.	82
12	Reading: <b>Hannibal et Antiochus</b> . <b>Volō</b> and its compounds. Potential subjunctive. Word study.	92
13	Reading: <b>Dē Tarquiniō Priscō, quīntō rēge Rōmānōrum</b> . Sequence of tenses. Indirect command or request. Word study.	99
14	Reading: <b>Dē puerō Papiriō</b> . Indirect questions.	106
15	Reading: <b>Dē uxōribus</b> . <b>Ferō</b> and its compounds. <b>Licet</b> . Word study.	114
16	Reading: <b>Dē Hercule et Cācō</b> . Clauses of purpose. Indefinite pronoun <b>quis</b> . Indefinite adjective <b>quī</b> . Word study.	122
17	Reading: <b>Dē Tarquiniō Superbō, ultimō rēgum Rōmānōrum</b> . Subjunctive of <b>possum</b> and <b>eō</b> . Constructions with verbs of fearing. Expressions of place. Ablative of separation.	131



18	Reading: <b>P. Decius Mūs, velut pater, sē dēvovet prō patriā.</b> Verbs of hindering and preventing. Expressions of doubt. Word study.	139
19	Reading: <b>Dē morte Crassī. Fīō.</b> Clauses of result. <b>Accidit ut. Causā.</b> Word study.	145
20	Reading: <b>Dē coniūrātis.</b> Conjunction <b>cum.</b> Relative clauses of characteristic.	154
21	Reading: <b>Dē clāde equitum Rōmānōrum.</b> Temporal clauses. Proviso clauses. Genitive and ablative of description. Word study.	164
22	Reading: <b>Somnia vigilantium</b> ( <i>Daydreams</i> ). Conditional sentences. Word study.	172
23	Reading: <b>Dē reditū Pūblii.</b> Indefinite pronouns and adjectives.	182
24	Reading: <b>Dē praetōre improbō.</b> Indirect discourse. Ablative of manner.	190
25	Reading: <b>Dē iuvene Scīpiōne.</b> Gerunds and gerundives. Word study.	201
26	Reading: <b>Dē fortī tribūnō.</b> Passive periphrastic. Impersonal passive.	211

## Part Two: Selections from Latin Literature

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS	222
LIVY AND NEPOS	
Life and literary appreciation	223
<i>Hannibal and the Romans</i>	224

## CAESAR

Life and literary appreciation	253
The Roman army in the time of Caesar	255
<i>Britain, Gaul, and Germany</i>	260
<i>The War with the Helvetians</i>	279
<i>Caesar's First Expedition to Britain, 55 B.C.</i>	304
<i>The Revolt of the Nervii</i>	322

## OVID

Life and literary appreciation	339
Verse-Rhythm (The Meter of Ovid)	340
<i>Atalanta</i>	343
<i>Niobe</i>	349
<i>Daedalus</i>	352
<i>Pallas and Arachne</i>	358
<i>Orpheus and Eurydice</i>	361
<i>Pyramus and Thisbe</i>	366

## GELLIUS

Life and literary appreciation	375
<i>Selections from Noctes Atticae</i>	376

## CICERO

Life and literary appreciation	385
<i>From the correspondence of Marcus Tullius Cicero</i>	387

## PLINY

Life and literary appreciation	395
<i>From the correspondence of Pliny the Younger</i>	396

## HORACE

Life and literary appreciation	410
<i>Selections from the Satires of Horace</i>	412



## JEROME

Life and work	422
<i>Selections from the Vulgate</i>	423

## APPENDIX

Syntax	430
Inflections	451
Latin phrases currently used in English	484

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	487
--------------------------	-----

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	538
--------------------------	-----

INDEX	558
-------	-----

## MAPS

Vicinia Romana	113
Italia	208
Hannibal and the Romans	231
Caesar's Geography of the Northwest	260
Roma	310
Gaul in the Time of Caesar	314
The Roman Empire at Its Widest Extent	390
Graecia et Asia Minor	394



## THE LION'S SHARE

Numquam est fidēlis cum potente societās:  
testātur haec fābella prōpositum meum.

Vacca et capella et patiēns ovis iniūriae  
socii fuere cum leōne in saltibus.

Hī cum cēpissent cervum vāstī corporis,  
sic est locūtus, partibus factis, leō:

“Ego prīmam tollō, nō minor quoniam leō;  
secundam, quia sum cōsors, tribuētis mihi;  
tum, quia plūs valeō, mē sequētur tertia;  
malō afficiētur, si quis quārtam tetigerit.”

Sic tōtam praedam sōla improbitās abstulit.

**PART ONE**

**Lessons in Grammar**





Lessons in Grammar

PART ONE



*Iron lock shield.  
Roman, from Egypt,  
c. third to fourth  
century A.D.*

1

## Nouns: Cases Prepositions

In caelōque deum sēdis et templa locārun<sup>1</sup>,  
per caelum volvī quia nox et lūna vidētur,  
lūna diēs et nox et noctis signa sevēra  
noctivagaeque facēs caelī flammaeque volantēs,  
nūbila sōl imbrēs nix ventī fulmina grandō  
et rapidī fremitūs et murmura magna minārum.

*In the sky they have fixed the seats and temples of the gods,  
since through the sky the night and the moon seem to revolve,  
the moon, the day and night and the dread constellations of the night,  
the night-wandering comets of the sky and the speeding stars,  
clouds, sun, rainstorms, snow, winds, lightning, hail,  
and swift rumblings and loud threatening roars.*

LUCRETIVS: 5.1188-1193

<sup>1</sup>Syncopated form of locāvērunt.

Incolēbant in cīvitāte antīquā quīdam (*a certain*) rēx et quaedam rēgīna. Quibus erant trēs fīliae, quārum minima nātū (*smallest by birth, i.e., youngest*), Psȳchē nōmine, erat et bona et pulchra. Cum (*Whenever*) Psȳchē vīsa erat, cīvēs et  
 5 advenae (*strangers*) pulchritūdinem puellae laudābant. Iamque fāma erat deam Venerem ipsam dē caelō ad terram dēscendisse.

Dum omnēs Psȳchēn (*Greek acc. form*) laudant, nēmō ad īnsulās clārās ubi erant magna templa Veneris nāvigābat. Dea,  
 10 hominibus īrāta, ad sē filium Cupīdinem vocāvit et Psȳchēn mōnstrāvit. Quod puellae invidēbat, "Mitte," inquit, "Cupīdō, sagittam ācrem in corpus illius virginis. Amet (*Let her love*) hominem turpem."

Intereā Psȳchē spectātur ab omnibus, laudātur ab omnibus;  
 15 nec quisquam (*but no one*), nōn rēx, nōn rēgius (*prince*), nec dē plēbe eam in mātrimōnium dūcere audēbat quod Venerī puella nōn placēbat. Multōs mēnsēs duae sorōrēs rēgibus spōnsae erant (*had been betrothed*) et nunc erant rēgīnae. Psȳchē autem, propter invidiam Veneris, domī sedēns, lacrimā-  
 20 bat quod sōla erat.

## 2 (a) Review the declensions of nouns in App. 298-304.

(b)

Ubi, Mārce, labōrās?	Where are you working, Marcus?
Ubi, Accī, est pater tuus?	Where is your father, Accius?
Quid habēs, mī fili?	What do you have, my son?

The vocative singular of second declension masculine nouns and adjectives ending in **-us** ends in **-e** (**amīcus, bonus**: vocative singular **amīce, bone**). The vocative singular of **filius** and of proper names ending in **-ius**, such as **Accius**, ends in **-ī**: **fīlī, Accī**. The masculine vocative singular of the adjective **meus, my**, is **mī**.

In other instances, the form of the vocative is the same as that of the nominative.

<sup>2</sup>The story of Cupid and Psyche forms a charming episode in the Latin novel *The Golden Ass* by Apuleius (born c. 123 A.D.).



(c) The locative singular of first declension nouns ends in **-ae** (**Rōmae**, at *Rome*). The locative singular of second declension nouns ends in **-ī** (**Corinthī**, at *Corinth*). Some words other than names of cities and towns have locative forms. **Domī**, at *home*, and **rūrī** or **rūre**, in *the country*, are among the most common of these forms.

3 Review: subject and predicate nominative (App. 204-205); possessive genitive (206); partitive genitive (207); dative of indirect object (214); dative with special verbs (215); direct object (222); ablative of means (229); ablative of accompaniment (230); ablative of respect (231); ablative of agent (232); vocative (244); apposition (203).

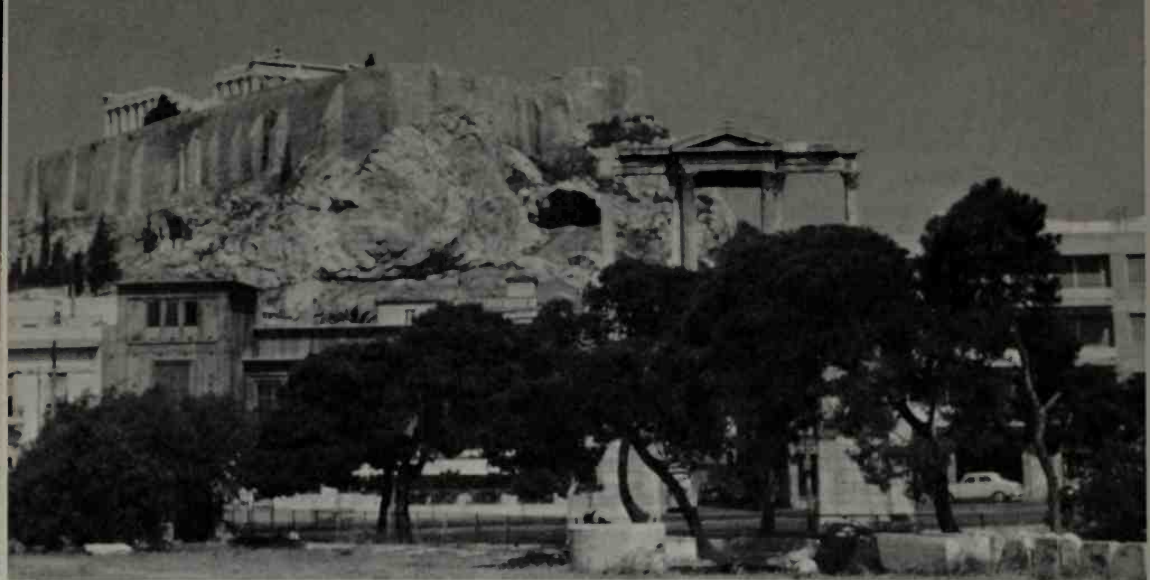
#### 4 DATIVE OF POSSESSION

**Mihi est liber.** I have a book. (*lit.* For me there is a book.)  
**Quibus erant trēs filiae.** They had three daughters. (*lit.* For whom there were three daughters.)

The verb **esse** may be used with the dative to express possession. The noun or pronoun indicating the possessor is in the dative case. The noun or pronoun indicating the thing (or person) possessed becomes the subject and is in the nominative case. The verb **esse** agrees with the nominative subject.

#### 5 PREPOSITIONS WITH ACCUSATIVE

<b>ad</b> , to	<b>intrā</b> , inside of, within
<b>ante</b> , before (of <i>time</i> more often than of <i>place</i> )	<b>ob</b> , on account of
<b>apud</b> , among, near, with, before, at the house or place of business of, in the presence of	<b>per</b> , through
<b>circum</b> , around	<b>post</b> , after; behind
<b>contrā</b> , against	<b>praeter</b> , past; except
<b>extrā</b> , outside of, beyond	<b>prope</b> , near
<b>in</b> , into	<b>propter</b> , on account of
<b>inter</b> , between, among	<b>sub</b> , under, close up to; (of <i>time</i> ) just before
	<b>super</b> , above, over
	<b>trāns</b> , across



View of the Acropolis in Athens. Originally a fortress, the hill was the site of beautiful temples erected to honor the patron goddess Athena.

#### WITH ABLATIVE

<b>ā, ab</b> , from	<b>in</b> , in, on, upon
<b>cum</b> , with <sup>3</sup>	<b>prō</b> , for, in behalf of; in front of
<b>dē</b> , from, down from, off; about,	<b>sine</b> , without
concerning	<b>sub</b> , under, at the foot of
<b>ē, ex</b> , out of, from	

<b>In castra properābant.</b>	They were hurrying into camp.
<b>In castrīs labōrābant.</b>	They were working in the camp.
<b>Cōpiās sub mūrōs dūcit.</b>	He leads his forces close up to the walls.
<b>Plūtō sub terrā habitat.</b>	Pluto dwells beneath the earth.

The accusative is used with **in** and **sub** to express the place to which something moves; the ablative, to express the place where something is done.

#### 6

#### EXERCISES

A. Give the plural of the following nouns in the case indicated by the singular form:

1. homō, ager, lacus 2. animal, virum, adventum 3. frātrī, captīvō, exercituī 4. annō, fāmā, rē 5. rēgis, mortis, bellī

<sup>3</sup>**Cum** attaches to the ablative of the personal, reflexive and interrogative pronouns; for example, **mēcum**, *with me*; **quōcum**, *with whom*?

B. Give the singular of the following plural nouns in the case indicated by the plural form:

1. puerī, vulnera, praesidia
2. temporum, manuum, diērum
3. nautīs imperat, patribus pārēmus, amīcīs crēdō
4. īnsulās, sociōs, bella
5. in manibus, ab animālibus, dē rēbus

C. Give the correct form to complete the phrase:

1. Ad \_\_\_\_ (castra), ad \_\_\_\_ (ager, *pl.*), ad \_\_\_\_ (dux, *pl.*)
2. Trāns \_\_\_\_ (mōns, *pl.*), trāns \_\_\_\_ (mare, *pl.*), trāns \_\_\_\_ (aciēs, *pl.*)
3. Sine \_\_\_\_ (exercitus, *s.*), sine \_\_\_\_ (diēs, *s.*), sine \_\_\_\_ (equus, *s.*)
4. Propter \_\_\_\_ (vulnus, *s.*), propter \_\_\_\_ (rēs, *s.*), propter \_\_\_\_ (īra, *s.*)
5. Ex \_\_\_\_ (oppidum, *s.*), ē \_\_\_\_ (nāvis, *s.*), ē \_\_\_\_ (mare, *s.*)
6. \_\_\_\_-cum (nōs), \_\_\_\_-cum (ego), \_\_\_\_-cum (tū)
7. Prō \_\_\_\_ (amīcus, *pl.*), prō \_\_\_\_ (cīvitās, *pl.*), prō \_\_\_\_ (cīvis, *pl.*)
8. Contrā \_\_\_\_ (animal, *s.*), contrā \_\_\_\_ (plēbs, *s.*), contrā \_\_\_\_ (spēs, *s.*)
9. Post \_\_\_\_ (iter, *pl.*), post \_\_\_\_ (corpus, *pl.*), post \_\_\_\_ (annus, *pl.*)
10. Dē \_\_\_\_ (caelum, *s.*), dē \_\_\_\_ (collis, *s.*), dē \_\_\_\_ (impe-  
tus, *s.*)

D. Translate:

1. Advena cum cīvibus dē altō monte dēscendit.
2. Magnus numerus nāvium īnsulae sub noctem appropinquāvit.
3. Īrā incēnsus nūntium ad illum turpem cīvem mittam.
4. Puella erat bona sed deae nōn placēbat.
5. Mihi sunt duae sorōrēs, tibi duo frātrēs.
6. Psychē, puella pulcherrima, ab omnibus cīvibus ob pulchritūdinem laudābātur.

E. Translate:

1. They called the city Rome; the city was called Rome by the citizens.
2. After their long journey, the sailors were weary both in body and in spirit.
3. Marcus, you are a Roman, a citizen of a great state.
4. The soldiers of the



tenth legion will announce the commander's victory to the Britons. 5. Both at Rome and at Corinth there were many (and) beautiful temples. 6. The citizens of the state always praised the queen's daughter. 7. The goddess called her son to her and ordered (*iubeō*) him to wound the girl with an arrow.

7

VOCABULARY

<i>ira</i> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , anger, wrath	<i>quisquam</i> , <i>quidquam</i> ( <i>quicquam</i> ), <i>pronoun</i> , anyone, anything
<i>irātus</i> , -a, -um, <i>with dat.</i> , angry, angry at	
<i>caelum</i> , -ī, <i>n.</i> , sky	<i>turpis</i> , -is, -e, ugly, base
<i>ōrāculum</i> , -ī, <i>n.</i> , oracle	<i>lacrimō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, weep
<i>cīvis</i> , <i>cīvis</i> , <i>m. and f.</i> , citizen	<i>invidēō</i> , -ēre, <i>invīdī</i> , <i>invīsum</i> , <i>with dat.</i> , envy, be jealous of
<i>cīvitās</i> , -tātis, <i>f.</i> , citizenship, state	<i>invidia</i> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , envy, jealousy
<i>mēnsis</i> , <i>mēnsis</i> , <i>m.</i> , month	<i>placeō</i> , -ēre, -uī, -itum, <i>with dat.</i> , please, be pleasing to
<i>plēbs</i> , <i>plēbis</i> , <i>f.</i> , common people	<i>dēscendō</i> , -ere, -scendī, -scēsum, descend
<i>pulchritūdō</i> , -tūdinis, <i>f.</i> , beauty	<i>incolō</i> , -ere, -coluī, live, dwell

8

WORD STUDY

Many abstract nouns of the third declension are formed by adding the feminine suffix *-tās*, *-tātis*, less often the feminine suffix *-tūs*, *-tūtis*, (*-ūs*, *-ūtis*) to the base of a noun or adjective. Nouns formed with these suffixes denote condition or state. For example, the noun *cīvitās*, *cīvitātis*, *f.*, *citizenship* or *state*, is formed on the base of the noun *cīvis*, *cīvis*, *m. or f.*, *citizen*; and the noun *lībertās*, *lībertātis*, *f.*, *freedom*, is formed on the base of the adjective *līber*, *lībera*, *līberum*, *free*.

Form abstract nouns by adding the suffix *-tās*, *-tātis*, to the base of the following adjectives: *dignus*, *facilis*, *novus*, *proximus*. Form abstract nouns by adding the suffix *-tūs*, *-tūtis*, to the base of the following nouns: *servus*, *vir*.

Give the meaning of each of the derived nouns. Check in the Latin dictionary to verify the spelling and meaning of each noun.



*Gladiator's helmet.  
Bronze, c. first  
century A.D.*

## 2

### Verbs: Indicative and Imperative Moods Deponent and Semi-deponent Verbs

*Ōscula libāvit nātae, dehinc tālia fātur:*

*"Parce metū, Cytherēa: manent immōta tuōrum  
fāta tibī; cernēs urbem et prōmissa Lavīnī  
moenia, sublimemque ferēs ad sīdera caelī  
magnanimum Aenēān: neque mē sententia vertit.<sup>1</sup>*

*He kissed his daughter's lips and then he spoke thus:*

*"Spare your fear, Goddess of Cythera:<sup>2</sup> the fates of  
your people remain unshaken; you will see the city  
and the promised walls of Lavinium,<sup>3</sup> and you will raise  
on high to the stars of the heavens the great-souled Aeneas;  
nor has my resolution changed."*

VERGIL: AENEID 1.256-260

<sup>1</sup>Jupiter confirms the promise, made to Venus, that Aeneas will reach Italy and there establish a new Troy.

<sup>2</sup>According to legend, Venus was born of the foam of the sea off the shores of the Aegean island of Cythera.

<sup>3</sup>On his arrival in Italy, Aeneas married a Latin princess, Lavinia, and founded a city named for her.



Itaque puellae miser pater, vir magnae sapientiae, ad ōrā-  
culum Apollinis vēnit et ā deō virginī marītum petīvit. Sed  
Apollō respondit: "Nōlī, rēx, morārī. Statim dūc puellam ab  
urbe et pōne eam summō in monte. Ibi marītus eam expec-  
5 tat. Quod dea Venus filiae tuae invidet, nōn mortālis erit  
marītus. Mōnstrum saevum et crūdēle quod ultrā (*beyond*)  
montem incolit virginem in mātīmōnium dūcet."

Rēx cōnsiliō deī territus domum reversus est. Trīstis deō  
pāruit; verba ōrāculī neglegere nōn ausus est. Prīmā lūce  
10 puella ad fātum suum parāta erat. Ā parentibus maestīs ad  
montem urbī propinquum sine morā ducta est. Ibi sōla  
multās hōrās manēbat. Dēnique Psȳchēn trepidam et lacri-  
mantem (*trembling and weeping*) lēnis aura Zephyrī<sup>4</sup> sustulit  
et trāns montem vēxit. Ante occāsum sōlis in valle flōreā  
15 (*flowery*) virginem dēposuit. In hortīs (*gardens*) flōrum plēnīs  
Psȳchē sōla ambulābat nec quemquam vidēre poterat. Sub  
vesperum inter arborēs rēgiam (*palace*) pulcherrimam invēnit.  
Rēgiam iniit, plēnam dīvitiārum.

Multōs mēnsēs in rēgiā Psȳchē habitābat. Nec quisquam  
20 tamen ā puellā vidēbātur. Verba solum (*only*) audiēbat et  
vōcēs famulās (*as her maid-servants*) habēbat.

Nocte marītus Psȳchēs (*Greek gen. form*) veniēbat. Prīmō  
puella erat timida. Marītus tamen verbīs lēnibus eam plācā-  
vit (*soothed*). "Nōlī," inquit, "timēre. Quamquam mē vidēre  
25 nōn poteris, tibi iūrō (*I swear*) mē nōn esse mōnstrum. Mihi,  
Psȳchē, crēde."

Psȳchē marītō crēdidit et eum amāvit. Ante prīmam lūcem  
semper ille discēdēbat nec umquam nova nūpta (*bride*) eum  
vidēre cōnāta est.

10 (a) Review the six tenses of the indicative active and  
passive of all conjugations (App. 326-338); the six tenses of  
the indicative of **sum** (369).

(b) Review the present imperative active of all conjuga-  
tions (App. 347); the present imperative of **sum** (369). Three

<sup>4</sup>*Zephyrus*: Zephyr was the gentle west wind. He was the son of Aurora, the  
goddess of the dawn.



View of the west gate of Housesteads, the best preserved of seventeen forts guarding the ancient Roman wall in northern England.

verbs of the third conjugation drop the *-e* of the imperative active singular: *dūc*, *lead*; *fac*, *do*; *dic*, *say*.

(c)

*Nōlī esse puer malus.* Do not be a bad boy.

*Nōlīte, puerī, pugnāre.* Do not fight, boys.

A negative command is expressed by *nōlī* and *nōlīte* with a complementary infinitive.

11 Review: genitive of description (App. 209).

12

## DEPONENT VERBS

A deponent (*dē*, *aside* + *pōnō*, *place*) verb lays aside or lacks active forms in Latin, but has an active meaning. With very few exceptions, the Latin forms of a deponent verb are like the passive forms of a transitive verb.

A deponent verb has only three principal parts, all passive in form:

PRESENT INDICATIVE	PRESENT INFINITIVE	PERFECT INDICATIVE
cōnor, I try	cōnārī, to try	cōnātus sum, I have tried

There are deponent verbs in all conjugations. The conjugation is indicated by the present infinitive.

I	cōnor	cōnārī	cōnātus sum	try, attempt
II	vereor	verērī	veritus sum	fear
III	sequor	sequī	secūtus sum	follow
III-ior	prōgredior	prōgredī	prōgressus sum	advance
IV	partior	partīrī	partītus sum	divide, share

Sometimes a Latin verb has both a deponent and a non-deponent form. Thus, we have both **revertor**, **revertī**, **reversus sum** and **revertō**, **-ere**, **revertī**, **reversum**, *return*.

## CONJUGATION OF DEONENTS

### PRESENT INDICATIVE

I try	I fear	I follow	I advance	I divide
cōnor	vereor	sequor	prōgredior	partior
cōnāris	verēris	sequeris	prōgrederis	partīris
cōnātur	verētur	sequitur	prōgreditur	partītur
cōnāmur	verēmur	sequimur	prōgredimur	partīmur
cōnāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	prōgrediminī	partīminī
cōnantur	verentur	sequuntur	prōgrediuntur	partiuntur

### IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

I was trying	I was fearing	I was following
cōnābar	verēbar	sequēbar
I was advancing	I was dividing	
prōgrediēbar	partiēbar	

### FUTURE INDICATIVE

I shall try	I shall fear	I shall follow
cōnābor	verēbor	sequar
I shall advance	I shall divide	
prōgrediar	partiar	



### PERFECT INDICATIVE

I have tried	I have feared	I have followed
cōnātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum
I have advanced	I have divided	
prōgressus sum	partītus sum	

### PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE

I had tried	I had feared	I had followed
cōnātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram
I had advanced	I had divided	
prōgressus eram	partītus eram	

### FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE

I shall have tried	I shall have feared	I shall have followed
cōnātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō
I shall have advanced	I shall have divided	
prōgressus erō	partītus erō	

### PRESENT IMPERATIVE

cōnāre	verēre	sequere	prōgredere	partīre
cōnāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	prōgrediminī	partīminī

## 13

### SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS

A semi-deponent verb has active forms in the present, imperfect, and future tenses, and passive forms in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses. The meaning of all forms is active.

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, dare, venture

The forms of audeō may be synopsized thus:

audeō, audēre                      ausus sum

### INDICATIVE

<i>Present</i>	audeō	<i>Perfect</i>	ausus sum
<i>Imperfect</i>	audēbam	<i>Pluperfect</i>	ausus eram
<i>Future</i>	audēbō	<i>Future Perf.</i>	ausus erō

### IMPERATIVE

audē, audēte

A. *Give the plural of the following verbs:*

1. Pōne. 2. Vīsus est. 3. Verēris. 4. Dormiēbat. 5. Secūtus eram. 6. Revertitur. 7. Responderās. 8. Cōnāre. 9. Veniam. 10. Aderit.

B. *Give the singular of the following verbs:*

1. Āfuērunt. 2. Capiunt. 3. Mūniēmus. 4. Facite. 5. Erimus. 6. Adestis. 7. Iacite. 8. Morātī sumus. 9. Crēdidistis. 10. Erunt.

C. *Change the following verbs to the present tense:*

1. Prōgrediēbar. 2. Vulnerātī sunt. 3. Mittet. 4. Audīvimus. 5. Prohibita est. 6. Āfuerō. 7. Morātus est. 8. Erimus. 9. Tenuērunt. 10. Partītus erat.

D. *Change the following verbs to the perfect tense:*

1. Partiar. 2. Verēbātur. 3. Adsunt. 4. Dīcimus. 5. Es. 6. Pūnītur. 7. Vāstāmus. 8. Geret. 9. Rapiunt. 10. Sequeris.

E. *Translate:*

1. Ad montēs urbī propinquōs cum filiā prōgrediuntur.
2. Puella lēnī ventō vecta ad rēgiam incolumis pervēnerat.
3. Post multōs mēnsēs Gallī cum Rōmānīs bellum gessērunt.
4. Parentēs maestī, quod virgō rapta erat, lacrimābant.
5. Verbīs deī territī, nōn morātī sunt. 6. Ante prīmam lūcem revertere. 7. Parentēs memorēs nostrī habēmus.
8. Cūr nēmō Psychēn in mātirimōnium dūcere audēbat?
9. Rēx, vir magnae sapientiae, cōnsilium ab Apolline petīvit.
10. Nōlī discēdere ad vallem.

F. *Write in Latin:*

1. The Romans did not fear the attack because they had an army of two legions. 2. At sunset the breeze lifted the girl and set her down in a flowery valley. 3. On account of the wind the ships could not reach the land. 4. The husband, wearied by toil, used to walk home toward evening. 5. At

Rome there were many men of great courage. 6. Do not despair of peace; all good citizens desire peace. 7. Obey the god. Do not be frightened by his advice. 8. The girl is admired (*laudāre*) but no one dares to marry her. 9. After the girl was left on the mountain, the parents sadly (*adjective*) returned home. 10. She heard voices but she saw no one.

## SUPPLEMENTARY VERB DRILL

*Write in Latin:*

1. We had lifted. 2. Move (*s.*). 3. You (*s.*) have sent.
4. Descend (*pl.*). 5. Be present (*pl.*). 6. We shall obey.
7. They are returning. 8. He will disregard. 9. Follow (*s.*).
10. You (*pl.*) have dared. 11. They were following. 12. He had delayed. 13. They dwell. 14. We shall hinder. 15. I shall have been seen.

15

## VOCABULARY

<i>aura</i> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , breeze	<i>lēnis</i> , -is, -e, gentle, mild
<i>dīvitiae</i> , -ārum, <i>f.</i> , wealth, riches	<i>moror</i> , -ārī, -ātus sum, delay,
<i>marītus</i> , -ī, <i>m.</i> , husband	stay, wait
<i>vesper</i> , <i>vesperī</i> , <i>m.</i> , evening	<i>mora</i> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , delay
sub <i>vesperum</i> , toward evening	<i>neglegō</i> , -ere, <i>neglēxī</i> ,
<i>arbor</i> , <i>arboris</i> , <i>f.</i> , tree	<i>neglēctum</i> , disregard, neglect
<i>sōl</i> , <i>sōlis</i> , <i>m.</i> , sun	<i>revertor</i> , <i>revertī</i> , <i>reversus sum</i> ,
<i>vallēs</i> , -is, <i>f.</i> , valley	return
<i>occāsus</i> , -ūs, <i>m.</i> , setting	<i>tollō</i> , -ere, <i>sustulī</i> , <i>sublātum</i> , lift,
occāsus <i>sōlis</i> , sunset; west	raise; take away, remove
<i>plēnus</i> , -a, -um, full	<i>vehō</i> , -ere, <i>vēxī</i> , <i>vectum</i> , carry,
<i>propinquus</i> , -a, -um, <i>with dat.</i> ,	bring
near, near at hand; <i>masc. as</i>	<i>impediō</i> , -īre, -īvī, -ītum, hinder
<i>noun</i> , relative	





Set of carpenter's tools. Late Roman, from Egypt, fourth to fifth century A.D.

3

### Possum and Eō Subordinate Clauses

Thāida tam tenuem potuistī, Flacce, vidēre?  
tū, puto,<sup>1</sup> quod nōn est, Flacce, vidēre potes.

*Could you see Thais, Flaccus,  
That girl so awfully skinny?  
You only think you see her  
'Cuz of Thais there ain't any.*

MARTIAL: 11.101

<sup>1</sup>Final o is sometimes regarded as short in Martial.

Paulō post marītus "Psȳchē dulcissima et cāra uxor," inquit, "cavē (*beware of*) sorōrēs tuās. Sunt invidiōsae et tibi erunt magnō periculō. Sī poterunt, tibi nocēbunt." Sed Psȳchē dolēbat quod parentēs et sorōrēs vidēre cupiēbat. Neque cibum neque somnum capiēbat. Itaque marītus in- 5  
vītus (*against his will*) Zephyrum mīsīt quī duās sorōrēs ad rēgiam sustulit. Psȳchē magnō cum studiō sorōrēs vīdit. Eīs cibum et pōtiōnem (*drink*) parāvit. Sorōrēs autem, ubi dīvitiās Psȳchēs vīderunt, multum invidēbant et cōnsilium malum prīvātīm (*privately*) cēpērunt. "Quis est marītus tuus?" 10  
rogāvērunt. "Ubi est?" Illa respondit, "Est pulcher adulēscēns. Nunc in montānīs vēnātibus (*hunting in the mountains*) est occupātus." Haud (*Not*) multō postea sorōrēs, aurō gemīsque onustās (*laden*), ventus reportāvit.

Ubi post complūrēs diēs sorōrēs ad rēgiam Psȳchēs rediērunt, 15  
"Quid dīxit ōrāculum?" inquit ūna. "Nōne dīxit marītum tuum fore<sup>2</sup> mōnstrum? Is est immānis (*huge*) serpēns quī in palūdibus incolit. Agricolaē dē hōc serpente multās fābulās nārrant. Vīderunt eum sub vesperum domum redeuntem (*returning*)." "Faciem (*face*) marītī meīs oculīs numquam 20  
vīdī," respondit Psȳchē misera. "Quid faciam (*am I to do*)?"

Tum mulierēs invidiōsae sorōrem hoc cōnsilium capere ius-  
sērunt. "Nocte cape gladium ācrem et lucernam. Lūmine lucernae marītum tuum vidēre poteris. Sī est serpēns gladiō statim interfice. Nōlī dubitāre." 25

17 (a) Review the principal parts, tenses of the indicative, and infinitives of **possum** (App. 370).

(b) Review the principal parts, tenses of the indicative, imperative, participles, and infinitives of **eō** (App. 371).

(c) Compounds of **eō**:

abeō, abīre, abīi, abitum, go away, depart

adeō, adīre, adīi, aditum, go to, approach, advance, visit

exeō, exīre, exīi, exitum, go out of, go forth, depart; leave (*with ex and abl.*)

<sup>2</sup>fore = futūrum esse. Translate *would be*.

ineō, inīre, iniī, initum, go into, enter; enter upon, begin  
 pereō, perīre, periī, peritum, perish  
 redeō, redīre, rediī, reditum, go back, return  
 trānseō, trānsīre, trānsiī, trānsitum, go across, cross, cross over, pass

Adeō is completed either by **ad** with the accusative or by the accusative without a preposition; **ineō**, either by **in** with the accusative or by the accusative alone; **abeō**, usually by **ab** or **ex** with the ablative, sometimes by the ablative alone; **exeō**, usually by **ex** with the ablative; **trānseō**, by the accusative.

## 18

## SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

- (a) **Ubi dōna accēpērunt, domum rediērunt.**

When they had received the gifts, they went home.

**Sorōrēs, simul atque gemmās Psȳchēs vīdērunt, cōnsilium malum cēpērunt.**

As soon as her sisters saw Psyche's jewels, they formed a wicked plan.

**Ubi**, *when*, **antequam** and **priusquam**, *before*, **postquam**, *after*, **simul atque** and **cum primum**, *as soon as*, referring to a single act or an actual occurrence in past time, are used with the perfect indicative, often translated as a pluperfect.

- (b) **Dum Zephyrus sorōrēs ad rēgiam tollit, Cupīdō ad montēs abit.**

While Zephyr is carrying the sisters to the palace, Cupid leaves for the mountains.

**Dum Zephyrus sorōrēs ad rēgiam tollit, Cupīdō ad montēs abiit.**

While Zephyr was carrying the sisters to the palace, Cupid left for the mountains.

**Dum**, *while*, is generally used with the present indicative, even when referring to the past.

- (c) **Quod rēx est bonus, pārēmus.**

Because the king is good, we are obedient.

**Quod rēx erat bonus, pārēbāmus.**

Because the king was good, we were obedient.



**Flūmen, quamquam est lātum, nōn est altum.**

Although the river is wide, it is not deep.

**Flūmen, quamquam erat lātum, nōn erat altum.**

Although the river was wide, it was not deep.

**Quod**, meaning *because*, and **quamquam**, meaning *although*, are used with the indicative in any tense required by the meaning.

(d) **Sī mihi pecūniam dederis, Rōmam properābō.**

If (in the future) you give me the money, I shall hasten to Rome.

In a complex sentence in which both acts refer to the future, if the act of the subordinate clause is completed before the act of the principal clause, the future perfect is used in the subordinate clause and the future is used in the principal clause.

**Tē, sī Rōmae eris, vidēbō.**

I shall see you, if you are in Rome (in the future).

In a complex sentence in which both acts refer to the future, if the two acts go on at the same time, the future is used in both clauses.

## 19

## QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

A direct question in Latin may be introduced by

- (a) the interrogative pronoun **quis** (App. 319)
- (b) the interrogative adjective **quī** (App. 320)
- (c) an interrogative adjective or adverb or adverb phrase:

**uter, utra, utrum**, which of two?

**quantus, quanta, quantum**, how great?

**quot**, *indeclinable*, how many?

**cūr**, why?

**quandō**, when? (*used in questions only*)

**ubi**, where, in what place?

**quō**, whither, where, to what place?

**unde**, whence, from what place?

**quōmodo**, how?

**quā dē causā**, for what reason?

**quibus dē causīs**, for what reasons?

- (d) **-ne, nōnne, num**  
**Vidēsne eum?** Do you see him?  
**Nōnne eum vidēs?** You see him, don't you?  
**Num eum vidēs?** You don't see him, do you?

Questions that may be answered by *yes* or *no* are introduced by interrogative particles. A question merely asking for information without indicating what answer is anticipated is introduced by **-ne**; a question anticipating the answer *yes* is introduced by **nōnne**; one anticipating the answer *no*, by **num**.

*Question: Aratne agrum? Answer: Arat, or Nōn arat.*

In answers to questions, *yes* and *no* are usually expressed by repeating the important parts of the question in the form of a statement.

*Yes* may be translated by **sic, ita, certē, sālē, vērō, valdē**, *certainly*; and *no* by **nōn, no** or by **minimē**, *by no means, not at all*.

20 Review: dative of purpose (App. 217); dative of interest (218); double dative (219).

## 21

## EXERCISES

A. Give the following verbs in Latin:

1. He is; he is able; he was able.
2. We were; we were able; we could.
3. You (*pl.*) are; you (*pl.*) are able; you (*pl.*) can.
4. He will be; he will be able; he will have been.
5. You (*s.*) have been; you (*s.*) have been able; you (*s.*) had been able.
6. They can; they could; they will be.
7. We had been; we had been able; we have been able.
8. They are; they are able; they were able.
9. I am; I can; I could.
10. We cannot; we could not; we shall be able.

B. Complete the sentence with each verb in parentheses:

1. Ad urbem \_\_\_\_ (*he is approaching, we are approaching, they approached*).
2. Ex urbe \_\_\_\_ (*they are going out, they will go out, they had gone out*).
3. Ab urbe \_\_\_\_ (*we went away, they are going away, we are going away*).
4. In urbem \_\_\_\_ (*he is entering, he was entering, they are entering*).

C. *Supply the correct form of the word in parentheses:*

1. Vīdī virum flūmen \_\_\_\_ (*crossing*). Vīdī virōs flūmen \_\_\_\_ (*crossing*).
2. Vīdit mē urbem \_\_\_\_ (*entering*). Vīdī eōs urbem \_\_\_\_ (*entering*).
3. \_\_\_\_ (*Come back*), Cupīdō, ad vallem. \_\_\_\_ (*Come back*), sorōrēs, ad vallem.
4. Marītus dīcitur ā rēgiā \_\_\_\_ (*to be leaving*). Marītus dīcitur rēgiā nocte \_\_\_\_ (*to have visited*).
5. Sorōrēs dīcuntur \_\_\_\_ (*to be returning*). Sorōrēs dīcuntur \_\_\_\_ (*to have perished*).

D. *Translate:*

1. Quis hoc facere potest? 2. Quid vīderant agricolae?
3. Redī domum sub vesperum. 4. Nōlī inīre; occupātī sumus.
5. Num omnēs periērunt? Omnēs ferē periērunt. 6. Sī poena gravis erit, dolēbimus. 7. Sorōrēs, simul atq̃ue Psȳchēn vidērunt, rogāvērunt, "Ubi est marītus tuus?" 8. Invidiōsae mulierēs cōsiliū malum prīvātīm cēpērunt. 9. Nisi lucernam cēperit, marītum vidēre nōn poterit. 10. Hoc cōsiliū magnō auxiliō est aliīs, magnō impedīmentō aliīs.

E. *Write in Latin:*

1. Psyche was a beautiful and agreeable girl. 2. Before the eyes of all stood Cupid, a handsome youth. 3. When they saw the animal, the farmers retreated a little. 4. Cupid, why do you leave the palace at dawn? 5. At midnight Psyche took up a sword and a lamp. 6. The sisters grieved because they had lost their gold. 7. Not (**Haud**) much later, while my mother was standing with me near the gate, my father suddenly came into sight. 8. After we had gone on board ship, we sailed to Britain; a light wind was of great service to us. 9. Although the marshes hindered our way (**iter**), we attempted to reach the city before dawn. 10. If we prepare sufficient food, all our children will be happy; without food all will suffer much.

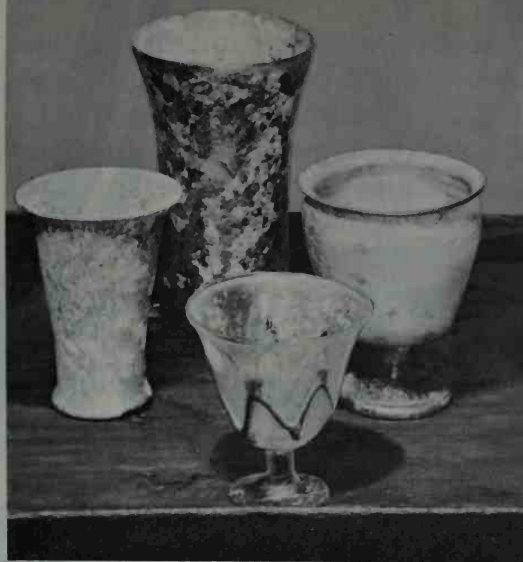


fābula, -ae, *f.*, story, fable  
 lucerna, -ae, *f.*, lamp  
 aurum, -ī, *n.*, gold  
 cibus, -ī, *m.*, food  
 oculus, -ī, *m.*, eye  
 somnus, -ī, *m.*, sleep  
 studium, -ī, *n.*, eagerness,  
     interest  
 ventus, -ī, *m.*, wind  
 lūmen, -minis, *n.*, light  
 palūs, palūdis, *f.*, marsh  
 cārus, -a, -um, dear  
 occupātus, -a, -um, occupied,  
     busy, engaged  
 dulcis, -is, -e, sweet, agreeable

doleō, -ēre, doluī, dolitum,  
     grieve (for), suffer  
 noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *with dat.*,  
     harm, injure  
 multum, *adv.*, much  
     multō postea (post), much  
     later  
 paulum, *adv.*, a little, a short dis-  
     tance, somewhat  
     paulō postea (post), a little  
     later  
 satis, *adv. and indeclinable noun*  
     *with partitive genitive*, enough,  
     sufficient

The suffix **-ōsus**, **-a**, **-um** may be added to the base of a noun to form an adjective meaning *full of*. The English derivative of a Latin adjective ending in **-ōsus** will end in *-ous* or *-ose*. For example, from **invidia**, *envy*, is derived **invidiōsus**, *full of envy* (English: *invidious* = tending to excite envy) and from **periculum** is derived **periculōsus**, *full of danger* (English: *perilous* = dangerous). Notice that the English derivative may have suffered some change in meaning (*invidious*) or in spelling (*perilous*) from its Latin original.

Using the suffix **-ōsus**, form Latin adjectives from the base of these nouns: **cōpia**, **fābula**, **fāma**, **studium**, **verbum**. Give the English adjective derived from each of the Latin adjectives that you have formed and the meaning of the English adjective. Check with an English dictionary to verify the spelling and the meaning of each of the English adjectives that you have derived.



*Roman wine glasses  
of blown glass made  
in Alexandria, first to  
second centuries A.D.*

4

## Adjectives

Grātiās tibi maximās Catullus  
agit pessimus omnium poēta,  
tantō pessimus omnium poēta,  
quantō tū optimus omnium es patrōnus.<sup>1</sup>

*Catullus thanks you most heartily,  
he the worst poet of all,  
as much the worst of poets  
as you of advocates are the best.*

CATULLUS: 49.4-7

24

## Cupīdō et Psȳchē (Part 4)

Nox aderat et marītus ad rēgiam pervēnerat. Mox in al-  
tum somnum dēscenderat. Psȳchē gladium et lucernam cēpit.  
Simul atque marītum vīdit, pulchriōrem omnium opīniōne,  
tam mītem (*gentle*), tam dulcem, ipsum illum Cupīdinem, et

<sup>1</sup>The lines are a compliment, real or ironic, to Cicero, the foremost defender in the courts of his day.



5 arcum (*bow*) et sagittās, attonita (*astounded*) erat. Dum trepidat (*was in confusion*) Psŷchē, stilla ferventis oleī (*a drop of scalding oil*) dē lucernā in umerum deī dēsiluit. Cupīdō, statim ē somnō excitātus, vīdit Psŷchēn quae lucernam tenēbat.

Lūmen ē manibus coniugis vehemēns ēripuit. “Ego,” in-  
10 quit, “mātris meae Veneris verbōrum immemor, tē, Psŷchē, amāvī. Tē coniugem meam fēcī. Tēcum plūrima gaudia spērāvī. Sed tū mihi nōn cōnfidēbās. Tuae sorōrēs poenās dabunt. Tē tantum (*only*) fugā meā pūniam.” Et discessit.

Misera et relictā longē errāvit Psŷchē marītum quaerēns  
15 (*seeking*). Tandem pervēnit ad amplam villam in quā ūna ex sorōribus habitābat. “Cūr hūc vēnistī?” inquit rēgīna. “Quid fēcistī?” “Fēcī ea quae iussistī. Noctū gladium et lucernam cēpī. Cum prīmum faciem marītī meī cōspēxī, mīrum spectāculum (*sight*) vīdī, ipsum illum Veneris filium, ipsum Cupīdinem, pulcherrimum deōrum immortalīum. Ē somnō excitātus, irātus mē reliquit. Magnā vōce clāmāvit sē sorōrem meam uxōrem ductūrum (*would marry*). Ē rēgiā expulsa ad tē vēnī.”

Hīs verbīs gaudēns (*rejoicing*) ad summum montem rēgīna properāvit, dē quō dēsiluit. “Accipe mē,” inquit, “Cupīdō,



coniugem multō digniōrem. Et tū, Zephyre, portā mē ad 25  
rēgiam Cupīdinis." Sed Zephyrus nōn aderat. Sīc periit illa.

Deinde infēlix Psychē ad alteram sorōrem pervēnit. Cui  
haec verba fēcit, "Faciem marītī mēi vīdī. Nōn est mōnstrum  
sed deus pulchrior omnibus terrae rēgibus. Eī tamen nōn  
iam sum grāta. Tē coniugem habēre cupit." 30

Altera soror verbīs Psychēs cōnfīsa dē monte dēsilit. In  
magna saxa cecidit. Itaque ea quoque periit.

25 Review the declensions of adjectives in App. 305-308.

## 26 COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

longus	long
longior	longer, too long, rather long
longissimus	longest, very long

An adjective has three degrees: positive, comparative, superlative.

altus	base alt-	altior, altius	altissimus, -a, -um
fortis	base fort-	fortior, fortius	fortissimus, -a, -um

The comparative is regularly formed by adding **-ior** for the masculine and feminine, and **-ius** for the neuter, to the base of the positive. The superlative is formed by adding **-issimus**, **-issima**, **-issimum** to the base.

pulcher	base pulchr-	pulchrior	pulcherrimus
celer	base celer-	celerior	celerrimus

Adjectives ending in **-er** form the superlative by adding **-rimus** to the masculine nominative singular of the positive. The comparative is formed regularly.

facilis	base facil-	facilior	facillimus
---------	-------------	----------	------------

Six adjectives ending in **-ilis** (**facilis**, easy; **difficilis**, difficult; **similis**, like; **dissimilis**, unlike; **gracilis**, slender; **humilis**, low) form the superlative by adding **-limus** to the base. The comparative is formed regularly. Other adjectives ending in **-ilis** have the regular superlative: **ūtilis**, **ūtilissimus**.

The following adjectives are irregular:

bonus, good	melior, better	optimus, best
malus, bad	peior, worse	pessimus, worst
magnus, large	maior, larger	maximus, largest
parvus, small	minor, smaller	minimus, smallest
multus, much	plūs, more	plūrimus, most
multi, many	plūrēs, more	plūrimī, most
exterus, outside	exterior, outer	extrēmus, extimus, outermost
inferus, under	inferior, lower	īnfirmus, īmus, lowest
posterus, following	posterior, later	postrēmus, postumus, last
superus, upper	superior, higher	suprēmus, summus, highest
	interior, inner	intimus, inmost
	ulterior, farther	ultimus, farthest, last
	prior, former	prīmus, first
	propior, nearer	proximus, nearest, next
novus, new		novissimus, newest, last
idōneus, suitable	magis idōneus, more suitable	maximē idōneus, most suitable

27 Lēgātum certiōrem fēcī. I informed the staff-officer.

Lēgātī certiōrēs factī sunt. The staff-officers were informed.

The adjective **certus**, **-a**, **-um** means *sure, certain*. To express the idea *to inform someone*, Latin says *to make someone more certain*. The comparative adjective agrees with the person or persons receiving the information.

28 summus, **-a**, **-um**, top of; summus mōns, the top of the mountain

medius, **-a**, **-um**, middle of; in mediā īnsulā, in the middle of the island

īmus, **-a**, **-um**, bottom of; īmum mare, the bottom of the sea  
omnis, **-is**, **-e**, all of; omnēs nōs, all of us

tōtus, **-a**, **-um**, whole of; tōta Gallia, the whole of Gaul

reliquus, **-a**, **-um**, rest of, remaining; reliqua legiō, the rest of the legion

cēterī, -ae, -a, the others, the rest of; cēterae puellae, the rest of the girls

Several Latin adjectives are used in agreement with a noun whereas, in English, we use a noun like *top*, *middle*, etc., followed by the preposition *of*.

29 Review: ablative of comparison (App. 234); ablative of measure of difference (235); dative with adjectives (220); genitive with adjectives (212).

30

## PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE

**Tē coniugem habēre cupit.**

He wishes to have you as his wife.

In this sentence **Tē** is direct object of the verb **habēre**; **coniugem** forms part of the predicate and corresponds to **Tē**. In grammar a noun in this construction is called a predicate accusative. A predicate accusative corresponds to the direct object in the same way that a predicate nominative corresponds to the subject.

31

## EXERCISES

A. *Fill in the blanks:*

- |                                       |                    |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. ad ____ arborēs, in ____ arboribus | top of             |
| 2. sub ____ montem, sub ____ monte    | bottom of          |
| 3. ____ aurum, ____ dīvitiae          | rest of            |
| 4. ____ vōs, ____ deī                 | all of             |
| 5. in ____ rēgiā, in ____ Italiā      | all (the whole) of |

B. *Fill in the blanks:*

- |  |                    |
|--|--------------------|
| 1. Mē ____, rēgīnās ____, nōs ____               | he has informed    |
| 2. Puellās ____, senātōrēs ____,<br>dominum ____ | they inform        |
| 3. Nōs ____, sorōrēs ____, vōs ____              | have been informed |
| 4. Marītum ____, eōs ____, mātrem ____           | she will inform    |
| 5. Ego ____, uxōrēs ____, plēbs ____             | have been informed |



C. *Translate:*

1. puella gracilior, virginēs gracillimae
2. posterus mēnsis, postrēmus diēs
3. minimam vīllam, pulchriōrem lucernam
4. ab īmō marī, in summō monte
5. arborēs simillimae, fābulae meliōrēs
6. in colle altiōre, cum marītō mīrissimō
7. aurā minimā, cīvium pessimōrum
8. cēterī cīvēs, in mediā palūde
9. mōnstrum turpe, cīvītās optima
10. marītus fēlicissimus, deī immortālēs

D. *Fill in the blanks:*

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. gaudium ____ ( <i>very wonderful</i> ) | 6. mēnsis ____ ( <i>next</i> )        |
| 2. vesper ____ ( <i>most beautiful</i> )  | 7. fābula ____ ( <i>rather good</i> ) |
| 3. ira ____ ( <i>more violent</i> )       | 8. puella ____ ( <i>very happy</i> )  |
| 4. cibus ____ ( <i>best</i> )             | 9. vīlla ____ ( <i>rather small</i> ) |
| 5. camerae ____ ( <i>the rest of</i> )    | 10. lacrimae ____ ( <i>very sad</i> ) |

E. *Translate:*

1. Viā Appiā ad vīllam patris meī properābō.
2. Gaudium deōrum immortālium maximum erat.
3. Veneris verbōrum immemor, Cupīdō puellam mortālem amāvit.
4. Miserrima Psȳchē longē errābat, marītum cārissimum quaerēns.
5. Hic dux erat multō crūdēlior in mīlitēs pessimōs quam ille.
6. Quo ad (*As long as*) Cupīdō Psȳchēn uxōrem habēbat, Psȳchē fēlicissima erat.
7. Sī mē certiōrem dē periculō fēcērīnt, officiī immemor nōn erō.
8. Mare est altius flūminibus altissimīs.

F. *Translate:*

1. Were not the Roman temples much more magnificent than the temples of the Greeks?
2. The leader always trusted his men because they were never unmindful of their duty.
3. After she had wandered through the whole of her kingdom, Psyche reached a very large city in which one of her evil sisters lived.
4. I caught sight of the face of my husband, Cupid himself, fairer than the face of Jupiter.
5. As soon as she had heard these words, the queen hurried to the mountain top.
6. The sisters were not rescued from death when they jumped from the high mountain.
7. Psyche informed her sisters of (dē)

the anger of her husband, Cupid. 8. Why (For what reason) did the staff-officer wish to make the soldiers his friends?

### 32

### VOCABULARY

<b>villa</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , country estate; farmhouse	<b>vehemēns</b> ( <i>gen. vehementis</i> ), violent, vigorous
<b>gaudium</b> , -ī, <i>n.</i> , joy, delight	<b>excitō</b> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, arouse, wake; incite
<b>umerus</b> , -ī, <i>m.</i> , shoulder	<b>somnō excitātus</b> , roused from sleep
<b>coniūnx</b> , <b>coniugis</b> , <i>m. and f.</i> , hus- band; wife; spouse	<b>cadō</b> , -ere, <b>cecidī</b> , <b>cāsum</b> , fall, fall down; be slain
<b>opīniō</b> , <b>opīniōnis</b> , <i>f.</i> , opinion, be- lief; reputation	<b>cōnfidō</b> , <b>cōnfidere</b> , <b>cōnfisus</b> sum, <i>with dat.</i> , trust, rely on
<b>opīniō omnium</b> , popular belief	<b>ēripiō</b> , -ere, <b>ēripuī</b> , <b>ēreptum</b> , snatch away from, rescue
<b>amplus</b> , -a, -um, great, large; magnificent	<b>dēsiliō</b> , <b>dēsilire</b> , <b>dēsiluī</b> , <b>dēsultum</b> , jump down
<b>dignus</b> , -a, -um, worthy	<b>noctū</b> , <i>adv.</i> , at night
<b>mīrus</b> , -a, -um, wonderful	<b>sic</b> , <i>adv.</i> , thus, so
<b>fēlix</b> ( <i>gen. fēlicis</i> ), happy, fortunate	<b>tam</b> , <i>adv. with adjs. and advs.</i> , so
<b>memor</b> ( <i>gen. memoris</i> ), <i>with</i> <i>gen.</i> , mindful	
<b>immemor</b> , unmindful	

### 33

### WORD STUDY

The suffix **-ālis**, *pertaining to, belonging to*, is added to the base of many Latin nouns to form adjectives of the third declension. For example, on the base of the noun **mors**, **mortis**, the adjective **mortālis**, **mortālis**, **mortāle**, *having to do with death*, and its negative **immortālis** are formed. Most of these adjectives give us English derivatives ending in *-al*, having usually the same or almost the same meaning as the Latin adjective; for example, *mortal* and *immortal*. Using the suffix **-ālis**, form Latin adjectives on the base of the following nouns: **corpus**, **fōrma**, **genus**, **marītus**, **nātūra**, **officiūm**, **poena**, **rēx**, **terminus**, **verbum**. Give the English adjective directly derived from each of the Latin adjectives that you have formed. Check in an English dictionary to see whether the English adjective has undergone any change in meaning.



Housesteads, a Roman fort in Northumberland, England. Above, a view into the fort as seen from the south gate. Below, ruins of the headquarters building (*principia*). A wall built by order of the emperor Hadrian in 122-126 A.D. was protected by a series of detached forts four miles apart, each capable of holding approximately five hundred soldiers.

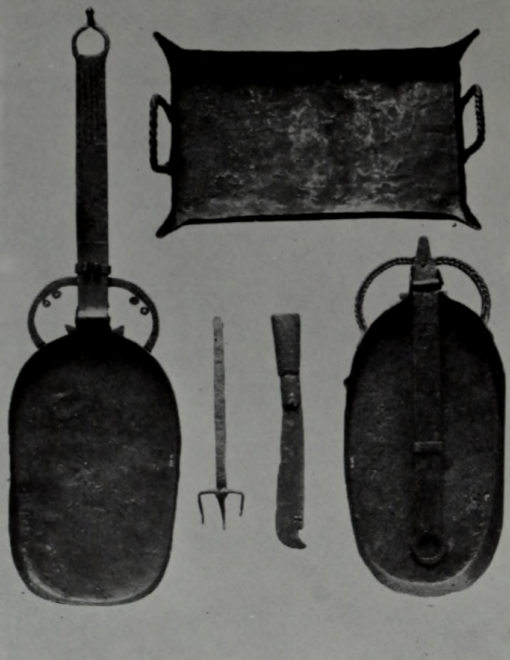






Above, remains of Richborough Castle in Kent, England. The north wall as seen from the southeast shows ruins of first and second century houses. Also visible are ditches of an earth fort. Below, Corstopitum Corbridge, a site of Roman occupation in Northumberland which existed till the early fifth century. The remains are of a great storehouse viewed from the southwest.





Roman frying pans of  
hammered iron with  
folding handles

5

## Adverbs Time and Place

Rūs ībō: ibi hōc mē mācerābō biduom.<sup>1</sup>

*I shall go to the country.*

*There I'll fret over this for two days.*

TERENCE: EUNUCHUS 1.2.107

34

### Cupīdō et Psȳchē (Part 5)

Interim Cupīdō, vulnere dolēns (*suffering*), domō disceserat. In rēgiā māt̄ris multōs diēs morābātur. Venus, ubi dē vulnere filiū audīvit, īrātissima erat et Psȳchēn invenīre cōnābātur.

- 5 Psȳchē ipsa, postquam longissimē et diūtissimē per multās terrās errāvit, in nemus (*grove*) umbrōsum pervēnit. Ibi erat fōns sacer, domus nymphārum, atque vetus (*ancient*) templum

<sup>1</sup>biduom: archaic form of neuter.

deae Cereris. Ad āram deae Psŷchē multās hōrās morābātur. Bonam deam omnibus precibus ōrāvit. Cerēs et postea Iūnō quoque, quamquam amīcissimae erant et Psŷchēn magnopere 10 hortābantur, miserae puellae auxiliō esse nōn potuērunt. Sīc Psŷchē ad Venerem ipsam ire cōstituit. Ā prīmā hōrā ad merīdiem multa mīlia passuum ambulābat. Dēnique (*At last*) ad rēgiam deae pervēnit.

Prīmum dea ancillās (*maids*) Psŷchēn pūnīre iussit; deinde 15 puellam opus difficillimum suscipere iussit. In rēgiā erat cōpia frūmentī et miliī (*millet*) et aliōrum grānōrum (*grains*) commixta (*mixed together*). “Vidēsne haec mīlia grānōrum?” inquit dea crūdēlis. “Ante prīmam lūcem sēparā omnia; pōne ūnum genus in acervō (*heap*). Crās prīmā hōrā redībō. Nisi 20 tōtum opus cōfectum erit, tē vehementer pūniam.” Opus erat multō difficilius (*too difficult*). Quid Psŷchē faceret (*was . . . to do*)?

Mox tamen formīca (*ant*), dolōre Psŷchēs vīsō, omnēs formīcās convocāvit. “Psŷchē,” inquit, “hanc poenam nōn 25 meruit. Miserae puellae auxiliō esse poterimus. Eam iuvēmus (*Let us help*).” Ergō quam maximus numerus formīcārum opus suscepit. Formīcae, quod in hōc genere operis erant exercitae, celerrimē omnia grāna sēparāvērunt. Prīmā lūce opus perfectum erat. 30

### 35

### FORMATION OF ADVERBS

ADJECTIVE	BASE	ADVERB
lātus, wide	lāt-	lātē, widely
līber, free	līber-	līberē, freely

Adverbs are formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by adding *-ē* to the base of the positive.

fortis, brave	fort-	fortiter, bravely
ācer, sharp	ācr-	ācriter, sharply

They are formed from adjectives of the third declension by adding *-iter* to the base of the positive.

Audāx adds *-ter*: audāx, bold; base audāc-; audācter, boldly. Adjectives ending in *-ns* add *-er*: potēns, powerful; base potent-; potenter, powerfully.



	POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>Adjective</i>	<b>lātus</b>	<b>lātior</b>	<b>lātissimus</b>
<i>Adverb</i>	<b>lātē</b>	<b>lātius</b>	<b>lātissimē</b>
<i>Adjective</i>	<b>līber</b>	<b>līberior</b>	<b>līberrimus</b>
<i>Adverb</i>	<b>līberē</b>	<b>līberius</b>	<b>līberrimē</b>
<i>Adjective</i>	<b>fortis</b>	<b>fortior</b>	<b>fortissimus</b>
<i>Adverb</i>	<b>fortiter</b>	<b>fortius</b>	<b>fortissimē</b>
<i>Adjective</i>	<b>ācer</b>	<b>ācrior</b>	<b>ācerrimus</b>
<i>Adverb</i>	<b>ācriter</b>	<b>ācrius</b>	<b>ācerrimē</b>
<i>Adjective</i>	<b>audāx</b>	<b>audācior</b>	<b>audācissimus</b>
<i>Adverb</i>	<b>audācter</b>	<b>audācius</b>	<b>audācissimē</b>

The comparative of an adverb has the same form as the accusative singular neuter of the comparative of the corresponding adjective.

The superlative of an adverb is formed by substituting **-ē** for the final **-us** of the superlative of the corresponding adjective.

The following adverbs show some irregularity:

<b>bene</b> , well	<b>melius</b> , better	<b>optimē</b> , best, very well
<b>male</b> , badly	<b>peius</b> , worse	<b>pessimē</b> , worst, very badly
<b>diū</b> , long, for a long time	<b>diūtius</b> , longer, too long	<b>diūtissimē</b> , very long
<b>facile</b> , easily	<b>facilius</b> , more easily	<b>facillimē</b> , most easily, very easily
<b>magnopere</b> , greatly	<b>magis</b> , more	<b>maximē</b> , especially
<b>multum</b> , much	<b>plūs</b> , more	<b>plūrimum</b> , most, very much
<b>parum</b> , little	<b>minus</b> , less	<b>minimē</b> , least, very little
<b>prope</b> , near, nearly	<b>propius</b> , nearer, too near	<b>proximē</b> , nearest, very near
<b>saepe</b> , often	<b>saepius</b> , more often, too often	<b>saepissimē</b> , most often

**Parum** usually means *too little, not enough*; **minimē**, *not in the least, not at all*.



Wroxeter Roman city (*Viroconium*), Shropshire, where a legionary fortress existed. Group of Samian Ware of the first and second century.

37

## QUAM WITH SUPERLATIVE

*Liberi sunt quam optimi.* The children are as good as possible.  
*Quam celerrimē venient.* They will come as quickly as possible.  
*Quam primum iter fēcērunt.* They marched as soon as possible.

**Quam** with the superlative of an adjective or adverb expresses the highest degree possible.

38

## NUMERALS

Review at this time the first ten cardinal numerals and the first ten ordinal numerals in App. 313. Refer to this section for other numerals as required. Review declensions of *ūnus*, *duo*, and *trēs* in App. 314.

*Quīnque rēgum* Five of the kings

The partitive genitive is used with numerals, although the ablative with *dē* or *ex* may also be used. With *ūnus*, the ablative is more common. For example, *Ūna ex sorōribus*, *One of her sisters*.

- (a) **Mille**, one thousand, is an indeclinable adjective.

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>mille mīlitēs</b> , one thousand soldiers
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>mille mīlitum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>mille mīlitibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>mille mīlitēs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>mille mīlitibus</b>

- (b) **Mīlia**, thousands, is a neuter plural noun.

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>mīlia</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>mīlium</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>mīlibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>mīlia</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>mīlibus</b>

<b>Duo mīlia formīcārum veniunt.</b>	Two thousand ants come.
<b>Tria mīlia servōrum habet.</b>	He has three thousand slaves.
<b>Cum tribus mīlibus Rōmānōrum venit.</b>	He comes with three thousand Romans.

The plural **mīlia** is used with a partitive genitive.

- (a) **Trēs diēs mānsit.** He stayed three days (for three days).

**Diēs septem manēbunt.** They will remain for a week.

Time how long is expressed by the accusative case.

- (b) **Secundā hōrā ad urbem pervēnērunt.**

At the second hour they reached the city.

**Diē octāvō pervēnit.**

He arrived on the eighth day.

Time when is expressed by the ablative case.

- (c) **Tertiā vigiliā Mānlius Gallōs vīdit.**

During the third watch Manlius saw the Gauls.

**Sex diēbus perveniet.**

He will arrive within six days.

Time within which is expressed by the ablative case.

- (d) Note the following phrases: **ante merīdiem**, before noon; **post merīdiem**, after noon; **ab hōrā tertiā ad merīdiem**, from the third hour until noon.

**Sagitta est longa trēs pedēs.**

The arrow is three feet long.

**Flūmen est altum duōs pedēs et lātum sēdecim pedēs.**

The stream is two feet deep and sixteen feet wide.

Extent of space is expressed by the accusative case without a preposition.

With the names of cities, towns, and small islands, and with **domus**, **domūs**, *f.*, *home*, and **rūs**, **rūris**, *n.*, *the country*, the following constructions occur:

(a) Place to which is expressed by the accusative without a preposition.

**Corinthum**, to Corinth; **domum**, to home, homeward;  
**rūs**, to the country

(b) Place from which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

**Corinthō**, from Corinth; **domō**, from home; **rūre**, from  
the country

(c) Place in which is expressed by the locative.

**Corinthī**, at Corinth; **domī**, at home; **rūrī**, in the country

A. *Fill in the blanks:*

1. \_\_\_\_ (*the city*), \_\_\_\_ (*home*), \_\_\_\_ (*Rome*) pervēnimus.
2. \_\_\_\_ (*in the city*), \_\_\_\_ (*in the country*), \_\_\_\_ (*in Corinth*)  
manēbō.
3. \_\_\_\_ (*from the city*), \_\_\_\_ (*from home*), \_\_\_\_ (*from Corinth*)  
exiērunt.
4. \_\_\_\_ (*at home*), \_\_\_\_ (*in Rome*), \_\_\_\_ (*in the town*) erant.
5. \_\_\_\_ (*into the palace*), \_\_\_\_ (*into the country*), \_\_\_\_ (*into the*  
*farmhouse*) iniit.



B. *Fill in the blanks:*

1. \_\_\_\_ (at dawn) discessit; \_\_\_\_ (before sunset) reversus est.
2. \_\_\_\_ (in two days) veniet; \_\_\_\_ (for two days) manēbit.
3. \_\_\_\_ (before noon) pervenērunt; \_\_\_\_ (within three days) aderunt.
4. \_\_\_\_ (for three hours) pugnābant; \_\_\_\_ (at the third hour) sē recēpērunt.
5. \_\_\_\_ (in four years) erit rēx; \_\_\_\_ (for four years) erat rēx.

C. *Fill in the blanks:*

1. Cum \_\_\_\_ (two boys) veniunt; cum \_\_\_\_ (two thousand boys) veniunt.
2. \_\_\_\_ (one of the men) interfēcit; \_\_\_\_ (one hundred of the men) interfēcit.
3. \_\_\_\_ (A thousand ants) iuvant; \_\_\_\_ (Many thousand ants) iuvant.
4. \_\_\_\_ (Two maids) Psŷchēn pūnīvērunt; \_\_\_\_ (one of the maids) Psŷchēn pūnīvit.
5. \_\_\_\_ (two hundred soldiers) vīdit; \_\_\_\_ (three thousand soldiers) vīdit.

D. *Translate:*

- |                              |                          |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Crās aurum inveniēmus.    | 5. Plūs meruit.          |
| 2. Plūrimum cōpiās exercuit. | 6. Ācerrimē pugnāvērunt. |
| 3. Magis idōneum tempus est. | 7. Diūtius morātī sunt.  |
| 4. Līberius pecūniam dedit.  | 8. Optimē labōrāvērunt.  |

E. *Fill in the blanks:*

1. \_\_\_\_ (very quickly) dēscendit.
2. \_\_\_\_ (as quickly as possible) dēscendērunt.
3. Psŷchē \_\_\_\_ (too long) lacrimāvit.
4. \_\_\_\_ (too little) doluit.
5. Frūmentum \_\_\_\_ (not at all) comparābimus.
6. Verba Cupīdinis \_\_\_\_ (least) neglēxērunt.
7. Eam \_\_\_\_ (as easily as possible) ēripuērunt.
8. Id \_\_\_\_ (nearer) vēxit.
9. Eī \_\_\_\_ (more) invidēbāmus.
10. Lībertātem \_\_\_\_ (boldly) cōnservābitis.

F. *Translate:*

1. Adulēscētēs, quod minimē terrēbantur, praemium magnum merēbantur.
2. Venus, ubi dē vulnere Cupīdinis audīvit, quam celerrimē filiō auxiliō vēnit.



The Parthenon in Athens, a temple of white marble in honor of the goddess Athena, was one of the most beautiful structures of Ancient Greece.

3. Hoc opus suscipere nōn possumus quod multō difficilius est.
4. Psȳchē diū et longē ambulābat; dēnique ancillae deae eam crūdēliter pūnīverunt.
5. Multa mīlia formīcārum difficillimum opus suscēpērunt et ūnā nocte facillimē cōnfēcērunt.
6. Cōpia grānōrum erat trēs pedēs alta et septem pedēs lāta.

G. *Translate:*

1. One of the ants was much larger than the rest.
2. The most difficult part of the work was completed within three days.
3. Although Ceres was most friendly, she could not help the poor girl.
4. We delayed at Corinth for too long a time; therefore, we were able to stay only three days in Rome.
5. In this way we shall leave Brundisium as soon as possible and reach Rome at sunset.
6. After Psyche wandered for many miles, she came at length to the temple of Venus, the mother of Cupid.
7. While Psyche was trying to accomplish the task, three thousand ants came to help (as a help to) the wretched girl.

Brundisium, -ī, <i>n.</i> , Brundisium, modern Brindisi, town in Southern Italy	iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtum, help, assist
Corinthus, -ī, <i>f.</i> , Corinth, a city of the Peloponnesus	ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, ask, beg, pray
dolor, dolōris, <i>m.</i> , grief, pain	exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, train
fōns, fontis, <i>m.</i> , spring, fountain	mereō, -ēre, -uī, -itum and mereor, -ērī, meritus sum, deserve
genus, generis, <i>n.</i> , kind, sort	suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, undertake
opus, operis, <i>n.</i> , work, task	ergō, <i>adv.</i> , therefore
prex, precis, <i>f.</i> (usually in the <i>pl.</i> ), prayer, entreaty	mīlle passūs, a mile
hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, urge, encourage	mīlia passuum, miles

Some verb prefixes, notably **com-** (**con-**), **ex-** (**ē-**), **in-** and **per-**, may be used to intensify the meaning of a verb. For example, **comparō**, *prepare, get ready, acquire*; **ēlabōrō**, *work perseveringly or successfully*; **insequor**, *follow up, pursue*; **permaneō**, *stay to the end*. Sometimes the verbs may be combined with the different prefixes without essential difference in meaning. For example, **cōnficiō**, *make or do completely*, **efficiō**, *make or work out*, and **perficiō**, *make or do through to the end*, all have the same meaning of *complete or finish*. Sometimes the prefixes vary in the degree of intensity expressed: **cōnsequor**, **insequor** and **persequor** all mean *pursue*, but **cōnsequor** and, less frequently, **persequor** have the stronger meaning of *come up with, reach, achieve*.

Define the following intensives by reference to their prefixes and root verbs; then check in the Latin dictionary to see whether the compounds in each set show variation in the degree of intensity:

concipiō, percipiō	convertō, ēvertō
committō, permittō	excitō, incitō
conturbō, perturbō	



*Bust of the emperor  
Trajan, Rome*

# 6

## Pronouns Pronominal Adjectives

Ō miserō frāter adēmp̄te mihi,  
tū mea tū moriēns frēgistī com̄oda, frāter,  
tēcum ūnā tōta est nostra sepulta domus,  
omnia tēcum ūnā periērunt gaudia nostra.

*O my brother, taken from me, I am sick at heart.  
You, my brother, you have shattered all I had of good.  
Along with you has been buried all our house.  
Along with you have perished all our joys.*

CATULLUS: 68.20-23

46

## Cupīdō et Psȳchē (Part 6)

Posterō diē dea, semper (*stīl*) īrāta, Psȳchēn ad sē iterum vocāvit. “Audī,” inquit, “Psȳchē, mandāta mea. Haec sunt ea quae tibi mandō. Vidēsne illud nemus quod est ultrā flūmen? Ibi vagantur multae ovēs, quārum lāna (*wool*) est aurea. Portā ad mē cōpiam illius lānae aureae. Nisi hoc 5 fēc̄eris, marītum tuum numquam vidēbis.”



Infelix Psychē de suis rebus omnino despēbat et mori  
 vehementer cupiebat. Paene dolore amens (*mad*), pede tardō  
 in agris vagabatur. Denique ad ripam fluminis pervēnit. In  
 10 animō habuit sē iacere in aquam. Arundō (*A reed*) tamen  
 quae in ripā crescēbat, “Nōlī,” inquit, “Psychē, tuā miserrimā  
 morte meos sacros fluctus polluere (*defile*); nōlī despēare.  
 Vērō (*Truly*) est magni periculi nunc nemus inire, nam propter  
 calorem (*heat*) solis illae oves sunt ferociōres leonibus (*lions*).  
 15 Nēmō irās temperat (*calms*) neque animos mollit (*soothes*),  
 nam nullus pastor eis praefectus est. Tē iuvare nōn possum  
 sed tibi bonum cōsiliū dabō et hōc modō tū ipsa cōficiēs  
 id quod Venus iussit. Merīdiē oves ad flūmen venient, aquam  
 quaerētēs (*looking for*); postea, somnō oppressae, dormient.  
 20 Tum nemus inī. In omnibus sentibus (*briars*) reperiēs cōpiam  
 lanae aureae quam facile legere poteris.”

Psychē magnās arundinī grātiās ēgit et doloris oblita man-  
 datīs paruit. Post merīdiem nemus iniit; lānam auream de  
 sentibus lēgit. Sub vesperum cum celeritāte ad rēgiā rediit,  
 25 lānam auream portāns (*carrying*).

47 Review dative with compound verbs (App. 216); abla-  
 tive of manner (236); declension of pronouns (315-319).

## 48 PERSONAL PRONOUNS

ego, I; tū, you; is, ea, id, he, she, it

Mē et tē ad eum mittent. They will send you and me to him.

Ego sum dux. Ego imperō, tū pārēs.

I am the leader. I command, you obey.

The nominative case is used for emphasis or contrast.

Habētis ducem memorem vestrī. Quis vestrum? Nēmō nostrum.  
 You have a leader mindful of you. Who of you? No one of us.

The genitive plural forms **nostrī** and **vestrī** are used with  
 nouns or adjectives implying action; **nostrum** and **vestrum**,  
 as partitive genitives.

**Cum**, *with*, is attached to the ablative of the first and second  
 personal pronouns: **mēcum**, **tēcum**, **nōbīscum**, **vōbīscum**; but  
 not to the ablative of the third: **cum eō**, **cum eā**, **cum eis**.

**Eōs (= flōrēs) legimus.** We are picking them (= the flowers).

**Ea (= castra) cēpērunt.** They have taken it (= the camp).

The pronoun of the third person agrees in number and gender with the noun it represents.

## 49

## REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

A reflexive pronoun looks back or refers to the subject of the sentence or of the clause in which it stands: The soldier is defending himself; We see that the soldier is defending himself.

A reflexive pronoun has four cases: genitive, dative, accusative, ablative. The reflexive pronouns of the first and second persons have the same forms as the personal pronouns; the third person has its own set of forms: **suī, sibi, sē (sēsē), sē (sēsē).**

**Meī memor sum.**

I am mindful of myself.

**Agrum optimum tibi dēligis.**

You choose the best land for yourself.

**Sē laudat.**

He praises himself *or* She praises herself.

**Multōs propinquōs sēcum habēbant.**

They had many relatives with them.

**Mē abdō. Sē dēdit.**

I am hiding. He is surrendering.

**Sabīnī sē Rōmānīs (dat.) or cum Rōmānīs coniungunt.**

The Sabines join (unite themselves to *or* with) the Romans.

The verbs **abdō**, *hide*, **dēdō**, *surrender*, **moveō**, *move*, **vertō** and **convertō**, *turn*, **iungō** and **coniungō**, *join*, in the active require a direct object in the accusative.

## 50

## POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

The possessive adjectives of the first and second persons:

**meus, mea, meum**, my, mine

**noster, nostra, nostrum**, our, ours

**tuus, tua, tuum**, your, yours

**vester, vestra, vestrum**, your, yours

The reflexive possessive adjective of the third person:

**suus, sua, suum**, his, her, its, their

Patrem videō.	I see my father.
Patrem tuum videō.	I see your father.
Mārcus librum habet.	Marcus has his book.
Liberīs fābulam nārrat.	He tells a story to his children.
Rēx cōpiās suās dūcet.	The king will lead his own troops.

The possessive adjectives are usually omitted unless required for clarity or emphasis.

Librum eius habeo.	I have his book.
Patrem eōrum (eārum) videō.	I see their father.

*His, her, its*, when not reflexive, are expressed by **eius**, and *their*, by **eōrum** or **eārum**.

## 51 RELATIVE PRONOUN

The soldier [who is fighting] is brave.  
The stars [that we see] are bright.  
My brother [with whom I came] will remain.

A relative pronoun connects a subordinate clause, of which it is a part, with the antecedent.

Mīles [quī pugnat] est fortis.  
Stellae [quās vidēmus] sunt clārae.  
Frāter meus [quōcum vēnī] manēbit.

In Latin a relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person. Its case, however, is determined by its use in the clause in which it stands.

Is quī dicit ea quae cognōvit nōn est semper sapiēns.  
He who tells what (that which) he has learned is not always wise.

The relative pronoun may be used with a personal pronoun as its antecedent.

Nūntium Rōmam mīsērunt. Quī, ubi in urbem vēnit, ōrātiōnem habuit.

They sent a messenger to Rome. And he (*lit.*, who), when he came into the city, made a speech.

The relative may be used at the beginning of an independent sentence for closer connection with the preceding sentence (Coordinating Relative).



The most common Latin demonstrative pronouns (or adjectives) are **hic**, **ille**, and **is**. **Hic** means *this*; **ille** means *that*. **Is** means *this* or *that* but is unemphatic; sometimes it may be translated by the English definite article *the*.

**Hic liber est meus.** This book is mine.  
**Illud erat periculum grave.** That was a grave risk.  
**Eam villam vidī.** I have seen this (*or that*) farmhouse.

**Dēmōsthenēs et Cicerō erant ōrātōrēs; hic erat Rōmānus, ille Graecus.**

Demosthenes and Cicero were orators; the latter was a Roman, the former a Greek.

**Hic . . . ille** may express the *latter . . . the former*.

**Caesar in finēs hostium prōgressus est. Illī statim sē in silvās abdidērunt.**

Caesar advanced into the territories of the enemy. They (the enemy) immediately hid in the woods.

**Ille** may mark a change of subject.

**Īdem** means *the same*: **īdem puer**, *the same boy*; **eadem palūs**, *the same marsh*; **īdem studium**, *the same eagerness*.

**Eandem fābulam, quam antea, nārrāvit.**

He told the same story as (he had told) before.

The English phrase *the same as* is translated by **īdem quī**.

**Deus ipse haec dixit.** The god himself said this.  
**Ipsa vēnit.** She has come of her own accord.  
**Illō ipsō diē victī sunt.** On that very day they were defeated.

**Ipse** emphasizes nouns and pronouns of any person. It may be used in agreement with the pronoun contained in the verb. Emphasis is secured in English by the use of *-self* and *-selves*, as in *yourself* and *yourselves*; by the use of such words as *very*, *mere*, *actual*, and such phrases as *in person*, *of one's own accord*, *with one's own eyes*.



Carvings in stone of three ancient divinities, perhaps Mother Goddesses, from Housesteads in North-umberland. Though crude, the representations are remarkably well preserved.

## 54 INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

The interrogative pronouns: **uter**, *which of the two?*; **quis**, *who? which?* used of more than two.

<b>Uter est fortior hōrum?</b>	Which of these two is the braver?
<b>Quis mēcum ibit?</b>	Who (of you all) will go with me?
<b>Quī puer librōs habet?</b>	What boy has the books?
<b>Quō in oppidō habitās?</b>	In what town do you live?

The interrogative adjective **quī, quae, quod** is used in agreement with a noun and is translated *what*.

A. *Fill in the blanks:*

1. Soror \_\_\_\_ (*my*) in urbe \_\_\_\_ (*with me*) morābātur.
2. Sum \_\_\_\_ (*of him*) oblītus; est \_\_\_\_ (*of himself*) quoque oblītus.
3. Pāstor \_\_\_\_ (*your*) ovibus praeest; \_\_\_\_ (*them*) \_\_\_\_ (*with him*) habet.
4. \_\_\_\_ (*You*) tardī estis; sorōrēs \_\_\_\_ (*your*) vidēre nōn poteritis.
5. \_\_\_\_ (*You*) tardus es; sorōrēs \_\_\_\_ (*your*) vidēre nōn poteris.
6. Multī \_\_\_\_ (*of you*) erant memorēs \_\_\_\_ (*of yourselves*).
7. Marītum \_\_\_\_ (*your*) nōn vidēbis nisi portāveris \_\_\_\_ (*to me*) cōpiam lānae.
8. Ovēs ferōcēs \_\_\_\_ (*themselves*) abdidērunt in nemus.
9. Vōs oblītī \_\_\_\_ (*of yourselves*) nōn erātis.
10. Psȳchē, nōlī dēspērāre dē vītā \_\_\_\_ (*your*); \_\_\_\_ (*you*) iuvābimus.

B. *Fill in the blanks:*

1. Quis est \_\_\_\_ (*this*) puerī pater? Quis est \_\_\_\_ (*that*) puel-  
lae frāter?
2. Vidēsne \_\_\_\_ (*those*) ferōcēs ovēs? Vidēsne \_\_\_\_ (*these*)  
arborēs?
3. Cupīdō erat marītus Psȳchēs; \_\_\_\_ (*the former*) domō exiit,  
\_\_\_\_ (*the latter*) erat misera.
4. Psȳchē in animō habēbat \_\_\_\_ (*those*) sacrōs flūctūs \_\_\_\_  
(*her*) morte miserrimā polluere.
5. \_\_\_\_ (*This*) modō \_\_\_\_ (*this*) lānam auream legēs.

C. *Fill in the blanks:*

1. Psȳchē \_\_\_\_ (*herself*) in nemus \_\_\_\_ (*the same*) iniit. 2. \_\_\_\_  
(*Your*) marītum \_\_\_\_ (*himself*) vīdistī. 3. \_\_\_\_ (*The same*)  
auream lānam \_\_\_\_ (*as*) antea vīdit. 4. Psȳchē \_\_\_\_ (*of her*  
*own accord*) ovēs ferōcissimās \_\_\_\_ (*same*) repperit. 5. Psȳchē  
\_\_\_\_ (*herself*) in aquā flūminis \_\_\_\_ (*herself*) vidēbat.



D. *Fill in the blanks:*

1. Vīdistīne puellam \_\_\_\_ (*who*) vēnit? 2. Vidēbimus ārās \_\_\_\_ (*which*) ante templum sunt. 3. Puerī \_\_\_\_ (*whom*) vīdistis vēnērunt. 4. Puella \_\_\_\_ (*whom*) vīdistis est soror mea. 5. Haec est Psȳchē \_\_\_\_ (*whose*) marītus discessit. 6. Illae sunt ovēs \_\_\_\_ (*whose*) lānam auream legēs. 7. Hoc est oppidum \_\_\_\_ (*over which*) ille praeest. 8. Arundinēs \_\_\_\_ (*that*) Psȳchē cōnfīsa est sunt altae. 9. Marītus \_\_\_\_ (*whom*) Psȳchē āmisit erat Cupīdō. 10. Puer \_\_\_\_ (*with whom*) ambulābam est frāter meus.

E. *Translate:*

1. Venus Psȳchēn hanc lānam ad sē portāre iussit; illa pāruiť.
2. Hunc lēgātum cui cōnfīdō illī oppidō praefēcit.
3. Psȳchē ipsa lānam auream quam in sentibus repperit quam celerrimē lēgit.
4. Venus Psȳchēn sē excitāre iussit.
5. Cum prīmum Cupīdō discessit, Psȳchē suī oblīta longē vagāta est.
6. Psȳchē eāsdem ovēs ferōcissimās repperit. Illae somnō oppressae omnīnō nōn erant.
7. Nisi verba arundinis audīverit, Psȳchē flūctūs sacerrimōs polluet.

F. *Write in Latin:*

1. What king has not dared to defend his own people? 2. With the greatest speed the enemy had hidden in these same woods.
3. In these woods there are two paths (**viae**) in all; by which were the boys wandering? 4. We had ordered the boys to return home; forgetful of us they did not obey. 5. Who of you will go with us at noon and attack these fierce men? 6. I am entrusting all our possessions (**omnia nostra**) to your protection (**fidēs**) because I trust you. 7. That task you yourself will complete; you will be able to do what Venus has ordered.
8. Do not enter that grove, for very many fierce animals live in that place.

**nemus, nemoris, n.**, grove  
**ovis, ovis, f.**, sheep  
**flūctus, -ūs, m.**, wave  
**oblītus, -a, -um, with gen.**, forgetful of  
**tardus, -a, -um**, slow  
**ferōx (gen. ferōcis)**, bold, fierce  
**mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, with dat.**, commit; order, command  
**mandātum, -ī, n.**, order, command  
**vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum**, wander, roam about  
**crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētum**, grow, increase  
**moriōr, morī, mortuus sum**, die  
**opprimō, -ere, oppressī, oppressum**, press down, crush; overwhelm  
**somnō oppressus**, overcome with sleep

**praeficiō, -ere, praefēcī, praefectum, with acc. and dat.**, put in command of, place in charge of  
**reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum**, find, discover; find out  
**praesum, praeesse, praefuī, with dat.**, be in command of, be in charge of  
**omnīnō, adv.**, altogether; with *neg.*, at all; with *numerals*, in all, only  
**ultrā, adv. and prep. with acc.**, beyond  
**in animō habēre**, to intend

The supine of the simple verb **faciō** is **factum**; of the compound **cōnficiō, cōnfectum**. Similarly the supine of the simple verb **capiō** is **captum**; of the compound **recipiō, receptum**.

Many English words are derived from the supine stem of **faciō** (*factory*) and **capiō** (*capture*) and from their compounds. Give at least one English derivative containing the supine stem of the following:

<b>cōnficiō</b>	<b>efficiō</b>	<b>accipiō</b>	<b>recipiō</b>
<b>dēficiō</b>	<b>praeficiō</b>	<b>incipiō</b>	<b>suscipiō</b>

Check in an English dictionary to determine the relationship of the English word to the Latin verb.



*Mosaic depicting  
Sappho, Naples*

7

## Participles Ablative Absolute

Quid recitātūrus circumdās vellera collō?  
conveniunt nostrīs auribus ista magis.

*Why do you wreath your throat with wool,  
when you're about to read?  
It's not your throat, but rather  
our ears that have that need.*

MARTIAL: 4.41

58

### Cupīdō et Psȳchē (Part 7)

Venus, lānā aureā acceptā, nōn erat contenta. Erat semper invidiōsa, puellam pulchram verēns. Semper cōnābātur Psȳchēn Cupīdinem marītum iterum vidēre prohibēre. Itaque puella tertium opus suscipere ā crūdēlī deā iussa est.

“Vidēsne verticem (*summit*) illius altī montis dē quō ātrae undae dēfluentēs (*flowing down*) palūdēs irrigant (*flood*)? Cape hanc urnam et ad illum montem proficīscere. Sine morā ad mē reportā urnam gelidā aquā illius fontis complētam.” Hīs verbīs dictīs puellae urnam dedit.

Trīstis et immōta Psychē ad forēs (*door*) rēgiae diū sedēbat. Dēnique surrēxit et urnā sublātā ad montem tardē profecta est, ibi inventūra aut aquam aut vītae fīnem. Quō ubi vēnit, saxum ingēns et inaccessum (*unapproachable*) vīdit. Undique ferōcēs serpentēs fontem custodiēbant. Iamque ipsae undae et “Discēde” et “Quid facis?” et “Fuge” et “Perībīs” clāmant.

Dum Psychē dubitat, subitō aquila, avis suprēmī Iovis, clāmāvit: “Spērāsne tē vel (*even*) ūnam stīllam (*drop*) sacer-  
rimae aquae fūrārī (*to steal*) posse? Numquam tū ipsa hoc opus cōficere poteris. At pater deōrum hominumque rēx, ille Iuppiter ipse, mē auxiliō tibi mīsīt. Dā mihi urnam.” Haec locūta urnam sūmpsīt atque super serpentēs volāvit. Urnam aquā complētam quam celerrimē puellae reddidit nē ūnam quidem stīllam āmittēns. Urnam aquae plēnam acceptam Psychē ad Venerem reportāvit.

## 59

## PARTICIPLES

A participle is a verbal adjective. As a verb, a participle has voice and tense, may be modified by an adverb, and may govern an object in the same case as the verb of which it is a part. As an adjective, a participle is declined, and agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun or pronoun which it modifies.

### FORMATION

(a)	PRES. PART. ACT.		PRES. PART. ACT.
portō	portāns ( <i>gen. portantis</i> )	capiō	capiēns ( <i>gen. capientis</i> )
moveō	movēns ( <i>gen. moventis</i> )	audiō	audiēns ( <i>gen. audientis</i> )
dūcō	dūcēns ( <i>gen. dūcentis</i> )	eō	iēns ( <i>gen. euntis</i> )

The present participle active of a regular Latin verb is formed by adding **-ns** to the present stem (or modified present stem). For declension of present participle see App. 311.



(b)	SUPINE	SUPINE STEM	PERF. PART. PASS.
	portātum	portāt-	portātus
	mōtum	mōt-	mōtus

The perfect participle passive is formed by adding **-us** to the supine stem. It is declined like **altus, alta, altum**.

(c)	SUPINE	SUPINE STEM	FUT. PART. ACT.
	captum	capt-	captūrus
	audītum	audīt-	audītūrus
	itum (from eō)	it-	itūrus

The future participle active is formed by adding **-ūrus** to the supine stem and is declined like **altus, alta, altum**. The future participle of **sum** is **futūrus**.

#### PARTICIPLES OF DEONENTS

PRESENT	PERFECT	FUTURE
cōnāns	cōnātus	cōnātūrus
verēns	veritus	veritūrus
sequēns	secūtus	secūtūrus
prōgrediēns	prōgressus	prōgressūrus
partiēns	partītus	partītūrus

(a) The present participle active of a deponent verb is formed in the same way as the present participle active of a regular verb of the same conjugation.

(b) The perfect participle is found in the third principal part.

(c) The future participle active has the same stem as the perfect participle plus the ending **-ūrus**. Exceptions: the perfect participle of **morior, die**, is **mortuus**; but the future participle active is **moritūrus**. The perfect participle of **orior, rise**, is **ortus** but the future participle active is **oritūrus**.

#### TIME DENOTED BY PARTICIPLES

(a) Trānsire	{ vidētur.		{ he is seen.
cōnāns	{ vīsus est.	While trying to cross	{ he was seen.
	{ vidēbitur.		{ he will be seen.
Eum	{ audiunt	They are listening to him	{ shouting.
clāmantem	{ audīvērunt	They listened to him	
	{ audient	They will listen to him	

The present participle active denotes the same time as that of the main verb.

- (b) **Cupīdō vulnerātus domō profectus est.**

After being injured, Cupid set out from home.

**Diū morāta Psȳchē profecta est.**

After delaying for a long time, Psyche set out.

**Formīcae convocātae initium operis fēcērunt.**

After being summoned, the ants began the task.

**Formīca cēterās hortāta initium operis fēcīt.**

After encouraging the others, the ant began the task.

The perfect participle denotes time prior to that of the main verb. The perfect participle of a regular verb has a passive meaning. The perfect participle of a deponent has an active meaning.

- (c) (i) *Present*      **portātūrus sum**

I am going to carry, am about to carry,  
intend to carry, am likely to carry, am on  
the point of carrying

- Imperfect*      **portātūrus eram**

I was going to carry, was about to carry, etc.

The future participle active combined with forms of **sum** denotes intention, impending action, or that which is about to happen (*Active Periphrastic*).

- (ii) **Aquila ad fontem advolāvit, urnam complētūra.**

The eagle flew to the spring to fill the pitcher.

**Psȳchē ad rīpam vēnit, in flūmine peritūra.**

Psyche came to the bank, intending to die  
in the river.

The future participle active may be used without a form of **sum** to denote intention or purpose, usually after a verb of motion.

#### EQUIVALENTS OF PARTICIPLES

The participle may be used:

- (a) as a noun: **fugientēs**, *the fugitives*; **victī**, *the vanquished*.

(b) as a relative clause: **Miles vulnerātus pugnāre nōn poterat.** *The soldier who had been wounded was unable to fight.*

(c) with the value of an English relative clause with its antecedent: **Turrim oppugnantēs sunt fortēs.** *Those who are attacking the tower are brave men.*



*From the drawing by Alan Sorrell. Ministry of Works 5. Crown copyright*

Lullingstone Roman Villa, Kent. A reconstruction showing the artist's concept of the villa as it might have appeared c. 350 A.D.

(d) as a subordinate adverbial clause expressing:

- (i) Time: **Servus captus poenās dedit.**  
When he had been caught, the slave was punished.
- (ii) Cause: **Timentēs nōn mittentur.**  
Since they are afraid, they will not be sent.
- (iii) Condition: **Dux dēlēctus nōs Rōmam dūcet.**  
If he is chosen leader, he will lead us to Rome.
- (iv) Concession: **Pulsus superātusque rēgnābat.**  
Although he had been defeated and conquered, he continued to reign.

(e) sometimes as an English principal clause.

**Corinthō profectus Brundisium nāvigāvit.**  
He set out from Corinth and sailed to Brundisium.

A noun (or pronoun) in the ablative case, with a participle, an adjective, or a predicate noun in the same case, may form a phrase grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence, and express some idea of time, cause, condition, or concession connected with the main idea.

- (a) **Urnā complētā aquila āvolāvit.**

After the pitcher had been filled, the eagle flew away.

Noun + perfect participle passive

- (b) **Puellā morātā Venus erat irāta.**

Since the girl had delayed, Venus was angry.

Noun + perfect participle of deponent verb

- (c) **Deā dicente omnēs tacēbant.**

While the goddess was speaking, all were silent.

Noun + present participle active

- (d) **Deā invītā Psȳchē marītum nōn vidēbit.**

If the goddess is unwilling, Psyche will not see her husband.

Noun + adjective

- (e) **Cupīdine marītō Psȳchē nōn erat laeta.**

Although Cupid was her husband, Psyche was not happy.

Noun + noun

A. *Translate:*

1. Puella locūta abiit; puella lacrimāns abiit.
2. Puellam loquentem audīvit; puellam ibi sedentem vīdit.
3. Psȳchē profecta est urnam complētūra; Psȳchē locūtūra surrēxit.
4. Eī vīsō haec dīximus; eī redeuntī haec dīximus.
5. Aquila urnam complētūra est; Psȳchē ad Venerem urnam portātūra est.
6. Psȳchē ovēs verēns prope nemus sedēbat; Psȳchē aquilam volantem vīdit.
7. Urnam aquā gelidā complētā reddidit; Psȳchē avem volantem verita est.
8. Urna aquā complēta ā Psȳchē sūmpta est; aquila urnam sūmptam complēvit.



B. *Fill in the blanks:*

1. Psȳchē Cupīdinem \_\_\_\_ (*who was leaving*) vīdit.
2. Venus Psȳchēn \_\_\_\_ (*fearing*) erat invidiōsa.
3. Avis Iovis urnam \_\_\_\_ (*filled*) reddidit.
4. Scīsne nōmen puellae ā Cupīdine \_\_\_\_ (*who has been abandoned*)?
5. Avis \_\_\_\_ (*that had been sent*) ā Iove āvolāvit.
6. Psȳchē serpentēs \_\_\_\_ (*since she had feared*) surrēxit.
7. Urnam aquā \_\_\_\_ (*he filled and*) reddidit.
8. Aquam in urnā \_\_\_\_ (*filled*) reportāvit.
9. Urnam puellae serpentēs \_\_\_\_ (*fearing*) dedit.
10. Aquila vēnit urnam aquā \_\_\_\_ (*to fill*).

C. *Translate:*

1. Serpentibus vīsīs, Psȳchē erat miserrima.
2. Hīs verbīs dictīs, Psȳchē nōn diūtius erat misera.
3. Aquilā cōspectā, puella ā saxō ingentī surrēxit.
4. Psȳchē opus suscipere iussā, Venus ad rēgiam abiit.

D. *Change the dependent clause to an ablative absolute:*

1. Postquam serpentēs vīsī sunt, Psȳchē in saxō ingentī sedēbat.
2. Ubi haec verba dicta sunt, Iuppiter avem mīsīt.
3. Cum prīmum aquilam cōspēxit, Psȳchē spērāre coepit.
4. Quamquam Psȳchē tertium opus suscipere iussa erat, Venus nōn erat contenta.
5. Sī aquila urnam reddiderit, Psȳchē laeta erit.

E. *Translate:*

1. Urnam gelidā aquā complētam reportāvit.
2. Ferōcēs serpentēs fontem custōdientēs puellam terruērunt.
3. Haec locūtus mercātor in manūs aurum missum sūmpsīt.
4. In Galliā antīquā virī in uxōrēs atque in liberōs vītae necisque (*of death*) potestātem habēbant.
5. Rōmulō rēgnante trēs cīvitatēs finitimae falsīs rūmōribus territae sunt.
6. Illae legiōnēs prope flūmen castra posuērunt in montēs iter factūrae.

F. *Translate:*

1. Although many black clouds (*nūbēs, -is, f.*) had been seen in the sky, our troops continued to advance.
2. Having said this, the eagle flew swiftly over the top of the mountain to

the river. 3. After completing these two most difficult tasks, Psyche returned to the palace. 4. Although the urn was filled with water, Psyche spilled (*āmittō*) not even one drop. 5. As soon as Psyche, seated on a huge stone, saw the serpents, she wept. 6. Psyche arose and carried the urn filled with water to Venus.

## 62

## VOCABULARY

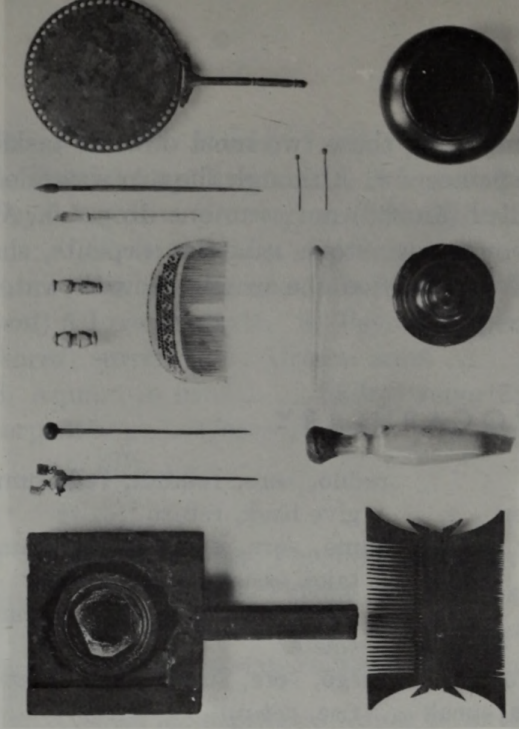
<i>aquila</i> , -ae, f., eagle	<i>reddō</i> , -ere, reddidī, redditum, give back, return
<i>unda</i> , -ae, f., wave; water	<i>sūmō</i> , -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, take, assume; spend, use
<i>urna</i> , -ae, f., jar, pitcher	<i>cōnsūmō</i> , consume, devour; waste
<i>vīta</i> , -ae, f., life	<i>surgō</i> , -ere, surrēxī, surrēctum, rise, get up
<i>avis</i> , avis, f., bird	<i>at</i> , <i>adversative conj.</i> , but
<i>āter</i> , <i>ātra</i> , <i>ātrum</i> , black, dark	<i>nē</i> . . . <i>quidem</i> , <i>adv.</i> , not even
<i>gelidus</i> , -a, -um, icy, cold	
<i>loquor</i> , <i>loquī</i> , <i>locūtus sum</i> , speak	
<i>colloquor</i> , <i>usually with cum</i> +	
<i>abl. or inter sē</i> , converse	
<i>proficīscor</i> , <i>proficīscī</i> , <i>profectus</i>	
<i>sum</i> , set out	

## 63

## WORD STUDY

The adjective suffix *-idus* means *having the quality of*. For example, the adjective *gelidus* means *having the quality of frost* or *icy cold* from *gelū* (*gelūs*), *frost*. Although this adjective and some others such as *lūcidus*, from *lūx*, are formed on the base of a noun, adjectives ending in *-idus* are most often formed on verb stems. For example, from *ferveō*, *boil*, *glow*, we get *fervidus*, *having the quality of boiling, glowing*. Adjectives ending in *-idus* give us English adjectives ending in *-id*: *gelid*, *fervid*.

Form Latin adjectives on the stem of each of the following verbs: *flōreō*, *fluō*, *placeō*, *rapiō*, *timeō*. Give the English adjective that is the direct derivative of each of the adjectives you have formed. Check in both Latin and English dictionaries to determine whether there has been any change of meaning in the process of derivation.



*Roman pins, combs,  
mirrors and perfume  
bottle, first to  
fourth century A.D.*

8

## Infinitives Indirect Statement

Dulce et decōrum est prō patriā morī.  
Mors et fugācem persequitur virum,  
nec parcit imbellis iuventae  
poplitibus timidōve tergō.

*It is a sweet and fitting thing to die for one's country.  
Death catches up even (et) with the man who runs away,  
and it does not spare the knees of the faint-hearted youth  
nor his fearful back.*

HORACE: ODES 3.2.12-16

64

### Cupīdō et Psȳchē (Part 8)

Nec tamen Venus contenta erat. "Vidēsne," puellae inquit,  
"hanc pyxidem (pyxis, pyxidis, box)? Portā eam ad rēgnū  
Plūtōnis et dā rēgīnae Prōserpinae. Cui dīc 'Venus spērat tē  
sibi datūram esse parvam partem pulchritūdinis tuae: nam

suam pulchritudinem, dum filium cūrat aegrum, cōsūmpsit 5  
neque usquam pulchritudinem emere potest.' ”

Puellam hoc facere erat difficillimum, nam periculōsissima  
omnium orbis terrae viarum est ea via quāe ad Orcum dūcit.

Psychē, perterrita quod intellēxit sē ā deā ad mortem dūcī,  
altam turrim quaesivit dē quā dēsilire cōstituerat. Sed tur- 10  
ris puellam hortāta est: “Cūr, puella misera, tē interficere  
cōnāris? Tibi parce, mē audī. Est via tūta quam tibi mōn-  
strābō. Tē dūcam ad spēluncam (*cave*) abditam quae est  
iānuā Orcī. Mox ad flūmen Stygem<sup>1</sup> veniēs, ubi inveniēs  
Charontem<sup>2</sup> quī tē trāns flūctūs suō nāvigiō trānsportābit. Cer- 15  
berus,<sup>3</sup> canis horribilī speciē, tē prōgredi prohibēre cōnābitur;  
cui iace hanc offam sopōriferam (*sleep-bringing cake*).”

Ubi ad rēgiam Plūtōnis Psychē vēnit, rēgīna Prōserpina,  
verbīs Veneris audītis, pyxidem accēpit, quam mox puellae  
reddidit. Illa laeta eādē viā quā dēscenderat ab Orcō rediit. 20

Antequam autem ad rēgiam Veneris accessit, “Est dūrum,”  
inquit, “Venerem obtinēre tōtam hanc pulchritudinem. Stulta  
sum nisi parvam partem mihi capiō.”

Haec locūta pyxidē aperuit. Nec quidquam (*But nothing*)  
ibi nec pulchritūdō ūlla sed somnus gravis erat. In viā ipsā 25  
Psychē iacēbat immōbilis et dormiēns.

Sed Cupīdō vulnere iam sānātō (*healed*) per altissimam  
fenestram (*window*) volāvit et ad locum ubi Psychē dormiēbat  
pervēnit. Sagittā innoxia (*harmless*) Psychē excitāvit et  
“Ecce,” inquit, “perierās (*you would have perished*) ob cūriō- 30  
sitātem (*inquisitiveness*). Sed interim portā pyxidē ad  
mātrē meam; cētera ego cūrābō.”

Hīs rēbus dictīs Cupīdō ad Olympum volāvit. Magnus  
Iuppiter causam Cupīdinis probat. Iubet Mercurium, nūti-  
um deōrum, Psychē in caelum dūcere. Puellae Iuppiter 35  
nectar dedit. “Bibe (*drink*),” inquit, “Psychē, et immortālis  
es. Nūptiae (*marriage*) vōbīs, Psychē et Cupīdō, erunt  
perpetuae.”

<sup>1</sup>Styx, Stygis, f., the river of Orcus by which the gods swore

<sup>2</sup>Charon, Charontis, m., the ferryman of the dead

<sup>3</sup>Cerberus, -ī, m., a three-headed dog who guarded the entrance of Orcus





Earthenware storage jars, probably for corn, oil, or wine, uncovered by archaeological excavation at the Palace of Knossos, Crete.

65

## INFINITIVES

A regular transitive verb has six infinitives, three in the active voice and three in the passive.

ACTIVE					
<i>Present</i>	portāre	movēre	dūcere	capere	audire
<i>Perfect</i>	portāvisse	mōvisse	dūxisse	cēpisse	audīvisse
<i>Future</i>	portātūrus	mōtūrus	ductūrus	captūrus	audītūrus
	esse	esse	esse	esse	esse
PASSIVE					
<i>Present</i>	portārī	movērī	dūcī	capī	audīrī
<i>Perfect</i>	portātus	mōtus	ductus	captus	audītus
	esse	esse	esse	esse	esse
<i>Future</i>	portātum	mōtum	ductum	captum	audītum
	īrī	īrī	īrī	īrī	īrī

### ACTIVE

The present infinitive is the second principal part: **portāre, dūcere.**

The perfect infinitive is the perfect stem + **-isse**: **portāvisse.**

The future infinitive is the future participle and **esse**: **portātūrus esse.**

# PASSIVE

The present infinitive is formed by changing final *-e* of the present infinitive active to *-ī*: **portārī**. In the third conjugation, final *-ere* becomes *-ī*: **dūcī, capī**.

The perfect infinitive is the perfect participle passive and **esse**: **portātus esse**.

The future infinitive is the supine and **īrī**: **portātum īrī**.

cōnārī	cōnātus esse	cōnātūrus esse
verērī	veritus esse	veritūrus esse
sequī	secūtus esse	secūtūrus esse
prōgredī	prōgressus esse	prōgressūrus esse
partīrī	partītus esse	partītūrus esse

A deponent verb has three infinitives, all active in meaning: the present infinitive, the second principal part of the verb; the perfect infinitive, the perfect participle and **esse**; the future infinitive, the future participle and **esse**.

Infinitives of *morior*, *die*, are **morī, mortuus esse, moritūrus esse**; of *orior*, *rise*, **orīrī, ortus esse, oritūrus esse**.

The infinitives of *sum*, *possum*, and *trānseō*:

			ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Present</i>	<b>esse</b>	<b>posse</b>	<b>trānsīre</b>	<b>trānsīrī</b>
<i>Perfect</i>	<b>fuisse</b>	<b>potuisse</b>	<b>trānsiisse</b>	<b>trānsitus esse</b>
<i>Future</i>	<b>futūrus esse</b>		<b>trānsitūrus</b>	<b>trānsitum</b>
	<b>or fore</b>		<b>esse</b>	<b>īrī</b>

## INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT

**Bonum est labōrāre.**

To work is good. It is good to work.

**Psȳchēn pūnīre erat inīquum.**

To punish Psyche was unjust. It was unjust to punish Psyche.

**Deam puellam pūnīre nōn erat aequum.**

For the goddess to punish the girl was not right.

It was not right for the goddess to punish the girl.

The infinitive (**labōrāre, pūnīre**) may be used as the subject of a form of **sum**. The infinitive as a subject is regarded as a neuter noun and is modified by a neuter adjective (**bonum**,

**inīquum, aequum**). The subject of the infinitive, if separately expressed (**deam**), is in the accusative. Latin has no separate word for the representative subject *it* or for the preposition *for*, which often introduces the subject in English.

**Puella surgere parat.**

The girl is getting ready to get up.

**Psȳchēn ad inferōs mittere cōstituerat.**

She had decided to send Psyche to the lower world.

**Puellam pyxidem reddere iussit.**

She has ordered the girl to return the box.

**Ancillās puellam pūnīre rēgīna coēgit.**

The queen compelled the maids to punish the girl.

**Psȳchēn maritum vidēre prohibet.**

She is preventing Psyche from seeing her husband.

The infinitive may be used as the object of a verb. Compare **Bellum parat**, *He is preparing for war* and **Pugnāre parat**, *He is preparing to fight*.

The infinitive with or without a subject may be used as the direct object of a verb. In the first two examples above, the infinitive has the same subject (though not expressed) as the principal verb. In the other examples, the subject of the infinitive is different from the subject of the principal verb; the subject of the infinitive (**Puellam**, **Ancillās**, **Psȳchēn**) is in the accusative case.

**Pyxidem reddere dēbet.** She ought to give the box back.

**Maritum invenīre nōn poterat.** She could not find her husband.

Certain verbs do not, by themselves, express a complete thought: **dēbeō**, *I ought*; **possum**, *I am able*. When these verbs are used with an infinitive the thought is complete. These verbs are called modal verbs and the infinitive is a complementary infinitive. The complementary infinitive completes the meaning of a modal verb in the same way that an

objective infinitive completes the meaning of a transitive verb. The following verbs commonly take either an objective infinitive or a complementary infinitive.

audeō	audēre	ausus sum		dare, venture
cōgō	cōgere	coēgī	coāctum	compel, force
cōnor	cōnārī	cōnātus sum		try, attempt
cōstituō	cōstituere	cōstitui	cōstitūtum	decide, determine
cupiō	cupere	cupivī	cupitum	wish, desire
dēbeō	dēbere	dēbuī	dēbitum	ought
dubitō	dubitāre	dubitāvī	dubitātum	hesitate
iubeō	iubere	iussī	iussum	order
parō	parāre	parāvī	parātum	prepare
possum	posse	potuī		can, be able
prohibeō	prohibere	prohibuī	prohibitum	prevent
properō	properāre	properāvī	properātum	hasten
sciō	scire	scivī	scitum	know how
soleō	solere	solitus sum		be accustomed
timeō	timere	timuī		fear <sup>1</sup>
vereor	vereri	veritus sum		fear <sup>1</sup>
vetō	vetare	vetuī	vetitum	forbid

(a) An indirect statement differs from a direct statement in that it does not give the exact words of the speaker.

Compare these direct and indirect statements in English.

DIRECT	INDIRECT
The boy says, "The man is coming."	The boy says [that the man is coming].
The man says, "I am free."	The man says [that he is free].

Indirect statements follow verbs of saying, knowing, thinking, perceiving, etc.

(b) An indirect statement in English usually takes the form of a subordinate noun clause beginning with *that* and having its verb in the indicative mood: I know [that he is a good man].

<sup>1</sup>When *timeō* and *vereor* mean fear that something is or is not the case, they are used with a subjunctive clause, Lesson 17.



In Latin the verb of an indirect statement is in the infinitive mood with its subject in the accusative case:

The boy says [that the man is coming]. **Puer dīcit [virum venīre].**  
 The man says [that he is free]. **Vir dīcit [sē esse līberum].**

DIRECT STATEMENT	INDIRECT STATEMENT	LATIN
The birds are flying away. <b>Avēs āvolant.</b>	He says that the birds are flying away.	<b>Dīcit avēs āvolāre.</b>
	He said that the birds were flying away.	<b>Dīxit avēs āvolāre.</b>
The birds flew away. <b>Avēs āvolāvērunt.</b>	He says that the birds flew away.	<b>Dīcit avēs āvolāvisse.</b>
	He said that the birds had flown away.	<b>Dīxit avēs āvolāvisse.</b>
The birds will fly away. <b>Avēs āvolābunt.</b>	He says that the birds will fly away.	<b>Dīcit avēs āvolātūrās esse.</b>
	He said that the birds would fly away.	<b>Dīxit avēs āvolātūrās esse.</b>

The tense of the infinitive in an indirect statement may be determined by reference to the direct words of the speaker. The present tense of the infinitive stands for a present tense of the direct statement; the perfect tense of the infinitive, for a past tense of the direct statement; a future tense of the infinitive, for a future tense of the direct statement.

**Nūntiat oppida incēnsa esse.**

He reports that the towns have been burned.

**Audit nūntiōs ventūrōs esse.**

He hears that the messengers will come.

**Dīcit nymphās puellam hortātās esse.**

He says that the nymphs encouraged the girl.

**Cognōvit eam morātūram esse.**

He knows that she will remain.

In infinitives composed of a participle and *esse* (*portātus esse, portātūrus esse, cōnātus esse, cōnātūrus esse*), the participle in the infinitive agrees with the subject of the infinitive in case, number and gender.

**Puella dicit se fore bonam.**

The girl says that she will be good.

The future infinitive **fore** remains unchanged.

**Dico villam emptum iri.**

I say that the farmhouse will be bought.

In the future infinitive passive the supine remains unchanged.

**spero, sperare, speravi, speratum, hope**  
**polliceor, polliceri, pollicitus sum, promise**  
**promitto, promittere, promisi, promissum, promise**  
**iuro, iurare, iuravi, iuratum, swear**

**Spero me Romam venturum esse.**

I hope to come to Rome. I hope that I shall come to Rome.

**Promittis te haec facturum esse.**

You promise to do this. You promise that you will do this.

**Regina iurat se hostibus parsuram esse.**

The queen swears to spare the enemy. The queen swears that she will spare the enemy.

In Latin, verbs of hoping, promising, and swearing take the accusative of the pronoun and the future infinitive.

**Nego [dominum venire].** I say [that the master is NOT coming].

**Negavit [se hoc umquam facere].** He said [that he NEVER did this].

The verb **negō, negāre, negāvī, negātum, deny, say . . . not**, is regularly used instead of **dico** followed by a negative in the indirect statement.

## 70

## EXERCISES

### A. Translate:

1. Putō puellam urnam reddere, reddidisse, reddituram esse.
2. Putāvī puellam urnam reddere, reddidisse, reddituram esse.
3. Dico Psychēn pyxidem aperire, aperuisse, aperturam esse.
4. Dixi Psychēn pyxidem aperire, aperuisse, aperturam esse.
5. Dico pyxidem a Psychē aperiri, apertam esse, apertum iri.
6. Dixi pyxidem a Psychē aperiri, apertam esse, apertum iri.
7. Scio pueros progredi, progressos esse, progressuros esse.
8. Scivi pueros progredi, progressos esse, progressuros esse.
9. Nego te mihi dona dare, dedisse, daturum esse.
10. Negavi te mihi dona dare, dedisse, daturum esse.



Air view of Caerwent, a city built by the Romans in Monmouthshire near the Welsh border.

11. Spērant Psŷchēn pulchritūdinem captūram esse.
12. Spērant Psŷchēn pyxidem ad Venerem portātūram esse.
13. Spērant Psŷchēn marītō suō placitūram esse.
14. Polliceor tibi mē amīcum tuum fore.
15. Polliceor tibi eās dōna ēmptūrās esse.

B. *Fill in the blanks:*

1. Intellegō eōs \_\_\_\_ (*are advancing*), \_\_\_\_ (*have advanced*), \_\_\_\_ (*will advance*).
2. Intellēxī eōs \_\_\_\_ (*were advancing*), \_\_\_\_ (*had advanced*), \_\_\_\_ (*would advance*).
3. Putant canēs \_\_\_\_ (*are approaching*), \_\_\_\_ (*have approached*), \_\_\_\_ (*will approach*).
4. Putāvērunt canēs \_\_\_\_ (*were approaching*), \_\_\_\_ (*had approached*), \_\_\_\_ (*would approach*).
5. Psŷchē scit offam \_\_\_\_ (*is being thrown*), \_\_\_\_ (*has been thrown*).
6. Psŷchē scīvit offam \_\_\_\_ (*was being thrown*), \_\_\_\_ (*had been thrown*).

7. Negat puellam \_\_\_\_ (*is hiding*), \_\_\_\_ (*has hidden*), \_\_\_\_ (*will hide*).
8. Negāvit puellam \_\_\_\_ (*was hiding*), \_\_\_\_ (*had hidden*), \_\_\_\_ (*would hide*).
9. Spērāvit Psȳchēn pyxidem \_\_\_\_ (*would open*), Psȳchēn sibi \_\_\_\_ (*would spare*), Psȳchēn \_\_\_\_ (*would advance*).
10. Pollicētur sē ad rēginam pyxidem \_\_\_\_ (*will carry*), sē ad rēgiam \_\_\_\_ (*will proceed*).

C. Write the following indirect statements in the direct statement form: e.g., **Dīcit nūntium vēnisse** becomes **Nūntius vēnit**.

1. Dīcit puellam sēdisse. 2. Dīxit puellam sēdisse. 3. Dīcit puellam sedēre. 4. Dīxit pyxidem portārī. 5. Dīcit pyxidem portātātam esse. 6. Dīxit sē venīre. 7. Dīcit sē vēnisse. 8. Dīcit sē ventūrum esse.

D. Write the following sentences depending first on **Dea dīcit**, then on **Dea dīxit**: e.g., Cupīdō est aeger. Dea dīcit Cupīdinem esse aegrum. Dea dīxit Cupīdinem esse aegrum.

1. Psȳchē est pulchra. 2. Psȳchē erat pulchra. 3. Psȳchē pyxidem aperiet. 4. Urna portātur. 5. Urna portāta est. 6. Urna portābitur. 7. Fīlium cūrāvī. 8. Fīlium cūrābō. 9. Pyxidem cupiō. 10. Pyxidem recēpī.

E. Translate:

1. Cupīdō vīdit Psȳchēn in viā iacēre. 2. Portāre pyxidem ab īferīs erat difficillimum. 3. Psȳchē pyxidem aperīre nōn dēbet. 4. Psȳchē ad īferōs prōgredī parāvit. 5. Exīstimat Prōserpinam sibi partem pulchritūdinis datūram esse. 6. Puella in īferōs inīre dubitāvit. 7. Turris Psȳchēn sē interficere prohibuit.

F. Write in Latin:

1. Venus said that the way would not be too difficult. 2. Psyche wished to carry the urn full of cold water. 3. For the sick girl to throw herself from the tower was very foolish. 4. It was unjust for Venus to send Psyche to the underworld. 5. We hesitate to cause (**efficere**) a secession from our native land. 6. He did not know that you had promised to try to persuade them.



iānua, -ae, <i>f.</i> , entrance, door	iaceō, -ēre, iacuī, lie, lie down
canis, canis, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i> , dog	emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptum, buy
orbis, orbis, <i>m.</i> , ring, circle	iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactum, throw
orbis terrae or terrārum, the world	intellegō, -ere, intellēxī, intellēctum, understand, be aware
turris, turris, <i>f.</i> ( <i>acc. sing.</i> , turrim; <i>abl. sing.</i> , turri), tower	parcō, -ere, pepercī (parsī), parsum, <i>with dat.</i> , spare
speciēs, speciēī, <i>f.</i> , sight, appearance	aperiō, -ire, aperuī, apertum, open
aeger, aegra, aegrum, sick, ill	quid, <i>interrog. adv.</i> , why
dūrus, -a, -um, hard, harsh	usquam, <i>adv.</i> , anywhere
stultus, -a, -um, foolish	nusquam, nowhere
tūtus, -a, -um, protected, safe	

The present stem **cēde-** and the supine stem **cess-** appear in many Latin words and in their English derivatives.

VERB	NOUN	VERB	NOUN
accēdō, go to, approach	accessiō	accede	accession
cēdō, go away, yield	cessiō	cede	cession
concedō, yield, grant	concessiō	concede	concession
dēcēdō, depart, die	dēcessiō	decease	
discēdō, go apart, withdraw	discessiō		
	discessus		
excēdō, go out, retire	excessus	exceed	excess
intercēdō, go between	intercessiō	intercede	intercession
praecedō, go before, surpass		precede	
prōcēdō, go forward, advance	prōcessiō	proceed	procession
recēdō, go back, retire	recessus	recede	recess
sēcēdō, go apart, revolt	sēcessiō	secede	secession

The English verb and noun *decease* take their meaning from the phrase **dē vitā dēcēssit**, *he departed from life*.



*Mosaic portraying  
comic scene, Pompeii,  
Italy*

# 9

## The Subjunctive Mood Present Subjunctive Hortatory and Jussive Subjunctive

Vivāmus, mea Lesbia, atque amēmus  
rūmōrēsque senum sevēriōrum  
omnēs ūnius aestimēmus assis.

*Let us live, my Lesbia, and let us love  
and let us value all the gossip of  
staid old men  
at just one penny's worth.*

CATULLUS: 5.1-3

Lūciō Minuciō et Gaiō Nautiō cōsulibus (458 B.C.) Aequi,<sup>1</sup> ruptō foedere, in agrōs sociōrum populī Rōmānī veniunt plēnīque praedae in Algidō<sup>2</sup> castra pōnunt. Lēgātī Rōmānī in ea castra vēnērunt, in animō habentēs iniūriās Aequōrum querī.  
 5 Imperātor Aequōrum, quī sub quercū (*oak*) ingentī forte sedēbat, eōs quercū iubet querī. Dixit sē ipsum in aliīs rēbus fore occupātum.

“Nē hīc maneāmus,” inquit ūnus ē lēgātīs. “Ad urbem statim reversī, senātōrēs certiōrēs faciāmus Aequōs in fīnēs  
 10 sociōrum vēnisse, agrōs vāstāre, mox ad ipsās portās Rōmae futūrōs esse. Liberī cārī nostrī uxōrēsque magnō in periculō sunt. Nē dubitēmus virtūte nīti ac vī et armīs hostibus resistere.”

Rōmam ubi rediērunt lēgātī, senātōrēs inter sē collocūtī sunt.  
 15 “Alter cōsul,” inquiunt, “sociōs iuvet et contrā Aequōs in Algidum exercitum dūcat, alter fīnēs Aequōrum vāstet.” Senātū probante cōsulēs profectī sunt.

Ea quae iusserat senātus facere nōn poterant, novus enim subitō ortus terror est. Exercitus Sabīnōrum ingēns prope ad  
 20 mūrōs Rōmae venit; agricola ad portam currit; cīvēs certiōrēs dē adventū hostium facit; timor iniectus urbī est.

Itaque Rōmae magnī duo exercitūs cōscriptī sunt. Alterum Nautius contrā Sabīnōs dūxit, castrisque positīs, per expeditiōnēs (*raiding parties*) parvās agrum Sabīnum longē  
 25 lātēque vāstābat. Minuciō neque fortūna nec vīs animī eadem fuit; nam, postquam haud procul ab hostibus castra posuit, nūllō proeliō factō, castrīs<sup>3</sup> sē pavidus (*timidly*) tenēbat. Quod ubi sēnsērunt hostēs, nocte frūstrā adortī castra, mūnitiōnēs posterō diē circumveniunt. Quīnque equitēs, quī ex castrīs  
 30 fugere potuerant, nūntiāvērunt cōsulem exercitumque obsidērī.

<sup>1</sup>The Aequi lived in Central Italy, northeast of Latium and south of the Sabines.

<sup>2</sup>Mount Algidus is in Latium, about twenty miles southeast of Rome.

<sup>3</sup>Prepositions are frequently omitted in military expressions.

The indicative mood in Latin is used almost without exception to express statements of fact. The subjunctive mood is used to express a variety of other thoughts and attitudes of mind: wishes, requests, suppositions, and the like.

The subjunctive mood is used in independent sentences and in the principal clauses of compound or complex sentences to express varieties of meaning that are different from the statement of fact; it is used sometimes in subordinate (or dependent) clauses to express the same varieties of meaning as it expresses in principal clauses, and also, very frequently, to show that a statement or question is quoted, or to indicate some purpose, result, condition, or concession connected with the thought of the principal clause.

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD -iō	4TH CONJ.
portem	moveam	dūcam	capiam	audiam
portēs	moveās	dūcās	capiās	audiās
portet	moveat	dūcat	capiat	audiat
portēmus	moveāmus	dūcāmus	capiāmus	audiāmus
portētis	moveātis	dūcātis	capiātis	audiātis
portent	moveant	dūcant	capiant	audiant

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD -iō	4TH CONJ.
porter	movear	dūcar	capiar	audiar
portēris	moveāris	dūcāris	capiāris	audiāris
portētur	moveātur	dūcātur	capiātur	audiātur
portēmur	moveāmur	dūcāmur	capiāmur	audiāmur
portēmini	moveāmini	dūcāmini	capiāmini	audiāmini
portentur	moveantur	dūcantur	capiantur	audiantur



## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF DEPONENTS

1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD <i>-ior</i>	4TH CONJ.
cōner	verear	sequar	prōgrediar	partiar
cōnēris	vereāris	sequāris	prōgrediāris	partiāris
cōnētur	vereātur	sequātur	prōgrediātur	partiātur
cōnēmur	vereāmur	sequāmur	prōgrediāmur	partiāmur
cōnēmini	vereāmini	sequāmini	prōgrediāmini	partiāmini
cōnentur	vereantur	sequantur	prōgrediantur	partiantur

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF SEMI-DEPONENTS

audeam	cōnfidam
audeās	cōnfidās
audeat	cōnfidat
audeāmus	cōnfidāmus
audeātis	cōnfidātis
audeant	cōnfidant

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF SUM

sim	sīmus
sīs	sītis
sit	sint

In the tables above, first notice the uniform vowel systems connecting the personal endings to the stems; the same vowel or vowels serve throughout the tense.

Next, compare the forms of the subjunctive of deponent verbs with those of the subjunctive passive of non-deponent verbs; compare and contrast the forms of the present subjunctive with those of the future indicative active and passive of the third and fourth conjugations.

Notice finally that no meanings are assigned for the forms of the subjunctive; there are no uniformly applicable meanings that can be given, but in the following lessons you will learn the uses of the subjunctive, and from the examples you will find suitable English translations for the different uses.

**Hic maneāmus.**

Let us remain here.

**Nē hic maneāmus.**

Let us not remain here.

When one person urges others of his own group and includes himself, the first person plural present subjunctive is used. The negative is **nē**.

**Hic maneat.**

Let him remain here.

**Mārcus hic maneat.**

Let Marcus remain here.

**Titus et Mārcus hic maneant.**

Let Titus and Marcus remain here.

**Nē Iūlia et Cornēlia maneant.**

Let not (Don't let) Julia and Cornelia remain.

The present subjunctive in the third person singular and plural is used to express a command. The subject of the verb is in the nominative. The negative is **nē**.

A. Give the corresponding forms of the present subjunctive for the following indicative forms:

- |               |                |               |                 |
|---------------|----------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. comparāmus | 6. morātur     | 11. adior     | 16. curris      |
| 2. videntur   | 7. verēris     | 12. probantur | 17. abdimus     |
| 3. ēripit     | 8. vagāmur     | 13. est       | 18. prōgreditur |
| 4. neglegitis | 9. proficīscor | 14. querimur  | 19. sunt        |
| 5. impediunt  | 10. dolētis    | 15. obsidēs   | 20. iaciō       |

B. Translate:

- |                            |                         |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Hoc cōnsilium probētur. | 5. Nē pecūniam āmittat. |
| 2. Nē foedus rumpant.      | 6. Eīs cōnfidāmus.      |
| 3. Hic sedeāmus.           | 7. Nē querantur.        |
| 4. Ad fontem currāmus.     | 8. Eō prōgrediantur.    |

C. Write in Latin:

1. Let the citizens advance. 2. Let us not despair. 3. Let him not grieve. 4. Let them be enrolled. 5. Let us attack the camp. 6. Let the comrades return. 7. Let us open the

- door. 8. Let the birds fly. 9. Let us not approve the treaty.  
10. Let us fear the state.

D. *Translate:*

1. Nē Aequī foedus rumpant.
2. In vallem cum reliquīs puerīs currat.
3. Sine timōre in agrōs sociōrum populī Rōmānī veniāmus.
4. Senātōrēs lēgātōs ad castra Aequōrum mittant.
5. Nē sint magnō in periculō liberī cārī uxōrēque.
6. Alter cōsul cum maiōribus cōpiīs iuvet sociōs.
7. Alter cōsul cōsiliū alterius probet.
8. Senātōrēs probent cōsiliū cōsulis alterius.

E. *Write in Latin:*

1. Let the consuls do what the senate has ordered.
2. Let him not announce that the army has been surrounded.
3. Let us attack the camp of the Sabines by the light of the moon.
4. Let us keep silent, for we are not far from the enemy.
5. Let us not, because of fear, hesitate to fight a battle.
6. Let the farmer run to the gate and announce that the Sabines are drawing near.
7. After he had pitched camp across the valley, he was able to lay waste the Sabine country far and wide.
8. Let the Aequi not break the treaty; if they do break it (*abl. abs.*), let us enroll two large armies.

foedus, foederis, <i>n.</i> , treaty	currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum, run
senātor, senātōris, <i>m.</i> , senator	nītor, nītī, nīxus (nīsus) sum,
timor, timōris, <i>m.</i> , fear	strive, exert one's self
vīs, vīs ( <i>rare</i> ), <i>f.</i> <sup>4</sup> ( <i>acc. sing.</i> , vim; <i>pl.</i> , virēs), strength, force	queror, querī, questus sum,
vī et armīs, by force of arms	complain, lament
probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, approve	orior, orīrī, ortus sum, rise
addō, -ere, addidī, additum, add (to)	adorior, adorīrī, adortus sum,
cōnscribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptum, enroll, levy	approach, accost; attack
	forte, <i>adv.</i> , by chance
	procul, <i>adv.</i> , at a distance
	haud procul, not far away

<sup>4</sup>For complete declension, see App. 302.

When a verb with a short *a* in its stem is compounded, the short *a* weakens to *i* before a single consonant and to *e* before two consonants. For example, *capiō* becomes *recipiō*; *captum* becomes *receptum*.

When *iaciō* is compounded, the consonant *i* of the root verb is generally omitted before the vowel *i* of the compound, as in *coniciō* (*coniiciō*), *conicere*, but it is retained elsewhere as in *coniēcī*, *coniectum*.

Form compounds of *iaciō*, using the following prefixes: *ab-*, *dē-*, *ē-*, *in-*, *prō-*, *re-*. From the meaning of the root verb and prefix derive the meaning of each compound. Most of the compounds of *iaciō* give us English words, verbs or adjectives, derived from the supine stem. Form English derivatives from the supine stem of each of the Latin compounds. Check with the English dictionary to determine the part of speech of each derivative and to see whether the words have undergone any change of meaning.





Floor mosaic  
Cave canem, Naples

10

### Imperfect Subjunctive Deliberative Questions Subjunctive in Wishes

Tibur<sup>1</sup> Argēō<sup>2</sup> positum colōnō  
sit meae sēdēs utinam senectae,  
sit modus lassō maris et viārum  
mīlitiaeque.

*May Tibur by Argive settler built  
the haven of my old age be,  
the final resting place of one  
weary of roads, of war, of sea.*

HORACE: ODES 2.6.5-8

81

### Dē Cincinnātō Dictātōre (Part 2)

Hīs rēbus audītīs, quod nūlla spēs praesidiī in cōsulibus  
pōnēbātur, sine morā Lūcius Quīnctius Cincinnātus cōsensū  
omnium dictātor dīcitur, et omnia quae ad reī pūblicae salūtem  
pertinent eī permittuntur.

<sup>1</sup>Tibur, an ancient town of Latium. Horace had a villa there.

<sup>2</sup>Argēus = Argivus, of Argos, a city in the Peloponnesus, and, by extension, of Greece, Greek.

Spēs ūnica (*the one and only*) populī Rōmānī, Lūcius 5  
 Quīnctius, trāns Tiberim quattuor iūgerum (*of four acres*)  
 habēbat agrum. Quīnctium, dum agrum arat, lēgātī ab urbe  
 missī dictātōrem salūtant. Nāvis Quīnctiō publicē parāta erat;  
 ubi flūmen trānsiit, ā tribus filiīs patrumque<sup>3</sup> maiōre parte  
 exceptus est (*was welcomed*). 10

Posterō diē dictātor, ubi sub lūcem in forum vēnit, magis-  
 trum equitum dīcit Lūcium Tarquitium. Claudī tabernās tōtā  
 urbe iubet, tum omnēs mīlitēs armātōs convenīre. Militibus  
 convocātīs, “Utinam hostēs,” inquit, “nē prōgrederentur; at,  
 eīs prōgredientibus, quid faciāmus? Omnēs nōs amīcōs sociōs- 15  
 que populī Rōmānī dēfendere parēmus. Nisi bellum fortiter  
 gerēmus, mox hostēs aderunt atque hostium fūmum ignium  
 prope urbem vidēbimus. Ducem bellī perītum et memorem  
 vestrī habētis; mē sequiminī. Nē urbs nostra perdātur!”

Legiōnēs ipse dictātor, magister equitum suōs equitēs dūcit. 20  
 “Properet signifer (*standard-bearer*); omnēs sequāmur,” inter  
 sē clāmābant mīlitēs. Mediā nocte plēnī fidūciae (*confidence*)  
 in Algidum perveniunt et, ubi vīdērunt sē iam prope hostēs  
 esse, cōsistunt. Tum, quō fuerant ōrdine in itinere, exercitus  
 omnis longō agmine circumvēnit hostium castra, et, signō 25  
 datō, clāmōrem omnēs sustulērunt. Superat (*passes over*) inde  
 castra hostium et in castra cōnsulis venit; alibī (*in one place*)  
 terrōrem, alibī laetitiam ingentem facit.

## 82 IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD -iō	4TH CONJ.
portārem	movērem	dūcerem	caperem	audīrem
portārēs	movērēs	dūcerēs	caperēs	audīrēs
portāret	movēret	dūceret	caperet	audīret
portārēmus	movērēmus	dūcerēmus	caperēmus	audīrēmus
portārētis	movērētis	dūcerētis	caperētis	audīrētis
portārent	movērent	dūcerent	caperent	audīrent

<sup>3</sup>patrum = senātōrum

## IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD -iō	4TH CONJ.
portārer	movērer	dūcerer	caperer	audīrer
portārēris	movērēris	dūcerēris	caperēris	audīrēris
portārētur	movērētur	dūcerētur	caperētur	audīrētur
portārēmur	movērēmur	dūcerēmur	caperēmur	audīrēmur
portārēminī	movērēminī	dūcerēminī	caperēminī	audīrēminī
portārentur	movērentur	dūcerentur	caperentur	audīrentur

## IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF DEPONENTS

1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD -ior	4TH CONJ.
cōnārer	verērer	sequerer	prōgrederer	partīrer
cōnārēris	verērēris	sequerēris	prōgrederēris	partīrēris
cōnārētur	verērētur	sequerētur	prōgrederētur	partīrētur
cōnārēmur	verērēmur	sequerēmur	prōgrederēmur	partīrēmur
cōnārēminī	verērēminī	sequerēminī	prōgrederēminī	partīrēminī
cōnārentur	verērentur	sequerentur	prōgrederentur	partīrentur

## IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF SEMI-DEPONENTS

audērem	cōnfiderem
audērēs	cōnfiderēs
audēret	cōnfideret
audērēmus	cōnfiderēmus
audērētis	cōnfiderētis
audērent	cōnfiderent

## IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF SUM

essem	essēmus
essēs	essētis
esset	essent

The formation of the imperfect subjunctive of non-deponent verbs is very simple: add the personal endings to the present infinitive active. It should be noticed that in some forms the vowel before the personal ending is *-e-*, in some *-ē-*. Compare

Corbridge, site of Roman occupation in Northumberland. The fountain with line of aqueduct and granary wall.



Ministry of Works 5. Crown copyright

the forms of the imperfect subjunctive of deponent verbs with those of the imperfect subjunctive passive of non-deponent verbs. For the imperfect subjunctive, as for the subjunctive generally, no meanings are here assigned.

### 83 PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE IN DELIBERATIVE QUESTIONS

*Quid faciam?*

What am I to do?

*Quid diceret?*

What was he to say?

*Quō mē nunc vertam?*

Where am I to turn now?

*Quō tempore proficiscerēmur?*

At what time were we to set out?

*Maneam usque ad merīdiem?*

Am I to wait until noon?

In Latin, when a person in a difficulty is expressing his wonder and doubt in the form of a question, he commonly uses the present subjunctive; such a question is called a deliberative question, and other people speaking to him or of him use the same construction. The imperfect is used to refer to past experiences. These two (the present and the imperfect) are the only tenses of the subjunctive used in this construction.



## 84 PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE IN WISHES

### OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

<b>Sīs victor!</b>	May you be victorious!
<b>Nē Rōmānī umquam vincantur!</b>	May the Romans never be conquered!

A wish for the future, which the speaker regards as more or less probable or possible, is regularly expressed by the present subjunctive.<sup>4</sup> The negative is **nē**.

<b>Utinam rēx essem!</b>	O that (Would that, I would) I were a king!
<b>Utinam frāter adesset!</b>	O that my brother were here!
<b>Utinam nē abesset!</b>	O that he were not absent!

A wish for the present, which the speaker regards as contrary to fact or impossible, is expressed by **utinam**<sup>4</sup> followed by the imperfect subjunctive.

In the first two sentences, the use of the imperfect subjunctive implies that the speaker is not a king, that the brother is absent. The negative is **nē**.

## 85 GENITIVE CASE

The genitive case is used primarily to denote the dependence of one noun upon another noun, or the general connection of one noun with another.

### SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE

<b>fuga exercitūs</b>	the flight of the army
<b>timor liberōrum</b>	the fear felt by the children

The genitive may be used to express the subject of the action implied in the noun on which it depends. If these phrases were put in the form of sentences, the genitives would be the subjects: **exercitus fugit; liberī timent**.

<sup>4</sup>**Utinam**, which reinforces the wish, is less often used with the present subjunctive.

## OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

<b>spēs pācis</b>	hope of peace
<b>timor mortis</b>	fear of death

The genitive may be used to express the object of the action implied in the noun on which it depends. If these phrases were put in the form of sentences, the genitives would be the objects: **pācem spērāmus; mortem timēmus.**

In the phrase **amor mātris**, *love of a mother*, the genitive is subjective if the thought is *A mother loves her child*; but objective if the thought is *A child loves his mother*.

**Ducem memorem nostrī habēmus.** We have a leader mindful of us,

Of the double forms in the genitive plural of the first and second persons; **nostrī** and **vestrī** are used as objective genitives.

## GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

<b>Cupidus imperiī est.</b>	He is eager for power.
<b>Memor est liberōrum.</b>	He is mindful of his children.
<b>Fossa est plēna aquae.</b>	The trench is full of water.
<b>Peritus rei militāris est.</b>	He is skilled in the art of war.

The genitive is used with some adjectives to complete their meaning:

<b>cupidus, -a, -um</b> , eager, desirous,	<b>oblītus, -a, -um</b> , forgetful
ambitious	<b>perītus, -a, -um</b> , experienced,
<b>imperītus, -a, -um</b> , inexperi-	skilled
enced, unskilled	<b>plēnus, -a, -um</b> , full
<b>memor, memoris</b> , mindful	

## EXERCISES

A. Give the corresponding subjunctive for these indicative verbs:

1. perdimur	8. sedēmus	15. exercēbātur
2. pertinēbant	9. emuntur	16. placētis
3. claudīt	10. dēsilit	17. morābāminī
4. aderātis	11. poterās	18. invidēt
5. intrās	12. adoriēbar	19. proficīscēbar
6. permittēbās	13. prōgreditur	20. impedīmus
7. vagābāris	14. dolēbam	

B. *Translate:*

1. Cincinnātum dictātōrem dicāmus! Cincinnātum dictātōrem dīcēmus.
2. Nē nostra urbs perdātur! Nostra urbs nōn perdētur.
3. Quid faciāmus? Quid facerēmus?
4. Quid agmen faciat? Quid agmen faceret?
5. Intrāre possītis! Utinam intrāre possētis!
6. Bene vīvās! Utinam bene vīverēs!
7. Nē nōs sequantur! Utinam nē nōs sequerentur!
8. Nē negōtium eī permittās! Nē negōtium eī permitterēs!

C. *Write in Latin:*

1. Would that he were near! He is near.
2. Would that we were enrolling the soldiers! The soldiers are being enrolled.
3. Let us buy the urn. We shall buy the urn.
4. You will not fear. Let us not fear.
5. Let the citizens not grieve. Would that the citizens were not grieving!
6. Would that he were not eager for power! Let him not be eager for power.
7. May the dictator be at hand! Would that the dictator were at hand!
8. May they choose him as dictator! Would that they were choosing him as dictator!

D. *Translate:*

1. Sub lūcem in forum veniāmus.
2. Sit dux noster semper memor nostrī.
3. Intereā, dum haec geruntur, fūmus ignium procul vidērī poterat.
4. Hīs rēbus audītis pōnāmus spem praesidiī in cōsulibus.
5. Utinam nē hī cīvēs pecūniae essent cupidī!
6. Ob timōrem cīvium iānuae tabernae claudantur.
7. Nē cīvēs poenā cōsulum doleant.
8. Utinam nē dictātor esset oblītus vestrī!
9. Utinam cōsulēs perītī bellī essent!
10. Rem Cincinnātō permittāmus, eī enim cōnfīdere possumus.

E. *Write in Latin:*

1. We can place no hope in the consuls. What are we to do?
2. Would that we could entrust everything to Cincinnatus!

3. Because Cincinnatus has been named dictator, let us not fear the Aequi.
4. We have a leader mindful both of us and of our country.
5. The dictator had not arrived at sunset. What were we to do?
6. Let us not approve (of) the foolish envy of the common people.
7. Let us not neglect the punishment of the angry citizens; they deserve our anger.
8. You (*pl.*) have chosen a leader mindful of you; let us set out with him and crush the enemy.

laetitia, -ae, *f.*, joy

taberna, -ae, *f.*, shop

fūmus, -ī, *m.*, smoke

praesidium, -ī, *n.*, garrison;

guard; protection

agmen, agminis, *n.*, army on the march, marching column

primum agmen, the van,

vanguard

novissimum agmen, the rear,

rear guard

ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.*, row, series;

order; rank

cōnsēsus, -ūs, *m.*, agreement, consent

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with acc.*,  
go into, enter, penetrate

claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum,  
close

cōnsistō, -ere, cōstitī, stand still,  
halt, take up a position

perdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum,  
destroy, ruin

permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -misum,  
entrust

inde, *adv.*, then; from there, from  
that place

pūblicē, *adv.*, by the govern-  
ment, officially, in the name  
of the state





*Statue of Julius  
Caesar, Rome*

11

### Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive Subjunctive in Wishes Regarding the Past

Atque utinam rēs pūblica stetisset, quō coeperat,  
statū nec in hominēs nōn tam commūtandārum quam  
ēvertendārum rērum cupidōs incidisset!

*And would that the republic had endured in the state  
in which it began and had not fallen into the hands  
of men who sought not so much the change of affairs  
as the total ruin of them!*

CICERO: DE OFFICIIS 2.1.3

Clāmōre mīlitum dictātōris audītō, cōnsul Minucius arma suōs capere et sē sequī iubet. Nocte commissum proelium est; legiōnibus dictātōris clāmōre significant ab eā quoque parte impetum factum esse. Intereā, dum haec geruntur, dictātor ācerrimē adortus est. Tum Aequī, duōbus exercitibus aggre- 5 dientibus, aut terga vertērunt aut pācem petīvērunt; ā cōnsule ad dictātōrem ire iussī sunt. Aequōs, postquam sē dēdidērunt, sub iugum dictātor mīsit.

Castrīs hostium trādītis, dictātor praedam omnem suīs tantum mīlitibus dedit. Cōpiīs cōnsulis, "Utinam," inquit, 10 "fortiōrēs, fuissētis, mīlitēs! Vōs ipsī paene praeda hostium fuistis. Vetābō tālēs mīlitēs ūllam partem praedae habēre."

Tum Rōmam rediit. Ductī sunt ante currum hostium ducēs; secūtus exercitus praedā onustus (*laden*). Adventū mīlitum clāmāvit turba cīvium: "Deīs laudem dēmus. Iovī 15 Iūnōnīque sacrificēmus. Imperium populī Rōmānī augeātur."

Quīntius sextō decimō (*sixteenth*) diē postquam dictātor dictus erat<sup>1</sup> ad agrum rediit.

## 89

## PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD -iō	4TH CONJ.
portāverim	mōverim	dūxerim	cēperim	audīverim
portāverīs	mōverīs	dūxerīs	cēperīs	audīverīs
portāverit	mōverit	dūxerit	cēperit	audīverit
portāverīmus	mōverīmus	dūxerīmus	cēperīmus	audīverīmus
portāverītis	mōverītis	dūxerītis	cēperītis	audīverītis
portāverint	mōverint	dūxerint	cēperint	audīverint

Note that in the perfect subjunctive active second person singular and first and second persons plural the *-i-* is long: **portā'verīs, portāverī'mus, portāverī'tis** whereas in the corresponding forms of the future perfect indicative active the vowel is short: **portā'veris, portāve'rimus, portāve'ritis.**

<sup>1</sup>When a definite interval is stated, *postquam* is often found with the pluperfect indicative.



Ministry of Public Building and Works. Crown copyright

Roman domestic pottery of the second and third centuries. Lullingstone Roman Villa, Kent.

## PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD -iō	4TH CONJ.
portātus sim	mōtus sim	ductus sim	captus sim	audītus sim
portātus sīs	mōtus sīs	ductus sīs	captus sīs	audītus sīs
portātus sit	mōtus sit	ductus sit	captus sit	audītus sit
portātī sīmus	mōtī sīmus	ductī sīmus	captī sīmus	audītī sīmus
portātī sītis	mōtī sītis	ductī sītis	captī sītis	audītī sītis
portātī sint	mōtī sint	ductī sint	captī sint	audītī sint

## PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF DEONENTS

1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD -ior	4TH CONJ.
cōnātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	prōgressus sim	partitus sim

## PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF SEMI-DEONENTS

ausus sim

cōnfisus sim

## 90 PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

1st CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD -iō	4TH CONJ.
portāvissem	mōvissem	dūxissem	cēpissem	audīvissem
portāvissēs	mōvissēs	dūxissēs	cēpissēs	audīvissēs
portāvisset	mōvisset	dūxisset	cēpisset	audīvisset
portāvissēmus	mōvissēmus	dūxissēmus	cēpissēmus	audīvissēmus
portāvissētis	mōvissētis	dūxissētis	cēpissētis	audīvissētis
portāvissent	mōvissent	dūxissent	cēpissent	audīvissent

## PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

1st CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.
portātus essem	mōtus essem	ductus essem
portātus essēs	mōtus essēs	ductus essēs
portātus esset	mōtus esset	ductus esset
portātī essēmus	mōtī essēmus	ductī essēmus
portātī essētis	mōtī essētis	ductī essētis
portātī essent	mōtī essent	ductī essent

### 3RD -iō

captus essem
captus essēs
captus esset
captī essēmus
captī essētis
captī essent

### 4TH CONJ.

audītus essem
audītus essēs
audītus esset
audītī essēmus
audītī essētis
audītī essent

## PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF DEPONENTS

cōnātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem
prōgressus essem	partitus essem	

## PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF SEMI-DEPONENTS

ausus essem	cōnfisus essem
-------------	----------------



## PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF SUM

fuerim	fuissem
fueris	fuissēs
fuerit	fuisset
fuerimus	fuissēmus
fueritis	fuissētis
fuerint	fuissent

### 91 PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE IN WISHES

#### OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

Utinam nē Rōmā vēnisset!	I wish (O that, Would that) he had not come from Rome!
Utinam nē missus essem!	Would that I had not been sent!

Even when we know what has happened, we still express our feelings about the past, especially of regret about what has occurred, in the form of a wish (which, of course, can never be fulfilled). In Latin, the pluperfect subjunctive is used, introduced by **utinam**. The negative is **nē**.

### 92

## GENITIVE CASE

#### PARTITIVE GENITIVE

Magnum numerum mīlitum mīsīt.  
He sent a large number of soldiers.

Cōpiam frūmentī habent.  
They have a supply of grain.

Tiberis nōn est maximus omnium flūminum.  
The Tiber is not the largest of all rivers.

The genitive is used to denote the whole of which a part is taken.

Quid cōsiliī capiunt?  
What plan (*lit.*, what of plan) are they adopting?

Nihil agrī nōbīs relinquitur.  
No land (*lit.*, nothing of land) is left to us.

**Habeō plūs pecūniae quam frāter meus.**

I have more (of) money than my brother.

**Militibus satis frūmentī nōn dedit.**

He did not give the soldiers enough (of) grain.

The partitive genitive is often used with such neuter pronouns and adjectives as **quid**, *what*, **nihil**, *nothing*, **tantum**, *so much*, **quantum**, *how much*, **plūs**, *more*, **minus**, *less*, and the adverbs **satis**, *enough*, and **parum**, *too little*, when these are the subject or object of a verb.

**Paucae dē virginibus rapiuntur.**

**Ūnus ex eīs fuerat nauta.**

Few of the maidens are carried off. One of them had been a sailor.

With **paucī**, *few*, **quīdam**, *a certain*, and cardinal numerals, the partitive idea is usually expressed by **ex** or **dē** with the ablative.

## 93

## EXERCISES

A. Give the corresponding indicative form of the following subjunctive verbs:

- |                |                |                  |
|----------------|----------------|------------------|
| 1. dēspērēmus  | 4. sustulerim  | 7. praesint      |
| 2. morātī sint | 5. loquerentur | 8. apertī essent |
| 3. auxissēmus  | 6. reperīrēmus | 9. questī sint   |

B. Give the corresponding subjunctive form of the following indicative verbs:

- |                    |                    |                |
|--------------------|--------------------|----------------|
| 1. prōgrediēbantur | 4. cūrāvī          | 7. commīsistis |
| 2. exercentur      | 5. poterant        | 8. placuerās   |
| 3. pertinuerant    | 6. aggressī erāmus | 9. permittitur |

C. Translate:

1. Fortiōrēs esse cōnāminī; fortiōrēs esse cōnēminī.
2. Nōlī clāmōrem tollere; clāmōrem tollāmus.
3. Nē Aequōs sub iugum mittāmus; Aequōs sub iugum mittere nōn possumus.
4. Nāvēs reficiēbāmus; nāvēs reficiāmus.
5. Utinam dictātor deīs sacrificāret; utinam dictātor deīs sacrificāvisset!



Entrance to the Acropolis, Athens. The graceful Ionic temple seen at the right, the Temple of Athena Nike (Bringer of Victory), was completed in 424 B.C. Its famous frieze depicted the victory of the Greeks over the Persians at the Battle of Plataea.



Ruins of Hadrian's Villa, an enormous complex of buildings erected near Tivoli 118-138 A.D. The extent and elaborate scale of this imperial residence was unmatched in antiquity.



6. Utinam nē exercitus sequeretur; utinam nē exercitus secutus esset!
7. Utinam discēdere nē vetitū essēmus; utinam discēdere nē vetārēmur!
8. Eum hortēmur; utinam eum hortātī essēmus!
9. Tālia dōna nōbīs dentur. Utinam tālia dōna nōbīs data essent!
10. Quid Minucius faciat? Quid Minucius faceret?

D. *Write in Latin:*

1. Would that we had been braver; let us be brave.
2. Let us sacrifice to the gods; would that we had sacrificed to the gods!
3. May their forces not increase; would that their forces had not increased!
4. May he give his soldiers enough grain; would that he had not given the enemy so much grain!
5. Let the enemy not begin battle; let us begin battle.
6. Let them send Minucius; do not send Minucius.
7. A great number of us; three of us; a few of us.
8. Would that I were not ill; may they not be ill!
9. Would that they were announcing his arrival; would that they had announced his arrival!
10. Would that we were not being sent under the yoke; would that the enemy had been sent under the yoke!

E. *Translate:*

1. Paucī ex mīlitibus aggređientibus castra intrāre cupiunt.
2. Utinam hōs ducēs ante currum dictātōris nē dūxissent!
3. Quantum pecūniae det dictātor mīlitibus quī castra cēpērunt?
4. Utinam post adventum cōpiārum deīs sacrificāvissēmus!
5. Mittite sub iugum Aequōs victōs quod foedus rūpērunt.

F. *Write in Latin:*

1. After his camp had been surrounded, what was the consul to do?
2. Would that the fire had not almost destroyed a large part of the city!
3. Ten thousand angry soldiers had been sent under the yoke by Cincinnatus.
4. Let us forbid soldiers who are not brave to have any part of the booty.
5. How much land do they have (*dat. of possession*)? Let a few of the soldiers have more land.

## SUPPLEMENTARY VERB DRILL

Give subjunctive synopses of the following verbs as indicated:

1. *vertō*, 1st pl. act.
2. *prōgredior*, 3rd pl.
3. *possum*, 2nd sing.
4. *sedeō*, 3rd sing. act.
5. *cōnfīdō*, 2nd pl.

94

### VOCABULARY

<i>turba</i> , -ae, f., throng, crowd	<i>aggredior</i> , <i>aggredi</i> , <i>aggressus</i>
<i>iugum</i> , -ī, n., yoke, ridge	<i>sum</i> , step up to; attack
sub <i>iugum mittere</i> , send under the yoke <sup>2</sup>	<i>dēdō</i> , -ere, <i>dēdidī</i> , <i>dēditum</i> , give up, surrender
<i>adventus</i> , -ūs, m., arrival	<i>sē dēdere</i> , surrender (oneself)
<i>tālis</i> , <i>tālis</i> , <i>tāle</i> , such, of such a kind	<i>vertō</i> , -ere, <i>vertī</i> , <i>versum</i> , turn
<i>sacrificō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, sacrifice	<i>terga vertere</i> , turn and flee
<i>augeō</i> , -ēre, <i>auxī</i> , <i>auctum</i> , act. make greater, increase; <i>pass.</i> become greater, increase	<i>aut</i> , <i>conj.</i> , or
	<i>aut . . . aut</i> , either . . . or
	<i>paene</i> , <i>adv.</i> , nearly, almost
	<i>tantum</i> , <i>adv.</i> , only

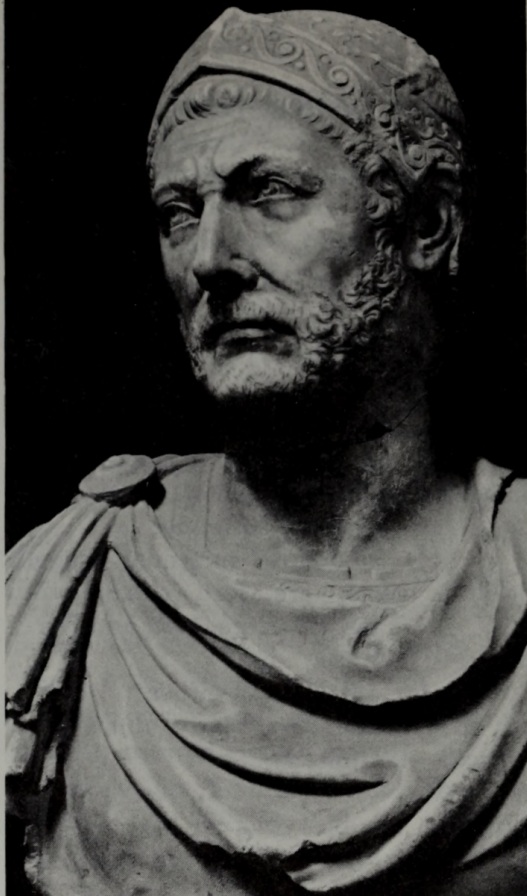
95

### WORD STUDY

The suffix **-lentus** denotes *fullness*. It is most frequently added to a noun stem; for example, **opulentus**, *wealthy*, from **ops**, *power, wealth*. The suffix is normally preceded by a vowel, most often **u** (**opulentus**), sometimes **o** (**violentus**, from **vis**, *strength*) or **i** (**pestilentus**, from **pestis**, *plague, disease*). Using the suffix **-lentus**, form adjectives based on the following nouns: **somnus**, *juice*, **turba**, *poison*.

Most Latin adjectives ending in **-lentus** give us English adjectives ending in **-lent**. Give the English adjective directly derived from each of the Latin adjectives you have formed. Check in both Latin and English dictionaries to see whether there has been any change of meaning in the adjectives in the process of derivation.

<sup>2</sup>The yoke was a symbol of humiliation and defeat; it consisted of two upright spears, supporting a third, under which defeated enemies were led.



*Sculpture of  
Hannibal, Naples*

12

### **Volō and Its Compounds Potential Subjunctive**

Palluit, et subitō genua intremuēre timōre  
suntque oculīs tenebrae per tantum lūmen obortae.  
Et iam māllet equōs numquam tetigisse paternōs.<sup>1</sup>

*He grew pale, and his knees shook with sudden fear  
and over his eyes came darkness through excess of light.  
And already he would have preferred never to have  
touched his father's horses.*

OVID: MET. 2.180-182

<sup>1</sup>Apollo, the god of the sun, had reluctantly granted his son, Phaethon, permission to drive his chariot and the horses of the sun.

Ōlim Hannibal, quī multōs annōs cum Rōmānīs bellum gesserat et victus erat, apud rēgem Antiochum<sup>2</sup> erat. Ostendēbat eī Antiochus in campō maximās cōpiās quās bellum populō Rōmānō factūrus coēgerat. Indūcēbat (*He brought up*) etiam currūs cum falcibus (*scythes*) ferreīs et elephantōs cum 5 turribus et plūrimōs equitēs. Atque rēx, quī cōnspectū tantī exercitūs glōriābātur (*was glorying in*), aegerrimē superbiam dissimulābat. Cupidus laudis volēbat Hannibalem quoque cōpiās rēgiās laudāre et “Putāsne,” inquit, “satis esse Rōmānīs haec omnia?” Tum Hannibal, quī sciēbat mīlitēs rēgis, multō 10 aurō ōrnatōs, nōn esse fortēs, quamquam tacēre mālēbat: “Satis, plānē (*quite*) satis esse crēdō Rōmānīs etiāmsī (*even though*) avārissimī sunt.”

AULUS GELLIUS (*Adapted*)

97	Volō, velle, voluī	be willing, wish
	Nōlō, nōlle, nōluī	be unwilling
	Mālō, mālle, mālui	prefer

## INDICATIVE MOOD

### PRESENT

volō	nōlō	mālō
vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
vult	nōn vult	māvult
volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
volunt	nōlunt	mālunt

### IMPERFECT

volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
volēbās	nōlēbās	mālēbās
volēbat	nōlēbat	mālēbat
volēbāmus	nōlēbāmus	mālēbāmus
volēbātis	nōlēbātis	mālēbātis
volēbant	nōlēbant	mālēbant

<sup>2</sup>Antiochus “the Great,” king of Syria, ruled 223-187 B.C.



## FUTURE

volam	nōlam	mālam
volēs	nōlēs	mālēs
volet	nōlet	mālet
volēmus	nōlēmus	mālēmus
volētis	nōlētis	mālētis
volent	nōlent	mālent

## PERFECT

voluī	nōluī	māluī
-------	-------	-------

## PLUPERFECT

volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
----------	----------	----------

## FUTURE PERFECT

voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō
---------	---------	---------

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

### PRESENT

velim	nōlim	mālim
velis	nōlis	mālis
velit	nōlit	mālit
velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
velint	nōlint	mālint

### IMPERFECT

vellem	nōllem	māllem
vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
vellet	nōllet	māllet
vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
vellent	nōllent	māllent

### PERFECT

voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
----------	----------	----------

### PLUPERFECT

voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem
-----------	-----------	-----------

## IMPERATIVE

_____	nōlī, nōlite	_____
-------	--------------	-------

## INFINITIVES

<i>Pres.</i>	<b>velle</b>	<b>nolle</b>	<b>malle</b>
<i>Perf.</i>	<b>voluisse</b>	<b>noluisse</b>	<b>māluisse</b>

## PARTICIPLES

<i>Pres.</i>	<b>volēns</b>	<b>nolēns</b>	_____
<b>Prōgredi vult.</b>	He wishes to advance.		
<b>Prōgredi nōn vult.</b>	{ He does not wish to advance.		
	{ He is unwilling to advance.		
<b>Prōgredi māvult.</b>	{ He prefers to advance.		
	{ He had rather advance.		

**Volō, nōlō, and mālō** are completed by a complementary (present) infinitive.

1. **Lūcius mīles esse vult.**  
Lucius wishes to be a soldier.
2. **Pater Lūcium mercātōrem esse māvult.**  
His father prefers Lucius to be a trader.
3. **Eum esse bonum iussit.**  
He ordered him to be good.

The subject of the infinitive, if it is the same as that of **volō (nōlō, mālō)**, is not expressed (sentence 1); if it is different from that of **volō (nōlō, mālō)**, it is in the accusative case (sentence 2, **Lūcium**).

Note the relation of **mercātōrem** to **Lūcium** in sentence 2, and of **bonum** to **eum** in sentence 3.

## 98 POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE

**Aliquis dicat hoc esse vērū.**

Someone may say that this is true.

**Vidērēs mīlitēs multō aurō ōrnātōs.**

You could (might) have seen the soldiers decked out with a lot of gold.

The subjunctive may be used to suggest an action as possible or conceivable (*Potential Subjunctive*). The present refers to the immediate future, the imperfect to the past. The negative is **nōn**.

**Velim mihi crēdās.**

I should like to have you believe me.

**Nöllem Rōmam profectus esset.**

I wish that he had not set out for Rome.

**Mället numquam tetigisse equōs paternōs.**

He would have preferred never to have touched his father's horses.

The potentials **velim**, *I should like* and **vellem**, *I should have liked* (and their compounds), used with the subjunctive or the infinitive are often the equivalent of **utinam** and the optative.

99

EXERCISES

A. Give the corresponding indicative for the following subjunctive verbs:

1. mällent. 2. voluissēmus. 3. nōlit. 4. velīs. 5. māluerit.  
6. nōllētis. 7. velīmus. 8. māluerint. 9. vellet. 10. velit.

B. Give the corresponding subjunctive for the following indicative verbs:

1. vultis. 2. mālueram. 3. voluit. 4. nōlēbāmus. 5. māvult.  
6. nōluērunt. 7. mālēbant. 8. voluerātis. 9. nōn vīs.  
10. volumus.

C. Translate:

1. Tēla audācter conicere mālumus. 2. Nōlī revertī.  
3. Velint. 4. Quid mālīmus? 5. Aliquis loquātur mīlitēs nōn  
esse fortēs. 6. Cōgerēs cōpiās instruī. 7. Velim cōpiae cōn-  
sistant. 8. Utinam tacēre vellet! 9. Laudēmus cōpiās  
Antiochī. 10. Nē deīs sacrificet.

D. Write in Latin:

1. Let us be silent. 2. Let us not wish to advance. 3. Let  
the gates of the town be opened. 4. What should I fear?  
5. What punishment should I deserve? 6. You could not  
prefer to grieve. 7. They may prefer to wander not far away.  
8. They might have attacked the troops of the king. 9. Would  
that they were not besieging the camp! 10. Would that the  
troops had entered the camp!



A Roman theater in Merida, Spain. Here, in the ancient city of Augusta Emerita, Augustus established one of his many colonies of veterans.

E. *Translate:*

1. Mīlitēs rēgis, multō aurō ōrnātōs, laudāre nōlumus.
2. Utinam, Hannibal, auxilia ad nōs mittere vellēs! 3. Nōlīte in cōspectum illius exercitūs venīre. 4. Hannibal retineat mīlitēs victōs ā fugā. 5. Vellēmus hīs gentibus aurum dare. 6. Nūntius dīxit Antiochum Hannibalī currūs et elephantōs ostendere velle.

F. *Write in Latin:*

1. Let us open a way with the sword. 2. How large a number of elephants do you wish us to collect? 3. Would they had been unwilling to throw away their arms! 4. Why should Hannibal wish to help Antiochus? 5. Hannibal was unwilling to praise the army of Antiochus although the king wished him to do so. 6. What were the Romans to do after they realized that Antiochus had collected these large forces?



## SUPPLEMENTARY VERB DRILL

Give synopses of the following verbs in both the indicative and the subjunctive in the person and number indicated:

volō (velle), 1st plural    nōlō, 3rd singular    mālō, 2nd plural

100

### VOCABULARY

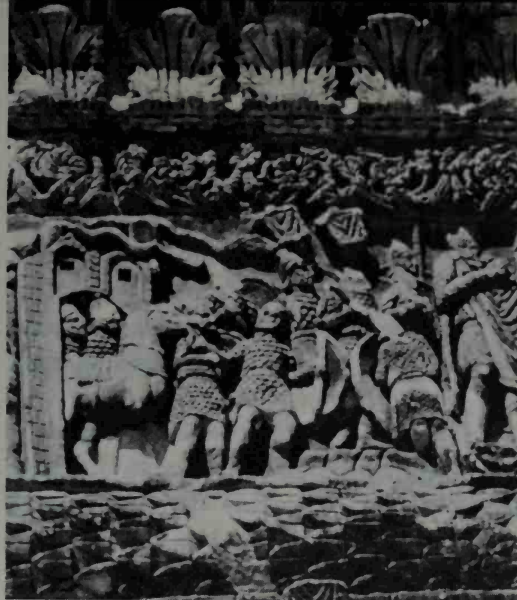
ferrum, -ī, <i>n.</i> , iron; sword	ōrnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, adorn
ferreus, -a, -um, of iron	taceō, -ēre, tacuī, tacitum, be silent
laus, laudis, <i>f.</i> , praise, glory	ostendō, -ere, ostendī, ostentum (ostēsum), show, display
cōspectus, -ūs, <i>m.</i> , sight, view	aegrē, <i>adv.</i> , with difficulty; scarcely
avārus, -a, -um, greedy	<i>comp.</i> aegrius, with greater difficulty
rēgius, -a, -um, of the king, royal	<i>super.</i> aegerrimē, with very great difficulty
superbus, -a, -um, haughty, proud	apud, <i>prep. with acc.</i> , among, near, at the house or place of business of, in the presence of
superbia, -ae, <i>f.</i> , haughtiness, pride	
aliquis, aliquid, someone, something	
dissimulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, disguise; conceal	

101

### WORD STUDY

Several chemical symbols are based on the Latin or late Latin names of the elements:

Au	aurum	gold	Fe	ferrum	iron
Ag	argentum	silver	Pb	plumbum	lead
Cu	cuprum	copper	Sn	stannum	tin



*Section of Roman arch,  
Salonica, Macedonia*

# 13

## Sequence of Tenses Indirect Command

Saepe mihī dīcēs vīvae bene, saepe rogābis  
ut mea dēfūctae molliter ossa cubent.

*Often you will bless me while I live, often beg  
my bones lie gently in the earth when I am gone.*

OVID: AMORES 1.8.107-108

### 102 Dē Tarquiniō Priscō, Quīntō Rēge Rōmānōrum

Ancō<sup>1</sup> rēgnante, Lucumō,<sup>2</sup> vir impiger et dīves, dē Etrūriā Rōmam migrāvit (*moved*), spē magnī honōris quem Tarquiniīs (*locative, at Tarquiniī, a city of Etruria*) adipīscī nōn poterat, nam peregrīnus erat. Is Tarquiniīs Tanaquīlem (*Tanaquil*), summō locō nātam, in mātīmōnium dūxerat. Etrūscīs 5 Tarquiniū peregrīnum contemnentibus, Tanaquil virum hortābātur ut Rōmam migrāret, spērāns in novō populō fore locum fortī et impigrō virō. Facile marītō persuāsit ut sēcum discēderet.

<sup>1</sup>Ancus Marcius, the fourth king of Rome.

<sup>2</sup>Lucumo, a name given to Etruscan princes and priests, originally was a word meaning an inspired person. The Romans mistook it for a proper name.

10 Comparātīs itaque rēbus Rōmam profectī sunt. Ad Iāniculum (*Mount Janiculum*) forte vēnerant. Ibi aquila lēniter dēmissa (*swooping gently down*) virō pilleum aufert (*took off the cap*), superque caput volāns capitī rūsus repōnit. Accēpisse id augurium laeta dīcitur Tanaquil, perīta prōdigi-  
 15 ōrum (*portents*) mulier. Virum complexa (*embracing*) alta spērāre (*to hope for a high destiny*) iubet; aquilam ā deīs missam esse.

Hās spēs cōgitātiōnēsque (*thoughts*) sēcum portantēs urbem ingressī sunt. Domō ibi comparātā, Lucumō nōmen Lūcium  
 20 Tarquiniū Priscum mox ēdidit. Dīvitiae Rōmānīs eum ēgregium faciēbant.

Tarquiniō, cīvī Rōmānō factō, rēx Ancus maximē cōnfidēbat et favēbat; pūblicīs et prīvātīs cōnsiliīs bellō domīque ille intererat (*he took part in*). Postrēmō tūtōr (*guardian*) etiam  
 25 liberīs rēgis testāmentō īnstitūtus est.

Rēgnāvit Ancus annōs quattuor et vīgintī; post mortem Ancī populus Rōmānus Tarquiniū rēgnāre iussit.

LIVY 1.34 (*Adapted*)

## 103 CLASSIFICATION AND SEQUENCE OF TENSES

In Latin, the six tenses of the indicative mood are divided into two classes, primary and secondary. The primary tenses refer to the present and future; the secondary tenses refer to the past.

PRIMARY	{	—present	moneō, I advise
		—present perfect	monuī, I have advised
		—future	monēbō, I shall advise
		—future perfect	monuerō, I shall have advised
SECONDARY	{	—imperfect	monēbam, I was advising
		—historical perfect	monuī, I advised
		—pluperfect	monueram, I had advised

In Latin, the subjunctive mood is used in subordinate clauses to show that what is said is quoted from some other speaker, or that the clause indicates some purpose or result.



The tense of the verb in the subordinate clause is chosen to fit in with the tense of the principal verb of the sentence, and also, where necessary, to mark the difference of time between the action in the subordinate and that in the principal clause.

Primary tenses in the principal clauses are followed by primary in the subordinate clauses, and secondary by secondary. Primary tenses in the principal clauses are followed by the present or perfect subjunctive in the subordinate clauses, the present denoting incomplete and the perfect completed action. Secondary tenses in the principal clauses are followed by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive in the subordinate clauses, the imperfect denoting incomplete and the pluperfect completed action. The imperative is treated as a primary form.

#### 104 INDIRECT COMMAND OR REQUEST

**Militibus imperat ut proelium committant.**

He orders the soldiers to begin battle.

**Militibus imperat nē proelium committant.**

He orders the soldiers not to begin battle.

**Militibus imperābat ut proelium committerent.**

He was ordering the soldiers to begin battle.

**Militibus imperābat nē proelium committerent.**

He was ordering the soldiers not to begin battle.

An indirect, or quoted, command or request is frequently rendered in Latin by the conjunction **ut** (negative **nē**) followed by the subjunctive; the present tense of the subjunctive is used in primary sequence, the imperfect in secondary. Since the indirect request or command is, logically, incomplete, the tenses of completion, perfect and pluperfect, are not used in this construction.

The following verbs may be used with indirect commands or requests:

**cohortor, cohortāri, cohortātus sum**, encourage, urge, exhort, *with the accusative of the person encouraged, urged, exhorted*

**hortor, hortāri, hortātus sum**, encourage, urge, exhort, *with the accusative of the person*



**imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātum**, command, *with the dative of the person*

**moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum**, warn, advise, *with the accusative of the person*

**orō, orāre, orāvī, orātum**, ask, beg, pray, *with the accusative of the person*

**persuādeō, persuādere, persuāsī, persuāsum**, persuade, *with the dative of the person*

**petō, petere, petīvī, petitum**, seek, ask, demand, *with ab and the ablative of the person*

**poscō, poscere, poposcī**, demand, *usually with ab and the ablative of the person*

**postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātum**, ask, demand, *with ab and the ablative of the person*

**rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātum**, ask, request, *with the accusative of the person*

**Militēs proelium committere iubet.**

He orders the soldiers to begin battle.

**Militēs proelium committere vetābat.**

He was ordering the soldiers not to begin battle.

The construction with **iubeō** and **vetō** must be noted. These verbs are completed by a complementary infinitive.

## 105

## EXERCISES

### A. Translate:

1. Urbem ingreditur. Moneō ut urbem ingrediātur. Monuī ut urbem ingrederētur.
2. Ī domum. Ōrat ut domum eās. Ōrābat nē domum irēs.
3. Legiōnem cōnscribit. Cohortāmur ut legiōnem cōnscribat. Cohortātī sumus ut legiōnem cōnscriberet.
4. Is rēgnat. Imperant eī ut rēgnet. Imperāvērunt eī ut rēgnāret.
5. Tacēmus. Postulat ā nōbīs ut taceāmus. Postulāvit ā nōbīs ut tacērēmus.
6. Quereris. Persuādet tibi nē querāris. Persuāsit tibi nē quererēris.

7. Urbs obsidētur. Iubet urbem obsidērī. Iussit urbem obsidērī.
8. Dēsilitē. Militēs dēsilitē iubet. Militēs dēsilitē iussit.
9. Sociī cōnsistunt. Sociōs cōnsistere vetat. Sociōs cōnsistere vetuit.
10. Dolētis. Hortantur vōs nē doleātis. Hortātī sunt vōs nē dolērētis.

B. *Fill in the blanks as indicated:*

1. Dā mihi pecūniam. Rogō ut mihi pecūniam \_\_\_\_ (dō, 2nd sing.). Rogāvī nē mihi pecūniam \_\_\_\_ dō, 2nd sing.).
2. Cōnsilium probātur. Moneō ut cōnsilium \_\_\_\_ (probō, 3rd sing. pass.). Monuī ut cōnsilium \_\_\_\_ (probō, 3rd sing. pass.).
3. Cīvēs cōnsilium probant. Iubent cīvēs cōnsilium \_\_\_\_ (probō). Iussērunt cīvēs cōnsilium \_\_\_\_ (probō).
4. Nōlī cōnsilium probāre. Postulat ā tē nē cōnsilium \_\_\_\_ (probō, 2nd sing.). Postulāvit ā tē nē cōnsilium \_\_\_\_ (probō, 2nd sing.).
5. Virī morantur. Rogat virōs ut \_\_\_\_ (moror, 3rd pl.). Rogāvit virōs ut \_\_\_\_ (moror, 3rd pl.).
6. Tarquinius rēgnat. Rōmānī iubent Tarquinium \_\_\_\_ (rēgnō). Rōmānī iussērunt Tarquinium \_\_\_\_ (rēgnō).
7. Dīvitiās cūrāte. Persuādent vōbīs ut dīvitiās \_\_\_\_ (cūrō, 2nd pl.). Persuāsērunt vōbīs ut dīvitiās \_\_\_\_ (cūrō, 2nd pl.).
8. Nōlite pyxidem aperīre. Ōrant vōs nē pyxidem \_\_\_\_ (aperiō, 2nd pl.). Ōrāvērunt vōs nē pyxidem \_\_\_\_ (aperiō, 2nd pl.).
9. Lucumō honōrēs adipīscitur. Uxor ā Lucumōne petit ut honōrēs \_\_\_\_ (adipīscor, 3rd sing.). Uxor ā Lucumōne petīvit ut honōrēs \_\_\_\_ (adipīscor, 3rd sing.).

C. *Translate:*

1. Peregrīnus postulāvit ut sibi pecūnia darētur.
2. Suōs arma aquilamque in castrīs relinquere iussit.
3. Legiōnēs urbem ingredī vetuimus.
4. Crēdisne aquilam in caelō volantem ā deīs missam esse?
5. Cohortābantur ut libertātem adipīscī cōnārēmur.
6. Hortābimur ut finem bellī faciant.



D. Write in Latin:

1. I shall order them to set out. 2. I had advised you to set out. 3. He begs them not to seek aid. 4. We shall try to persuade our allies to advance. 5. They have demanded that we return. 6. They requested us not to return. 7. We encouraged the legions to march.

E. Write synopses, indicative and subjunctive, as indicated:

1. *īstituō*, 2nd pl. act. 2. *nāscor*, 3rd sing. 3. *ēdō*, 3rd pl. act. 4. *ingredior*, 1st pl. 5. *vetō*, 2nd sing. act.

106

VOCABULARY

<i>augurium</i> , -ī, <i>n.</i> , omen	<i>contemnō</i> , -ere, -temp <i>sī</i> ,
<i>testāmentum</i> , -ī, <i>n.</i> , will	-temptum, despise
honor, <i>honōris</i> , <i>m.</i> , honor	<i>ēdō</i> , -ere, <i>ēdidī</i> , <i>ēditum</i> , bring
<i>ēgregius</i> , -a, -um, excellent; superior	forth, produce; publish, declare
<i>impiger</i> , <i>impigra</i> , <i>impigrum</i> , industrious	<i>ingredior</i> , -ī, <i>ingressus sum</i> , go into, enter
<i>peregrīnus</i> , -a, -um, foreign; <i>masc. as noun</i> , a foreigner	<i>īstituō</i> , -ere, -stitui, -stitū <i>tum</i> , set up, establish, build; train; begin
<i>dīves</i> ( <i>gen. dīvitis</i> ), rich	<i>nāscor</i> , <i>nāscī</i> , <i>nātus sum</i> , be born
<i>faveō</i> , -ēre, <i>fāvī</i> , <i>fautum</i> , <i>with</i> <i>dat.</i> , be favorable to, favor	
<i>adipīscor</i> , <i>adipīscī</i> , <i>adeptus sum</i> , gain, attain, acquire, win	

107

WORD STUDY

The verb *gradior*, *gradī*, *gressus sum*, *step*, *walk*, *go*, (noun *gradus*, -ūs, *m.*, a *step*) changes its spelling in compounds to -*gredior*, -*gredī*, -*gressus sum*. Form compounds of *gradior* using the following prefixes: *ad-*, *con-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *prō-*. Keep in mind the possibility of assimilation of the prefix.

By reference to root verb and prefix, give the meaning of each of the compounds you have formed. Check with a Latin dictionary to verify the meaning of each compound.

Give an English word related to each compound formed and show its relationship to the compound.

105

Air view of historic Dover Castle in Kent. Dover, because of its nearness to the continent, was an important port for continental traffic even in Roman times and during the Middle Ages was considered the key to England.





*Combat between  
Romans and barbarians,  
Rome*

# 14

## Indirect Question

Quid sit futūrum crās fuge quaerere et  
quem Fors diērum cumque dabit, lucrō  
appōne

*Do not ask what may come tomorrow,  
count as profit each day that Fortune  
will give.*

HORACE: ODES 1.9.13-15

108

## Dē Puerō Papiriō

Mōs antea patribus cōscriptis Rōmae fuit in cūriam cum  
praetextātis filiis<sup>1</sup> inīre. Cum (*Whenever*) in senātū rēs maxima  
cōsultāta (*discussed*) posterumque in diem prōlāta erat (*post-  
poned*), nēmō ēnūntiābat quālis esset rēs.

<sup>1</sup>The *toga praetexta*, with a purple border, was worn by boys of free birth until they assumed the *toga virilis*, the plain white toga of manhood.

Ōlim māter Papīrii puerī, quī cum parente suō in cūriā 5 fuerat, ē filiō quaesīvit quid in senātū patrēs ēgissent. Puer negāvit sē ēnūntiāre posse. Māter, mīrāta quae causa esset silentiū puerī, violentius quaerēbat. Nihil quiētis ei dedit.

Tum puer hoc cōsiliū cēpit. Āctum esse in senātū dīxit utrum vidērētūr ūtilius exque rē pūblicā (*to the advantage of the State*) esse ut ūnus duās uxōrēs habēret an ūna duōs virōs. 10

Hīs rēbus audītis māter ad cēterās mātṛōnās properat. Venit ad senātum posterō diē mātṛōnārum turba. Lacrimantēs ōrant nē ūnus duās uxōrēs habeat. Senātōrēs mīrābantur quā dē causā mātṛōnae hoc ōrārent. Papīrius, in mediam cūriam 15 prōgressus, nārrāvit quid māter quaesīvisset, quid ipse mātṛī respondisset. Senātus fidem Papīrii laudāvit, et post haec nūllum puerum praeter illum ūnum Papīrium in cūriam inīre passus est.

AULUS GELLIUS: NOCTES ATTICAE 1.23 (*Adapted*)

109

## DIRECT QUESTION

Quanta est urbs?

How large is the city?

Quō is?

Where are you going?

A direct question is put in the exact words of the speaker.

110

## INDIRECT QUESTION

I know [how large the city is].

Tell me [where you are going].

An indirect question, which quotes the substance of a direct question, is (1) a subordinate noun clause, (2) introduced by an interrogative word or phrase, and (3) dependent on a verb of asking, learning, perceiving, knowing, telling, and the like. In Latin, its verb is in the subjunctive.

In Latin, indirect questions are very common and are used in places where we should never think of using them in English. The tenses of the subjunctive in indirect questions are varied to show clearly what the time of the question was in the direct form: past, present, or future. They cannot, however, show what type of past tense may have been used in the direct.

As a future form of the subjunctive is essential for clarity, the present and imperfect subjunctive of the verb **sum** are used with the future participle to supply the lack of such a form.

## TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS

### PRIMARY SEQUENCE

<b>Dīc mihi</b>	(1) <b>quō eās.</b>	Tell me where you are going.
	(2) <b>quō ierīs.</b>	{ where you have gone. where you went. where you were going.
	(3) <b>quō itūrus sīs.</b>	{ where you will go. where you are going to go. where you intend to go.

In an indirect question in primary sequence, (1) the present subjunctive, (2) the perfect subjunctive, and (3) the future participle with **sim** may be used.

### SECONDARY SEQUENCE

<b>Mihi dixit</b>	(1) <b>quō īret.</b>	He told me where he was going.
	(2) <b>quō iisset.</b>	where he had gone.
	(3) <b>quō itūrus esset.</b>	{ where he would go. where he was going to go. where he intended to go.

In an indirect question in secondary sequence, (1) the imperfect subjunctive, (2) the pluperfect subjunctive, and (3) the future participle with **essem** may be used.

**Quaeris quae (quid) habeam.**

You ask what I have.

**Tibi dō ea quae (id quod) habeo.**

I give you what (= that which) I have.

An indirect question must be distinguished from a relative clause.

**Tūtusne est?**                      Is he safe?

This sentence when changed into an indirect question reads:

I ask whether (if) he is safe.	<b>Quaerō num tūtus sit.</b>
	<b>Quaerō tūtusne sit.</b>

*Whether* or *if* in an indirect question is translated by **num** or the enclitic **-ne**.





Ostia, at the mouth of the Tiber, served as the sea-port for the city of Rome for centuries. With the exception of Pompeii, Ostia is the best remaining example of a Roman town in Italy. The columns are probably the remains of porticoes of the three-and four-story apartment houses which faced the street.

**Āctum est utrum ūtilius esset ut ūnus habēret duās uxōrēs an ūna duōs virōs.**

It was discussed (There was discussion) whether it would be better for one man to have two wives or for one woman to have two husbands.

In a double question, *whether . . . or* is translated by **utrum . . . an, -ne . . . an, or an** alone.

111

## EXERCISES

A. *Translate the direct question and the indirect question using the three subjunctive verb forms given:*

1. Quid mātṛōnae facere cōnantur?

Sciō quid mātṛōnae facere \_\_\_\_ (cōnentur, cōnātae sint, cōnātūrae sint).

Sciēbam quid mātṛōnae facere \_\_\_\_ (cōnārentur, cōnātae essent, cōnātūrae essent).



2. Quid in senātū patrēs agunt?  
Quaerit quid in senātū patrēs \_\_\_\_ (agant, ēgerint, āctūrī sint).  
Quaesivit quid in senātū patrēs \_\_\_\_ (agerent, ēgissent, āctūrī essent).
3. Quid puer ā mātře postulat?  
Rogāsne quid puer ā mātře \_\_\_\_ (postulet, postulāverit, postulātūrus sit)?  
Rogāvistīne quid puer ā mātře \_\_\_\_ (postulāret, postulāvisset, postulātūrus esset)?
4. Cūr senātōrēs puerum laudant?  
Scit cūr senātōrēs puerum \_\_\_\_ (laudent, laudāverint, laudātūrī sint).  
Scīvit cūr senātōrēs puerum \_\_\_\_ (laudārent, laudāvissent, laudātūrī essent).
5. Quō mīlitēs proficīscuntur?  
Mīror quō mīlitēs \_\_\_\_ (proficīscantur, profectī sint, profectūrī sint).  
Mīrātus sum quō mīlitēs \_\_\_\_ (proficīscerentur, profectī essent, profectūrī essent).

B. *Give the verb form expressing present, past and future time:*

1. Quō avis volat? Vidētisne quō avis \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_?  
Vīdistisne quō avis \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_?
2. Quālem pyxidem Psȳchē habet? Sciō quālem pyxidem Psȳchē \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_.  
Scīvī quālem pyxidem Psȳchē \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_.
3. Quod oppidum mīlitēs oppugnant? Mihi nārrat quod oppidum mīlitēs \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_.  
Mihi nārrāvit quod oppidum mīlitēs \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_.
4. Fortisne est? Rogō num fortis \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_.  
Rogāvī num fortis \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_.
5. Cūr fēminae queruntur? Ā tē poscit cūr fēminae \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_.  
Ā tē poposcit cūr fēminae \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_.

C. *Translate:*

1. Dic mihi quid dīxerit. Id quod dīxit nōn est vērūm.
2. Id quod ēripuerunt est ingēns. Rogāvit quid ēripuissent.

3. Urbs in quā incolit est Rōma. Scīmus in quā urbe incolat.
4. Puer quem vīdistī est fortis. Dīc mihi quem puerum vīderīs.
5. Oppidum quod expugnātum est vidēbimus. Tibi mōnstrābō quod oppidum expugnātum sit.

D. *Complete the sentence with the correct form of the verb:*

1. Fābula quam \_\_\_\_ (*he is telling*) est longa.  
Scīmus quam fābulam \_\_\_\_ (*he is telling*).
2. Augurium quod \_\_\_\_ (*they heard*) erat maestum.  
Mīrātus sum quod augurium \_\_\_\_ (*they had heard*).
3. Agmen quod mīlitēs \_\_\_\_ (*are attacking*) nōn expugnābitur.  
Quod agmen mīlitēs \_\_\_\_ (*were attacking*) vīdimus.
4. Senātōrēs fidem quam puer \_\_\_\_ (*showed*) laudāvērunt.  
Senātōrēs quālem fidem puer \_\_\_\_ (*showed*) scīvērunt.
5. Urbs in quā puer \_\_\_\_ (*lives*) est Rōma.  
Scīsne in quā urbe puer \_\_\_\_ (*lives*)?

E. *Translate:*

1. Rogāvit quō irem. Rogāvit ut irem. 2. Quaesīvit ā mē cui cōnfīderem. Petīvit ā mē ut sibi cōnfīderem. 3. Petīvērunt ut prōgrederētur. Quaesīvērunt quō prōgrederētur.
4. Quaerimus cūr loquātur. Petimus ut loquātur. 5. Nōs rogāvērunt cūr tacērēmus. Nōs rogāvērunt ut tacērēmus.

F. *Translate:*

1. Vidit quō irem. Vidit mē ire. 2. Scīvīt quō profectī essent. Scīvīt eōs profectōs esse. 3. Scit quid loquantur. Scit eōs loquī. 4. Ēnūntiant sē oppidum expugnātūrōs esse. Ēnūntiant cūr oppidum expugnātūrī sint. 5. Ēnūntiāvērunt oppidum expugnārī nōn posse. Ēnūntiāvērunt cūr oppidum expugnārī nōn posset.

G. *Translate:*

1. Cognōvī ex quō portū illae nāvēs proficīscantur.
2. Mīrātus quae esset eius rei causa, ex eīs quaesīvit.
3. Intellegō quantō cum periculō id factūrus sit.
4. Ibi ex puerō cognōscit quid in senātū āctum sit.
5. Mīrātus sum num hoc ā puerō dictum esset.
6. Cognōscere volēbam utrum id cōnsilium an alterum esset ūtilius rei pūblicae.

H. *Write in Latin:*

1. He inquired of us where the women had gone.
2. With tears the poor people begged us to help them with food.
3. We wish to know what sort (of people) these senators are.
4. Moved by their entreaties, Papirius told what had been discussed in the senate.
5. Do you know whether they lived in Rome when Tarquinius was king (*abl. abs.*)?
6. The senators wondered why the women begged that one man should not have two wives.

*cūria*, -ae, *f.*, senate-house  
*mātrōna*, -ae, *f.*, married woman,  
matron  
*mōs*, *mōris*, *m.*, habit, custom  
*patrēs cōscriptī*, *patrum*  
*cōscriptōrum*, *m.*, senators  
*quiēs*, *quiētis*, *f.*, rest, repose  
*pūblicus*, -a, -um, of the state,  
public  
*rēs pūblica*, *rei pūblīcae*, *f.*,  
commonwealth, state;  
government; public interest,  
public business  
*quālis*, *quālis*, *quāle*, of what sort

*ēnūntiō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,  
report; disclose  
*videor*, *vidēri*, *vīsus sum*, seem,  
appear, be thought  
*agō*, -ere, *ēgī*, *āctum*, drive; do,  
accomplish; mention, discuss  
*patior*, *pati*, *passus sum*, allow,  
suffer, endure  
*violenter*, *adv.*, strongly,  
urgently, violently  
*num*, *conj. in ind. question*,  
whether, if  
*utrum . . . an*, *conj. in double*  
*question*, whether . . . or

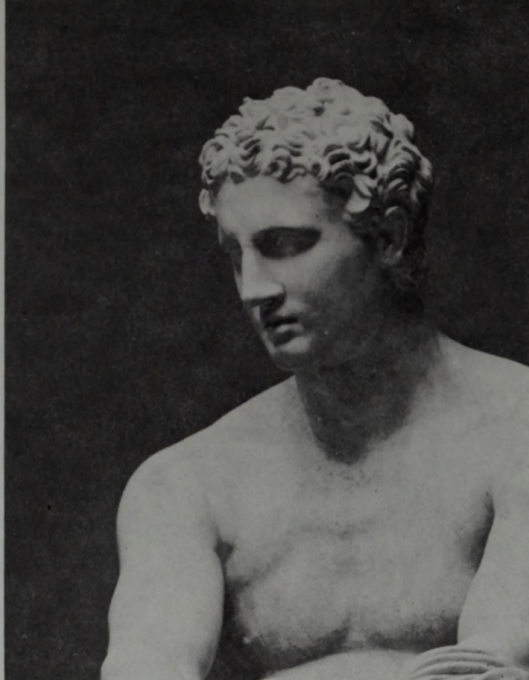




## Vicina Romana

0 25  
Scale: Miles





*Sculpture of Mars in repose. Museum of the Baths of Diocletian, Rome*

15

## Ferō and Its Compounds

### Licet

Stulte, quid haec frūstrā vōtīs puerīlibus optās,  
quae nōn ūlla tibi fertque feretque diēs?

*Oh foolish one, why do you hope in vain with childish prayers  
for that which no day brings you nor ever will?*

OID: TRISTIA 3.8.11-12

113

### Dē Uxōribus

Xanthippē, Sōcratis philosophī uxor, mōrōsa (*ill-tempered*) fuisse fertur et per diem perque noctem irāta. Erat huius mulieris cōsuētūdō virō (*husband*) miserō abūtī. Alcibiadēs, amīcus philosophī, mīrātus quōmodo ille cum tālī uxōre vīvere  
5 posset, rogāvit Sōcratem quae ratiō esset cūr mulierem tam acerbam domō nōn expelleret.

“Quod,” inquit Sōcratēs, “domī tālēs contumēliās uxōris meae ferēs, cēterōrum quoque forīs iniūriam facilius ferre cōsuēscō.”

Mārcus Varrō, scriptor Rōmānus, "Marītus," inquit, 10  
 "vitium uxōris aut tollere (*put down*) aut ferre (*put up with*)  
 dēbet. Is quī vitium tollit uxōrem commodiōrem facit; is quī  
 fert, sē meliōrem.

AULUS GELLIUS (*Adapted*)

**Ferō** is a verb of the third conjugation. It is irregular in the present infinitive active and passive, and in some forms of the present indicative, active and passive.

**ferō ferre tulī lātum** bear, carry, endure; report

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Present</i>	ferō fers fert ferimus fertis ferunt	feror ferris fertur ferimur feriminī feruntur	feram ferās ferat ferāmus ferātis ferant	ferar ferāris ferātur ferāmur ferāminī ferantur
<i>Imperfect</i>	ferēbam ferēbās ferēbat ferēbāmus ferēbātis ferēbant	ferēbar ferēbāris ferēbātur ferēbāmur ferēbāminī ferēbantur	ferrem ferrēs ferret ferrēmus ferrētis ferrent	ferrer ferrēris ferrētur ferrēmur ferrēminī ferrentur
<i>Future</i>	feram ferēs feret ferēmus ferētis ferent	ferar ferēris ferētur ferēmur ferēminī ferentur		
<i>Perfect</i>	tulī	lātus sum	tulerim	lātus sim
<i>Pluperfect</i>	tuleram	lātus eram	tulisses	lātus essem
<i>Future Perfect</i>	tulerō	lātus erō		

## PRESENT IMPERATIVES

<i>Active</i>	<b>fer, ferte</b>	<i>Passive</i>	<b>ferre, ferimini</b>
---------------	-------------------	----------------	------------------------

## INFINITIVES

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Present</i>	<b>ferre</b>	<b>ferri</b>
<i>Perfect</i>	<b>tulisse</b>	<b>lātus esse</b>
<i>Future</i>	<b>lāturus esse</b>	<b>lātum iri</b>

## PARTICIPLES

<i>Present Active</i> <b>ferēns</b>	<i>Perfect Passive</i> <b>lātus</b>	<i>Future Active</i> <b>lāturus</b>
-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------

115

## COMPOUNDS OF FERŌ

**afferō** (adferō), **afferre**, attulī, allātum, bring, bring word  
**auferō**, auferre, abstulī, ablātum, take away, remove  
**cōferō**, cōferre, contulī, collātum, bring together, collect, gather  
**dēferō**, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātum, carry down, bring; report  
**īferō**, īferre, intulī, illātum, bring against, bring; inflict  
**perferō**, perferre, pertulī, perlātum, bear through, bring; report  
**praeferō**, praeferre, praetulī, praelātum, bear before, bring to light;  
 prefer  
**referō**, referre, rettulī, relātum, carry back; report

With **dēferō**, **perferō**, **referō**, *report*, the person to whom the report is brought is expressed by **ad** with the accusative.

Useful phrases:

<b>ferunt</b>	they say
<b>fertur</b>	it is said
<b>auxilium ferre</b>	to bring help, give help ( <i>with dat.</i> )
<b>bellum īferre</b>	to make war upon ( <i>with dat.</i> )
<b>pedem referre</b>	to fall back, retire, retreat
<b>sē referre</b>	to go back, return

116

## PERMISSION

**Militibus domum redire licet.**

It is permitted to the soldiers to return home.

Permission is granted to the soldiers to return home.

The soldiers may return home.



Permission is expressed by **licet, licēre, licuit**, *it is permitted, permission is granted*, with the dative and the infinitive.

**Eis per ducem redire licet.**

They may return as far as the leader is concerned.

They have the leader's permission to return.

The person who grants the permission is expressed by **per** with the accusative.

117 The perfect tense may denote a present state resulting from a completed action: **cognōvī**, I know (*lit.*, I have found out, I have become acquainted with); **cōnsuēvī**, I am accustomed (*lit.*, I have become accustomed). Similarly, the pluperfect may denote a past state resulting from a previously completed action: **cognōveram**, I knew (*lit.*, I had found out); **cōnsuēveram**, I was accustomed (*lit.*, I had become accustomed). The future perfect may denote a future state resulting from a previously completed action: **cognōverō**, I shall know (*lit.*, I shall have found out).

Similarly, the perfect forms **meminī**, I remember (*lit.*, have recalled) and **ōdī**, I hate (*lit.*, have come to hate) have the force of the present, while their pluperfects and future perfects have the force of the imperfect and future.

## 118

## EXERCISES

A. *Translate the following verbs:*

1. Fert, affert, aufert. 2. Dētulit, praetulit, rettulit.  
3. Ferētis, inferētis, cōferētis. 4. Perferunt, dēferunt, inferunt. 5. Ferēbās, auferēbās, afferēbās. 6. Tulissem, dētulissem, pertulissem. 7. Inferēns, ferēns, afferēns. 8. Aufertis, dēfertis, fertis. 9. Perferri, inferri, cōferri. 10. Ferimus, ferēmus, tulerāmus.

B. *Change these subjunctive verbs to the corresponding tense in the indicative:*

1. ferret	4. ferat	7. ōdissent
2. tulerint	5. ferrēminī	8. falleret
3. lātus essem	6. meminereim	9. cōnsuēverit



C. *Change these indicative verbs to the corresponding tense in the subjunctive:*

- |              |               |               |
|--------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. lātus est | 4. fertur     | 7. tulistis   |
| 2. ferunt    | 5. lātus eram | 8. ferēbātis  |
| 3. tulerās   | 6. fertis     | 9. lātī erant |

D. *Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the indicated verb:*

1. Pedem \_\_\_\_ (*they had retreated*).
2. Auxilium \_\_\_\_ (*bring, s.*).
3. Auxilium nōbīs \_\_\_\_ (*he brings*).
4. Auxilium nōn \_\_\_\_ (*they will bring*).
5. Sē \_\_\_\_ (*went back*) dīcit.
6. Eum esse bonum \_\_\_\_ (*they say*).
7. Puer aquam \_\_\_\_ (*carrying*) vēnit.
8. Puerō aquam ferre \_\_\_\_ (*it is permitted*).
9. Mīlitēs pedem \_\_\_\_ (*retreated*).
10. Urbī bellum \_\_\_\_ (*they will make*).
11. Vitia \_\_\_\_ (*they hate*).
12. Vitia \_\_\_\_ (*they will hate*).
13. Bellum īferre \_\_\_\_ (*they are accustomed*).
14. Fābulae \_\_\_\_ (*we remembered*).
15. Mīlitēs, oppidō bellum \_\_\_\_ (*make*).
16. Mīlitēs oppidō bellum \_\_\_\_ (*making*) vīcimus.
17. Eīs bellum īferre \_\_\_\_ (*were permitted*).
18. Nōs referre \_\_\_\_ (*we were accustomed*).
19. Iniūriās \_\_\_\_ (*they will hate*).
20. Iniūriās \_\_\_\_ (*we hated*).

E. *Translate:*

1. Hīs barbarīs per Caesarem licet arma ferre.
2. Xanthippē mulier mōrōsa fuisse fertur.
3. Mīlitēs amīcīs auxilium ferre cōnsuēvērunt.
4. Licēbitne adūlēscentibus arma ferre?
5. Mīlitibus repulsīs in castra redīre nōn licēbat.
6. Repulsōs hostēs pedem referre ferunt.
7. Cūr hunc ōdistis quī vōbīs numquam invīdit?
8. Omnia quae audīvit meminit.

F. *Write in Latin:*

1. They were accustomed to receive, not to give, gifts.
2. While bringing aid they were captured; after bringing aid they were captured.
3. They will remember everything that has been said to their friends.
4. We do not hate them although they have made war on us.
5. You have our permission to hold a conference.
6. The disagreeable women did not permit him to leave the city.

<b>contumēlia</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , abuse, insult	<b>ūtor</b> , ūtī, ūsus sum, <i>with abl.</i> , use
<b>vitium</b> , -ī, <i>n.</i> , fault, defect; offense, crime	<b>abūtor</b> , -ūtī, -ūsus sum, abuse
<b>cōnsuētūdō</b> , -tūdinis, <i>f.</i> , custom	<b>vīvō</b> , -ere, vīxī, victum, live <sup>1</sup>
<b>ratio</b> , -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , method, plan; account; business; reason	<b>vīvus</b> , -a, -um, alive
<b>acerbus</b> , -a, -um, harsh, sharp; rough, violent; morose, disagreeable	<b>meminī</b> , meminisse, <i>with gen.</i> , remember <sup>2</sup>
<b>commodus</b> , -a, -um, suitable, convenient; agreeable, pleasant	<b>ōdī</b> , ōdisse, hate
<b>cōnsuēscō</b> , -ere, cōnsuēvī, cōn- suētum, become accustomed	<b>forās</b> , <i>adv.</i> , out, out of doors (place to which)
	<b>foris</b> , <i>adv.</i> , out of doors, abroad (place where); from outside, from abroad (place from which)

The compounds of **ferō** may sometimes furnish us with two English verbs, one from the present stem and another from the supine stem of the Latin verb. For example, from **referō**, we have both *refer* and *relate*.

Give an English verb from the present stem and another from the supine stem of: **cōferō**, **differō**, **trānsferō**. Check with the English dictionary to determine any difference in meaning between the verb formed from the present stem and that formed from the supine stem.

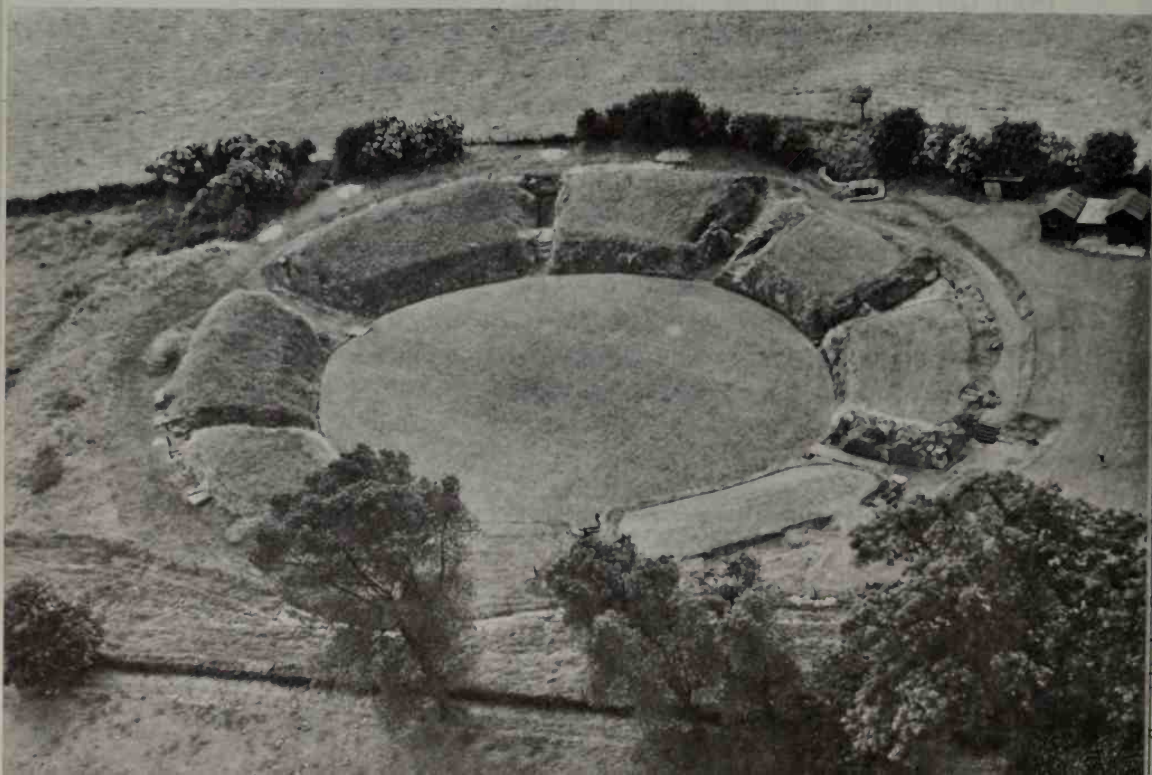
The Latin noun suffix **-ia** denotes *quality* or *condition*. This suffix is used to form many nouns from the present stem of the compounds of **ferō**. The English equivalent is **-ence**. Form Latin nouns from the present stem of: **cōferō**, **dēferō**, **inferō**, **praeferō**, **referō**, **trānsferō**. Give the English derivative of each of these nouns. Check in both Latin and English dictionaries to determine any difference in meaning between the Latin noun and its English derivative.

<sup>1</sup>The supine of **vīvō** is **victum**; of **vincō**, **victum**.

<sup>2</sup>The accusative is used with **meminī** if the object is a neuter adjective or pronoun.



Two views portray the Roman amphitheater at Caerleon, Monmouthshire, England. This was the site of the Roman fortress of Isca, garrisoned permanently by the second legion of the 50,000-man expeditionary force sent by Emperor Claudius in 43 A.D. to subdue south Wales. According to legend, the inner circle of the amphitheater was known as the "Round Table" of King Arthur, and it was at Caerleon that Tennyson wrote *Idylls of the King*.







The Roman military complex at Corbridge, England, was occupied from about 80 A.D. to 123 A.D. Excavations shown in the photograph above reveal extensive granaries; below are headquarters and what is thought to be an underground strong room for the storage of valuables.







Marble tombstone in commemoration of a boy. Roman, late first century A.D.

16

**Clauses of Purpose**  
**Indefinite Pronoun Quis**  
**Indefinite Adjective Qui**

Lēgum omnēs servī sumus ut liberī esse possīmus.

*We are all servants of the law to the end that we may be free.*

CICERO: PRO CLUENTIO 53.146

Ōlim, Gēryone (*Geryon*), rēge Hispāniae, interfectō, Herculēs bovēs mīrā speciē (*of marvelous beauty*) abēgit et in Italiam vēnit. Postquam, bovēs prae (*before*) sē agēns, Tiberim trānāvit, ad locum herbidum (*grassy*) pervēnit (alta moenia Rōmae nōndum aedificāta erant). Prope flūmen morābātur 5 ut sē bovēsque reficeret. Bovēs nōn magnā diligentiā custodiēbat quod nihil (*not at all*) timēbat nē quis bovēs raperet.

Ibi, ubi somnus Herculem oppressit, pāstor, nōmine Cācus, vir validīs vīribus, pulchritūdine boum captus (*captivated*), eōs rapere cōstituit. Nē qua vēstīgia (*footprints*) essent 10 pedibus rēctīs (*pointing forward*), āversōs (*backward*) octō bovēs caudīs in spēluncam trāxit.

Prīmā lūce Herculēs, ē somnō excitātus, ubi sēnsit partem boum abesse, ad proximam spēluncam properāvit. Postquam vīdit omnia vēstīgia forās (*away from the cave*) versa, incertus 15 animī ex illō locō reliquōs bovēs agere coepit. Discessū bovēs mūgīre (*to moo*) coepērunt; tum iuvenca (*heifer*) in spēluncā abdita vōcem reddidit (*returned the cry*). Quā audītā Herculēs ad spēluncam cucurrit. Cācus, Herculem vī prohibēre cōnātus, clāvā (*club*) interfectus est. Sic servātīs suis bōbus omnibus 20 Herculēs in lūcō (*grove*) āram statuit, Āram Maximam ab Rōmānīs appellātam.

LIVY 1.7.4-7 (*Adapted*)

I am going downtown	to buy a hat.
	in order to buy a hat.
	that I may buy a hat.
	in order that I may buy a hat.

In the examples above, the subordinate clause expresses the purpose of the action *I am going downtown*. Such a subordinate clause is called a clause of purpose.

### PRIMARY SEQUENCE

Prope flūmen morātur	ut sē reficiat.
	{ to rest.
He is staying near the river	{ in order to rest.
	{ so that he may rest.
	{ in order that he may rest.

### SECONDARY SEQUENCE

Prope flūmen morābātur	ut sē reficeret.
	{ to rest.
He was staying near the river	{ in order to rest.
	{ so that he might rest.
	{ in order that he might rest.

In Latin, a clause of purpose takes the subjunctive introduced by **ut**. The present subjunctive is used in primary sequence; the imperfect, in secondary sequence. Since, by its very nature, a purpose is incomplete, the tenses of completion, the perfect and the pluperfect, are not used in purpose clauses.

Note that Latin, unlike English, does not use the infinitive to express purpose. In the sentence *We eat to live, to live must be translated ut vivāmus.*

### NEGATIVE CLAUSE OF PURPOSE

Pugnō	nē vincar.
	{ in order that I may not be defeated.
I fight	{ so as not to be defeated.
	{ lest I be defeated.
	{ to avoid being defeated.

A negative clause of purpose is introduced by **nē**.

### RELATIVE CLAUSE OF PURPOSE

Lēgātum mittit	quī pācem petat.
He is sending an envoy	to seek peace.
	<i>lit.</i> , who is to seek peace.
Legiōnem mīsit	quae urbem oppugnāret.
He sent a legion	to attack the city.
	<i>lit.</i> , which was to attack the city.



Winifred Drumm

A section of the wall built across northern England by the emperor Hadrian, 122-126 A.D., designed as a sentry beat, not a defensive fortification.

If the principal clause states that a certain person (or thing) is designated for a certain purpose, the relative pronoun, in place of *ut*, may introduce the clause of purpose. This construction appears chiefly after *mittō* and its compounds, *relinquō*, and *dēligō*.

123

## INDEFINITE PRONOUN *QUIS*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL		
	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quis	quid	quī	quae	qua (quae)
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quid	quōs	quās	qua (quae)
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus



	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	qua (quae)	quod	quī	quae	qua (quae)
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	qua (quae)
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

*Sī quis haec dīcit, audiātur.*

If anyone says this, let him be heard.

*Nisi quid vīs, abī.*

Unless you wish something, go away.

*Bovēs abdidit nē quis eōs invenīret.*

He hid the cattle lest anyone (might) find them.

*Rogāvit num quod perīculum vīdissem.*

He asked whether I had seen any danger.

The indefinite pronouns **quis**, *anyone*, *somebody*, **quid**, *anything*, *something*, and the indefinite adjective **quī**, **qua**, **quod**, *any*, are used after **sī**, *if*, **nisi**, *unless*, **nē**, *lest*, and **num**, *whether*.

## CONSTRUCTION IN NEGATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

Templum custodiunt They guard the temple	{	nē ineāmus.
		so that we may not enter.
		nē quis ineat.
		so that no one may enter.
		nē quid ineat.
		so that nothing may enter.
	{	nē qua mulier ineat.
		that no woman may enter.
	{	nē umquam ineāmus.
		that we may never enter.

that . . . not	nē	that no ( <i>adj.</i> )	nē quī, qua, quod
that no one	nē quis	that . . . never	nē umquam
that nothing	nē quid		

A negative clause of purpose must be introduced by **nē**.

A. *Translate:*

1. Morātur ut bovēs reficiat; morābātur ut bovēs reficeret.
2. Fugient nē capiantur; fūgērunt nē caperentur.
3. Mittit mīlitēs quī urbem oppugnent; mīsit mīlitēs quī urbem oppugnārent.
4. Dēligent virum quī cōpiās dūcat; dēlēgērunt virum quī cōpiās dūceret.
5. Custōdīmus captīvōs nē quid sentiātur; custōdīvimus captīvōs nē quid sentīrētur.
6. Custōdiunt mīlitēs nē umquam effugere possint; custōdīvērunt mīlitēs nē umquam effugere possent.
7. Nē qua vēstīgia cōspiciantur, bovēs caudīs trahit. Nē qua vēstīgia cōspicerentur, bovēs caudīs trāxit.
8. Monet nē quis ingrediātur; monēbat nē quis ingrederētur.
9. Fēminīs persuādeō ut forās prōgrediantur; fēminīs persuāsī ut forās prōgrederentur.
10. Mīlitibus persuādent ut taceant; mīlitibus persuāsērunt ut tacērent.

B. *Complete the following sentences:*

1. Mīlitēs mittit \_\_\_\_; mīlitēs mīsit \_\_\_\_ (*to capture the town*).
2. Pugnāmus \_\_\_\_; pugnāvimus \_\_\_\_ (*so that we may [might] not be conquered*).
3. Animōs verbīs cōfirmat \_\_\_\_; animōs verbīs cōfirmāvit \_\_\_\_ (*so that we may [might] never despair*).
4. Mīlitēs revertuntur \_\_\_\_; mīlitēs reversī sunt \_\_\_\_ (*to guard the city*).
5. Mīlitēs exercet \_\_\_\_; mīlitēs exercuit \_\_\_\_ (*to besiege the camp*).
6. Auxilium poscimus \_\_\_\_; auxilium poposcimus \_\_\_\_ (*so that no one may [might] be abandoned*).
7. Mīlites īnstruit \_\_\_\_; mīlitēs īnstrūxit \_\_\_\_ (*so that they may [might] advance*).
8. Monet \_\_\_\_; monuit \_\_\_\_ (*that no one should keep silent*).
9. Monēmus \_\_\_\_; monuimus \_\_\_\_ (*that nothing should be repaired*).
10. Sociīs imperat \_\_\_\_; sociīs imperāvit \_\_\_\_ (*not to enter*).



C. *Translate:*

1. Pugnāmus ut vincāmus; cōnāmur vincere.
2. Pugnāmus nē vincāmur; vincere iussī sumus.
3. Vetuit eōs prōgredī; eīs praemia dedit nē prōgrederentur.
4. Bovēs mūgīre coepērunt; bovēs retinuērunt nē mūgīrent.
5. Fēminīs multa dīxit nē quererentur; negāvit fēminās questūrās esse.
6. Prohibuit bovēs exīre; bovēs in spēluncam trāxit nē cōnspicerentur.
7. Aquila volāre cōnātur; liberāmus aquilam ut volet.
8. Mittit mīlitēs ut oppidum aggrediantur; prohibet mīlitēs oppidum aggredī.

D. *Fill in the blanks with the infinitive or subjunctive as indicated:*

1. \_\_\_\_ vidēris; \_\_\_\_ tacēs.  
to listen
2. \_\_\_\_ sciunt; \_\_\_\_ librōs emunt.  
to read
3. \_\_\_\_ potest; \_\_\_\_ ad spēluncam it.  
to steal the cattle
4. Mīlitēs \_\_\_\_ mīsērunt; mīlitēs \_\_\_\_ iussērunt.  
to break down the bridge
5. \_\_\_\_ cōnsuēvērunt; \_\_\_\_ dīligenter labōrāvērunt.  
to be rich
6. \_\_\_\_ parābat; \_\_\_\_ in flūmen sē iēcīt.  
to die
7. \_\_\_\_ cupiēbāmus; \_\_\_\_ rem gerēbāmus.  
not to harm anyone
8. \_\_\_\_ cōstituī; \_\_\_\_ discessī.  
not to run any risk (**perīculum facere**)
9. Hortātur \_\_\_\_; vetat \_\_\_\_.  
us to set out for home
10. Iubēbās \_\_\_\_; imperābās \_\_\_\_.  
us to swim across the river

E. *Translate:*

1. Herculēs prope flūmen morābātur ut bovēs reficeret.
2. Sine morā Cācus bovēs abdidit nē quis eās invenīret.
3. Cācus sē in spēluncam abdidit nē caperētur.

Wall decoration in the House of the Vettii, Pompeii.



Alinari, Fototeca Unione

4. Fīliōs suōs abīre iussit nē quid dē hīs cōnsiliīs cognōscerent.
5. Captīvōs interficī iubēbit nē effugiant.
6. Ducēs dīligentēs dēlēgit quī auxiliīs praeessent.

F. *Write in Latin:*

1. He spoke in a loud (**magnus**) voice so as to frighten Cacus.
2. He sent twenty-two horsemen to follow up the fleeing infantry.
3. In order that the city might not be taken, they fortified it with the greatest care.
4. Hercules sent the men away so that they might learn nothing about his plans.
5. He will order the gate to be closed so that no one may enter.
6. He fled quickly so that he might never be captured.
7. He went out-doors to see where the tracks led.

## 127

## VOCABULARY

cauda, -ae, f., tail	abigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, drive away
spēlunca, -ae, f., cave	āvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum, turn away, turn aside;
vēstīgium, -ī, n., footprint, track	draw off
bōs, bovis ( <i>gen. pl. bovm or boum; dat. and abl. pl. bōbus or būbus</i> ), m. and f., ox, cow	reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, remake, redo; repair;
moenia, moenium, n. pl., defensive walls, city walls	refresh, rest
discessus, discessūs, m., withdrawal, departure	statuō, -ere, statuī, statūtum, set up, establish; determine, decide
diligēns ( <i>gen. dīligentis</i> ), careful	custōdiō, -īre, -ivī, -ītum, guard
dīligentia, -ae, f., care, diligence	sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum, feel, perceive
aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, build	nōndum, <i>adv.</i> , not yet
nō, nāre, nāvī, nātum, swim	
trānō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, swim across	



A fourth declension noun denoting the action of the verb or the result of the action may be formed on the supine stem of a verb; for example, **discessus**, **discessūs**, *m.*, *withdrawal, departure*, is formed on the supine stem of **discēdō**, **discēdere**, **discessī**, **discessum**, *depart, withdraw*.

Form similar nouns based on the supine stem of the following verbs: **adeō**, **ascendō**, **cadō**, **currō**, **exerceō**, **iaciō**, **orior**, **sentiō**, **sūmō**. Check the nouns you have formed in the Latin dictionary to determine the relation of the meaning of the noun to that of the verb.



*Fragment of a  
bas-relief in the  
Forum, Rome*

# 17

## Subjunctive of *Possum* and *Eō* Construction with Verbs of Fearing Expressions of Place

Iactāmus iam prīdem omnis tē Rōma beātum;  
sed vereor nē cui dē tē plūs quam tibi crēdās,  
nēve putēs alium sapiente bonōque beātum.

*For a long time we, all Rome, have boasted that you are  
a happy man; but I fear that concerning yourself you  
may trust another's judgment more than your own and  
think that someone other than the wise and good man can  
be happy.*

HORACE: EPISTLES 1.16.18-20

Tarquinius Superbus erat malus crudēlisque. Rōmānī rēgem verēbantur; liberīs uxōribusque timēbant. Ut malus in pāce rēx erat, ita dux bellī malus. Ubi Gabiōs<sup>1</sup> (*Gabii*) propinquam urbem frūstrā vī adortus est, veritus ut armīs capere posset,  
5 fraude ac dolō urbem capere cōnātus est.

Itaque Sextum filiū Gabiōs mīsit. Quī ex compositō Gabīnīs (*the people of Gabii*) dīxit patrem suum esse crudēlissimum; sē inter tēla et gladiōs Rōmā effūgissee; nihil usquam esse sibi tūtum nisi apud hostēs patris. Gabīnī eum benignē  
10 accēpērunt. Mox in cōsilia pūblica dūcitur; tandem dux ad bellum legitur; nōn pater Tarquinius potentior Rōmae quān filius Gabiīs est.

Sextus, iam vir magnā apud Gabīnōs auctōritāte, nūntium Rōmam ad patrem mīsit quidnam (*to find out what*) sē facere  
15 vellet. Rēx nihil vōce respondit sed repente excessit et in hortum trānsiit, sequente nūntiō filiī. Ibi ambulāns tacitus summa papāverum (*of poppies*) capita baculō dēcussit (*struck off*). Intereā nūntius, nihil suspicātus, Gabiōs ad Sextum rediit. “Nihil,” inquit, “rēx mihi respondit; in hortō ambulāns  
20 flōrum altissimōrum capita dēcussit. Quid vult?”

Sextus intellēxit rēgem, virum callidum, monēre ut dēlēret et interficeret prīncipēs cīvitātis. Tum ā Sextō multī ē ducibus Gabiīs expelluntur, multī interficiuntur, dōnec rēs Gabīna (*the State of Gabii*) rēgī Rōmānō sine ūllā pugnā in manum  
25 trāditur.

LIVY 1.53-54 (*Adapted*)

### 130 SUBJUNCTIVE OF POSSUM; EŌ

possum, posse, potuī, be able eō, ire, iī (ivī), itum, go

#### PRESENT

possim	possīmus	eam	eāmus
possīs	possītis	eās	eātis
possit	possint	eat	eant

<sup>1</sup>Gabii, a city of Latium, twelve miles from Rome.

# IMPERFECT

possem	possēmus	īrem	īrēmus
possēs	possētis	irēs	irētis
posset	possent	īret	īrent

# PERFECT

potuerim	potuerīmus	ierim	ierīmus
potueris	potuerītis	ieris	ierītis
potuerit	potuerint	ierit	ierint

# PLUPERFECT

potuissem	potuissēmus	iissem	iissēmus
potuissēs	potuissētis	iissēs	iissētis
potuisset	potuissent	iisset	iissent

131

## VERBS OF FEARING

Senem vereor.	I fear the old man.
Senī vereor.	I fear for the old man.
Īre vereor.	I fear to go.
Vereor nē senex eat.	I fear that the old man is going.

A verb of fearing may be used with (1) a direct object, (2) a dative of interest, (3) a complementary infinitive, or (4) a subordinate clause.

**Vereor nē arx capiātur.**

I fear that the citadel is being (will be, may be) taken.

**Verēbar nē arx caperētur.**

I feared that the citadel was being (would be, might be) taken.

**Vereor nē arx capta sit.**

I fear that the citadel has been taken.

**Verēbar nē arx capta esset.**

I feared that the citadel had been taken.

Clauses dependent on verbs of fearing and such phrases as **periculum est**, *there is danger*, have the subjunctive introduced by **nē**, *that* or *lest*. Clauses dependent on verbs and expressions of fear follow the rule for sequence of tenses, Sec. 103.



**Vereor ut (nē nōn) arx capiātur.**

I fear that the citadel will not be taken.

A negative subordinate clause is introduced by **ut** or **nē nōn**,  
*that . . . not.*

**Nōn vereor nē arx nōn capiātur.**

I am not afraid that the citadel will not be taken.

If the verb of fearing is itself in the negative, a negative subordinate clause is introduced by **nē nōn** only.

## 132

## EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE

**Omnēs in partēs fugiunt.**

They flee in (*Latin*, into) all directions.

**Quam in partem proficīscī vultis?**

In what direction do you wish to set out?

**Hostēs sē in silvās abdidērunt.**

The enemy hid themselves in the woods.

(*Latin* emphasizes their entrance into the woods.)

**In cōspectum cīvium vērunt.**

They came in sight of the citizens.

With verbs of motion, place to which is expressed in *Latin* by the accusative with **ad** or **in**. In English the idea of motion is often left unstressed.

**Impedimenta in castris pōnit.**

He places the baggage in the camp.

**Caesar exercitum in hibernis collocāvit.**

Caesar stationed the army in winter quarters.

Verbs of placing, such as **pōnō** and **collocō**, usually take the ablative with **in**.

## 133

## LOCATIVE CASE

**Rōmae, at Rome; Athēnīs, at Athens; Corinthī, at Corinth;**

**Gabiīs, at Gabii; Carthāgine, at Carthage.**

*Latin* retains traces of a seventh case, the locative, which is used, without a preposition, to express place in which. This

case survives in the names of cities, towns, and small islands, and in a few other nouns. The endings of the locative case are:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st Declension	-ae	-īs
2nd Declension	-ī	-īs
3rd Declension	-ī, -e	-ibus

The locative of **domus**, *home*, is **domī**, *at home*; of **rūs**, *the country*, **rūrī**, *in the country*.

134 For expressions of place with names of cities, towns, and small islands, see Sec. 42.

**Ab Rōmā veniunt.** They come from the vicinity of Rome.

**Ad Rōmam prōgrediuntur.** They advance into the vicinity of Rome.

**Ab** and **ad** when used with the names of cities, etc. denote *from the vicinity of* and *into* (or *in*) *the vicinity of*.

**Longē ab Rōmā absunt.** They are far distant from Rome.

**Ab** is used with the names of cities after **longē**, *far*, and verbs of distance.

The Romans often regarded an act as proceeding from, or as viewed from, a certain quarter, rather than as happening in that quarter: **ā fronte**, *in the van, in front*; **ā latere**, *on the flank*; **ā tergō**, *in the rear, behind*; **ab sinistrā parte**, *on the left*; **ā dextrō cornū**, *on the right wing*; **ūnā ex parte**, *on one side*; **ex omnibus partibus**, *on all sides*.

135

## ADVERBS OF PLACE

<b>hūc</b> hither, here, to this place	<b>hinc</b> hence, from this place	<b>hīc</b> here, in this place
<b>eō</b> thither, there, to that place	<b>inde</b> thence, from that place	<b>ibi</b> there, in that place
<b>quō?</b> whither? where? to what place?	<b>unde?</b> whence? from what place?	<b>ubi?</b> where? in what place?

**Hostēs ā finibus prohibent, or Hostēs finibus prohibent.**

They keep the enemy from their territory.

**Ex proeliō excēdunt, or Proeliō excēdunt.**

They are withdrawing from battle.

Separation is usually expressed by the ablative with **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**. With some verbs, such as **liberō**, *free*, the preposition is regularly omitted.

**Mē timōre liberat.** He frees me from fear.

Many verbs of abstaining, excluding, removing, relieving, etc., together with some compounds of **ab**, **dē**, and **ex**, are used either with or without a preposition. Some of these verbs are **dēsistō**, *desist from, cease, abandon*; **ēgredior**, *depart from, go out, go forth, leave*; **excēdō**, *go out, withdraw*; **expellō**, *drive out*; **prohibeō**, *prevent (from), keep (from)*.

## 137

## EXERCISES

A. *Translate:*

1. Exercitum timent. Exercituī timent. Pugnāre timent. Timent nē eat.
2. Puerōs verentur. Puerīs verentur. Excēdere verentur. Verentur nē excēdāmus.
3. Rēgem timuit. Rēgī timuit. Loquī timuit. Timuit nē rēx loqueretur.
4. Cīvēs timēbant. Cīvibus timēbant. Dissimulāre timēbant. Timēbant nē cīvēs dissimulāvissent.
5. Rem pūblicam verentur. Reī pūblicae verentur. Rēgnāre verentur. Verentur nē hominēs doluerint.

B. *Translate:*

1. Timeō nē puella eat. Timeō ut puella eat. Nōn timeō nē puella nōn eat.
2. Veritī sunt nē ex oppidō excēderent. Veritī sunt ut ex oppidō excēderent. Nōn veritī sunt nē ex oppidō nōn excēderent.

3. Nōn verēbāmur nē proficīscī nōn possēmus. Verēbāmur ut proficīscī possēmus. Verēbāmur ut proficīscerētur.
4. Timet ut proficīscantur. Perīculum est nē proficīscantur. Nōn timuit nē nōn proficīscerentur.
5. Verētur ut ierint. Verētur nē ierint. Nōn verētur nē nōn ierint.

C. Complete the sentence by filling in the blank:

1. Timeō \_\_\_\_ (that they have gone). 2. Nōn timeō \_\_\_\_ (that they will not go). 3. Veritī sunt \_\_\_\_ (that he would not complain). 4. Timēbāmus \_\_\_\_ (that he had not complained). 5. Perīculum erat \_\_\_\_ (that the town was being captured). 6. Verentur \_\_\_\_ (that the town has not been captured). 7. Verēbātur \_\_\_\_ (that the women would grieve). 8. Perīculum est \_\_\_\_ (that the punishment will be announced). 9. Timuērunt \_\_\_\_ (that the city could not be captured). 10. Nōn timuērunt \_\_\_\_ (that the soldiers would not bring aid).

D. Fill in the blanks:

1. \_\_\_\_ (from the city); \_\_\_\_ (from Rome); \_\_\_\_ (from the vicinity of Rome) prōgressī sunt. 2. \_\_\_\_ (in the town); \_\_\_\_ (in Athens); \_\_\_\_ (at home) morātur. 3. \_\_\_\_ (to the cave); \_\_\_\_ (to Carthage); \_\_\_\_ (home) profectus est. 4. \_\_\_\_ (in the country); \_\_\_\_ (in Rome); \_\_\_\_ (in the city) rēgnat. 5. \_\_\_\_ (from the vicinity of Athens); \_\_\_\_ (from Corinth); \_\_\_\_ (from home) exiērunt.

E. Fill in the blanks:

1. \_\_\_\_ (From where) vēnit Sextus? Sextus \_\_\_\_ (from here) vēnit.
2. \_\_\_\_ (Where) habitat Sextus? \_\_\_\_ (there) habitat Sextus.
3. \_\_\_\_ (Where) it Sextus? \_\_\_\_ (to this place) it Sextus.
4. \_\_\_\_ (To what place) ire potuit? \_\_\_\_ (to that place) ire potuit.
5. \_\_\_\_ (In what place) nātus est? \_\_\_\_ (in this place) nātus est.

F. Translate:

1. Lēgātus nūntiīs ā duce omnēs in partēs missīs timet.
2. Nōn timēbāmus nē sē armāre nōn possent.



3. Verēbantur nē mīlitēs ex moenibus ēgredī possent.
4. Perīculum erat nē hae nāvēs trāns mare nāvīgāre nōn possent.
5. Cōnāminīne nōs perīculō ā dextrō cornū līberāre?
6. Quamquam ego erō tūtus, vereor nē tū magnō in perīculō domī sīs.

G. *Write in Latin:*

1. The general had feared the inhabitants; he had feared that the army might be attacked on all sides.
2. There was the greatest danger that the legion might be surrounded.
3. They never feared that the consuls could not manage (*gerere*) the state well.
4. The soldiers advanced on all sides: on the right wing were the legions; on the left were the allies.
5. The general knew where the soldiers had concealed themselves; he felt that they were freed from danger.
6. The cavalry, having followed from Rome with great speed, attacked the enemy fleeing toward home.
7. Let us go to Rome and remain far from Carthage.

baculum, -ī, *n.*, rod, staff  
 dolus, -ī, *m.*, trickery, deceit  
 hortus, -ī, *m.*, garden  
 auctor, -ōris, *m.*, originator,  
 author; promoter  
 auctōritās, -tātis, *f.*, influence,  
 authority  
 fraus, fraudis, *f.*, deceit, fraud  
 benignus, -a, -um, kind  
 benignē, kindly

callidus, -a, -um, clever  
 suspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, suspect  
 excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum,  
 go out, withdraw  
 dōnec, *conj.*, until  
 ex compositō, *adv.*, by agreement  
 intereā, *adv.*, meanwhile  
 repente, *adv.*, suddenly  
 ut . . . ita, *correlative conj.*, as . . .  
 so, just as . . . so



The Spoils of  
Jerusalem, from the  
Arch of Titus in the  
Forum, Rome

# 18

## Verbs of Hindrance and Doubt

Et tamen dux ille Graeciae nusquam optat ut *Āiācis* similēs habeat decem, at ut Nestoris; quod sī sibi acciderit, nōn dubitat quīn brevī sit Trōia peritūra.<sup>1</sup>

*And yet that famous leader of Greece nowhere wishes for ten like Ajax, but for ten like Nestor. He has no doubt that, if he gets them, Troy will perish in a short time.*

CICERO: DE SENECTUTE 10.31

139

P. Decius Mūs, Velut Pater, Sē Dēvovet  
(Sacrifices Himself) prō Patriā

Cum hīs duābus gentibus, Gallīs et Samnītibus, cōsulēs Rōmānī ūnō tempore proeliō congregiuntur; contrā Samnītēs, Q. Fabius, contrā Gallōs, P. Decius. Fabius suōs prīmō retinuit nē in aciē dīmīcārent quod nōn dubitābat quīn animī

<sup>1</sup>Cicero refers to Homer's *Iliad* where Agamemnon expresses a wish for ten wise men, like Nestor, rather than for ten strong men, like Ajax.

5 hostium longiōre certāmine resīderent (*would sink*). Decius autem et aetāte et vigōre ferōcior, quantumcumque (*whatever*) vīrium habuit certāmine prīmō effūdit (*poured forth*). Bis (*Twice*) Gallicus equitātus āversus est. Mox autem hostēs, impetū essedīs (*with chariots*) factō, Rōmānōs fugāvērunt.  
 10 Sonitus equōrum rotārumque (*and of the wheels*) Rōmānōrum perterruit equōs. Terror ingēns in equitātum Rōmānum inicitur. Turbātae hinc etiam legiōnēs.

Decius frūstrā cōnātus est cōpiās suās dēterrēre quōminus terga verterent. Deinde patrem P. Decium nōmine compellāns (*addressing by name*), "Cūr ultrā (*further*)," inquit, "moror? Nostrō generī datum est nōs sacrificāre prō bonō publicō. Iam ego hostium mīlitēs mēcum cadentēs dīs Mānibus (*to the gods of the dead*) dabō."

Haec locūtus, M. Livium pontificem, quem dēscendēns in  
 20 aciem ab sē dīgredī (*from leaving him*) prohibuerat, eadem verba iussit dīcere quibus pater P. Decius bellō Latīnō dēvōtus erat. Hīs verbīs dictīs, equō concitātō in Gallōrum aciem quā (*where*) erat cōnfertissima, īfestīs tēlīs interfectus est.

Vix hūmānārum inde (*from then on*) cōpiārum erat pugna.  
 25 Rōmānī, duce āmissō, quae rēs terrōrī aliās (*at other times*) esse solet, tenentur nē fugiant. Gallī autem vel terga vertērunt vel aliēnātā mente (*driven mad*) nec pugnāre nec fugere potuērunt.

LIVY 10.27-29 (*Adapted*)

## VERBS OF HINDERING AND PREVENTING

Terror ingēns Psȳchēn impedit nē nemus intret.

Her great terror hinders Psyche from entering the grove.

Mīlitēs tenēbantur quōminus in aciē dīmīcārent.

The soldiers were being restrained from fighting in battle formation.

Verbs and expressions of hindrance and prevention, such as **impediō**, *hinder*; **teneō** (and compounds), *hold*; **terreō** (and compounds), *frighten*; **obstō**, *stand in the way*; **recūsō**, *object, refuse*; **resistō**, *resist*, when used affirmatively, are followed by a subjunctive clause introduced by **nē** or **quōminus**. The

present subjunctive is used in primary sequence; the imperfect, in secondary sequence. Since clauses of hindrance and prevention are by their nature incomplete, the tenses of completion, perfect and pluperfect, are not used.

**Nōn recūsābō quōminus librum habeat.**

I shall not object to his having the book.

**Num poterat retinēri quīn vērā dīceret?**

He could not be restrained from telling the truth, could he?

Verbs and expressions of hindrance and prevention, when used negatively or in a question implying a negative, are followed by a subjunctive clause introduced by **quōminus** or **quīn**. **Quōminus** is more common.

**Nōn prohibēbis mē domum revertī.**

You will not prevent my returning home.

**Sorōrem ire prohibet.**

He prevents his sister from going.

**Illa ire prohibētur.**

She is prevented from going.

After **prohibeō**, *prevent*, the infinitive (Sec. 68) is used.

## 141 VERBS AND EXPRESSIONS OF DOUBT

**Dubitāmus num testāmentō rēgis nōmen eius memorātum sit.**

We doubt that his name has been mentioned in the king's will.

Verbs and expressions of doubt, when affirmative, are followed by an indirect question (Sec. 110).

**Nōn dubium erat quīn ea sorōrī invidēret.**

There was no doubt that she envied her sister.

**Quis dubitat quīn veniat?**

Who doubts that he will come (his coming)?

**Quis dubitat quīn cīvēs viātōrēs benignē acceptūrī sint?**

Who doubts that the citizens will receive (are going to receive) the travelers kindly?

Verbs and expressions of doubt, when used negatively or in a question implying a negative, are followed by a subjunctive clause introduced by **quīn**. The rule of sequence of tenses



applies as for the indirect question (Sec. 110). The future participle with the subjunctive of **sum** is used when the emphasis is on the future time, rather than on the doubt alone.

**Decius nōn dubitāvit prō patriā morī.**

Decius did not hesitate to die for his country.

When **dubitō** means *hesitate*, it is followed by a complementary infinitive (Sec. 68).

## 142

## EXERCISES

### A. *Translate:*

1. Impediunt nōs nē pugnēmus. 2. Nōn impediunt nōs quīn taceāmus. 3. Tenuērunt mē quōminus pugnārem. 4. Prohibuērunt mē pugnāre. 5. Nōn prohibuērunt mē pugnāre. 6. Impediēbar quōminus pugnārem. 7. Nōne prohibere poterat urbem expugnārī? 8. Mīlitēs recūsāvērunt nē urbem expugnārēmus. 9. Cōsul nōn obstat quōminus mīlitēs proficēantur. 10. Retinērī nōn poterāmus quīn deīs sacrificārēmus.

### B. *Translate:*

1. Nōn dubitō quīn mīlitēs cohortātus sit. 2. Dubitō num mīlitēs cohortātūrus sit. 3. Mīlitēs ab urbe proficēscī nōn dubitāvērunt. 4. Nōn erat dubium quīn rēx esset fortis. 5. Quī dubitāvērunt quīn oppidum expugnātum esset? 6. Dubitāvērunt num mīlitēs oppidum expugnātūrī essent. 7. Mīlitēs nōn dubitāvērunt oppidum expugnāre. 8. Nōn est dubium quīn avēs volent. 9. Rēx nōn dubitāvit quīn mīlitēs fortiter pugnārent. 10. Cōsul nōn dubitāvit sē prō bonō publicō sacrificāre.

### C. *Fill in the blanks:*

1. Nōs terrēbant \_\_\_\_ (*from going out of the city*).
2. Impedīrī nōn poterāmus \_\_\_\_ (*from talking*).
3. Prohibitī sunt \_\_\_\_ (*from talking*).
4. Nōn dubitāvit \_\_\_\_ (*that the soldiers were guarding the walls*).
5. Quis dubitat \_\_\_\_ (*that the soldiers are guarding the walls*)?
6. Mīlitēs dubitāvērunt \_\_\_\_ (*to guard the walls*).

From bronze artifacts found in  
Wroxeter, Shropshire.



Ministry of Works 3. Crown copyright

7. *Mīlitēs nōn dubitāvērunt* \_\_\_\_ (*to guard the walls*).
8. *Eōs nōn dēterrūt* \_\_\_\_ (*to put to flight the soldiers*).
9. *Nōn dubitāmus* \_\_\_\_ (*that the tribes are encouraging their allies*).
10. *Quī dubitābant* \_\_\_\_ (*that the punishment was deserved*)?

D. *Translate:*

1. *Quis dubitāre potest quīn mīlitēs Deciī equīs concitātīs vītā āmissūrī sint?*
2. *Mīlitēs Fabiī retentī sunt quōminus in aciē contrā Samnītēs dīmīcārent.*
3. *Sonitus rotārum curruum mīlitēs perterrūt quōminus audācter pugnārent.*
4. *Ob tīmōrem poenae, mātrōnae in tabernam ingredi prohibitaē sunt.*
5. *Plēbs nōn impeditur quōminus ex compositō cīvēs Rōmānōs incitet.*
6. *Nōn erat dubium quīn mīlitēs ferōcissimī proeliō congregrī solērent.*
7. *Cūr pāstor dubitat ovēs in spēluncam abdere?*

E. *Write in Latin:*

1. Who knows why the hostile soldiers were hindered from fleeing after their leader had been captured?
2. I do not doubt that you can prevent me from returning home.
3. The crowd of angry women could not be held back from the fight in front of the shop.
4. Who could doubt that Decius was trying to hold back his soldiers from turning their backs?
5. He will

not refuse to inform the citizens about the battle. 6. The shepherd was not restrained from dragging the cattle into the cave by their tails. 7. The consul did not doubt that the enemy could be prevented from beginning battle in the rear. 8. Psyche did not hesitate to wander in the fields after her husband had been lost.

## 143

## VOCABULARY

<b>aetās, aetātis, f.,</b> age	<b>turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,</b> throw into confusion
<b>certāmen, certāminis, n.,</b> contest, fight	<b>soleō, -ēre, solitus sum,</b> be accustomed
<b>gēns, gentis, f.,</b> tribe, race; family	<b>congregior, congregī, congressus sum,</b> meet with; visit; contend
<b>sonitus, -ūs, m.,</b> sound	<b>proeliō congregior,</b> engage in battle
<b>cōnfertus, -a, -um,</b> dense, crowded together	<b>vel, conj.,</b> or = or if you will, or at least, or else
<b>īnfestus, -a, -um,</b> hostile, threatening	<b>vel . . . vel,</b> either . . . or
<b>concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,</b> stir up, arouse	<b>vix, adv.,</b> hardly, scarcely, with difficulty
<b>dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,</b> fight, struggle	
<b>fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,</b> put to flight, chase	

## 144

## WORD STUDY

From Latin derivatives of **alius, alia, aliud** are derived several English words:

From **aliēnus, -a, -um,** *belonging to another*, is derived English *aliēn*, adjective and noun.

From the supine stem of **aliēnō**, *estrangle*, comes the English verb *alienate* and from **aliēnātiō**, a derivative of **aliēnō**, the English noun *alienation*.

The adverb **aliās**, *at another time*, gives the English noun *alias*; and the adverb **alibī**, *at another place*, gives the English noun *alibi*.

Check the English dictionary to determine any change of meaning between the Latin words and their English derivatives.



*Fragment of a warrior,  
Volubilis, Morocco*

19

FĪŌ

## CLAUSES OF RESULT

Atque illinc abiī tuō lepōre  
incēsus, Licinī, facētiūsque,  
ut nec mē miserum cibus iuvāret  
nec somnus tegeret quiēte ocellōs.

*And from there I went away, Licinius,  
so on fire with your charm and wit  
that food could not relieve my misery  
nor sleep cover my eyes in rest.*

CATULLUS: 50. 7-10



Dum Caesar bellum in Galliā gerit, accidit ut ad Orientem (*in the East*) populus Rōmānus grave vulnus ā Parthīs acciperet. Nam tanta erat cōsulis Crassī cupiditās aurī Parthicī ut exercitum in finēs Parthōrum dūceret. Nōn dubitābat  
 5 quīn inde magnam praedam Rōmam reportāre posset.

Ubi apud (*near*) Nīcēphorium<sup>1</sup> castra posuit, missī ab Orōde (*Orodes*) rēge lēgātī ōrāvērunt ut memoriam foederis priōris retinēret. Quibus audītīs Crassus sē Seleucia<sup>2</sup> (*locative*) respōnsūrum esse respondit. Itaque deī, foederum ultōrēs  
 10 (*avengers*), Parthīs, quōs aurī causā Crassus fefellerat, auxiliō fuērunt.

Fīēbat ut simulātus perfuga Crassō aperīret iter incognitum. Crassus, quod perfidō perfugae crēdēbat, iter ab Euphrāte, quī ā tergō mūniēbat (*which protected his rear*), āvertit, et eōdem  
 15 duce (*guide*) exercitum dūxit in medium campum ut undique hostibus expōnerētur (*was exposed*). Itaque vixdum (*scarcely*) vēnerat Carrhās, cum undique militēs rēgis signa ostendērunt. Tum sine morā equitēs Parthicī in modum grandinis (*in the manner of hail, i.e., as thick as hail*) tēla mīsērunt ut exercitus  
 20 Rōmānus dēlētus sit. Potuit salūtem nē fugā quidem petere.

Crassus ipse interfectus est; periit fīlius paene in cōspectū patris. Caput Crassī cum dextrā manū ad rēgem reportātum est. Aurum liquidum in ōs infūsum est ut Crassus, quī vīvus tam cupidus aurī fuerat, mortuus tandem satis aurī habēret.

FLORUS 1.46 (*Adapted*)

The verb **fīō** serves as the passive of **faciō**, which has the regular passive forms in the perfect system only.

**fīō, fierī, factus sum**

be made, be done, become, happen, take place

<sup>1</sup>Nīcēphorium, a city in Mesopotamia

<sup>2</sup>Seleucia, on the Tigris, was one of the chief cities of the Parthians. The Battle of Carrhae was fought in 53 B.C.

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
<i>Present</i>	<i>fiō</i>	( <i>fīmus</i> )	<i>fiam</i>	<i>fiāmus</i>
	<i>fīs</i>	( <i>fītis</i> )	<i>fiās</i>	<i>fiātis</i>
	<i>fit</i>	<i>fiunt</i>	<i>fiat</i>	<i>fiant</i>
<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>fiēbam</i>	<i>fiēbāmus</i>	<i>fierem</i>	<i>fierēmus</i>
	<i>fiēbās</i>	<i>fiēbātis</i>	<i>fierēs</i>	<i>fierētis</i>
	<i>fiēbat</i>	<i>fiēbant</i>	<i>fieret</i>	<i>fierent</i>
<i>Future</i>	<i>fiam</i>	<i>fiēmus</i>		
	<i>fiēs</i>	<i>fiētis</i>		
	<i>fiet</i>	<i>fient</i>		
<i>Perfect</i>	<i>factus sum</i>		<i>factus sim</i>	
<i>Pluperfect</i>	<i>factus eram</i>		<i>factus essem</i>	
<i>Future perfect</i>	<i>factus erō</i>			

	INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE
<i>Present</i>	<i>ferī</i>		
<i>Perfect</i>	<i>factus esse</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>factus</i>

**Hoc fit; pāx ferī potest.**

This is being done; peace can be made.

**Impetus in hostēs fiat.**

Let an attack be made on the enemy.

**Certiōrēs fiēbāmus.**

We were being informed.

**Captivī interficiuntur.**

The prisoners are being put to death.

*Active*      *cōficiō, cōficere, cōfēcī, cōfectum*

*Passive*    *cōfīcior, cōfīcī, cōfectus sum*

Prepositional compounds of *faciō* have the passive formed regularly throughout from the active.

We are so tired [that we cannot study].

The wind was so strong [that the boat was overturned].

In the examples above, the subordinate clauses express the result of our weariness and of the strength of the wind. Such a subordinate clause is called a clause of result.



Lullingstone Roman Villa, Kent. Mosaic floor, fourth century A.D. The abduction of Europa by Jupiter in the guise of a bull.

In Latin, a clause of result takes the subjunctive introduced by **ut**. The principal clause generally contains some word such as **tam** (*so*, modifying an adjective or an adverb), **sic** (*so*, modifying a verb), **ita** (*so*, with verb, adjective, or adverb), **tantus** (*so large*), **talis** (*such*), **tot** (*so many*, indeclinable).

#### TENSES IN CLAUSES OF RESULT

The tense of the subjunctive in a clause of result depends upon the sense. The tenses most commonly used are the present, imperfect, and perfect.

1. The present subjunctive is used of a present result.

*Tanta est virtūs nostra [ut hostēs vincāmus].*

Such is our valor [that we are defeating the enemy].

2. The imperfect subjunctive is used of a result continuing or repeated in the past,

**Militēs erant tam graviter vulnerātī [ut pugnāre nōllent].**

The soldiers had been so seriously wounded [that they were unwilling to fight].

or of a result commencing in the past.

**Tot pervēnerant [ut Colossēum complērent].**

So many people had arrived [that they began to fill the Colosseum].

3. The perfect subjunctive is used of a result represented as a single definite act (or fact) in the past,

**Tam grave erat vulnus [ut mortuus sit].**

So serious was his wound [that he died].

or of a result now viewed as complete.

**Tam fortiter pugnāvērunt [ut vicerint].**

They have fought so bravely [that they have conquered].

#### CONSTRUCTIONS IN NEGATIVE CLAUSES OF RESULT

[ut inīre nōn possīmus].

[that we cannot enter].

[ut nēmō inīre possit].

[that no one can enter].

**Templum tantā cūrā custōdiunt [ut nihil inīre possit].**

They guard the temple with such care [that nothing can enter].

[ut nūlla mulier inīre possit].

[that no woman can enter].

[ut numquam inīre possīmus].

[that we can never enter].

A negative clause of result is introduced by **ut** and a negative word.

that . . . not

ut nōn

that nothing

ut nihil

that no one

ut nēmō

that no (*adj.*)

ut nūllus

that . . . never

ut numquam



**Accidit ut id sit nostris incognitum.**

It happens that that is unknown to our men.

**Accidit ut id nōn esset nostris nōtum.**

It happened that that was not known to our men.

**Fit ut adsint.** It happens that they are present.

**His rēbus fiēbat ut minus facile finitimis bellum  
inferre possent.**

Thus it came about that they could less easily make war  
on their neighbors.

Noun clauses with the subjunctive, introduced by **ut** or **ut nōn**, are used as the subject of the impersonal verbs **accidit**, **accidere**, **accidit**, and **fit**, **fieri**, **factum est**, *it happens (that)*.

**patris mei causā; omnium nostrum causā**

for the sake of my father; for the sake of us all

**pācis causā; potestātis causā**

for the sake of peace; to get power

The genitive is used with **causā**, *for the sake of*. In this construction, **causā** is regularly placed after the genitive.

A. *Change the following sentences from active to passive.* For example, **Impetum faciunt** becomes **Impetus fit**. **Eum certiōrem faciam** becomes **Certior fiet**.

- |                            |                            |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Eōs certiōrēs faciāmus. | 6. Fīnem faciāmus.         |
| 2. Iniūriam faciēbat.      | 7. Moenia fēcērātis.       |
| 3. Pācem fēcērunt.         | 8. Fraudem fēcistī.        |
| 4. Testāmenta facient.     | 9. Exercitus iter facit.   |
| 5. Foedera faciunt.        | 10. Tē coniugem meam fēcī. |

B. *Translate:*

- Monuit milites ut excēderent. Misit milites qui pugnarent.  
Ita vehementer monuit milites ut excēderent.

2. Hortātur cīvēs ut castra bene custōdiant. Mittunt cīvēs quī castra bene custōdiant. Ita hortātur cīvēs ut castra bene custōdiant.
3. Tantā cūrā ā sociīs auxilium petīvīt ut cibum mitterent. Ā sociīs petīvīt ut cibum mitterent. Sociōs mīsimus quī cibum peterent.
4. Militēs prōgrediuntur ut castrīs hostium potiantur. Militēs tam celeriter prōgrediuntur ut castrīs hostium potiantur. Militibus persuādent ut castrīs hostium potiantur.
5. Mātrōnās rogāvīt ut tacērent. Tam bene mātrōnās exercuit ut tacērent. Mātrōnās exercuit ut tacērent.

C. *Translate:*

1. Sociōs tam celeriter mīsīt ut hostēs effugere nōn possent. Sociōs mīsīt nē hostēs effugere possent.
2. Ā marītō tantō dolōre Psychē postulat ut eam numquam relinquat. Psychē postulat nē sē umquam relinquat.
3. Militēs cohortātus est nē ab hostibus currerent. Militēs sic cohortātus est ut ab hostibus nōn currerent.
4. Equitēs Parthici per agmen ita celeriter rumpunt ut militibus nostrīs nullam spem salutis relinquant. Equitēs Parthici per agmen rumpunt nē ullam spem salutis militibus nostrīs relinquant.

D. *Fill in the blanks:*

1. Oppidum custōdiunt \_\_\_\_ (*that . . . not*) capiātur. Oppidum ita custōdiunt \_\_\_\_ (*that . . . not*) capiātur.
2. Moenia refēcērunt \_\_\_\_ (*that*) urbs \_\_\_\_ (*never*) dēderētur. Moenia sic refēcērunt \_\_\_\_ (*that*) urbs \_\_\_\_ (*never*) dēderētur.
3. Portās claudent \_\_\_\_ (*that no one*) effugere possit. Portās ita claudent \_\_\_\_ (*that no one*) effugere possit.
4. Tam paulisper (*briefly*) in urbe incolēbant \_\_\_\_ (*that . . . nothing*) dē finitimīs cognōscerent. Fīnitimōs neglegēbant \_\_\_\_ (*that . . . nothing*) dē urbe cognōscere possent.

E. *Translate:*

1. Tanta est Crassī cupiditās aurī ut cum cōpiīs Parthicīs congregī audeat. 2. Tantus erat timor ut numquam revertī audērent. 3. Ita ācritē impetum fēcērunt ut sociīs viam aperīrent. 4. Moenia tam valida fēcērunt ut nūllus impetus factus sit. 5. Posterō diē hostēs castra nostra tam subitō aggressī sunt ut nēmō eōs fossam complēre prohibēre potuerit. 6. Accidit ut mīlitēs nostrī in mediō campō undique hostibus expōnerentur. 7. Hīs rēbus fīēbat ut Crassus victōriam reportāre nōn posset. 8. Nōn erat dubium quī Crassus quī cupidus aurī erat perfidō perfugae crēderet.

F. *Write in Latin:*

1. The soldiers feared that the task was so difficult that no one could do it. 2. The guide deceived us so often (*totiēns*) that no one believed him. 3. It happens for many reasons that the siege is being abandoned (*relinquō*). 4. We attacked so boldly that the enemy doubted whether they could seek safety in flight. 5. They set out so rapidly that nothing was able to hinder them. 6. The Parthian cavalry attacked the van so boldly that the Roman army was forced to fall back.

151

VOCABULARY

perfuga, -ae, *m.*, deserter  
cupiditās, -tātis, *f.*, with *gen.*,  
    desire, eagerness  
ōs, ōris, *n.*, mouth; face  
apertus, -a, -um, open, exposed,  
    unprotected  
fīdus, -a, -um, faithful  
    perfidus, -a, -um, treacherous  
repentīnus, -a, -um, sudden  
simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,  
    imitate; pretend  
    simulātus, -a, -um, pretended  
accidō, -ere, accidī, fall upon,  
    hit; happen, occur

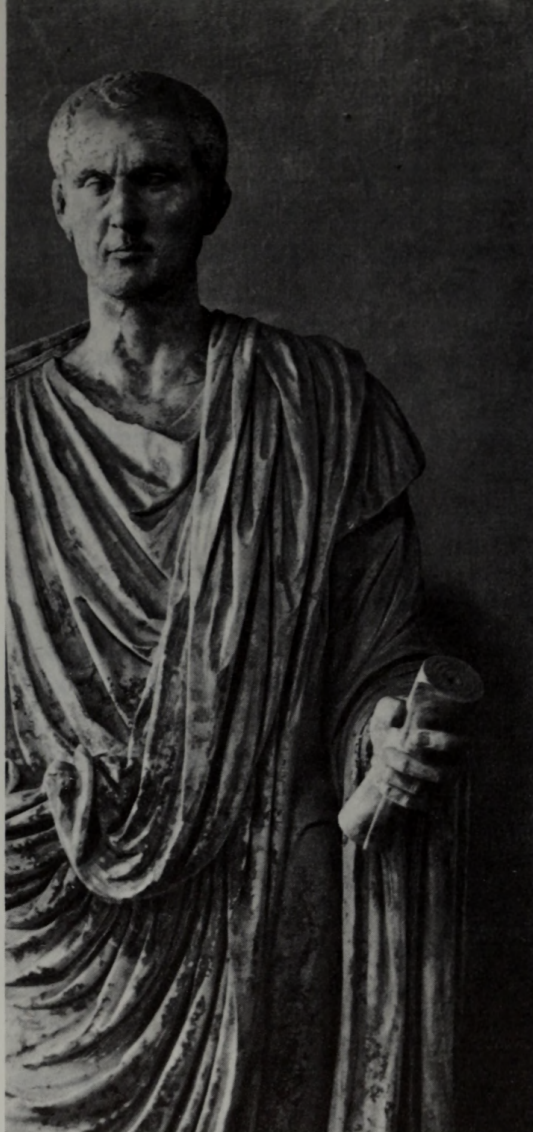
fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsum, cheat,  
    deceive  
fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum, pour;  
    produce; rout, vanquish  
effundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum,  
    pour forth; rout  
īfundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum,  
    pour into  
potior, -īrī, potītus sum, with *abl.*  
    or *gen.*, gain possession of,  
    obtain  
salūtem fugā petere, to seek  
    safety in flight



The Latin prefix **in-** has two uses. With adjectives and adverbs it is a negative prefix: **inūtilis**, *useless*; **iniūstē**, *unjustly*. With verbs it means *in, on, into*: **ineō**, *go into*; **impōnō**, *place on*; **infundō**, *pour into*; **iniciō**, *throw into*.

In English the prefix *in-* has the same two uses. As a negative prefix it takes the form *in-*, *im-*, *il-*, *ir-*: *incautious*; *imperfect*; *illiterate*; *irresponsible*. With the meaning *in, on, into*, it takes the forms *in-*, *im-*, *il-*, *ir-*, *en-*: *intrude*, meaning *thrust into*; *import*, *carry into*; *illuminate*, *throw light upon*; *irradiate*, *shine upon*; *engrave*, *carve upon*; *enclose*, *shut in*.





*Statue of Marcus  
Porcius Cato, Rome*

20

**Cum Clauses**  
**Relative Clause of Characteristic**

*Dīcēbam “medicāre tuōs dēsiste capillōs”;  
tingere quam possīs, iam tibi nūlla coma est.*

*I used to say “stop touching up your hair”;  
now you have no hair to dye.*

OVID: AMORES 1.14.1-2

Rēgibus expulsīs senātus dēcrētum probāvit quō omnēs Tarquiniae gentis exsulēs (*exiles*) essent. Sed per dolum libertās paene āmissa est. Erant Rōmae multī adulēscentēs quī libīdinibus suīs indulgēre (*indulge*) vellent. Cum in rēgnō libīdō multō solūtior (*more unrestrained*) fuisset, hī adulēscentēs 5 libertātem āmissam esse inter sē querēbantur. "Rēx," inquiunt, "erat tālis quī inter amīcum atque inimīcum discrīmen (*distinction*) facere posset."

Ita iam suā sponte aegrīs (*disloyal*) animīs erant cum lēgātī ab rēgibus adveniunt, sine mentiōne reditūs rēgum, bona 10 (*property*) rēgia tantum repetentēs. Per aliquot diēs rēs in senātū agēbātur. Interim lēgātī apertē bona repetentēs clam cōnsilia capiēbant quibus rēgnum reciperētur. Per urbem ambientēs (*going about*) nōbīlium adulēscentium animōs pertemptant. Eīs ā quibus sermō (*conversation*) placidē (*favorably*) 15 acceptus est litterās ab Tarquiniīs reddunt. Cum eīs colloquuntur ut clam noctū in urbem rēgēs acciperentur.<sup>1</sup> Aliquot nōbīlēs adulēscentēs in societātem cōnsiliī adsūmunt.

Interim cum in senātū dēcrētum esset ut bona redderentur, eam causam morae in urbe habēbant lēgātī. Cōniūrātōs 20 ēvincunt (*prevailed upon*) ut litterae sibi ad Tarquiniōs darentur.<sup>2</sup> Litterae datae ut essent fideī pignus (*guarantee*) manifestum (*clear*) scelus fēcērunt. Nam ante discessum ad Tarquiniōs, cum sociī sceleris apud ūnum ex coniūrātīs cēnārent et inter sē dē cōnsiliō novō colloquerentur, sermōnem eōrum 25 servus excēpit (*overheard*). Quī iam antea sēnserat quid ageretur sed eam occasiōnem ut litterae lēgātīs darentur exspectābat. Litterīs datīs, rem ad cōsulēs dētulit. Illī statim lēgātōs coniūrātōsque dēprehendunt (*arrested*). Coniūrātīs in vincula coniectīs, rēs omnis sine tumultū (*disturbance*) oppressa est. 30 Cum lēgātī essent hostium locō (*in the position of*), iūs tamen gentium valuit. Dē bonīs rēgiīs autem rēs dē integrō (*once*

<sup>1</sup>The historical present tense (present for past) is followed by a secondary tense in the subjunctive.

<sup>2</sup>*Ibid.*



Corbridge, Northumberland. The Roman station of Corstropitum as it might have been c. 400 A.D.

*more*) refertur ad patrēs. Victī irā vetuērunt bona reddī. Ager Tarquiniōrum, quī inter urbem et Tiberim fuit, cōsecrātus Mārtī deinde (*thereafter*) Campus Mārtius factus est.

LIVY: 2. 2.6 - 5.2 (*Adapted*)

## THE CONJUNCTION CUM

The conjunction **cum** has three values: 1. when 2. since, as 3. although.

154

### CUM WHEN<sup>3</sup>

Cum litterās tuās legō, tēcum esse videor.

When I am reading your letter, I seem to be with you.

Cum domum redierō, tibi multa nārrābō.

When I return home, I shall tell you many things.

**Cum**, *when*, referring to present or future time, is used with the indicative mood.

<sup>3</sup>Cum, *whenever*, is used with the indicative mood. Cum Rōmam accesserat nōbiscum colloquēbātur. Whenever he came to Rome he used to talk with us.



**Cum** socii sceleris cēnārent, sermōnem eōrum servus excēpit.  
When the comrades in crime were at dinner, a slave overheard  
their conversation.

**Cum** iter per Galliam faceret, ad Rhodanum pervēnit.  
When he was marching through Gaul, he reached the Rhone.

**Cum** iter per Galliam fēcisset, ad Rhodanum pervēnit.  
When he had marched through Gaul, he reached the Rhone.

**Cum**, *when*, referring to past time, in a clause describing the situation or circumstances under which the principal action takes place, is used with the subjunctive mood. The imperfect subjunctive is used when the subordinate action is contemporaneous with the main action; the pluperfect subjunctive, when it is prior to the main action.

Iam aegrīs animīs erant cum lēgātī ab rēgibus adveniunt.  
They were already in a disloyal frame of mind  
when the envoys arrived from the kings.

When two actions are independent, **cum** is sometimes used with the one that is logically the principal action (*Cum Inversum*). The verb of the **cum** clause is in the indicative.

155

CUM SINCE

**Cum** haec ita sint, redeāmus.  
Since these things are so, let us go back.

**Cum** haec ita essent, domum rediimus.  
As these things were so, we returned home.

**Scīpiō**, cum praefectus sit, nōs dūcet.  
Since Scipio has been put in command, he will lead us.

**Scīpiō**, cum praefectus esset, nōs dūcēbat.  
Since Scipio had been put in command, he was leading us.

**Cum** in rēgnō libidō solūta fuisset, adulēscentēs iam  
querēbantur.

Since pleasure had been unrestrained in the kingdom,  
the young men were now complaining.

**Cum**, *as* or *since*, is used with the subjunctive in any tense required by the meaning.



**Cum sit aeger, in agrō labōrat.**

Although he is ill, he is working in the field.

**Cum pars classis frācta sit, reliquīs nāvibus ūtī poterimus.**

Although part of the fleet has been wrecked, we shall be able to use the remaining ships.

**Cum lēgātī essent hostium locō, iūs tamen gentium valuit.**

Although the envoys were considered enemies, nevertheless, international law prevailed.

**Cum**, *although*, is used with the subjunctive in any tense required by the meaning. **Tamen**, *still, nevertheless*, is frequently found in the main clause.

**Cum esset mīles fortis, sē dēdere nōluit.**

Being (= since he was) a brave soldier, he refused to surrender.

**Cum Rōmam pervēnisset, ad cūriam properāvit.**

Having reached (= when he had reached) Rome, he hastened to the senate-house.

A clause with **cum** is frequently best translated by an English participial phrase.

## 157 RELATIVE CLAUSE OF CHARACTERISTIC

**Cīvēs laudant ducem quī reī pūblicae cōnsulit.**

The citizens praise the leader who is looking out for the state.

**Cīvēs laudant ducem quī reī pūblicae cōnsulat.**

The citizens praise a leader who (the kind of leader who) looks out for the state.

**Erant Rōmae multī quī libīdinibus indulgēre volēbant.**

There were at Rome many who wanted to indulge their desires.

**Erant Rōmae multī quī libīdinibus indulgēre vellent.**

There were at Rome many who (the kind who) would have liked to indulge their desires.

A relative clause telling what person is meant takes the indicative mood. A relative clause telling the kind of person meant takes the subjunctive mood (*Relative Clause of Characteristic*).

A. *Translate:*

1. Cum loqueris, audiō. 2. Cum loquēris, audiam. 3. Cum proeliō dīmicārent, dux interfectus est. 4. Cum cōsiliū probātum esset, omnēs laetī erant. 5. Cum portae clausae essent, exercitus ingredī nōn poterat. 6. Cum coniūrātī cīvēs fallere nōn possent, tamen spērāre nōn dēstitērunt. 7. Cum occāsiō āmissa sit, domum redībimus. 8. Per viās ambulābam cum amīcō meō occurrī. 9. Cum rēx iūstus rēgnābat, nēmō timēbat. 10. Cum rēs in senātū agerētur, lēgātī ad coniūrātōs accessērunt.

B. *Change the italicized words to a cum clause:*

1. *Pugnāns* interfectus est. 2. *Hōc proeliō factō* exercitus domum rediit. 3. *Militēs cohortātus* signum proeliī dedit. 4. Cīvēs bonī *societātem sceleris veritī* ex urbe proficiscuntur. 5. *Magnō exercitū coactō*, urbem obsēdērunt. 6. *Timentēs cōsiliū coniūrātōrum*, pugnāre nōlēbant. 7. *Ex urbe profectī* multa mīlia passuum iter fēcērunt. 8. *Equitēs flūmen transeuntēs* fūmum ignium hostium cōspicere poterant. 9. *Fūmō vīsō*, prōgredi nōn audēbant. 10. *Hīs rēbus gestīs*, cēnāvērunt.

C. *Translate:*

1. Contemnunt cīvem quī societātem sceleris facit. Contemnunt cīvem quī societātem sceleris faciat.  
2. Haec est urbs quae orbem terrārum regit. Haec est urbs quae orbem terrārum regat.  
3. Veritī sumus virōs quī liberōs interficiēbant. Veritī sumus virōs quī liberōs interficerent.  
4. Vidērunt lēgātum cui cōnfidere poterant. Vidērunt lēgātum cui cōnfidere possent.  
5. Pūnīte puerōs quī fallunt. Pūnīte puerōs quī fallant.

D. *Translate:*

1. Illī, cum sit sapiēns, cōnfīdimus.  
2. Illī, cum esset sapientissimus, nōn cōnfīdēbāmus.  
3. Cum finem pugnae fēcissent, sē recēpērunt.  
4. Cum nobīs multa dōna dederit, ducī semper amīcissimī sumus.

5. Cum ad ōs Rhodanī vēnissēmus, vīgintī tria nāvigia invēnimus.
6. Alexander, cum Babylōnem pervēnisset, mortuus est.
7. Cum magnās cōpiās habeat, tamen timet nē impetus ab hostibus fiat.
8. Cum per eōrum finēs iter quattuor diērum fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvīs Rhēnum flūmen ā castrīs suis mīlle passūs abesse.

E. *Write in Latin:*

1. When this had been done, he departed.
2. Since he was a harsh master, the slaves hated him.
3. Although he has obtained possession of the town, he has spared all the inhabitants.
4. He sent soldiers to carry off all the property of the inhabitants.
5. He was such (a person) that no one could trust him.
6. Since you have been his friend, I will not disregard what you say.
7. Since they feared that someone might carry off their cattle, they had many fierce dogs in the fields.
8. It happens that they are mindful of the deeds (*rēs gestae, pl.*) of Alexander.

*littera, -ae, f.*, a letter of the alphabet; *pl.*, letters of the alphabet; a dispatch, a letter, epistle  
*coniūrātī, -ōrum, m. pl.*, conspirators  
*vinculum, -ī, n.*, fetter, chain  
*libīdō, libīdinis, f.*, pleasure; passion, lust  
*occāsiō, -ōnis, f.*, opportunity  
*scelus, sceleris, n.*, evil deed, crime, sin  
*societās, -tātis, f.*, partnership, alliance; fellowship  
*reditus, -ūs, m.*, return  
*fidēs, fideī, f.*, faith; honesty; loyalty; protection

*Tarquinius, -a, -um*, Tarquinian  
*aliquot, indeclinable adj.*, some, a few  
*cēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*, dine  
*cēna, -ae, f.*, dinner  
*valeō, -ēre, valui, valitum*, be strong, be well; be effective, prevail; be able  
*dēcernō, -ere, dēcrēvī, dēcrētum*, decide; decree, vote; fight it out  
*dēcrētum, -ī, n.*, decision; decree  
*clam, adv.*, secretly  
*suā sponte*, of one's own accord, willingly



Of the eight magnificent stone bridges built across the Tiber by the Romans between 200 B.C. and 260 A.D., six are still standing. Above is one of the oldest of the eight.





One of the best-preserved Roman bridges in the world spans the Tagus gorge near Alcántara, Spain. Built entirely of granite, it was constructed through the co-operation of the Spanish communities in the area during the rule of Trajan. The highest point of the arches measures over 150 feet.



The Claudian Aqueduct was one of eleven great aqueducts delivering water to ancient Rome. Together, they supplied 200,000,000 gallons of water per day to the Empire's capital. This aqueduct, constructed of concrete faced with brick, limestone, or tufa, was designed to supply the Palatine and other hills of Rome with water.



*Bas-relief portraying  
Roman eagle, Rome*

21

## Temporal Clauses

### Anticipatory and Proviso Clauses

### Ablative and Genitive of Description

Multa quoque et bellō passus, dum conderet urbem  
in̄ferretque deōs Latīō; genus unde Latīnum  
Albānīque patrēs atque altae moenia Rōmae.

*Much too did he suffer in war, until he should found his city  
and bring his gods into Latium; whence come the Latin race,  
the Alban fathers and the walls of lofty Rome.*

VERGIL: AENEID 1. 5-7

160

### Dē Clāde Equitum Rōmānōrum

Nostrī, quōrum erat quīnque mīlium numerus, nihil timē-  
bant, quod lēgātī Germānōrum paulō ante ā Caesare dis-  
cesserant atque is diēs indūtiīs (*for a truce*) erat ab hīs petītus.

Caesar interim ad praefectōs quī cum omnī equitātū ante-  
5 cesserant (*had gone ahead*) nūntiōs mīsīt quī monērent nē  
hostēs proeliō lacesserent, et sī ipsī lacesserentur, sustinērent,  
quoad ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset. At hostēs, cum

nōn amplius (*more than*) octingentōs equitēs habērent, quod eī quī reī frūmentāriae causā ierant trāns Mosam (*the Meuse*) nōndum redierant, cum primum nostrōs equitēs cōspēxērunt, 10 impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt; rūsus resistentibus nostrīs, cōsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dēsiluērunt, suffossisque (**suffodiō**, *stab*) nostrīs equīs complūrēs nostrōrum dēiēcērunt (*unhorsed*) reliquōsque in fugam dedērunt. Hī perterritī nōn prius fugā dēstitērunt quam in cōspectum 15 agminis nostrī vērunt.

In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur quattuor et septuāgintā, in hīs Pīsō, vir magnā audāciā. Hic, dum frātrī ab hostibus circumventō auxilium fert, illum ex periculō ēripuit, ipse equō vulnerātō dēiectus quoad potuit fortissimē restitit. 20 Postquam Pīsō circumventus multīs vulneribus acceptīs cecidit, frāter quī iam proeliō excesserat, cum procul id animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

Hōc proeliō factō, Caesar iūdicābat summae dēmentiae (*madness*) esse exspectāre dum hostium cōpiae augērentur 25 equitātusque reverterētur. Itaque Germānī cum postrīdiē eius diēi eādem perfidiā ūsī frequentēs (*in large numbers*) ad eum in castra vērissent, dīxērunt sē velle eī satisfacere. Quōs Caesar gāvīsus sibi oblātōs, illōs retinērī iussit. Ipse omnēs cōpiās ēdūxit equitātumque agmen subsequī iussit. 30

CAESAR: DE BELLO GALLICO 4. 11-13 (*Adapted*)

## 161

## TEMPORAL CLAUSES

**Ubi** milītēs vīdērunt, ad oppidum properāvērunt.

When they saw the soldiers, they hurried to the town.

**Antequam** castra mōvērunt, frūmentum comportāvērunt.

Before they moved the camp, they collected grain.

**Cōsul**, simul atque victōriam nūntiāvit, cōpiās ad castra dūxit.

As soon as the consul had announced the victory, he led his forces to the camp.

**Ubi**, *when*, **antequam** and **priusquam**, *before*, **postquam**, *after*, **simul atque** and **cum** **primum**, *as soon as*, when referring to a single act in the past, are used with the perfect indicative. It should be noted that English often has the pluperfect.



**Nōn prius abire cōstituit quam haec audivit.**  
He did not decide to leave until he heard this.

**Antequam** and **priusquam** are often written *ante . . . quam* and *prius . . . quam*. In a negative sentence **nōn antequam** and **nōn priusquam** are to be translated *not . . . until*.

**Simul atque exercitum cōscripserit, ad Italiam proficiscētur.**  
As soon as he enrolls an army, he will set out for Italy.

When **simul atque** and **cum primum**, *as soon as*, refer to the future, they are used with the future perfect indicative.

**Dum haec geruntur, Hannibalī nūtiātum est Rōmānōs accēdere.**

While this was being done, it was announced to Hannibal that the Romans were drawing near.

*While* may mean *within the time during which*. In this sense **dum** is used with the present indicative, even when referring to the past.

**Dum Scīpiō vivet, spērābimus.**

As long as Scipio lives (shall live), we shall hope.

**Quoad potuit restitit.**

As long as he could, he resisted.

*While* may mean *as long as, all the time during which*. Here the action of the main clause and that of the temporal clause extend over the same period of time. In this sense **dum**, **quoad**, and **quamdiū** are used with the indicative in any tense required by the sense.

**Nōlīte tēla iacere dum ipsōs oculōs videātis.**

Don't fire until you see the whites of their eyes.

**Ea expectābat dum maritus perveniret.**

She was waiting for her husband to arrive.

**Dum**, **dōnec**, and **quoad**, *until*, are used with the subjunctive when the action is contingent or merely expected.

**Mē in silvās abdō priusquam mē videat.**

I am hiding in the woods before he has a chance to see me.

**Arma cēpērunt antequam hostēs impetum facerent.**

They took up arms before the enemy should make an attack.

**Caesar Germānōs prius dēprehendit quam sibi satisfacerent.**

Caesar seized the Germans before they could apologize.

**Antequam** and **priusquam**, *before*, are used with the subjunctive when the action is contingent or merely expected.

163

PROVISO CLAUSES

**Est omnibus amīcus dum sint dīvitēs.**

He is friendly to all, provided they are rich.

**Dum, modo, dummodo**, *provided that, if only*, are used with the subjunctive, usually present or imperfect. The negative is **nē**.

164

GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF  
DESCRIPTION

A noun in the genitive or ablative case, modified by an adjective, may be used to describe a person or thing.

**Vir magnae sapientiae est.**

**Vir magnā sapientiā est.**

He is a man of great wisdom.

The genitive and the ablative are used, as above, with no difference in meaning. But if the descriptive phrase has to do with numerals, as in measurements of time, or space, or quantity, the genitive case is used. To describe parts of the body and physical appearance, the ablative case is used.

**Mūrus trium pedum; bellum decem annōrum.**

A wall of three feet (a three-foot wall); a war of ten years.

**Praesidium duārum legiōnum.**

A garrison of two legions.

**Germānī erant ingentī magnitūdine corporum.**

The Germans were of enormous size of body.

**Nāsō acūtō, corpore albō, oculīs nigrīs est.**

He is a man with a sharp nose, white skin, and black eyes.

A. *Translate:*

1. Dum spectat, Rōmānī aggressī sunt. Dum Rōmānī aggrediēbantur, hostēs resistēbant. Exspectābant dum aggrederebantur.
2. Dum oppidum obsident, fēminae questae sunt. Dum oppidum obsēdērunt, fēminae questae sunt. Militēs morātī sunt dum dīmicārent.
3. Dum cēnant, perfuga ex castrīs excessit. Dum cēnābant, servus aderat. Servus exspectābat dum cēnārent.
4. Dum perfugam custōdiunt, mīlitēs clāmōrem audīvērunt. Dum perfugam custōdiēbant, mīlitēs inter sē loquēbantur. Mīlitēs exspectābant dum perfuga sē ēriperet.
5. Antequam portae oppidī clausae sunt, mīlitēs iniērunt. Antequam portae oppidī clauderentur, mīlitēs iniērunt.
6. Priusquam cōnsilium mīlitibus ēnūntiātum est, dux eōs hortātus est. Priusquam cōnsilium mīlitibus ēnūntiārētur, dux eōs hortātus est.
7. Nōn prius in finēs hostium prōgressī sunt quam nūntius advēnit. Nōn prius in finēs hostium prōgressī sunt quam nūntius advenīret.
8. Simul atque nūntius vēnit, in finēs hostium prōgressī sunt. Simul atque nūntius vēnerit, in finēs hostium prōgredientur.
9. Cum primum cōnsilium ostentum erit, mīlitēs proficīscuntur. Cum primum cōnsilium ostentum est, mīlitēs profectī sunt.
10. Legiō, simul atque castra hostium oppresserit, domum redībit. Legiō, simul atque castra hostium oppressit, domum rediit.

B. *Complete the following sentences:*

1. Dum oppidum \_\_\_\_ (*was being besieged*), cōpiae hostium auctae sunt. Dum oppidum \_\_\_\_ (*was besieged*), mīlitēs fortiter pugnābant. Dum oppidum \_\_\_\_ (*should be captured*), mīlitēs exspectābant.
2. Dum aciēs \_\_\_\_ (*was being drawn up*), nūntius vēnit. Dum aciēs \_\_\_\_ (*was being drawn up*), mīlitēs magnā dīligentiā

labōrābant. Dum aciēs \_\_\_\_ (*should be drawn up*), mīlitēs in terrōre erant.

3. Dum rēs frūmentāria \_\_\_\_ (*was being prepared*), hostēs oppidum oppugnāvērunt. Dum rēs frūmentāria \_\_\_\_ (*was being prepared*), nēmō querēbātur. Dum rēs frūmentāria \_\_\_\_ (*should be prepared*), nēmō satis cibī habuit.
4. Dum mātrōnae in tabernā \_\_\_\_ (*were delaying*), turba irāta in viīs vīsa est. Dum mātrōnae in tabernā \_\_\_\_ (*were delaying*), puerī domī manēbant. Mātrōnae in tabernā morābantur dum nūntius ab hostibus \_\_\_\_ (*should arrive*).
5. Antequam nūntius \_\_\_\_ (*had arrived*), incolae oppidī nihil cōsiliī habēbant. Antequam nūntius \_\_\_\_ (*should arrive*), incolae in oppidō manēbant.
6. Nōn prius nūntius advēnit quam hostēs impetum facere \_\_\_\_ (*should be able*). Nōn prius nūntius advēnit quam hostēs impetum facere \_\_\_\_ (*had been able*).
7. Antequam praefectus equitum equitibus \_\_\_\_ (*had commanded*) ut oppugnārent, rēs in magnō periculō erat. Antequam praefectus equitum equitibus \_\_\_\_ (*should command*) ut oppugnārent, rēs in magnō periculō erat.
8. Lēgātus, simul atque in castra \_\_\_\_ (*had come*), cōsiliū mīlitibus nūntiāvit. Lēgātus, simul atque in castra \_\_\_\_ (*comes*), cōsiliū mīlitibus nūntiābit.
9. Imperātor, cum primum mīlitēs \_\_\_\_ (*encourages*), signum proeliī dabit. Imperātor, cum primum mīlitēs \_\_\_\_ (*had encouraged*), signum proeliī dedit.

C. Complete the following sentences:

1. Virī \_\_\_\_ (*of great diligence*) mūrum \_\_\_\_ (*of three feet*) aedificāvērunt.
2. Iter \_\_\_\_ (*of four miles*) est difficilior itinere \_\_\_\_ (*of three miles*).
3. Aquila \_\_\_\_ (*of enormous size*) iter \_\_\_\_ (*of many miles*) volāvit.
4. Mātrōna \_\_\_\_ (*of great beauty*) in villā \_\_\_\_ (*of small value [pretium]*) incolit.
5. Militēs \_\_\_\_ (*of great bravery*) proelium \_\_\_\_ (*of four hours*) pugnābant.





Palace of Knossos, Crete. Largest and most informative Minoan site discovered.

D. *Translate:*

1. Memoria Caesaris vīvet dum erit Rōma. 2. Pīsō, dummodo possit, fortissimē resistet. 3. Auctōrēs bellī erant virī summā audāciā, cupidī novārum rērum. 4. Antequam Rōmānī trāns Mosam redirent, bellum ortum est. 5. Dum Caesar paucōs diēs ad (*near*) hoc oppidum morātur, mercātōrēs Rōmānōs certiōrēs fēcērunt Germānōs esse ingentī magnitudīne corporum. 6. Hominēs optimī nōn prius dēsistent quam omnēs hōs malōs ab urbe expulerint. 7. Rettulērunt omnēs Germānōs, dē adventū exercitūs Rōmānī certiōrēs factōs, cum omnibus cōpiīs ad extrēmōs finēs sē recēpisse. 8. Quibus rēbus adductī cōsulēs, postquam nōn pugnāre statuērunt, sē recēpērunt.

E. *Write in Latin:*

1. While they were returning to the river, they caught sight of our cavalry. 2. If only they apologize, their mother will rejoice. 3. Piso, a man of great bravery, was in command of the Romans. 4. As long as we live, we will obey the laws of the founder (**auctor**) of this city. 5. We are waiting until we learn from messengers the extent (**magnitūdō**) of the disaster. 6. Piso was wounded before his brother could rescue him from danger. 7. As soon as the cavalry had leaped to their feet, they attacked the enemy and put them to flight. 8. As soon as they come to the river, they will build a bridge three hundred feet long.

<b>audācia</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , daring, boldness	<b>animadvertō</b> , -ere, -vertī,
<b>praefectus</b> , -ī, <i>m.</i> , overseer,	-versum, notice, observe
director	<b>laccessō</b> , -ere, -īvī, -ītum, harass,
<b>praefectus equitum</b> , chief	check
cavalry officer	<b>offerō</b> , offerre, obtulī, oblātum,
<b>clādēs</b> , clādis, <i>f.</i> , disaster, defeat	offer, present
<b>rēs frūmentāria</b> , rei	<b>resistō</b> , -ere, restitī, <i>with dat.</i> ,
frūmentāriae, <i>f.</i> , grain supply,	resist
provisions	<b>satisfaciō</b> , -ere, -fēcī, -factum,
<b>octingentī</b> , -ae, -a, eight hundred	<i>with dat.</i> , satisfy, make
<b>iūdicō</b> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, judge,	amends; apologize
decide	<b>postrīdiē</b> , <i>adv.</i> , the next day
<b>gaudeō</b> , -ēre, gāvīsus sum,	<b>postrīdiē eius diēi</b> , on the day
rejoice	following that day
<b>sustineō</b> , -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum,	<b>in fugam dare</b> , to put to flight
endure, withstand; support;	
check	

The verbs **stō**, **stāre**, **stetī**, **statum**; **sistō**, **sistere**, **stītī**; and **statuō**, **statuere**, **statuī**, **statūtum** are related. **Stō**, *stand*, formed on the root **sta-**, is intransitive; **sistō**, *make stand, stand*, is both intransitive and transitive; and **statuō**, *make stand*, formed on the supine stem of **stō**, is transitive.

Each of these verbs may be used to form several compounds. Keeping in mind the principles of vowel change, form compounds as follows: **cōn-**, **in-**, and **re-** + **stō**, **sistō**, **statuō**; **dē-** + **sistō**, **statuō**; **prae-** + **stō**, **statuō**.

By examining the meaning of the prefixes and the root verbs, assign meanings to the derivatives that you have formed. Check the accuracy of these meanings by consulting a Latin dictionary.



Segment probably  
depicting signum of a  
Roman legion,  
Volubilis, Morocco

# 22

## Conditional Sentences

Nūbere Paula cupit nōbīs, ego dūcere Paulam  
nōlō: anus est. Vellem, sī magis esset anus.

*Old Paula wants to marry me;  
my "no" keeps getting stronger.  
If only she were older,  
I'd hesitate no longer.*

MARTIAL 10.8

168

### Somnia Vigilantium (Daydreams)

- Secunda. Quid meditāris (*are you thinking of*)?  
Mārcus. Nihil. Abī. Nōnne vidēs mē esse solum velle?  
Secunda. At, Mārce, sī scīrēs ea quae audīvī . . .  
Mārcus. Quid tandem (*Well, then*) audīvistī?  
5 Secunda. Māllēs scīre quam mē abīre vidēre. (*Exit.*)



- Mārcus.** Redī, Secunda! Redī! Scīre volō quid audīverīs.
- Secunda.** Redeō. Sed sī nārrem, fortasse nōn taceās, et mihi dolōrī erit, nam parentēs invenient mē scīre, nisi tacēbis, et irātī erunt.
- Mārcus.** Nunc nūgāris (*are talking nonsense*), Secunda. Sī 10 puer essēs, bene scīrēs puerōs tacēre posse. Loquere.
- Secunda.** Loquar. Sed tū tacē. Tacēbisne, sī dīxerō?
- Mārcus.** Tacēbō, sānē. At dīc.
- Secunda.** Patrem audīvī mātīrī dīcere Pūblium prīmō vēre ex Asiā reditūrum esse. Ad portum iam iter facit et 15 mox nāvem solvet.
- Mārcus.** Sī redeat, bene sit. Sed cūr parentēs nōn ipsī dē reditū Pūblii nōbīs omnibus praesentibus loquuntur?
- Secunda.** Pater mātrem iussit tacēre. Ipse nōn est certus.
- Mārcus.** Sī pater nōn vult liberōs scīre, taceāmus . . . Ah! 20 Sī Pūblius redeat dīves, nōs omnēs nōn diūtius pauperēs sīmus, et omnia quae volumus facere possīmus. Nam meditābar . . .
- Secunda.** Quid meditābāris? Nunc sciō cūr sōlus esse velīs.
- Mārcus.** Sī pauperēs nōn fuissēmus, tribūnus mīlitum<sup>1</sup> essem, 25 et cum Caesare in Galliā essem.
- Secunda.** Mīles esse poterās (*could have been*) et multōs barbarōs occīdere. Legiōnārius (*a legionary soldier*) sī fuissēs, centuriō<sup>2</sup> nunc essēs. Tē centuriōne numquam aut incommodum aut calamitātem exer- 30 citus Rōmānus acciperet. Tū cēterīs centuriōnibus virtūte magnopere praestārēs.
- Mārcus.** Centuriō esse nōlō. Sī tribūnus mīlitum essem, cum Caesare vīverem.
- Secunda.** Nōn es tribūnus, es tabernārius (*shop-keeper*). Sed 35 sī Pūblius redierit, dīves, ut semper scrībit sē esse futūrum, multōs servōs habēbō et vestēs aurō ōrnātās et omnia quae volō. At tacē, cum mātīre pater venit.

<sup>1</sup>The *tribūnī mīlitum* were officers of the army, six to a legion, who commanded in turn, each for two months.

<sup>2</sup>A *centuriō* commanded a company (century). There were sixty centurions in the Roman legion.



A conditional sentence consists of two parts: the conditional clause or protasis, and the conclusion or apodosis. In the sentence, *If the legion crosses, the enemy will fall back*, the clause introduced by *If* is the conditional clause, and *the enemy will fall back* is the conclusion.

The regular conjunctions for use in conditional clauses are *sī*, *if*, and *nisi*, *unless* or *if . . . not*.

Conditions may be divided into the following classes:

- A. Simple conditions in present and past time.
- B. Future conditions: (i) Future more vivid conditions, (ii) Future less vivid conditions.
- C. Untrue conditions: (i) in present time, (ii) in past time, (iii) in mixed time.

*Sī adest, bene est.* If he is present, it is well.

*Sī aderat, bene erat.* If he was present, it was well.

*Sī heri aderat, bene est.* If he was present yesterday,  
it is well (now).

*Peream nisi sum amicus.* May I perish if I am not a friend.

*Nisi auxilium vīs, abī.* Unless you wish help, go away.

A. Simple conditions in present or past time. In the sentence, *If he was there, he heard everything*, nothing is implied as to whether he was there or not; but, if he was there, it follows that he heard everything. In such conditions, a connection is stated between two sets of facts or events, without any expressed regard to the likelihood of the occurrence of the events. In such conditions, the mood is regularly indicative; the protasis and apodosis may differ in tense; sometimes the apodosis takes the form of a wish or command.

B. Future conditions, in which both protasis and apodosis refer to the future, may express a thought in a more definite and positive form (future more vivid) or in a vaguer or less positive form (future less vivid). The apodosis of a future more vivid has a verb form with *shall* or *will*; that of a future less vivid, a verb form with *should* or *would*.

Future more vivid: If he does (will do) this, we shall praise him.

Future less vivid: If he should do (were to do) this,  
we should praise him.

(i) Future more vivid.

(a) **Sī hoc audīverit, nōbīs dīcet.** If (in the future) he  
hears this, he (in the future) will tell us.

As the action of the protasis takes place prior to the action of the apodosis, the future perfect is used in the protasis, and the future in the apodosis.

(b) **Sī aderit, omnia vidēbit.** If (in the future) he is  
present, he (in the future) will see everything.

As the action of the protasis and the action of the apodosis take place at the same time, the future is used in both clauses.

(ii) Future less vivid.

**Sī hoc audiat, nōbīs dīcat.** If (in the future) he should  
hear (or were to hear) this, he (in the future) would tell us.

In such conditions, the present subjunctive is used in both clauses.

C. Untrue conditions. A condition may be looked upon as something which cannot be fulfilled, or which is contrary to fact.

If Caesar were fighting (now, but he is not), he would be conquering (now, but he is not).

If Publius had remained in Rome (but he did not), he would have been elected consul (but he was not).

(i) **Sī Pūblius adesset, dīvitēs essēmus.** If Publius were here  
(now, but he is not), we should be rich (now, but we are not).

In present time the imperfect subjunctive is used in both clauses.

(ii) **Sī Pūblius adfuisset, dīvitēs fuissēmus.** If Publius had  
been here (but he was not), we should have been rich  
(but we were not).

In past time the pluperfect subjunctive is used in both clauses.



*From the drawing by Alan Sorrell. Ministry of Works 3 (N). Crown Copyright.*

Caerwent Roman City, Monmouthshire. Reconstruction drawing of Roman shops and houses c. 300 A.D.

- (iii) *Sī hoc fēcisset, nunc esset dīves.* If he had done this  
(but he did not), he would now be rich (but he is not).

Sometimes what has happened in the past affects what is happening now. The clause referring to the past has the pluperfect subjunctive; the clause referring to the present, the imperfect subjunctive.

Summary of moods in conditional sentences.

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

simple

future more vivid

future less vivid

untrue (contrary to fact)

A. *Translate:*

1. Sī lēgātus mīlitēs dūcit, vincunt.
2. Sī lēgātus mīlitēs dūcēbat, vincēbant.
3. Sī lēgātus mīlitēs dūcet, vincent.
4. Sī lēgātus mīlitēs dūcat, vincant.
5. Sī lēgātus mīlitēs dūceret, vincerent.
6. Sī lēgātus mīlitēs dūxisset, vīcissent.
7. Sī pecūniam habēbō, tibi laetē dabō.
8. Sī pecūniam habeam, tibi dem.
9. Sī pecūniam habērem, tibi darem.
10. Sī pecūniam habēbam, tibi dedī.
11. Sī pecūniam habuissem, tibi dedissem.
12. Nisi dux exercitum Instrueret, hostēs oppugnārent.
13. Nisi dux exercitum Instrūxisset, hostēs oppugnāvissent.
14. Nisi dux exercitum Instruat, hostēs oppugnent.
15. Sī mātṛōnae in tabernās iniērunt, multa emunt.
16. Sī mātṛōnae in tabernās inierint, multa ement.
17. Sī mātṛōnae in tabernās iniissent, multa ēmissent.
18. Sī mātṛōnae in tabernās iniissent, multa emerent.

B. *Complete the following sentences:*

1. Nisi dux bonus \_\_\_\_ (*should be*), mīlitēs eī \_\_\_\_ (*would not obey*).
2. Nisi dux bonus \_\_\_\_ (*is*), mīlitēs eī \_\_\_\_ (*will not obey*).
3. Nisi dux bonus \_\_\_\_ (*had been*), mīlitēs eī \_\_\_\_ (*would not have obeyed*).
4. Nisi dux bonus \_\_\_\_ (*was*), mīlitēs eī \_\_\_\_ (*did not obey*).
5. Mīlitēs, sī \_\_\_\_ (*they have attacked*), hostēs \_\_\_\_ (*are overcoming*).
6. Mīlitēs, sī \_\_\_\_ (*they should attack*), hostēs \_\_\_\_ (*would overcome*).
7. Mīlitēs, sī \_\_\_\_ (*they had attacked*), hostēs \_\_\_\_ (*would have overcome*).
8. Mīlitēs, sī \_\_\_\_ (*they have attacked*), hostēs \_\_\_\_ (*will overcome*).
9. Mīlitēs, sī \_\_\_\_ (*they were attacking*), hostēs \_\_\_\_ (*were overcoming*).



10. Sī calamitās \_\_\_\_ (were being suffered), nāvēs \_\_\_\_ (they would be setting sail).
11. Sī calamitās \_\_\_\_ (should be suffered), nāvēs \_\_\_\_ (they would set sail).
12. Sī calamitās \_\_\_\_ (had been suffered), nāvēs \_\_\_\_ (they would have set sail).
13. Sī nāvēs \_\_\_\_ (are [have been] broken), in portum inīre \_\_\_\_ (we cannot).
14. Sī nāvēs \_\_\_\_ (had been broken), in portum inīre \_\_\_\_ (we could not have).
15. Sī nāvēs \_\_\_\_ (have been broken), in portum inīre \_\_\_\_ (we shall not be able).
16. Sī nāvēs \_\_\_\_ (should be broken), in portum inīre \_\_\_\_ (we would not be able).
17. Sī nāvēs \_\_\_\_ (were being broken), in portum inīre \_\_\_\_ (we were not able).
18. Militēs, sī \_\_\_\_ (they have been defeated), sub iugum \_\_\_\_ (have been sent).
19. Militēs, sī \_\_\_\_ (they had been defeated), sub iugum \_\_\_\_ (would have been sent).
20. Militēs, sī \_\_\_\_ (they are defeated), sub iugum \_\_\_\_ (will be sent).

C. *Translate:*

1. Sī calamitātem accēpissē, celerius revertissē. 2. Sī calamitātem accēperō, revertar. 3. Sī incommodum accēpissē, aegerrimē rediissē. 4. Nisi haec fēceris, occīdēris. 5. Praeda erit nostra sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulerimus. 6. Centuriō, sī aderat, erat cum militibus. 7. Incommodō acceptō, nisi auxilium noctū lātum erit, diūtius vim hostium sustinēre nōn poterimus. 8. Sī complūrēs ex equitibus cadant, reliquī quam celerrimē in castra sē referant. 9. Sī explōrātōrēs quī collem ascendēbant captī essent, nunc magnō in periculō essēmus omnēs. 10. Sī Rōma erit in periculō, multī, suī oblītī, prō patriā morientur.

D. *Write in Latin:*

1. If the legion crosses, the enemy will fall back. 2. If he is there, he will lead the soldiers. 3. If Publius returns before

winter, Marcus will be glad. 4. If he were to see you, he would judge you a rich man. 5. Publius would bring many presents for his parents if he were a rich man. 6. Publius would have brought many things with him if he had been a rich man. 7. If you had obeyed him at that time, you would now have many friends. 8. If he were not a poor man, he too would have gone to Rome to see the great temple. 9. If our allies should come to our assistance, we should be able to take the town before winter. 10. Unless I am deceived, many men fell in the battle.

171

VOCABULARY

incommodum, -ī, <i>n.</i> , misfortune, loss	praestō, -āre, praestiti, praestitum (praestātum), <i>with dat.</i> , be superior to, excel, surpass
incommodum accipere, to suffer loss	
somnium, -ī, <i>n.</i> , a dream	vigilō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, be awake, keep awake; watch
calamitās, -tātis, <i>f.</i> , misfortune, disaster, calamity	caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesum, cut; cut down, slay
calamitātem accipere, to suffer disaster (defeat)	occidō, -ere, occīdī, occisum, cut down, kill (with a weapon)
centuriō, -ōnis, <i>m.</i> , centurion	solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum, loose, free, release
vestis, vestis, <i>f.</i> , clothing, clothes	nāvem solvere, to set sail, sail
portus, -ūs, <i>m.</i> , harbor, port	sānē, <i>adv.</i> , surely, certainly, of course
barbarus, -a, -um, foreign, strange; uncivilized	ut, <i>conj. with indicative</i> , as, just as; when
pauper ( <i>gen. pauperis</i> ), of small means, poor; <i>as noun</i> , a poor man	
praesēns ( <i>gen. praesentis</i> ), present, at hand; in person	

172

WORD STUDY

The verbs **cadō** and **caedō** (also their compounds) must be carefully distinguished. In compounds of **cadō**, the **-a-** becomes **-i-**.

cadō, cadere, ce'cidī, cāsum, fall  
occidō, occidere, oc'cidī, occāsum, fall down  
incidō, incidere, in'cidī, incāsum, fall into, fall upon

Connect **cadō** in meaning with *cadence* (*in music*), *casual* (*accidental*), *casualty* (*accident*). Connect **occidō** with *occasion*, *occasional*. **Occāsus**, -ūs, means *setting*; **occāsus sōlis**, the *West*. Connect **incidō** with *in'cident*.

In compounds of **caedō**, the -ae- becomes -ī-.

caedō, caedere, cecī'dī, caesum, cut, slay  
occidō, occidere, occī'dī, occīsum, cut down, slay  
incidō, incidere, incī'dī, incīsum, cut into, cut open

From the same root as **caedō** is the noun **caedēs**, *slaughter*. In English, the suffix -*cide* helps to form nouns meaning *the slayer of* and *the slaughter of*: *fratricide*, *homicide*, *parricide*, *regicide*, *suicide*.

Connect **incidō** with *inci'sion*.









*Delos. Mosaic of  
a Greek deity riding  
on a dolphin*

# 23

## Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives

### Cupid's Portrait

Et meritō hāmātīs manus est armāta sagittīs,  
et pharetra ex umerō Gnōsia utrōque iacet:  
ante ferit quoniam, tūtī quam cernimus hostem,  
nec quisquam ex illō vulnere sānus abit.

*And rightly is his hand armed with barbed arrows  
and a Cretan quiver hangs from his two shoulders:  
since he strikes his enemy before we, safe and snug, behold him,  
and no one goes off untouched by that wound.*

PROPERTIUS: 2.12. 9-12

(*Accius cum uxore Cluentiā loquitur.*)

**Accius :** Nē quis nōs audiat, Cluentia! Litterās Pūblii hīc in manū habeō, quās cuidam amīcō dederat. Litterās tamen, tē nōn cōsultātā, liberīs recitāre (*read aloud*) nōlēbam. Nam bene scīs quam cupidē reditum Pūblii expectent. Quisque eōrum spērat frātrem 5 esse reditūrum alterum (*a second*) Crassum, dīvitē et potentē, virum summae dignitātis.

**Cluentia.** Quid dīcis, Acci? Nōnne fīlius noster est dīves?

**Accius.** Uterque nostrum, Cluentia, est dēceptus. Nē Pūblium culpēmus, nam numquam nōs dēcēpit neque 10 dīxit sē relātūrum amphorās argentī plēnās. Semper scrībēbat sē valēre remque fēliciter gerere, et pulchra dōna mittēbat. Et nunc, cum domum redīre statuit, scrībit nē nimis (*too much*) spērēmus. Negat tamen quemquam esse sē fēliciōrem, nam mox sē 15 ad familiam esse reditūrum. Liberōs igitur moneāmus. Nē Pūblius liberōs trīstēs inveniāt, praesertim cum tam bonus et liberālis fuerit! Nē dēsīt laetitīa nōbīs.

(*Secunda celeriter intrat.*)

**Secunda.** Māter, māter, est aliquis quī in viā appropinquat 20 duōbus cum servīs quī magna onera portant.

**Cluentia.** Quis est, Secunda?

**Secunda.** Ō māter, est Pūbliō frātrī nostrō similis: dīcere dēbuī, eum similem esse patrī, sed esse minōrem aetātē. Cūr nōn properātis, parentēs? 25

(*Pūblius cum Aulō et Tertiā intrat. Servī onera dēpōnunt.*)

**Pūblius.** Avēte (*Hail*), parentēs. Incolumis redeō. Celerius quam spērāveram pervēnī. Nōlī lacrimāre, bona māter; bene valeō.

**Cluentia.** Fēlicissima sum omnium fēminārum. Rediit fīlius meus! 30

(*Māter collō fīliū adhaeret et eī ōscula dat.*)

**Pūblius.** Quam fēlicēs erimus omnēs. Sorōrēs meae, frāter tuus nōn est dīves neque est pauper. (*Puellae Pūbliō occurrunt.*)



*The Roman Bath and Museum*

Left, gilt-bronze head, presumably of the goddess Minerva, found in Bath, England, 1727.

Below, Roman tableware, 2nd century. Lullingstone Roman Villa, Kent.





**Secunda.** Satis dīves es, Pūblī. Nōn dīvitiās tuās sed tē  
amāmus. Nōlī iterum domō discēdere. 35  
**Omnēs.** Bene prō nōbīs dīcis, Secunda.

174

## INDEFINITES

**Nūllum alium ducem sequēmur.**

We shall follow no other leader.

**Alius mīles vulnerātur, alius capitur.**

One soldier is wounded, another captured.

**Aliās legiōnēs mittet, aliās retinēbit.**

He will send some legions, (and) will hold back others.

**Alius** (App., 306) means *other* or *another* (of more than two persons or things): **alius . . . alius**, *one . . . another*; **aliī . . . aliī**, *some . . . others*.

**Alter cōsul mittitur.**

The other consul is being sent.

**Alter cōsul est cum cōpiīs, alter (est) Rōmae.**

The one consul is with the troops, the other is in Rome.

**Alter** (App., 306) means *the other* (of two); **alter . . . alter**, *the one . . . the other*.

**Lēgātōs ad cēterās cīvitatēs mittit.**

He is sending envoys to all the other states.

**Cēterī** means *the rest, all the others*.

(a) **Reliqua legiō oppidum cēpit.**

The rest of the legion has captured the town.

**Reliquus**, *remaining*, is generally translated by *the rest of*. It is used in the singular with a singular noun.

(b) **Reliquīs prīncipibus obsidēs imperāvit.**

He demanded hostages from the rest of the chiefs.

**Reliquī** means *the others = the rest, those remaining*.

For the declension and uses of the indefinite pronoun **quis** and the indefinite adjective **quī**, see App. 321-322.



**Aliquis nōs hūc dūxit.**

Someone (whom I do not know or cannot name) brought us here.

**Aliquid dixistī.**

You said something.

The pronouns **quis** and **quī** appear in various combinations. The pronoun **aliquis** is declined like the indefinite pronoun **quis**. **Aliquis**, *someone (or other)*, **aliquid**, *something*, is generally used in the singular to indicate a person or thing not defined in the mind of the speaker. **Aliquis** stands between **quis**, less definite and **quīdam**, more definite.

**Nōnnūllī ex servīs fūgērunt.**

Some (but not all) of the slaves ran away.

**Nōnnūllī**, **-ae**, **-a** means *some* in the sense of *some few*; *some*, *but not all*.

**Nec quemquam vidērunt.**

Nor did they see anyone.

The pronoun **quisquam**, *anyone*, **quidquam**, *anything*, is used in negative sentences.

**Quīdam mihi hoc dixit.**

A certain man (whom I know but am not naming) told me this.

**Ōrātōrem quendam ōrātiōnem habentem audīvī.**

I heard a certain orator delivering a speech.

For the declension of the pronoun **quīdam**, **quaedam**, **quiddam** and of the adjective **quīdam**, **quaedam**, **quoddam**, see App. 324. You will note that **m** changes to **n** before **d** (e.g., **quendam**, **quōrundam**). **Quīdam**, *a certain*, indicates a person or thing not named, but known to the speaker; it often stands for the English indefinite article *a* or *an*.

**Uterque cōsul interfectus est.**

Each consul was killed. Both consuls were killed.

**Uterque** (declined like **uter**, App. 306, with **-que** added) means *each (of two)*; it is singular in number but is often best translated by the English plural *both*.

**Quisque agricola agrum suum arat.**

Each farmer plows his own field.

**Sibi quisque cōsulat.**

Let each man take thought for himself.

**Quisque** (declined like **quis** with **-que** added) means *each* (of several).

**Nēminem** culpāt. He blames no one.

**Nūllō** iuvante opus fēcimus.

We accomplished the task without anyone's help.

**Nēmō**, *no one, nobody*, masculine singular. For declension, see App. 325.

**Nūllō** cum periculō Rōmam pervēnimus.

With no danger (without danger) we reached Rome.

**Nūllus** (declined like **ūnus**, App. 306) as an adjective means *no*.

**Nihil** est fidē melius. Nothing is better than loyalty.

**Nihil** pecūniae habent. They have no money.

**Nihil**, *nothing*, neuter singular, is indeclinable.

**Neuter** cōsul exercitum cōscribere potuit.

Neither consul could enroll an army.

**Neuter** (declined like **uter**, App. 306) means *neither* (of two).

## SUMMARY OF INDEFINITES

**alius**, **-a**, **-ud**, other, another

**alius** . . . **alius**, one . . . another

**aliī** . . . **aliī**, some . . . others

**alter**, **-era**, **-erum**, the other (of two)

**alter** . . . **alter**, the one . . . the other

**aliquis**, **-quid**, someone, something

**quisquam**, **quidquam**, anyone, anything

**quisque**, **quidque**, each (of several)

**uterque**, **utra-**, **utrum-**, each (of two); both

**quīdam**, **quae-**, **quid-** (**quod-**), a certain, a (an)

**nūllus**, **-a**, **-um**, no

**nōnnūllī**, **-ae**, **-a**, some

**nihil**, nothing

**nēmō**, nobody, no one

**neuter**, **-tra**, **-trum**, neither

**cēterī**, **-ae**, **-a**, the rest, all the others

**reliquus**, **-a**, **-um**, the remaining, the rest of

A. *Translate:*

1. Aliud augurium habēmus. 2. Onus alterius amphorae ferre nōn potest. 3. Alii aliam in partem fugient. 4. Alter socius nōn iuvābit. 5. Alteri filiō pater dat pecūniam; alteri nihil. 6. Altera spēlunca est magna, altera parva. 7. Cēteri lēgātī irātī erant. 8. Aliquis hōs mīlitēs dūcet. 9. Aliquid dē hōc lēgātō audīvī. 10. Nōnnūllōs servōs pūnīvit. 11. Aliquid ā nōnnūllīs cīvibus petīvit. 12. Nec quisquam ā portū vēnit. 13. Nec quidquam in spēluncā vidēre poterat. 14. Quīdam ex coniūrātīs aliquid mihi nārrāvit. 15. Utramque urbem vī et armīs aggressī sunt. 16. Cuique mīlitī ut fortiter pugnet imperat. 17. Nēminem in mūrō oppidī vīdērunt. 18. Nūllō prohibente ōscula puellae dedimus. 19. Nihil dolī erat in cōnsiliō. 20. Neutrum lēgātum culpāvimus.

B. *Complete the following sentences:*

1. \_\_\_\_ (*The rest of*) sociī dōna mīsērunt. 2. Ā senātōribus \_\_\_\_ (*the remaining*) bellum dēcrētum est. 3. In \_\_\_\_ (*each*) tabernā mātrōnae inveniuntur. 4. \_\_\_\_ (*Neither*) oculō vidēre potest. 5. Dux \_\_\_\_ (*neither*) sociō occurrit. 6. Hōc annō \_\_\_\_ (*no*) calamitātem accēpimus. 7. \_\_\_\_ (*No*) ancorae nāvēs tenent. 8. Imperāvit mīlitibus \_\_\_\_ (*that no one*) effugeret. 9. \_\_\_\_ (*A certain*) centuriō dē fātō suō questus est. 10. Accidit \_\_\_\_ (*that no one*) effugeret. 11. Nec \_\_\_\_ (*any one*) audīvērunt. 12. Nec \_\_\_\_ (*anyone*) effugere potuit. 13. \_\_\_\_ (*Someone*) victōriam ēnūntiāvit. 14. Dē perfugā \_\_\_\_ (*something*) audīvīt. 15. \_\_\_\_ (*Some*) ex mātrōnīs in tabernam iniērunt. 16. \_\_\_\_ (*Each of the two*) nāvigium in aquam dēdūcit. 17. Nōmen \_\_\_\_ (*each of several*) perfugae nūntiātum est. 18. Postulat ex \_\_\_\_ (*each*) agricolā ut agrum suum aret. 19. \_\_\_\_ (*No one*) in agrō vīdimus. 20. \_\_\_\_ (*Nothing*) in mūrō vīdimus. 21. Nostrī amīcī \_\_\_\_ (*no*) superbiae habent. 22. Rēgī \_\_\_\_ (*neither*) cōnsilium ēnūntiāvit. 23. Coniūrātī cōnsilium \_\_\_\_ (*to no one*) ēnūntiāvērunt. 24. In hortō \_\_\_\_ (*a certain*) servum loquentem dē cōnsiliō audīvī.

C. *Translate:*

1. Reliqua familia Pūblium expectat. 2. Aliquis Pūbliō viam mōnstrābit. 3. Nōnnūllae ex fēminīs sunt fēlicissimae. 4. Negō quemquam esse Pūbliō fēliciōrem. 5. Tacē nē quis tē videat. 6. Quīdam puer adventum meum laetē expectat. 7. Uterque frāter est bonus et liberālis. 8. Sī quis hoc fēcisset, poenās dedisset. 9. Quisque eōrum spērat frātrem esse reditūrum dīvitem. 10. Altera soror est mātṛī similis, altera patrī.

D. *Write in Latin:*

1. We intend to follow no other leader. 2. Some love my money, some me myself. 3. We have no opportunity for a just peace. 4. He is returning with certain of his friends. 5. He said that no one had sent gifts. 6. Each general will build as many ships as possible during the winter. 7. Unless we send someone, Publius will not learn that we are here. 8. No one before this time had crossed the mountains which are between Gaul and Italy. 9. I am prevented by grief from telling each of you what has taken place. 10. It happens that no one has conquered the cavalry of the enemy.

amphora, -ae, <i>f.</i> , a vessel with two handles, a jar; a measure	haereō, -ēre, haesi, haesum, cling, stick
argentum, -ī, <i>n.</i> , silver; money	adhaereō, -ēre, -haesi, -haesum, cling to, stick to
collum, -ī, <i>n.</i> , neck	dēcipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, catch, entrap; deceive, cheat
ōsculum, -ī, <i>n.</i> , kiss	occurrō, -ere, occurrī, occursum, with <i>dat.</i> , run up to, go to meet
ōscula dare, to kiss	dēsum, deesse, dēfui, be away; fail, be wanting <sup>1</sup>
dignitās, -tātis, <i>f.</i> , dignity, grandeur; rank	praesertim, <i>adv.</i> , especially
onus, oneris, <i>n.</i> , load, burden, weight	
liberālis, -is, -e, generous	
culpō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, blame	

<sup>1</sup>Note the construction with *dēsum*. English says, *We lack grain*; Latin says, *Grain is lacking to us*: *Frūmentum nōbīs (dative) deest*.





*Segment of the Ara  
Pacis portraying priests  
and the imperial family  
with Agrippa, Julius,  
Tiberius and Lucius  
Caesar, Florence, Italy*

24

### Indirect Discourse Ablative of Manner

Puerōs impūbēs compertum est, sī plūrimō cibō nimiōque  
sōmnō ūterentur, hebetiōrēs fierī . . . corporaque eōrum im-  
prōcēra fierī minusque adolēscere.

*It has been discovered that if young children eat a lot and sleep  
too much, they become dullish and their bodies become puny and  
their growth is stunted.*

GELLIUS: NOCTES ATTICAE 4.19

177

### Dē Praetōre Improbō

In 74 B.C., Gaius Verres, while serving as City Praetor at Rome, misused his official powers to enrich himself. In 73–71 B.C., as governor of Sicily, he was guilty of graft, extortion, theft, and cruelty. At the end of his term of office the Sicilians

took steps to prosecute him, and entrusted their case to Cicero. The following episode is adapted from Cicero's *Verrine Orations*.

Audīvistis dīcere lēgātōs Tyndarītānōs (*of Tyndaris*)<sup>1</sup> Mercurium,<sup>2</sup> quī apud eōs summā religiōne (*reverence*) colerētur, Verris vī, scelere, imperiōque esse sublātum. Quī, cum prīmum in illud oppidum vēnit, statuam ut dēmōlīrentur (*dēmōlior, tear down*) et Messānam (*to Messana*) portārent imperāvit. 5 Quod eīs quī aderant indignum, quī audiēbant incrēdibile vidēbātur. Verrēs, vir callidissimus, nōn persevērāvit (*persist*); sed discēdēns imperat prīncipī Sōpatrō ut dēmōlīrētur.

Paulō post autem praetor Tyndaridem venit; quaerit dē statuā. Sōpater eī respondit senātum nōn permittere; com- 10 mūnī cōnsiliō poenam capitis (*the death penalty*) cōstitūtā esse sī iniussū senātūs quis tetigisset. Tum Verrēs “Quam mihi poenam nārās? Vīvum tē nōn relinquam. Tibi dīcō tē moritūrum esse virgīs (*virga, switch, rod*) nisi mihi statua trādita sit. Hāc tantum ratiōne perīculum āvertēs tuum.” 15

Rē ad senātum dēlātā, patrēs Sōpatrō respōnsum nūllum dant, sed commōtī perturbātique discēdunt. Ille praetōrī rem dēmōnstrat; negat sē statuam quam petat dare posse.

Erat hiems summa, tempestās (*weather*) perfrīgida, imber (*rain*) maximus, cum Verrēs imperat līctōribus<sup>3</sup> ut Sōpatrum dē 20 porticū (*colonnade*), in quā ipse sedēbat, praecipitem in forum dēiciant. Sine morā ille spoliātus stīpātusque est (*stripped and surrounded*) ā līctōribus.

Equestrēs sunt mediō in forō Mārcellōrum<sup>4</sup> statuāe, ut ferē cēterīs in oppidīs Siciliae; ex quibus praetor Gaī Mārcellī 25 statuam dēlēgit. In eā Sōpatrum, hominem nōbilem, dēligārī iubet. Quō cruciātū est affectus, vinctus (*bound*) nūdus in aere (*bronze*), in imbrī, in frīgore! Multitūdō (*The crowd*), misericordiā commōta, senātum clāmōre magnō precāta est ut Verrī statuam illam Mercuriī pollicērētur. Tum senātus ad 30 praetōrem venit, pollicētur Mercurium. Ita Sōpater dē statuā vix vīvus aufertur.

<sup>1</sup>Tyndaris, Tyndaridis, a town on the northern coast of Sicily.

<sup>2</sup>Mercury here = a statue of Mercury.

<sup>3</sup>The lictors were attendants who carried the fasces before a Roman magistrate.

<sup>4</sup>The Marcelli were an illustrious Roman family.

The words or thoughts of a person may be reported in two ways:

1. In direct discourse the actual words or thoughts are quoted.
2. In indirect discourse the words or thoughts are made grammatically dependent upon a verb of saying, thinking, etc.

	DIRECT	INDIRECT
<i>Statement</i>	"I was born in Rome," he said.	He said that he had been born in Rome.
<i>Question</i>	"Where were you born?" he asked.	He asked where we had been born.
<i>Command</i>	"Set out for Ephesus," he said to us.	He told us to set out for Ephesus.

When a sentence of direct discourse is changed into indirect discourse, the following changes take place:

In the principal clause

1. indirect statements have the infinitive with the subject accusative;
2. indirect questions have the subjunctive;
3. indirect commands or requests have the subjunctive.

**Dixit sē militēs mittere.**

He said that he was sending the soldiers.

**Quaesivit cūr militēs mitterem.**

He asked why I was sending the soldiers.

**Imperāvit ut militēs mitterem.**

He ordered me to send the soldiers.

A complex sentence is made up of one or more principal clauses and one or more subordinate clauses.

The envoys [whom we are sending] will make peace with you.  
[When they saw the soldiers], they fled [because they were afraid].

In Latin, when a complex sentence of direct discourse is changed into indirect discourse, all subordinate clauses have their verbs in the subjunctive. The tense of the subjunctive in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse depends on two factors: (i) the tense used in the original subordinate clause; (ii) the sequence, which is fixed by the introductory verb (*he says, he said, he asks, he asked, etc.*).



The peristyle of this house in Pompeii reveals the opulence amid which many Romans lived.

## EXAMPLES

1. DIRECT: **Militēs [quōs Hannibal dūcit] sunt fortēs.**

The soldiers [whom Hannibal is leading] are brave.

- INDIRECT: **Dīcō militēs [quōs Hannibal dūcat] esse fortēs.**

I say that the soldiers [whom Hannibal is leading] are brave.

- Dīxī militēs [quōs Hannibal dūceret] esse fortēs.**

I said that the soldiers [whom Hannibal was leading] were brave.

A present tense of the subordinate clause in the direct discourse is, in the indirect, always represented by the present or imperfect subjunctive, according to sequence.



2. DIRECT: **Militēs [quī erunt in castrīs] pugnābunt.**

The soldiers [who will be in the camp] will fight.

INDIRECT: **Dicō militēs [quī sint in castrīs] pugnātūrōs esse.**

I say that the soldiers [who will be in the camp] will fight.

**Dixī militēs [quī essent in castrīs] pugnātūrōs esse.**

I said that the soldiers [who would be in the camp] would fight.

A future tense of the subordinate clause in the direct discourse is, in the indirect, most often represented by the present or imperfect subjunctive, according to sequence.

DIRECT: **Militēs [quī noctū in castra revertentur] pugnant.**

The soldiers [who will return to camp at night] are fighting.

INDIRECT: **Dicō militēs [quī noctū in castra reversūrī sint] pugnāre.**

I say that the soldiers [who will return to camp at night] are fighting.

**Dixī militēs [quī noctū in castra reversūrī essent] pugnāre.**

I said that the soldiers [who would return to camp at night] were fighting.

If the future of the subordinate clause in the direct discourse refers to a time later than that of the main verb, it is represented in the indirect by the future participle active + **sim** or **essem**, according to sequence.

3. DIRECT: **Montēs [quōs trānsiit] sunt altī.**

The mountains [that he has crossed] are high.

INDIRECT: **Dicō montēs [quōs trānsierit] esse altōs.**

I say that the mountains [which he has crossed] are high.

**Dixī montēs [quōs trānsiisset] esse altōs.**

I said that the mountains [which he had crossed] were high.

DIRECT: **Quō dūcis cōpiās [quās coēgistī]?**

Where are you leading the troops [that you have collected]?

INDIRECT: **Quaerit quō dūcās cōpiās [quās coēgerīs].**  
He asks where you are leading the troops [that you have collected].

**Quaesivit quō dūcerēs cōpiās [quās coēgissēs].**  
He asked where you were leading the troops [that you had collected].

DIRECT: **Mitte frūmentum [quod pollicitus es].**  
Send the grain [that you have promised].

INDIRECT: **Mihi imperat ut mittam frūmentum [quod pollicitus sim].**

He orders me to send the grain [that I have promised].

**Mihi imperāvit ut mitterem frūmentum [quod pollicitus essem].**

He ordered me to send the grain [that I had promised].

A perfect tense of the indicative in the subordinate clause of the direct discourse is, in the indirect, represented by the perfect or the pluperfect subjunctive, according to sequence.

4. DIRECT: **Militēs [quōs coēgerō] montēs trānsībunt.**  
The soldiers [whom I shall collect] will cross the mountains.

INDIRECT: **Dicō militēs [quōs coēgerim] montēs trānsitūrōs esse.**  
I say that the soldiers [whom I shall collect] will cross the mountains.

**Dixi militēs [quōs coēgissem] montēs trānsitūrōs esse.**  
I said that the soldiers [whom I should collect] would cross the mountains.

A future perfect of the subordinate clause in the direct discourse is, in the indirect, represented by the perfect or the pluperfect subjunctive, according to sequence.

1. The ablative with **cum** may express the manner in which an act is performed.

**Cum celeritāte vēnit.** He came with speed.

**Summā (cum) celeritāte vēnit.** He came with the utmost speed.

**Magnō studiō pugnant.** They fight with great eagerness.

When the noun is modified by an adjective or its equivalent, the preposition is generally, but not always, omitted.

The preposition is commonly used in the phrase **magnō cum periculō**, *at great risk*.

2. The ablative, usually without a preposition, may express that in accordance with which something is, or is done.

Suō mōre clāmāvērunt.

According to their custom they cried out.

Mōre Rōmānō; meā sententiā.

In accordance with Roman custom; in my opinion.

Meā sponte; commūnī cōnsiliō.

Of my own accord; by common consent.

*According to custom*, when there is no modifier, is **ex cōnsuētūdine**. When there is a modifier, the preposition is not used: **cōnsuētūdine nostrā**, *according to our custom*.

A. *Translate:*

1. Haec est statua quam Verrēs aufert. Dīcō hanc esse statua quam Verrēs auferat. Dīxī hanc esse statuam quam Verrēs auferret.
2. Haec est urbs in quā incolunt. Sciō hanc esse urbem in quā incolant. Scīvī hanc esse urbem in quā incolerent.
3. Hoc est oppidum quod captum est. Dīcit hoc esse oppidum quod captum sit. Dīxit hoc esse oppidum quod captum esset.
4. Hoc est oppidum quod mīlitēs capient. Dīcit hoc esse oppidum quod mīlitēs captūrī sint. Dīxit hoc esse oppidum quod mīlitēs captūrī essent.
5. Is est lēgātus quī victōriam nūntiāvit. Sciō eum esse lēgātum quī victōriam nūntiāverit. Scīvī eum esse lēgātum quī victōriam nūntiāvisset.
6. Ubi est spēlunca in quam bovēs trahuntur? Rogō ubi sit spēlunca in quam bovēs trahantur. Rogāvī ubi esset spēlunca in quam bovēs traherentur.



The remnants of a forum, a basilica, and the Arch of Caracalla bear witness to the once-prosperous city of Volubilis, the chief inland town of the Roman province of Mauretania Tingitana. This area came under Roman influence during the reign of Augustus and was subdued by Claudius, who dispatched legions there to calm revolts. It was ravaged by the Vandals in the fifth century A.D.



7. Quis est imperātor quī urbem obsēdit? Scit quis sit imperātor quī urbem obsēderit. Scīvit quis esset imperātor quī urbem obsēdisset.
8. Cūr mīlitēs quōs hortātur ē proeliō fugient? Mīror cūr mīlitēs quōs hortētur ē proeliō fugitūrī sint. Mīrātus sum cūr mīlitēs quōs hortārētur ē proeliō fugitūrī essent.

B. *Fill in the blanks:*

1. Taberna quam \_\_\_\_ (*you are entering*) est in viā Rōmae. Sciō tabernam quam \_\_\_\_ (*you are entering*) esse in viā Rōmae. Scīvī tabernam quam \_\_\_\_ (*you were entering*) esse in viā Rōmae.
2. Aquila quam \_\_\_\_ (*you see*) volat in caelō. Intellegō aquilam quam \_\_\_\_ (*you see*) volāre in caelō. Intellēxī aquilam quam \_\_\_\_ (*you saw*) volāre in caelō.
3. Mīlitēs quod fortēs \_\_\_\_ (*are*) laudantur. Audit mīlitēs quod fortēs \_\_\_\_ (*are*) laudārī. Audīvit mīlitēs quod fortēs \_\_\_\_ (*were*) laudārī.
4. Spēlunca quam \_\_\_\_ (*he discovered*) est magna. Sciunt spēluncam quam \_\_\_\_ (*he discovered*) esse magnam. Scīvērunt spēluncam quam \_\_\_\_ (*he had discovered*) esse magnam.
5. Quōmodo mīlitēs quī \_\_\_\_ (*are being defeated*) magnō studiō pugnāre possunt? Rogat quōmodo mīlitēs quī \_\_\_\_ (*are being defeated*) magnō studiō pugnāre possint. Rogāvit quōmodo mīlitēs quī \_\_\_\_ (*were being defeated*) magnō studiō pugnāre possent.
6. Quantō gaudiō tamen epistula legītur cum nēmō eī \_\_\_\_ (*believes*)! Mīrātur quantō gaudiō tamen epistula legātur cum nēmō eī \_\_\_\_ (*believes*). Mīrātus est quantō gaudiō tamen epistula legerētur cum nēmō eī \_\_\_\_ (*believed*).
7. Nōne mīlitēs sī \_\_\_\_ (*they set out*) in castra pervenient? Rogat num mīlitēs, sī \_\_\_\_ (*set out*), in castra perventūrī sint. Rogāvit num mīlitēs, sī \_\_\_\_ (*set out*), in castra perventūrī essent.
8. Ostendite vōs fortēs, mīlitēs, sī vincere \_\_\_\_ (*you wish*). Monet mīlitēs ut sē fortēs ostendant, sī vincere \_\_\_\_ (*they wish*). Monuit mīlitēs ut sē fortēs ostenderent, sī vincere \_\_\_\_ (*they wished*).

9. Gaudēte omnēs, cum oppidum hostium \_\_\_\_ (*has been captured*). Hortantur ut omnēs gaudeant, cum oppidum hostium \_\_\_\_ (*has been captured*). Hortātī sunt ut omnēs gauderent, cum oppidum hostium \_\_\_\_ (*had been captured*).
10. Pollicēminī id quod dare \_\_\_\_ (*you can*). Moneō ut pollicēminī id quod dare \_\_\_\_ (*you can*). Monuī ut pollicērēminī id quod dare \_\_\_\_ (*you could*).

C. *Fill in the blanks:*

1. Turba quam vidēs est irāta. Sciō turbam quam \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ irātam. Scīvī turbam quam \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ irātam.
2. Lēgātus quem culpāvit nōn erat fortis. Audiunt lēgātum quem \_\_\_\_ nōn \_\_\_\_ fortem. Audīvērunt lēgātum quem \_\_\_\_ nōn \_\_\_\_ fortem.
3. Lēgātus cum pervēnerit victōriam nūntiābit. Intellegit lēgātum cum \_\_\_\_ victōriam \_\_\_\_\_. Intellēxit lēgātum cum \_\_\_\_ victōriam \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Epistula quam leget ab imperātōre mittitur. Sciunt epistulam quam \_\_\_\_ ab imperātōre \_\_\_\_\_. Scīvērunt epistulam quam \_\_\_\_ ab imperātōre \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Nōne poena quam merētur est lēnis? Rogō num poena quam \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ lēnis. Rogāvī num poena quam \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ lēnis.
6. Cūr gēns quam timuērunt ā mīlitibus oppressa est? Mīrātur cūr gēns quam \_\_\_\_ ā mīlitibus \_\_\_\_\_. Mīrātus est cūr gēns quam \_\_\_\_ ā mīlitibus \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Quōmodo deīs satisfacient sī augurium negligētur? Vident quōmodo deīs \_\_\_\_ sī augurium \_\_\_\_\_. Vidērunt quōmodo deīs \_\_\_\_ sī augurium \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Aggrediminī, mīlitēs, urbem quae inimīca est. Persuādet mīlitibus ut \_\_\_\_ urbem quae inimīca \_\_\_\_\_. Persuāsīt mīlitibus ut \_\_\_\_ urbem quae inimīca \_\_\_\_\_.

D. *Translate:*

1. Cum honōre pugnābant; magnō honōre pugnābant. 2. Ex cōnsuētūdine ad castra revertentur; suā cōnsuētūdine ad castra revertentur. 3. Magnā dīligentiā labōrābant; magnā cum dīligentiā labōrābant. 4. Suā sponte locūtus est; magnā misericordiā locūtus est. 5. Magnō cum periculō pugnābant; magnā virtūte pugnābant.

E. *Translate:*

1. Statuam quam Verrēs tollere vult servāre cōnāmur. 2. Lēgātus dicit eōs statuam quam Verrēs tollere velit servāre cōnārī. 3. Lēgātī dīxērunt cīvēs statuam quam Verrēs tollere vellet servāre cōnārī. 4. Cum prīmum in oppidum vēnit, cīvibus statuam imperāvit. 5. Audīvistis Verrem, cum prīmum in oppidum vēnisset, cīvibus statuam imperāvisse. 6. Audīverātis praetōrem, cum prīmum in oppidum vēnisset, cīvibus statuam imperāvisse. 7. Nōlīte senātum precārī ut Verri statuam illam polliceātur.

F. *Write in Latin:*

1. If Verres touches the statue, the citizens will be angry. 2. He points out that, if Verres touches the statue, the citizens will be angry. 3. He pointed out that, if Verres touched the statue, the citizens would be angry. 4. This is the town to which Verres has come. 5. He learns that this is the town to which Verres has come. 6. He learned that this was the town to which Verres had come. 7. When the matter was reported to the senate, the senators said that they would not allow Verres to have the statue that he had demanded.

misericordia, -ae, *f.*, pity;  
sympathy

frīgus, frīgoris, *n.*, cold  
frīgidus, -a, -um, cold, cool

praetor, -ōris, *m.*, praetor,  
magistrate charged with the  
administration of justice,  
governor (of a province)

cruciātus, -ūs, *m.*, torture

nūdus, -a, -um, bare, uncovered

probus, -a, -um, good, excellent;  
honest

improbus, -a, -um, wicked,  
dishonest

commūnis, -is, -e, common

praeceps (*gen.* praecipitis),  
headlong; steep

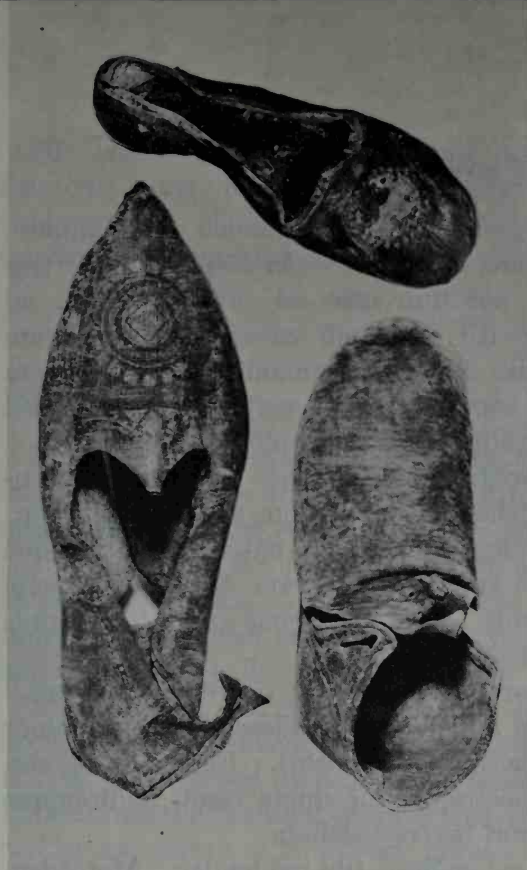
dēligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, bind,  
fasten

precor, -ārī, -ātus sum, pray, beg  
polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus sum,  
promise

colō, -ere, coluī, cultum, till,  
cultivate; dwell; cherish, care  
for; worship

tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctum, touch  
ferē, *adv.*, almost

iussū, *abl. only*, by order of  
iniussū, without the  
permission of



*Roman leather shoes  
from Egypt, first to  
fourth century A.D.*

# 25

## Gerund and Gerundive

Ō Domine Deus! spērāvī in tē.  
Ō cāre mī Jēsū! nunc liberā mē.  
In dūrā catēnā, in miserā poenā dēsīderō tē:  
Languendō, gemendō, et genū flectendō,  
Adōrō, implōrō, ut liberēs mē.

*O Lord God, I have hoped in Thee.  
O my dear Jesus, set me free.  
Though harsh the chains that fetter me  
And cruel my pain, I long for Thee.  
Fainting, moaning, on bended knee  
I adore and implore Thee: set me free.*

### PRAYER OF MARY, QUEEN OF SCOTS<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup>The queen herself composed this prayer in prison on the morning of her execution.



Cum cīvēs vellent imperium Hispāniae idōneō virō mandāre, nūllō id volente suscipere, Scīpiō, iuvenis nōbilis vīgintī trēs annōs nātus, dīxit sē parātum esse ad proficīscendum ad Hispāniam. Cum exercitū pugnandī causā missus Novam  
 5 Carthāginem expugnāvit. Fortiter pugnandō magnam partem Hispāniae vīcit. Sed nōn modo erat perītus pugnandī sed etiam clēmēntiā ac liberālītātē aliīs exemplō erat.

Nam ōlim, dum in prōgrediendō in finēs hostium est occupātus, captīva virgō pulcherrima ā militibus ad eum addūcitur.  
 10 Scīpiō, vir magnae prūdētiaē, cum dē patriā parentibusque rogāvisset, audīvit cāsū spōnsam esse eam Alucceiō, prīncipī Celtibērōrum adulēscētī. Quibus rēbus audītis virginis parentēs et spōnsum ad sē vocāvīt.

Alucceiō, ubi cum parentibus spōnsae pervēnit, “Iuvenis,”  
 15 inquit Scīpiō, “iuvenem appellō (*I am addressing*) quō<sup>2</sup> minor sit inter nōs verēcundia (*embarrassment*). Ego, cum spōnsa tua capta ā militibus nostrīs ad mē ducta esset, audīremque eam ā tē amārī, tuō amōrī favēre volēbam.

“Potestās mihi facta est spōnsae tibi reddendae. Mercēdem  
 20 (*reward*) ūnam petō: amīcus populō Rōmānō sīs, et sī mē virum bonum crēdis esse, sciās multōs nostrī<sup>3</sup> similēs in cīvitātē Rōmānā esse, nec ūllum in terrīs hodiē populum dīcī (*be named*) posse quem tibi tuīque amīcum esse mālīs.”

Adulēscēns, dextram<sup>4</sup> Scīpiōnis tenēns, deōs invocābat ad  
 25 grātiam illī prō sē referendam, cum sibi nēquāquam (*by no means*) satis facultātis esset.

Parentēs Scīpiōnem ōrābant ut magnum pondus aurī, quod ad virginem redimendam tulissent, acciperet. Scīpiō, aurō acceptō, Alucceiōque ad sē vocātō, “Super dōtem (*in addition*  
 30 *to the dowry*),” inquit, “quam acceptūrus ā patre spōnsae es, hoc aurum tibi dōnō dō”; et, cum finem loquendī fēcisset, aurum tollere ac sibi habēre iussit.

<sup>2</sup>Quō is commonly used in place of *ut* to introduce a purpose clause containing a comparative.

<sup>3</sup>The adjective *similis* may be used with the genitive: *tuī similis*, like you (*the like of you*).

<sup>4</sup>Supply *manum*.

Hīs laetus dōnīs Alucceius, ubi domum rediit, beneficiō Scīpiōnis laudandō cīvibus suīs persuāsit ut Rōmānīs sē sociōs coniungerent. Tum Rōmānīs auxiliī ferendī causā cum mille 35 quadringentīs equitibus intrā paucōs diēs ad Scīpiōnem revertit.

LIVY 26.50 (*Adapted*)

In the sentence *Marching is tiring*, the word *marching* is a form of the verb *to march*; it is the subject of *is* and thus has noun value. In the sentence *We are tired of reading exercises*, the word *reading* is a form of the verb *to read*; as a verb it has an object *exercises*; as a noun it is the object of the preposition *of*. In English grammar, such verbal nouns as *marching* and *reading* are called gerunds.

In Latin, too, the gerund is a noun as well as a verb. It is declined in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative cases. It may be governed by a noun, an adjective, or a preposition. It performs the function of an active verb, and may be modified by an adverb or an adverb phrase.

	I	II	III	III- <i>iō</i>	IV
<i>Gen.</i>	portandī	movendī	dūcendī	capiendī	audiendī
<i>Dat.</i>	portandō	movendō	dūcendō	capiendō	audiendō
<i>Acc.</i>	portandum	movendum	dūcendum	capiendum	audiendum
<i>Abl.</i>	portandō	movendō	dūcendō	capiendō	audiendō

The gerunds of deponents are formed similarly, and are, of course, active in meaning.

cōnandī    verendī    sequendī    prōgrediendī    partiendī

Only two irregular verbs and their compounds have gerunds: *ferō* has *ferendī*, etc.; *eō* has *eundī*, etc.

#### USES OF THE GERUND

The genitive of the gerund is used:

1. with *causā* following, to express purpose:  
pugnandī causā, for the purpose of (for the sake of) fighting
2. with some adjectives, such as *cupidus*, *perītus*, *imperītus*:  
cupidus pugnandī, fond of fighting  
perītus aedificandī, experienced in building, skillful at building

3. to complete the meaning of many nouns, such as **facultās**, opportunity, **potestās**, opportunity, **occāsiō**, opportunity, **difficultās**, difficulty, **initium**, beginning, **finis**, end, **spēs**, hope, **tempus**, time:

**facultās** **abeundī**, an opportunity of going away

**finis** **loquendī**, an end of speaking

**ars** **scrībendī**, the art of writing

The dative of the gerund is rare and may be omitted here.

The accusative of the gerund is found only with the preposition **ad**; it is used:

1. to express purpose:

**Ad persuādendum** **cīvibus** **vēnit**.

He came for the purpose of persuading

(to persuade) the citizens.

2. with some adjectives of fitness and readiness, such as **idōneus**, **ūtilis**, **inūtilis**, **parātus**:

**parātus** **ad proficiscendum**, ready for setting out, ready to set out  
**nāvis idōnea** **ad nāvigandum**, a ship suitable for sailing

3. with **ūsui** (dative of purpose):

**Hī** **mīlitēs** **sunt magnō ūsui** **ad explōrandum**.

These soldiers are of great service for reconnoitering.

The ablative of the gerund is used:

1. to denote means:

**Fortiter** **pugnandō** **vincimus**. By fighting bravely we conquer.

**Docendō** **discimus**. We learn by teaching.

2. with the preposition **in**, especially in the phrase **occupātus in**, *occupied in*, *busy in*, *engaged in*:

**Occupātī** **sunt in pugnandō**. They are busy (in) fighting.

**Vidēre** **est** **crēdere**. Seeing is believing.

**Labōrāre** **est** **ōrāre**. Working is praying.

**Proficiscī** **morātus** **est**. He delayed starting.

**Mīlitēs** **castra** **apud flūmen** **pōnere** **mālunt**.

The soldiers prefer pitching camp by the river.

The infinitive takes the place of the nominative, and, except after a preposition, of the accusative of the gerund.



Encroached upon by the modern city, quarried for centuries for building stone, the Forum of Rome remains to bear witness to the grandeur of the focal point of the empire that comprised most of the known world in its time.

## 184

## GERUNDIVES

The gerundive is a passive participle ending in **-ndus, -nda, -ndum**. It is declined like *altus* and is used in agreement with the noun or pronoun to which it belongs.

*portandus, portanda, portandum*, to-be-carried

So also *movendus, dūcendus, capiendus, audiendus, ferendus, trānseundus*

*cōnandus, cōnanda, cōnandum*,<sup>5</sup> to-be-tried

So also *verendus, sequendus, prōgrediendus, partiendus*

If we translate the sentence *We have no opportunity of seeking peace*, using a gerund for *seeking*, we have *Nūllam occāsiōnem petendī (gen.) pācem (direct object, acc.) habēmus*. This translation is grammatically possible. Latin, however,

<sup>5</sup>Deponent verbs have both future participle active and future participle passive (gerundive).



as a rule, avoids the use of a gerund governing a direct object in the accusative, and prefers to use a gerundive construction. The direct object, with the gerundive in agreement, is put in the case required for the gerund. In our sentence, put the direct object **pācem** in the case required for the gerund; this becomes **pācis**. Now make the gerundive agree in gender, number, and case with **pācis**; this gives us **petendae**. Our sentence now reads:

**Nūllam occāsiōnem pācis petendae habēmus.**

GERUND	GERUNDIVE
nāvēs parandī causā, for the purpose of preparing ships	nāvium parandārum causā
nāvēs inūtilēs ad portandum cōpiās, ships useless for carrying troops	nāvēs inūtilēs ad cōpiās portandās
cupidī bene gerendī rem publicam, desirous of administering the state well	reī publicae bene gerendae cupidī
aliōs docendō, by teaching others	aliīs docendīs

Caution:

**Cupidus est veniendī.**

He is eager to come.

**Cupidus est mihi persuādendī.**

He is eager to persuade me.

**Parcendō hostibus vincit.**

He conquers by sparing the enemy.

1. The gerund must be used if the verb does not govern a direct object in the accusative.

**Hās puellās videndī causā** is preferable to **hārum puellārum videndārum causā**.

2. The gerund is used in instances in which the gerundive construction would result in an unpleasant repetition of **-ārum** or **-ōrum**.

**aliquid agendī causā**

for the purpose of doing something

**Hoc videndī causā vēnit; omnia videndī causā vēnit.**

He came to see this; he came to see everything.

3. The gerund is used with a direct object in the accusative if the object is a neuter pronoun or adjective.

**Ad omnia videnda vēnit.** He came to see everything.

4. The accusative of the gerund with a preposition never takes a direct object in classical Latin. In such an instance the gerundive is the regular construction.

5. Latin writers used the gerund and gerundive constructions with considerable freedom, so you will find many apparent exceptions to the rules given above. At present you should follow the rules.

<b>occāsiō meī servandī</b>	an opportunity of saving myself
... <b>tuī</b> ...	... yourself
... <b>suī</b> ...	... himself
... <b>nostrī</b> ...	... ourselves
... <b>vestrī</b> ...	... yourselves
... <b>suī</b> ...	... themselves

With the genitive pronouns **meī**, **tuī**, **suī**, **nostrī**, **vestrī**, the gerundive ends in **-ndī** without regard to the gender or number of the person or persons to whom reference is made.

A. *Translate:*

1. Hostibus potestātem fēcērunt pācis petendae, itineris faciendī, nāvium aedificandārum. 2. Mātrōnae occupātae sunt in fābulā nārrandā, in puerīs cūrandīs, in locō videndō. 3. Spēlunca potestātem fēcit animālia celandī, nostrī ex proeliō recipiendī, dormiendī. 4. Erat magna difficultās proficiscendī, castrōrum mūniendōrum, vincendī. 5. Parātī sunt ad prōgrediendum, ad clēmēntiam pollicendam, ad lēgātōs laudandōs. 6. Militēs mīsīt ad oppidum expugnandum, epistolae portandae causā, ad pontem reficiendum. 7. Exīre ē castrīs erat difficile. Patriam dēfendere erat cōnsilium. Vidēre est crēdere. 8. Fīnis pugnandī adest. Spēs vincendī erat magna. Tacēre est difficile. 9. Lēgātus vēnit ad militibus imperandum, ad cīvibus parcendum, epistolae mittendae causā. 10. Parentibus pārēre



Arretium

Clusium

Asculum

Tarquinius

Falerii

Veli

Roma

Ostia

Antium

Cumae

Neapolis

Pompeii

Beneventum

Misenum

Paestum

Brundisium

Tarentum

MARE TYRRHENUM

Sicilia

Messana

Syracusan

Carthago

0 40 80 100

Italia

- Rome
- Greek Colonies
- Carthage

est aequum. Nāvēs ūtilēs erant ad onera ferenda. Nāvēs magnō ūsuī erant ad mīlitēs trānsportandōs.

B. *Complete the following sentences:*

1. Virī magnā dīligentiā \_\_\_\_\_ (to fortify the camp, to save themselves, to build the bridge) labōrāvērunt. 2. Hostibus erat potestās \_\_\_\_\_ (of speaking, of sending messengers, of going out of camp). 3. Mīlitēs occupātī sunt \_\_\_\_\_ (in making wills, in sleeping, in fighting bravely). 4. Tempus annī nōn erat idōneum \_\_\_\_\_ (for sailing, for sending messengers, for cultivating the fields). 5. Nullam occāsiōnem habēbāmus \_\_\_\_\_ (of using our swords, of commanding the soldiers, of seeking peace). 6. Hī parentēs sunt cupidī \_\_\_\_\_ (of seeing their daughter, of increasing their wealth, of sending a letter). 7. Mīlitēs profectī sunt ad \_\_\_\_\_ (defend the province, crush the enemy, find the deserters). 8. Caesar in hīs locīs \_\_\_\_\_ (of preparing ships, of praising the legions, of sacrificing to the gods) causā morābātur. 9. Laudāre mīlitēs erit \_\_\_\_\_ magnō usuī (in conquering, in attacking the enemy, in commanding them with great wisdom).

C. *Translate:*

1. Occupātus est in prōgrediendō in finēs hostium. 2. Omnibus redeundī potestātem fēcit. 3. Ā coniuge petīvit ut finem lacrimandī faceret. 4. Loquī est facile, sed loquendō oppidum vestrum dēfendere nōn potestis. 5. Tibi dīcō tempus auxiliī ferendī esse breve. 6. Gallī in Britanniam bellī inferendī causā trānsierant. 7. Nāvēs paulō lātiōrēs fierī iussit, ad multitudīnem equōrum trānsportandam. 8. Hī ducēs erant magnō ūsuī ad itinera explōranda.

D. *Write in Latin:*

1. No opportunity of returning to her parents had been given to the maiden. 2. No one lacks an opportunity of speaking. 3. With the greatest eagerness they prepared everything which was useful for attacking. 4. By fighting bravely he has conquered a large part of Spain. 5. I have bought a new house for the purpose of remaining in Rome. 6. He gave his men an opportunity of arming themselves. 7. We can easily prevent the enemy from laying waste our fields. 8. The horsemen had no opportunity of using their swords.



<b>clēmēntia</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , humanity, kindness	<b>quadringentī</b> , -ae, -a, four hundred
<b>beneficium</b> , -ī, <i>n.</i> , kindness, favor, benefit	<b>invocō</b> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, call on, appeal to
<b>exemplum</b> , -ī, <i>n.</i> , sample, copy; pattern, model	<b>spondeō</b> , -ēre, <b>spopondī</b> , <b>spōnsum</b> , give a pledge, promise in marriage, betroth
<b>liberālītās</b> , -tātis, <i>f.</i> , generosity	<b>spōnsus</b> , -ī, <i>m.</i> , promised husband, fiancé
<b>pondus</b> , <b>ponderis</b> , <i>n.</i> , weight	<b>spōnsa</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , promised bride, fiancée
<b>cāsus</b> , -ūs, <i>m.</i> , accident; chance; misfortune	<b>redimō</b> , -ere, <b>redēmī</b> , <b>redēptum</b> , buy back, ransom; buy up
<b>cāsū</b> , by chance	<b>potestātem facere</b> , to offer an op- portunity, to give permission
<b>idōneus</b> , -a, -um, <i>with ad + acc.</i> or <i>with dat.</i> , fit, suitable	
<b>prūdēns</b> ( <i>gen. prūdentis</i> ), wise, foreseeing	
<b>prūdēntia</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , prudence, good sense	

Several English nouns come from the gerundive of the Latin verb.

From **agere**, *to do*, we have *agendum* and *agenda*; from **addere**, *to add*, *addendum* and *addenda*; from **corrigere**, *to correct*, *corrigendum* and *corrigenda*; from **dīvidere**, *to divide*, *dividend*; from **minuere**, *to lessen*, *minuend*; from **(com)memorāre**, *to remind of*, *memorandum* and *memoranda*; from **referre**, *to bring back*, *referendum*.

Some proper names come from the gerundive of the Latin verb.

From **amāre**, *to love*, *Amanda*; from **mīrārī**, *to wonder at*, *admire*, *Miranda*.



*Mosaic floor, fourth century, A.D. Panels of the Seasons: Spring*

# 26

## Passive Periphrastic Impersonal Verbs

Discite quae faciem commendet cūra, puellae,  
et quō sit vōbīs fōrma tuenda modō.

*Learn what care will enhance your beauty, girls,  
and how you should look after your appearance.*

OVID: MEDICAMINA FACIEI FEMINEAE<sup>1</sup> 1-2

<sup>1</sup>In a didactic poem, Ovid gives instructions on the use of make-up.

Bellō Pūnicō prīmō imperātor Poenus in terrā Siciliā, contrā exercitum Rōmānum prōgrediēns, collēs locaque superiōra prior occupat (*is the first to take possession of*). Quod hostēs loca magis idōnea<sup>2</sup> obtinent, mīlitēs Rōmānī in locum periculōsum  
 5 iter faciunt. Tribūnus, periculō prōvīsō, ad cōnsulem venit et eum certiōrem facit. “Sī,” inquit, “rem servāre vīs, tibi quadringentī mīlitēs mittendī sunt ad illum collem, quī occupandus et tenendus est. Hostēs cum id viderint, fortissimus quisque (*each bravest, i.e., all their bravest men*) erit cupidissimus impetūs  
 10 faciendī et pugnandī; et quod hanc manum parvam adoriētur multitūdō hostium, illī omnēs quadringentī sine dubiō interficientur. Haec rēs tibi erit maximō ūsuī quod, dum hostēs in hīs rēbus faciendīs sunt occupātī, tempus ex hōc locō aliēnō cōpiās tuās ēdūcendī habēbis. Alia nisi haec salūtis via  
 20 nūlla est.”

Cōsul tribūnō respondit hoc cōnsilium sibi capiendum esse; “Sed ad illōs,” inquit, “mīlitēs quadringentōs dūcendōs ad eum locum in hostium ōrdinēs quis est parātus?”

“Sī alium,” inquit tribūnus, “nēminem reperiēs, mitte mē;  
 25 hoc negōtium suscipiam. Ego hanc tibi et rei pūblicae animam dō. Cīvis Rōmānus prō patriā morī velle dēbet.”

Tribūnus et quadringentī ad moriendum proficiscuntur. Ubi imperātor Pūnicus vidit Rōmānōs ad illum collem occupandum iter facere, omnibus peditibus equitibusque Pūnicīs  
 30 imperātur ut in Rōmānōs impetum faciant. Pīla statim mittuntur. Rōmānī circumveniuntur; fortiter resistitur; diū et ācritur pugnātur. Tandem superat multitūdō. Nēminī par-citur; quadringentī omnēs cum tribūnō cadunt. Cōsul interim, dum ibi pugnātur, reliquās cōpiās in loca tūta dēdūcit.  
 35 Dī immortalēs tribūnō fortūnam ex (*in keeping with*) virtūte dedērunt. Nam cum graviter vulnerātus esset, atque inter mortuōs iacēret, eum tamen sociī vīvum invēnērunt. Eum sustulērunt, isque convaluit (*recovered*), saepeque postea rei pūblicae operam fortem praebuit.

AULUS GELLIUS: NOCTES ATTICAE 3.7 (*Adapted*)

<sup>2</sup>Adjectives ending in -us preceded by a vowel form the comparative and superlative with *magis* and *maximē*.

The passive periphrastic conjugation is a combination of the gerundive and the various forms of the verb *sum*.<sup>3</sup>

## INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	portandus sum	I have to be carried
	portandus es	you have to be carried
	portandus est	he has to be carried
	portandī sumus	we have to be carried
	portandī estis	you have to be carried
	portandī sunt	they have to be carried
<i>Impf.</i>	portandus eram	I had to be carried
<i>Fut.</i>	portandus erō	I shall have to be carried
<i>Perf.</i>	portandus fui	I have had to be carried
<i>Plup.</i>	portandus fueram	I had had to be carried
<i>F. Perf.</i>	portandus fuerō	I shall have had to be carried

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## INFINITIVES

<i>Pres.</i>	portandus sim	<i>Pres.</i>	portandus esse
<i>Impf.</i>	portandus essem	<i>Perf.</i>	portandus fuisse
<i>Perf.</i>	portandus fuerim		
<i>Plup.</i>	portandus fuisset		

Nūntius mittendus est. A messenger is to be sent.  
 has to be sent.  
 must be sent.  
 ought to be sent.  
 should be sent.

Aqua portanda erat. The water was to be carried.  
 had to be carried.

Frūmentum cōferendum erit. The grain will have to  
 be collected.

In the passive periphrastic conjugation, there is always some idea of duty, necessity, or obligation involved.

<sup>3</sup>The term *active periphrastic* is applied to the combination of the future participle active and the forms of *sum*: portātūrus sum, I am about to (intending to) carry.



Pōns faciendus est.  
Legiō ēdūcenda erit.

A bridge must be built.  
The legion will have to be  
led out.

Castra pōnenda erant.  
Rogat cūr legiōnēs ēdūcendae sint.

A camp had to be pitched.  
He asks why the legions  
must be led out.

Dicit legiōnēs ēdūcendās fuisse.

He says that the legions  
should have been led out.

The gerundive agrees with the subject.

## 190

## DATIVE OF AGENT

Exercitus rēgī dūcendus est. The army should be led by the king.  
Aqua servīs portanda erit. The water will have to be carried  
by the slaves.

Illa nōbīs facienda erant. Those things had to be done by us.

With the passive periphrastic the agent or doer, the person on whom the necessity rests, is expressed by the dative; this we call the dative of agent.

**Dixit hunc librum nōbīs legendum esse.**

He said that this book should be read by us.

He said that we should read this book.

**Mīrātus est cūr opus sibi cōficiendum esset.**

He wondered why the job had to be finished by him.

He wondered why he had to finish the job.

Although the Latin construction that expresses such ideas is *always* passive, the English more commonly uses the active.

## 191

## OPORTET

**Oportet mē hoc opus cōficere.**

It is proper for me to finish this task.

I should finish this task.

**Oportuit mē hoc opus cōficere.**

It was proper for me to finish this task.

I ought to have finished this task.

The verb **oportet**, **oportēre**, **oportuit**, *it is proper = should, ought*, is used with the infinitive, which may have a subject in the accusative.

Omnibus necesse est morī. All men must die.

The phrase **necesse est** is used with the dative and the present infinitive to denote that which is inevitable or indispensable.

## 193

## IMPERSONAL PASSIVE

<b>Pugnātur.</b>	There is fighting; fighting is going on; a fight is taking place.
<b>Pugnātum est.</b>	A battle has been fought; a battle has taken place.
<b>Ad castra perventum erat.</b>	The camp had been reached.
<b>Respōnsum est; nūtiātum est.</b>	The reply was made; it was announced.
<b>Suprā dēmōnstrātum est.</b>	It has been pointed out above; mention has been made above.

**Quaerit cūr ad forum concurrātur.**

He asks why people are rushing to the Forum.

**Cognōscit pugnātum esse.**

He learns that a battle has taken place.

Intransitive verbs like **pugnō, eō, currō** are used in the third person singular (neuter) of the tenses of the passive voice to express the fact that a certain action is going on, but without any precise indication of the person by whom the action is carried on. This we call the impersonal use of the passive of intransitive verbs.

**Diū et ācriter pugnātum est.**

There was a long and bitter fight.

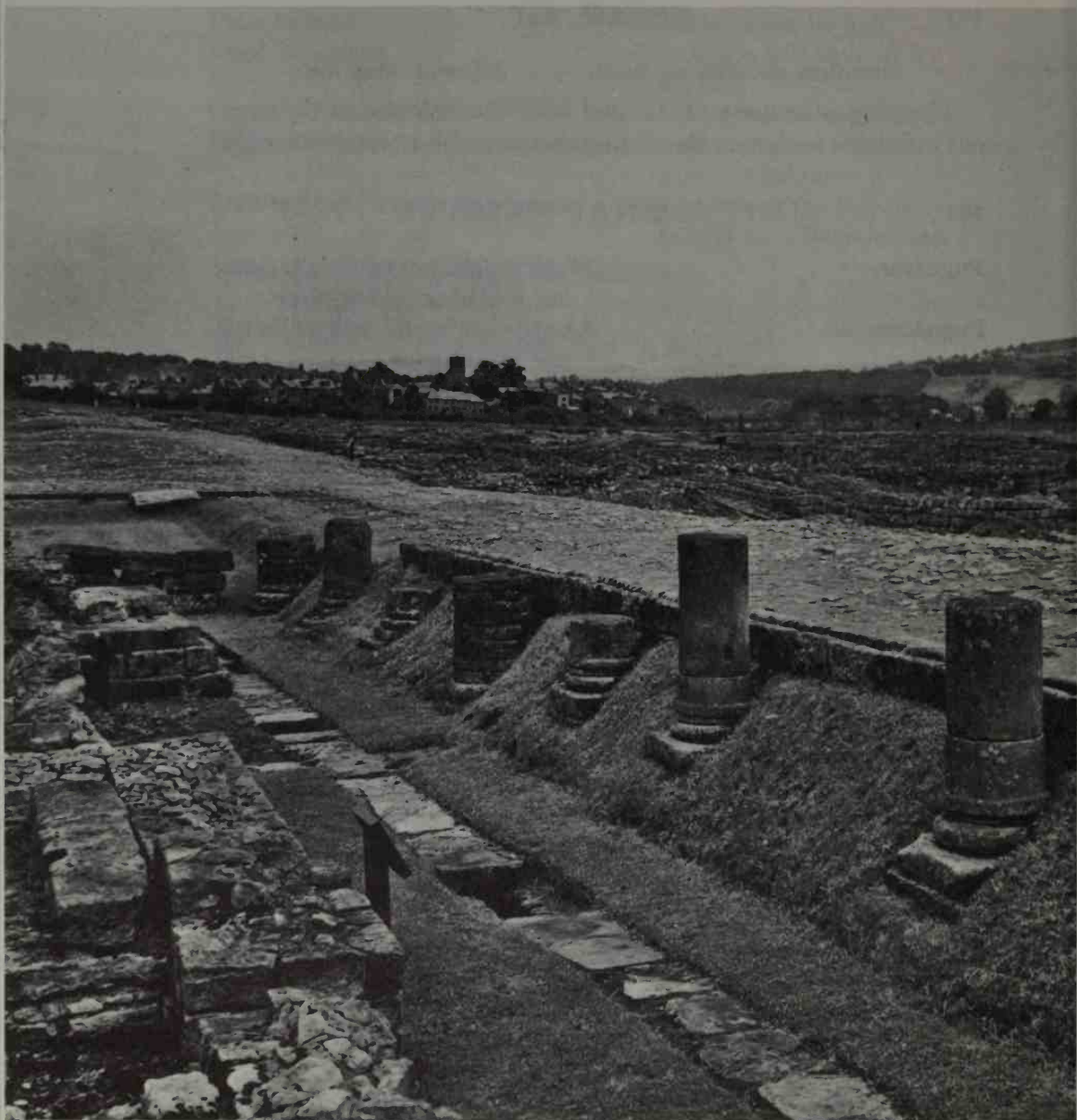
As a verb, an impersonal passive may be modified by an adverb.

*Active.* **Omnibus militibus imperāvit.**  
He issued orders to all the soldiers.

*Passive.* **Omnibus militibus imperātum est.**  
Orders were issued to all the soldiers.

*Active.* **Mihi nōn persuādēbit.**  
He will not persuade me.

*Passive.* **Mihi ab eō nōn persuādēbitur.**  
I shall not be persuaded by him.



Corbridge Roman site (*Corstopitum*), Northumberland. First a military station and later a civilian population existed here till the fifth century. Remains of a colonnade and ancient granaries are seen in the photograph above.

*Active.* Illi prīncipī crēdere nōn possumus.

We cannot believe that chief.

*Passive.* Illi prīncipī ā nōbīs crēdī nōn potest.

That chief cannot be believed by us.

*Active.* Quaerō cūr nōbīs invideant.

I ask why they envy us.

*Passive.* Quaerō cūr nōbīs ab eīs invideātur.

I ask why we are envied by them.

In the passive of verbs which take the dative, the verb is used impersonally and the dative is retained.

Parentibus pārendum est. Parents must be obeyed.

Parentibus ā nōbīs pārendum est. We must obey our parents.

Liberīs mulieribusque parcendum erit.

Women and children will have to be spared.

Liberīs mulieribusque ā duce parcendum erit.

The general will have to spare the women and children.

When a verb that takes the dative is used in the passive periphrastic, in order to avoid confusion, the agent is expressed by the ablative of agent.

## 194

## EXERCISES

### A. *Translate:*

1. Lēgātus laudandus est. Lēgātus Rōmānīs laudandus est.
2. Pīla mittenda sunt. Pīla militibus mittenda sunt.
3. Sciunt haec loca mūnienda esse. Sciunt haec loca cīvibus mūnienda esse.
4. Negōtium cōficiendum erat. Negōtium nūntiō cōficiendum erat.
5. Nescivērunt cūr lēgātus culpandus esset. Nescivērunt cūr lēgātus ducī culpandus esset.

### B. *Write in Latin:*

1. The task must be done by me.
2. I must read the book.
3. The general will have to encourage the soldiers.
4. I know that you must promise many things.
5. He asked how the soldiers ought to capture the city.



C. *Translate:*

1. Mihi crēdunt. Mihi crēditur. 2. Mīlitibus imperāvit. Mīlitibus imperātum est. 3. Cōsulī persuādēre nōn possunt ut tribūnum cōpiīs praeficiat. Cōsulī persuādērī nōn potest ut tribūnum cōpiīs praeficiat. 4. Nōbīs dīxērunt. Nōbīs dictum est. 5. Eōs rogāvit cūr sibi victōriam nōn ēnūntiārent. Eōs rogāvit cūr pugnātum esset.

D. *Write in Latin:*

1. The task pleases the soldiers. The soldiers are pleased. 2. They ask why he envies the king. They ask why the king is envied. 3. The women favor their sons. The sons are favored. 4. He knew that they had persuaded the messenger. He knew that the messenger had been persuaded. 5. The leader of the cavalry spared the deserter. The deserter was spared.

E. *Translate:*

1. Eī persuādendum est. Eī ā mē persuādendum est. 2. Eīs cōnfīdendum est. Eīs ā duce cōnfīdendum est. 3. Sciunt negōtium sibi permittendum esse. Sciunt negōtium sibi ā rēge permittendum esse. 4. Rogāvērunt cūr patrī pārendum esset. Rogāvērunt cūr patrī ā puerīs pārendum esset. 5. Hostibus resistendum erat. Hostibus ā nostrīs resistendum erat.

F. *Write in Latin:*

1. They must be resisted. They must be believed by the soldiers. 2. The soldiers should be commanded. The leader should command the soldiers. 3. The deserter will have to be spared. The king will have to spare the deserter. 4. They asked why the angry crowd ought to be pleased. They asked why the conspirators ought to please the angry crowd. 5. He knew that the messenger must be believed. He knew that he must believe the messenger.

G. *Translate:*

1. Quaesīvit cui Gallia vincenda esset.  
2. Dīcit Galliam vincendam esse.  
3. Collis nōbīs armīs multās hōrās tenendus erit.  
4. Cōsul respondit hoc cōnsilium sibi capiendum esse.  
5. Nihil necesse est mihi dē mē ipsō dīcere.

6. Quaerit quā dē causā nēminī parcātur.
7. Eō diē accidit cāsū ut multīs nocērētur.
8. Nōne oportet praebēre praedam victōribus?
9. Legiōnibus expeditīs (*light-armed*) imperātum est ut in hostēs impetum facerent.
10. Quaesīvit num omnibus persuāsum esset ut statim arma caperent.

H. *Write in Latin:*

1. We shall have to pitch a camp. 2. I asked by whom the camp had to be pitched. 3. Meanwhile they must march from this district to the hills. 4. He asked whether they ought to send under the yoke the army which they had captured. 5. I think that we ought not to have joined battle at so unfavorable a time. 6. Suddenly there was a rush by all for the gate. 7. There was a long, fierce struggle near the hill. 8. Why were you so easily persuaded to follow the centurion? 9. We were afraid that we might be injured. 10. It was reported that you had been injured.

<b>anima</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , breath, breath of life; life	<b>mortuus</b> , -a, -um, dead
<b>opera</b> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , work; service; care, attention	<b>Poenus</b> (Pūnicus), -a, -um, Punic, Carthaginian
<b>locus</b> , -ī, <i>m.</i> , place, position	<b>Poenus</b> , -ī, <i>m.</i> , a Carthaginian
<b>loca</b> , -ōrum, <i>n. pl.</i> , places; ground; district	<b>obtineō</b> , -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, hold, possess; obtain
<b>negōtium</b> , -ī, <i>n.</i> , business, affair; trouble, pains	<b>praebeō</b> , -ēre, -buī, -bitum, hold forth, offer; grant, supply
<b>pīlum</b> , -ī, <i>n.</i> , javelin	<b>convertō</b> , -ere, -vertī, -versum, turn around, turn back; change, transform
<b>pīla mittere</b> , to hurl javelins	<b>nesciō</b> , -īre, -scīvī, -scītum, not know, be ignorant of
<b>ūsus</b> , -ūs, <i>m.</i> , use, exercise; profit; need	
<b>aliēnus</b> , -a, -um, belonging to another, of others; unfavorable	
<b>aliēnō locō</b> , in an unfavorable position	



## THE STAG AT THE SPRING

Laudātīs ūtiliōra, quae contempserīs,  
saepe invenīrī testis haec nārrātiō est.

Ad fontem cervus, cum bibisset, restitit  
et in liquōre vīdit effigiem suam.

Ibi dum rāmōsa mīrāns laudat cornua  
crūrumque nimiam tenuitātem vituperat,  
vēnantum subitō vōcibus conterritus  
per campum fugere coepit et cursū levī  
canēs ēlūsit. Silva tum excēpit ferum,  
in quā retentīs impeditus cornibus  
lacerārī coepit morsibus saevīs canum.

Tunc moriēns vōcem hanc ēdidisse dīcitur:

“Ō mē infēlicem! quī nunc dēmum intellegō,  
ūtilia mihi quam fuerint, quae dēspēxeram,  
et, quae laudāram, quantum lūctūs habuerint.”

**PART TWO**

**Selections from  
Latin Literature**



## Abbreviations Used in the Notes and Vocabulary

abl.	ablative	interr.	interrogative
abl. abs.	ablative absolute	intrans.	intransitive
acc.	accusative	lit.	literally
adj.	adjective	loc.	locative
adv.	adverb, adverbial	m.	masculine
cl.	clause	n.	neuter
comp.	comparative	nom.	nominative
conj.	conjunction	part.	participle
dat.	dative	pass.	passive
def.	defective	perf.	perfect
dep.	deponent	pl.	plural
e.g.	for example	plup.	pluperfect
f.	feminine	pred.	predicate
fut.	future	prep.	preposition
gen.	genitive	pres.	present
i.e.	that is	pron.	pronoun
impers.	impersonal	refl.	reflexive
impf.	imperfect	rel.	relative
indec.	indeclinable	sing.	singular
indef.	indefinite	subj.	subjunctive
indic.	indicative	super.	superlative
ind. disc.	indirect discourse	tr.	translate
inf.	infinitive	voc.	vocative

## Livy and Nepos

TITUS LIVIUS (59 B.C.-17 A.D.). Little is known of the career of Livy except that he was born in Padua, came to Rome, and won the regard of Caesar Augustus. Livy appears to have traveled through the Empire, but to have worked mostly in Rome or in Padua on a commissioned history of Rome, *Ab Urbe Condita*, "From the Foundation of the City." Of the 142 books he wrote, only 20 survive.

Livy's history is a glorification of the Roman people and of the qualities that had enabled a little tribe by the Tiber River to grow into a world power. Livy succeeds in magnifying Rome without belittling her enemies. Indeed, the stature of a Hamilcar and a Hannibal is the measure of the Romans who were able to defeat these great Carthaginian generals.

The Romans are subtly shown as desirous of peace, anxious to settle matters by negotiation rather than by bloodshed, patient under reverses, and ready to "muddle through" to final victory. The Romans are animated by *misericordia* (*compassion*) and *pudor* (*sense of decency*), by anger against injustice, and by anxious regard for the safety of their state. They have a strong sense of justice and responsibility and do not declare war rashly, but because of insistence upon the honoring of obligations. Roman soldiers are devoted to their commanders. If generals err, or if Roman forces falter, the record is set down candidly, but the very frankness makes the story of Roman success doubly impressive.

Livy adds a touch of majesty to his story by telling of signs and omens, as if the fortunes of Rome were under divine keeping. He invents speeches reflecting the general mood and analyzing the issues at stake, and places the speeches in the mouths of leading characters. He is fond of tableaux: for example, Hannibal standing on a jutting crag of the Alps, pointing out Italy to his soldiers, and promising them a short and easy campaign to take Rome.

Indeed, Livy's whole picture of Hannibal is brilliantly dramatic. Taken on a military expedition at the age of 9, he became commander-in-chief at 25, and in three years had overrun Spain. With his army, he crossed the Pyrenees and Alps and inflicted defeat after defeat on the Roman forces. In his description of Hannibal's brilliant campaign, Livy builds up suspense; then he shows how the Romans begin to regain control. Hannibal at last realizes that he is facing a strategist who works *ratiōne* (*by careful design*), not *fortūnā* (*at random*). The Romans themselves do not see the wisdom of Fabius as soon as does Hannibal. The rash—and very un-Roman—action of a Roman general brings on yet another defeat and heightens the suspense. After the Italian campaign terminates, Hannibal is recalled and leaves Italy grieved and indignant. Bringing his spectacular life to a close in suicide, he makes an ironical quip about relieving the Romans now of further anxiety. Such was the end of a great-hearted adversary.

CORNELIUS NEPOS (99-24 B.C.). Cornelius Nepos wrote *De Viris Illustribus*, a work composed of 16 books that depicts the lives of distinguished Romans and foreigners. *De Viris Illustribus* contains much information not to be found elsewhere, and brief passages from it are incorporated in this book.

## HANNIBAL AND THE ROMANS

The city of Carthage, situated on the Bay of Tunis in Northern Africa, was founded by Phoenicians about the middle of the ninth century B.C. It became the capital of one of the richest and most important empires of ancient times. For centuries Carthage and Rome were friendly, but commercial expansion and the desire for more territory at last brought the two powers into conflict. The First Punic War (264-241 B.C.) ended in a Roman victory. As a result of her successes, Rome added the islands of Sicily, Sardinia, and Corsica to her territories.

The best general of Carthage was Hamilcar Barca, a man of extraordinary genius for war. Filled with hatred of Rome, he began to think how he might lead an army into Italy. But first he planned to create in Spain a Carthaginian province which could supply both troops and provisions for another war.

### The Exploits of Hamilcar

Hamilcar Carthāginiēnsis, postquam mare trānsiit in 1  
Hispāniamque vēnit, magnās rēs secundā gessit fortūnā;  
maximās bellicōsissimāsque gentēs subēgit; equīs, armīs, virīs,  
pecūniā tōtam Āfricam locuplētāvit. Hic, cum Italiae bellum  
īferre cōgitāret, nōnō annō postquam in Hispāniam vēnerat, 5  
in proeliō pugnāns occīsus est. Huius perpetuum odium ergā  
Rōmānōs maxima causa fuisse vidētur secundī bellī Pūnicī;  
nam, in Hispāniam proficīscēns, filium Hannibalem, puerum  
annōrum ferē novem, ad āram adductum iūrāre iusserat sē  
cum prīmum posset hostem fore populō Rōmānō. 10

Hamilcare occīsō Hasdrubal octō ferē annōs imperium in His-  
pāniā obtinuit rēsque magnās gessit; Hannibal ipse equitātūī  
omnī praefuit. Hasdrubale quoque interfectō, exercitus  
summam imperiū ad Hannibalem dētulit. Sic minor quīnque  
et vīgintī annīs nātus imperātor factus est. 15

1-10 *rēs*: deeds. *secundā fortūnā*: fortune (being) favorable, through the favor of fortune. *cōgitāret*: impf. subj. with "cum", when, referring to past time. *vēnerat*: when a definite interval is stated, "postquam" is often found with the pluperfect tense. *filium adductum iusserat*: a Latin part. is often best rendered by an English principal clause; he had led his son and ordered him.

11-15 Hasdrubal was the son-in-law of Hamilcar. *equitātūī*: dat. with compound verb "praesum". *summam* (noun) *imperiū*: the chief command. *annis*: abl. of comparison. *nātus*: from "nāscor".

4-6 *locuplētō*: enrich      *odium*: hatred      *ergā with acc.*: toward  
14 *dēferō*: confer upon



## The Character of Hannibal

Missus Hannibal in Hispāniam prīmō adventū omnem exercitum in sē convertit. Hamilcarem iuvenem redditum sibi veterēs mīlitēs crēdebant: eundem vigōrem in vultū vimque in oculis cōspiciēbant. Numquam ingenium idem ad rēs  
20 diversissimās, pārendum atque imperandum, melius fuit. Neque Hasdrubal alium quemquam praeficere mālēbat, sī quid fortiter ac strēnuē agendum erat, neque mīlitēs aliō duce plūs cōfidēbant aut audēbant. Nūllō labōre aut corpus fatīgārī aut animus vincī poterat. Equitum peditumque longē  
25 prīmus erat; prīnceps in proelium ibat, ultimus commissō proeliō excēdebāt.

### Hannibal Prepares to Attack the City of Saguntum, a Roman Ally in Spain

Hannibal, ex quō diē dux est appellātus, Saguntīnīs inferre bellum statuit. Sed, antequam perīculum fēcīt, proximō trienniō omnēs gentēs Hispāniae bellō subēgit; et iam omnia trāns  
30 Hibērum praeter Saguntīnōs Carthāginiēnsium erant.

Saguntīnī igitur, Hannibalem veritī, lēgātōs Rōmam mīsērunt quī auxilium ad bellum iam haud dubiē imminēns ōrārent.

17-25 **Hamilcarem . . . crēdebant:** *imagined that Hamilcar, as he had been in his youth, had been restored to them.* **pārendum:** gerund in apposition with "rēs". **quemquam:** pron. "quisquam", *anyone*, is used in negative sentences. **aliō duce:** abl. abs. **prīnceps:** here used as an adj., *he was the first to*.

28-30 **perīculum:** *attempt*. **trienniō:** abl. of time within which; 221-219 B.C. **trāns Hibērum:** "trāns" from the Roman point of view, i.e., south of the Ebro; this river had been fixed by treaty as the boundary between Roman and Carthaginian spheres of influence in Spain. **Carthāginiēnsium:** possessive gen. may be used with "sum" in the sense of *belong to*.

31-32 **Rōmam:** a treaty of alliance between Rome and Saguntum had been made in 226 B.C. Saguntum was taken by Hannibal in 219 B.C. **quī ōrārent:** rel. cl. of purpose. **iam . . . imminēns:** modifies "bellum".

18-22 **vultus, -ūs:** expression      **ingenium:** character      **dīversus:** opposite  
**strēnuē:** actively

Cōsulēs tunc Rōmae erant P. Cornēlius Scīpiō et Ti. Semprōnius Longus. Lēgātīs in senātum intrōductīs placuit mitti lēgātōs in Hispāniam, quī Hannibalī dēnūntiārent ut ab Saguntīnīs, sociīs populī Rōmānī, abstinēret. Hāc lēgātiōne dēcrētā necdum missā, omnium spē celerius Saguntum oppugnārī allātum est.

Tunc relāta est dē integrō rēs ad senātum. Aliī patrēs terrā marique rem gerendam esse contrā Carthāginiēnsēs cēnsēbant; aliī cēnsēbant mittendōs esse in Hispāniam lēgātōs. Haec sententia, quae tūtissima vidēbātur, vīcit. Dum ea Rōmānī parant Saguntum summā vī oppugnābātur.

Interim Rōmā lēgātōs vēnisse Hannibalī nūntiātum est; quibus obviam lēgātī missī sunt quī dicerent Hannibalī in tantō discrimine rērum nūllam occāsiōnem esse lēgātiōnis audiendae.

### Hannibal Takes Saguntum

Dum Rōmānī tempus terunt lēgātiōnibus mittendīs, Hannibal animōs mīlitum accendit. Utrūque summā vī mūniunt et pugnant. Simul crēscit inopia omnium rērum longā obsidiōne, et minuitur expectātiō auxiliī Rōmānōrum. Hannibal tōtīs vīribus aggressus urbem cēpit, signō datō ut omnēs adulēscentēs interficerentur. Sic octāvō mēse obsidiōnis captum oppidum est cum ingentī praedā. Multae rēs pretiōsae Carthāginem missae sunt.

55

Inde Carthāginem Novam in hiberna Hannibal cum cōpiīs discessit.

33-38 placuit: *impers., it pleased, it seemed best, it was decided.* spē: *abl. of comparison with "celerius."* allātum est: *from "afferō"; it was reported.*

39-41 terrā marique: *abl. of place where.* rem: *war.* haec: *the latter.*

45-46 quibus: *coordinating rel.; dat. with phrase "obviam mittere," to send to meet.* quī dicerent: *rel. cl. of purpose.* Hannibalī: *to be construed with "nūllam occāsiōnem esse"; that Hannibal had no time.* discrimine rērum: *critical state of affairs.*

49-56 summā vī: *with all their might.* obsidiōne: *abl. of cause.* tōtīs vīribus: *with his full strength.* inde: *from there.* Nēw Carthage was situated on the Mediterranean coast at the southeast corner of Spain.

39-40 dē integrō: *anew* cēnsēō: *think*

48-54 terō: *waste* utrimque: *on both sides* pretiōsus: *valuable*

## Panic in Rome

Eodem ferē tempore lēgātī, quī Carthāgine redierant, Rōmam rettulērunt omnia hostilia esse, et Saguntī excidium  
60 nūtiātum est; tanta simul misericordia sociōrum et pudor  
nōn lātī auxiliī et ira in Carthāginiēnsēs metusque dē summā  
rērum patrēs cēpit, velut sī iam ad portās urbis hostis esset.  
Nam neque hostis ācrior bellicōsiorque cum Rōmānīs congres-  
sus erat nec rēs Rōmāna umquam fuerat tam imbellis.  
65 Rōmānī intellēxērunt Poenum hostem veterānum, semper  
victōrem, recentem ab excidiō opulentissimae urbis, Hibērū  
trānsitūrū esse; sēcum tot Hispānōrum populōs ductūrū;  
Gallicās gentēs, cupidās semper armōrum, concitātūrū; cum  
orbe terrārum bellum gerendum esse in Italiā ac prō moenibus  
70 Rōmānīs.

## Declaration of War

Ut omnia iūsta ante bellum fierent, Rōmānī lēgātōs maiōrēs  
nātū in Āfricam mīsērunt quī Carthāginiēnsēs rogārent  
pūblicōne cōnsiliō Hannibal Saguntum oppugnāvisset; et, sī  
Carthāginiēnsēs dīcerent hoc pūblicō cōnsiliō factum esse,

59-64 Rōmam rettulērunt: brought back word to Rome. omnia hostilia esse: everything looked like war. misericordia: four emotions are named connected by "et . . . et . . . -que." sociōrum: objective gen.; for their allies. pudor . . . auxiliī: shame of help not given; shame at not having given help. summā rērum: the supreme interests of the state. rēs Rōmāna: the Roman state.

68-70 cum orbe terrārum: with the circle of lands, with the whole world; a dramatic exaggeration. ac prō moenibus: and (above all) before the walls of Rome.

71-74 ut . . . fierent: cl. of purpose. maiōrēs nātū (by birth): older men. quī rogārent: rel. cl. of purpose; so also "indicerent," line 75. pūblicōne: "-ne," whether, introducing an indirect question. pūblicō cōnsiliō: on the authority of the state. dīcerent: subj. in subordinate cl. in ind. disc., representing an original fut. indic.

59-64 hostilis: hostile excidium: downfall misericordia: pity, sympathy  
velut sī: as if imbellis: unprepared for war

66 recēns: fresh

71 iūstus: according to law

indicerent populō Carthāginiēnsī bellum. Rōmānī postquam 75  
 Carthāginem vērunt, senātus datus est. Colloquiō frūstrā  
 habitō, ūnus ex lēgātīs Rōmānīs, sinū ex togā factō, "Hic,"  
 inquit, "vōbīs bellum et pācem portāmus: utrum placet,  
 sūmite." Sub hanc vōcem haud minus ferōciter, daret utrum  
 vellet, clāmātum est. Iterum sinū effūsō, "Bellum," inquit 80  
 Rōmānus, "damus." Tum omnēs respondērunt sē id accipere  
 et, quibus acciperent animīs, eīdem sē gestūrōs esse.

### Preparations for Hannibal's Invasion of Italy

Hannibal Saguntō captō Carthāginem Novam in hīberna sē  
 recēperat, ibique cum audīvisset quae Rōmae quaeque Car-  
 thāgine ācta dēcrētaque essent, mīlītēs Hispānōs convocat. 85  
 "Crēdō ego vōs," inquit, "sociī, et ipsōs cernere, pācātīs  
 omnibus Hispāniae populīs, aut finiendam nōbīs mīlītiā  
 exercitūsque dīmīttendōs esse, aut in aliās terrās trānsferendum  
 bellum. Gentēs Hispāniae flōrēbunt sī ex aliīs gentibus prae-  
 dam et glōriā quaerēmus. Itaque cum longinqua ā domō 90  
 īnstet mīlītiā, sī quis vestrum suōs vidēre vult, potestātem  
 faciō. Prīmō vērē adeste omnēs."

76-82 **senātus**: an audience with the senate. **sinū**: a fold formed by lifting the lower edge of the toga. **utrum**: pron. **sub hanc vōcem**: immediately after these words. **daret**: the subj. represents an imperative of direct discourse. **clāmātum est**: impers.; an outcry, no less savage, arose. **sinū effūsō**: letting the fold of his toga fall. **sē ... esse**: in direct discourse, "nōs id accipimus, et quibus animīs accipimus, eīdem nōs gerēmus." **animīs**: the antecedent is put in the rel. cl., which precedes the principal clause.

83-91 **hiberna**: for the winter of 219-218 B.C. **Rōmae**, **Carthāgine**: loc. **dēcrēta essent**: from "dēcernō." **et**: even. **pācātīs populīs**: abl. abs. expressing reason. **nōbīs**: dat. of agent with pass. periphrastic. **cum**: since. **vestrum**: partitive gen.

75-77 **indīcō**: declare      **sinus**, -ūs: fold

86-91 **cernō**: see, understand      **mīlītiā**: military service      **flōrēō**: flourish  
**īnstō**: be at hand



## Hannibal's Dream

Prīmō vĕre convĕnĕre. Ex hĭbernĭs profectus ad flūmen  
 Hibĕrum per maritimam ōram exercitum dūcit. Ibi in quiĕte  
 95 vĭsus est ab eō iuvenis dīvīnā speciē, quī dīxit sē ab Iove ducem  
 in Italiam Hannibalī missum esse. Hannibal pavidus prīmō  
 nōn circumspiciĕns aut respiciĕns secūtus est; deinde, ubi  
 respēxit, vīdit post sē serpentem mīrā magnitūdine ac post  
 serpentem cum fragōre caelī nimbū. Tum, cum quaesīvisset  
 100 quid prōdigiū esset, audīvit vāstitātem Italiae esse.

## Hannibal Crosses the Ebro and the Pyrenees

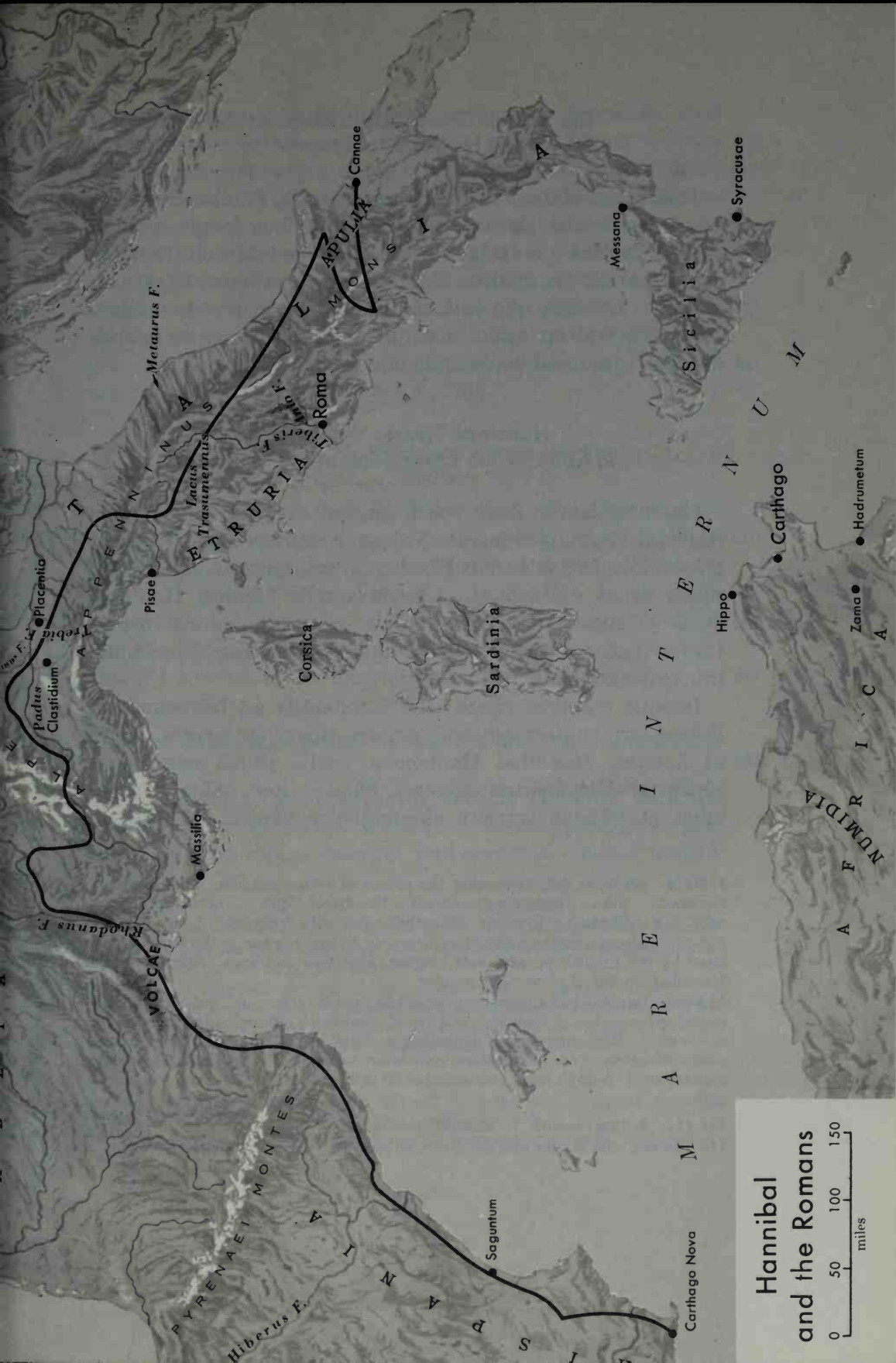
Hōc somniō laetus Hannibal Hibĕrum cōpiās trādūxit, post-  
 quam lĕgātōs praemisit quī animōs Gallōrum, quōrum per finēs  
 trādūcendus exercitus erat, dōnīs conciliārent Alpiūque  
 angustias explorārent. Nōnāgintā mīlia peditum, duodecim  
 105 mīlia equitum Hibĕrum trādūxit. Inde gentēs subiectās  
 Pŷrēnaeis montibus subēgit, ac per Pŷrēnaeās angustias  
 exercitum trādūxit. Per Galliam prōgressus ad flūmen Rho-  
 danum pervēnit.

95-100 *dīvīnā speciē*: abl. of description. *ducem*: as a guide. An older historian says that Hannibal dreamed that he was summoned to an assembly of the gods and directed to invade Italy, and was provided with a guide from among the gods. *cum . . . nimbū*: a storm cloud and a crash of thunder. *prōdigiū*: partitive gen. with "quid"; what the portent indicated. The serpent might be interpreted as war and the cloud as the destruction that follows in the train of war.

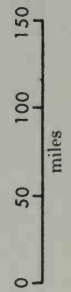
101-106 *somniō*: abl. of cause. The historian Polybius says that Hannibal's army, by the time it reached the Pyrenees, had been reduced to 50,000 infantry and 9,000 cavalry, all veteran soldiers. In addition, Hannibal had brought with him a number of elephants. *subiectās montibus*: lying at the foot of the mountains. *montibus*: dat. with compound verb "subiciō."

94-100 *quiēs, quiētis*: sleep      *speciēs, -ēi*: appearance      *nimbū*: storm  
 cloud      *fragor, -ōris*: crashing, din      *prōdigiū*: portent      *vāstitās, -tātis*:  
 devastation

103 *conciliō*: win over



# Hannibal and the Romans



## The Roman Consul Scipio Stops at the Rhone on his Way to Spain

Priusquam Hannibal Rhodanum trānsiit, Pūblius Cornēlius  
110 Scīpiō, profectus ab urbe sexāgintā nāvibus longīs, praeter  
ōram Etrūriae pervēnit Massiliam, et ad ōstium Rhodanī  
castra posuit, vix crēdēns Hannibalem superāvisse Pŷrēnacōs  
montēs. Incertus quō in locō Hannibalī occurreret, necdum  
satis reffectīs ab iactātiōne maritimā mīlitibus, trecentōs interim  
115 dēlēctōs equitēs ad explōranda omnia praemīsīt.

### Hannibal Crosses the Rhone in Spite of the Opposition of the Volcae

Hannibal iam in finēs Volcārum, quī circā utramque rīpam  
Rhodanī colunt, pervēnerat. Volcae ex citeriōre rīpā effūgerant  
et, omnibus ferē suīs trāns Rhodanum trānsportātīs, ulteriōrem  
rīpam armīs obtinēbant. Cēterīs accolīs flūminis Hannibal  
120 dōnīs persuāsīt ut nāvēs undique cōgerent fabricārentque.  
Itaque ingēns coācta est vīs nāvium ad exercitum Rhodanum  
trānsportandum.

Iamque omnibus rēbus satis comparātīs ad trānseundum,  
Volcae terrēbant ex adversō, omnem rīpam obtinentēs. Quōs  
125 ut āvertat, Hannibal Hannōnem vigiliā primā cum parte  
cōpiārū Hispānārū adversō flūmine iter ūnūs diēi ire  
iubet et flūmine trānsitō circumducere agmen ut hostēs ā

110-113 *nāvibus*: abl. expressing the means of transportation. *ad ōstium*: at the mouth. *quō . . . occurreret* represents the direct "quō . . . occurram," pres. subj. in a deliberative question. *Hannibalī*: dat. with "occurrō."

116-121 *uterque* means *each of two*; it is sing. in number but is often best translated by the English pl. with *both*. *colunt*: have their dwellings. *citeriōre*: from Hannibal's point of view. *vīs*: number.

124-126 *terrēbant ex adversō*: menaced him from the other side. *quōs*: coordinating rel. Hanno, son of Bomilcar, was one of Hannibal's officers. *adversō flūmine*: up the river. *iter*: cognate acc. depending on "ire"; with "ūnūs diēi" it expresses extent of space. (An intransitive verb often takes an acc. of similar meaning, cognate acc.) A day's march consisted of 20 to 24 miles, 18 to 22 in our reckoning.

111-114 *ōstium*: mouth *iactātiō*: tossing

119 *accola, -ae, m.*: he who dwells by or near

tergō adoriātur. Caesā māteriā ratibusque fabricātīs equī virique trānsportātī sunt. Castrīs prope flūmen positīs, mīlītēs nocturnō itinere atque operis labōre fessī quiēte ūnūs 130 diēi reficiuntur. Posterō diē profectī fūmō significant sē flūmen trānsiisse nec procul abesse. Quod ubi cognōvit Hannibal dat signum ad trānseundum. Volcae magnō clāmōre sublātō Poenīs occurrunt in rīpā, quatientēs scūta super capita vibran-tēsque dextrīs tēla. Subitō terribilior ā tergō adortus est 135 clāmor castrīs ab Hannōne captīs. Volcae, quā patēre vīsum est iter, perrumpunt et in vīcōs suōs diffugiunt. Hannibal cēterīs cōpiīs trānsportātīs castra pōnit.

### Hannibal Takes his Elephants across the Rhone

Nōnnūllī scripsērunt elephantōs ratibus trānsportātōs esse. Ratem ūnam, ducentōs longam pedēs, quīnquāgintā lātā, ā 140 terrā in flūmen modō pontis porrēxērunt ut elephantī audācter velut per terram prōgrederentur; altera ratis, longa pedēs centum, huic iūcta est. Tum elephantī, praegredientibus fēminīs, per maiōrem ratem velut per viam āctī, in minōrem ratem trānseunt et nāvibus ad alteram rīpam trahuntur. 145

### The First Skirmish between the Romans and the Carthaginians

Dum elephantī trānsportantur, interim Hannibal Numidās equitēs quīngentōs ad castra Rōmāna mīserat quī cognōscerent ubi et quantae cōpiae essent et quid parārent. Quibus trecentī

132-136 quod: coordinating rel. castrīs captīs: abl. abs. expressing cause.

141-142 modō pontis: in the manner of a bridge, like a bridge. ut prōgrederentur: cl. of purpose. altera ratis: a second raft.

147-148 quī cognōscerent: rel. cl. of purpose. ubi . . . parārent: Latin often uses an indirect question where English uses an abstract or verbal noun. Where and how great were the forces (of the Romans) and what they were preparing is better phrased the position, numbers, and intentions of the (Roman) forces.

128-136 māteria: timber ratis, -is: raft quiēs: rest quatiō: brandish vibrō: shake violently quā: where pateō: lie open

141-143 porrigō, -ere, -rēxī: stretch out praegredior: precede, go before



Rōmānōrum equitēs, ab ōstiō Rhodanī missī, occurrunt.  
 150 Proelium ācrius quam prō numerō pugnantium fit. Caedēs  
 pār utrimque fuit, sed fuga et terror Numidārum Rōmānīs  
 victōriam dedit. Hoc initium simul ōmenque bellī victōriam  
 Rōmānīs portendit.

### Hannibal's Speech to his Soldiers

Hīs rēbus gestīs ad utrumque ducem suī rediērunt. Hannibal  
 155 erat incertus utrū iter inceptum in Italiam faceret an cum  
 exercitū Rōmānō, quī prīmus sē obtulisset, proelium commit-  
 teret. Postquam Italiam petere cōstituit, convocātā cōtiōne,  
 "Per tot annōs vincentēs," inquit, "nōn ante Hispāniā excessistis  
 quam omnēs gentēs et terrās quae duōbus maribus continentur  
 160 subēgistis. Hibērum trānsiistis ad dēlendum nōmen Rōmān-  
 ōrum liberandumque orbem terrārum. Pŷrēnaeīs montibus  
 superātīs, Rhodanō, tantō flūmine, trānsitō, in cōspectū  
 Alpēs habētis, quārum alterum latus Italiae est. Proinde  
 itineris finem spērāte campum quī iacet inter Tiberim ac  
 165 moenia Rōmāna." Militēs hīs verbīs incitātōs corpora cūrāre  
 atque ad iter sē parāre iubet.

150-153 **quam prō**: than was to be expected from. **pugnantium**: the Latin pres. part. may have the force of an English rel. cl. with its antecedent or of an English noun, those who are fighting, the combatants. **hoc . . .**: this which was at the same time ("simul") the beginning and the omen of the war portended a victory for the Romans.

154-157 Hannibal's army now consisted of 38,000 infantry and 8,000 cavalry. **utrum**: in a double question, the first cl. is introduced by "utrum," the second by "an." **utrum . . . faceret an . . . committeret** represents the direct "utrum . . . faciam an . . . committam" pres. subj. in a deliberative question. **inceptum**: part. **obtulisset**: from "offerō"; in the direct, "quī . . . obtulerit," which shall have first met me.

158-164 **ante . . . quam** = "antequam." **Hispāniā**: abl. of separation. **orbem terrārum**: the circle of lands (around the Mediterranean); the whole world. **Italiae**: pred. possessive gen.; belongs to Italy, is part of Italy. **spērāte**: look forward to finishing your march on the plain. **campum**: the Campus Martius, at that time outside the city; used for army musters and exercises.

153 **portendō**: foretell, predict

157-164 **petō**: make for **cōtiō, -ōnis**: assembly, muster **iaceō, -ēre**: lie

## Hannibal Crosses the Alps

P. Cornēlius, trīduō postquam Hannibal castra ā rīpā Rhodanī mōvit, ad castra hostium vēnerat. Ubi dēserta castra vīdit, ad mare ac nāvēs rediit, arbitrātus sē tūtius faciliusque Hannibalī dēscendentī ab Alpibus occursūrum. Interim 170 Hannibal ad Alpēs cum bonā pāce incolentium ea loca Gal-lōrum pervēnit. Nōnō diē ad iugum Alpium pervēnērunt. Bīduum fessīs mīlitibus quiēs data est. Iūmenta aliquot, quae prōlāpsa in rūpibus erant, sequendō vēstīgia agminis in castra pervēnērunt. Nivis cāsus ingentem terrōrem adiēcit. 175

Cum, signīs primā lūce mōtīs, aegerrimē prōgrederentur, Hannibal in prōmunturiō quōdam, unde longē ac lātē prōspectus erat, mīlitēs cōsistere iubet et Italiam ostentat. "Moenia nunc," inquit, "trāscenditis nōn Italiae modo sed etiam urbis Rōmānae; ūnō aut alterō proeliō arcem et caput 180 Italiae in manū ac potestāte habēbitis."

Ita multōs post labōrēs in Italiam perventum est, quīntō mēse ā Carthāgine Novā, quīntō decimō diē Alpibus superātīs.

### Beginning of the Campaign in Italy

P. Cornēlius cōsul, cum Pīsās nāvibus vēnisset, novō exercitū acceptō, cum hoste nōndum reffectō proelium commit- 185 tere volēbat. Sed cum Placentiam cōsul vēnit, iam ex castrīs

167-174 trīduō: abl. of measure of difference. cum bonā pāce: without interference. bīduum: acc. sequendō: abl. of gerund, expressing means.

176-180 prōgrederentur: impf. subj. with "cum," when, referring to past time. alterō: a second. proeliō: abl. of means.

182-183 perventum est: impers. pass.; use personal form in English, they reached. superātīs: mastered; fifteen days were spent in overcoming the difficulties of the Alps.

184-186 Pīsās: now Pisa, an Etruscan town on the Arno River; used by the Romans as a harbor. novō . . . acceptō: tr. as a cl. parallel to "cum . . . vēnisset," when he had come . . . and had received. cum . . . vēnit: indic. as denoting time simply. Placentia was an Italian town near the confluence of the Po and the Trebia.

167-175 trīduum: three days bīduum: two days iūmentum: draft animal  
prōlābor: fall forward, fall down rūpēs, -is: rock, crag vēstīgium: track  
nix, nivis: snow cāsus, -ūs: fall

177-178 prōmunturium: projecting height prōspectus: distant view

discesserat Hannibal. Iam prope in cōnspectū erant exercitūs convēnerantque duo ducēs, imbūtus uterque quādam admīrātiōne alterius. Nam nōmen Hannibalis et apud Rōmānōs iam  
 190 ante Saguntī excidium nōtissimū erat, et Hannibal Scīpiōnem praestantem virum crēdebāt.

### The Battle at the Ticinus

Scipio on landing at Pisa marched to Placentia, crossed the Po, and moved along the left bank to the Ticinus. He now crossed to the west side of the Ticinus and clashed with Hannibal beyond that river.

Castrīs ad Tīcīnum mōtīs, Rōmānī ponte flūmen iungunt tuendīque pontis causā castellum impōnunt; Poenus, hostibus in opere occupātīs, Maharbalem cum equitibus quīngentīs ad  
 195 populandōs sociōrum populī Rōmānī agrōs mittit. Ponte perfectō trāductus exercitus Rōmānus quīnque mīlia passuum ab Hannibale cōnsēdit. In exercitū Hannibalis omnēs proelium ūnō animō et vōce ūnā poscunt.

Scīpiō cum equitātū profectus ad castra hostium ad cōpiās,  
 200 quantae et cuius generis essent, speculandās, occurrit Hannibalī et ipsī cum equitibus ad explōranda loca prōgressō. Propter dēnsū pulverem tot equōrum neutrī alterōs prīmō cernēbant. Cōnsistit utrumque agmen et ad proelium sēsē expediēbant.

193-198 **castellum impōnunt**: *construct a blockhouse*. **hostibus . . . occupātīs**: abl. abs. expressing time. Maharbal was Hannibal's chief cavalry officer. **ūnō animō**: abl. of manner.

200-203 **quantae . . . essent**: see note on line 148 ("ubi . . . parārent"). **et ipsī . . . prōgressō** (dat.): *who had himself also advanced*. **equōrum**: *raised by horses*. **neutrī**: pl.; *neither of two parties*. **alterōs**: pl.; *the other of two parties*. **cōnsistit, expediēbant**: the change of tense in "expediēbant" indicates that the action was continuous; "cōnsistit" is sing. with the sing. subject "agmen"; "expediēbant" is pl. with the soldiers forming the "agmen" as the implied subject.

188-191 **imbūtus**: filled      **admīrātiō**: admiration      **praestāns**: outstanding

195 **populor, -ārī**: lay waste, ravage

200-202 **speculor, -ārī**: spy out, explore      **pulvis, -eris**: dust

Vixdum clāmōre sublātō, iaculātōrēs, quōs in fronte Scīpiō locāverat, fūgērunt inter subsidia ad secundam aciem. Inde 205 equitum proelium erat aliquamdiū anceps, dōnec Numidae, quī in cornibus fuerant, circumvectī ā tergō sē ostendērunt. Vulnus cōsulis terrōrem Rōmānōrum auxit; cōnfertus autem equitātus cōsulem nōn armīs modo sed etiam corporibus suis prōtegēns in castra redūxit. Hōc prīmum cum Hannibale in 210 Italiā proelium fuit.

### Maneuvers after the Battle. Clastidium Surrenders to Hannibal

Scīpiō, quamquam graviter vulnerātus erat, tamen quārtā vigiliā noctis silentiō profectus ad Trebiam fluvium in loca altiōra collēsque impeditiōrēs equitibus castra movet. Equitēs ab Hannibale missī novissimum agmen Rōmānōrum perturbā- 215 vissent nisi, praedae cupidī, in vacua Rōmāna castra iter āvertissent; ēmissus hostis est dē manibus.

Scīpiō locum, quī prope flūmen tūtissimus castrīs est vīsus, dēlēctum commūnīvit. Nec procul inde Hannibal cum cōnsēdisset, ad vīcum Clastidium, quō magnam frūmentī cōpiam 220 contulerant Rōmānī, cōpiās mittit. Quod praefectus praesidiī corruptus est, trāditur Hannibalī Clastidium.

204-208 vixdum . . . : scarcely had the battle shout been raised when . . . iaculātōrēs: in his first line, Scipio had placed his slingers and Gallic cavalry; in his second, the Roman infantry and the flower of the allied cavalry. Hannibal used a single line with his Spanish cavalry in the center and the Numidians on the wings. circumvectī: from "circumvehor"; wheeling around. vulnus: Scipio was wounded and in danger; he was rescued by the intervention of his son, a boy of seventeen; years later, this son defeated Hannibal at Zama in the closing battle of the war.

213-217 The Trebia River flows north and empties into the Po about twenty-five miles east of the junction of the Ticinus and the Po. impeditiōrēs equitibus: impracticable for cavalry. perturbāvissent . . . āvertissent: plup. subj. in past untrue condition. praedae: gen. with adj. "cupidus." ēmissus est: slipped out. 219-220 dēlēctum: a Latin part. may be equivalent to an English principal cl. Clastidium was about twenty-five miles west of the Trebia. quō: adv., whither.

204-208 vixdum: hardly iaculātor: javelin-thrower subsidia, -ōrum: reserves aliquamdiū: for some time anceps: undecided, doubtful cōnfertus: in close formation

221-222 praefectus: commandant corrumpō: bribe





Letocetum Roman station, Wall, Staffordshire, England. View of bath building showing remains of the *hypocaustum*, the central heating system with underground furnace and tile flues to distribute the heat.

Sempronius, the other consul, joined Scipio and, because of the latter's wound, took command. One stormy morning, Hannibal, after giving his men a good meal and oil for their bodies, sent out a band of cavalry to tempt the Romans across the River Trebia. Sempronius, eager for battle, led his army out before breakfast through the cold waters of the river. The Carthaginian cavalry routed the Roman wings while another force attacked them from an ambush in the rear. A long struggle ended in the defeat of the Romans (218 B.C.).

Apud Trebiam secunda Pūnicī bellī procella dēsaevit Semprōniō cōnsule. Tum callidissimī hostēs, frīgidum et nivālem diem naetī, cum sē ignibus oleōque fōvissent, hominēs 225 ā merīdiē et sōle venientēs, nōs nostrā hieme vīcērunt.

### Alarm at Rome

Rōmam tantus terror ex hāc clāde perlātus est ut crēderent hostem iam ad urbem īnfestīs signīs venīre, nec quidquam speī aut auxiliī esse quō portīs moenibusque vim hostium arcērent. Ūnō cōnsule ad Tīcīnum victō, alterum ex Siciliā revocāverant. 230 Duōbus cōsulibus, duōbus exercitibus victīs, quōs aliōs ducēs, quās aliās legiōnēs arcesserent? Cīvibus ita territīs Semprōnius Rōmam pervēnit, ingentī cum periculō per hostium equitēs trānsgressus. Comitīis habitīs in hīberna rediit. Creātī sunt cōsulēs Cn. Servīlius et C. Flāminius. 235

223-226 *secunda . . . dēsaevit*: the second storm of the Punic War wreaked its fury. *hominēs*: though they were men that came from the south and a warm sun. *nostrā hieme*: by the aid of our own winter.

227-232 *Rōmam*: the important word at the beginning. *terror . . . perlātus est*: condensed expression; the news was brought to Rome and terror was aroused. *speī*: partitive gen. with "quidquam." *quō*: abl. of means. *portīs*: abl. of separation. *arcērent*: they could ward off. *arcesserent*: deliberative subj.

223-225 *procella*: storm *dēsaeviō*: rage, rave *nivālis*: snowy *foveō*: warm

229-234 *arceō*: keep off *comitia, -ōrum*: elections

## Hannibal Marches South

To check Hannibal's march south, the two new consuls, each with an army, moved north to guard the two principal roads connecting the Po Valley with Central Italy. But Hannibal took an unusual route over the Apennines to the west. For three days and nights his men waded through marshes. When Hannibal reached dry ground in Etruria, he passed Flaminius and took the highway to Rome. Flaminius followed and fell into a trap at Lake Trasimene.

Iam vēr appropinquābat; itaque Hannibal ex hibernīs profectus est. Appennīnum trānsiit, petēns Etrūriam. Hōc in itinere tam gravī morbo oculōrum afficitur ut postea numquam dextrō bene ūsus sit. Apud Lacum Trasumennum C. Flāmin-  
240 ium cōsulem circumventum occīdit. Nam equitātus Pūnicus nebulā tēctus subitō pugnantium terga adortus est. Nec dē deīs querī possumus neque prōdigīs; nam, inter alia, aquilae prōdīre nōlentēs, atque ingēns terrae tremor, imminentem clādem praedīxerant.

### Tidings of Fresh Disaster Reach Rome. Quintus Fabius Maximus Appointed Dictator

245 Hāc tertiā clāde nūntiātā dictātōrem populus creāvit Q. Fabium Maximum et magistrum equitum M. Minucium

241-243 nebulā: abl. tēctus: from "tegō." pugnantium: tr. as a noun. deīs, prōdigīs: the belief in prodigies as proof of the anger of the gods and as warning of coming disaster was common in ancient times; even enlightened men believed in them. For months before the Battle of Trasimene, a series of prodigies had been reported at Rome: at one place shields had been seen in the sky and the sun had appeared to be fighting with the moon; at another two moons were visible in the daytime. Shortly before the fight, Flaminius was thrown by his horse; the bystanders were appalled by what they took to be an evil omen at the beginning of a campaign. aquilae prōdīre nōlentēs: the standard of the legion was a bronze or silver eagle mounted on a wooden staff. Before the battle, the consul was told that the standard could not be moved though the standard-bearer had exerted his utmost strength; this might easily be thought to mean that the gods did not approve the order to advance.

245-246 dictātōrem: Often in dangerous wars a dictator was appointed. He placed the state under martial law and ruled with absolute power. He appointed a master of horse ("magister equitum") to command the cavalry. The dictator's term was limited to six months; it was to his honor to bring the state safely through the crisis and to resign his command at the earliest possible date.

241-242 nebula: mist queror, querī, questus sum: complain

Rūfum; eisque negōtium ab senātū datum est ut mūrōs urbis firmārent et praesidia dispōnerent, pontēsque rescinderent flūminum. Dēcrētum est ut dictātor ab Serviliō cōnsule exercitum acciperet; cōnseriberet ex cīvibus sociisque quantum 250 equitum ac peditum vidērētur.

Dictātor, exercitū cōsulis acceptō, itineribus summā cum cūrā explorātis, cōpiās ad hostem dūxit, nūllō locō, nisi necessitās cōgeret, fortūnae sē commissūrus. Per loca alta agmen dūcēbat modicō ab hoste intervāllō, ut neque Hannibalem 255 omitteret neque congregederētur. Itaque paulum intervāllī clādibus Rōmānis callida cunctātiō Fabiī fēcit. Hannibal intellēxit Rōmānōs ducem dēlēgisse quī bellum ratiōne nōn fortūnā gereret; sed inter cīvēs armātōs pariter togātōsque ratiō Fabiī contempta est. 260

### The Battle of Cannae

For 216 B.C., L. Aemilius Paulus and C. Terentius Varro were elected consuls. With a force of more than 80,000 men, the largest single

247-251 eīs negōtium datum est: *they were commissioned*. firmārent: subj. in indirect command. flūminum: in the neighborhood of Rome. equitum: partitive gen. with "quantum." vidērētur: subj. in subordinate cl. in ind. disc.

252-254 Instead of attacking Rome, Hannibal crossed Italy to the Adriatic coast and moved gradually southward. Fabius adopted a policy opposite to that of his predecessors. He would not risk a battle, but dogged Hannibal's footsteps, cutting off foraging parties, and trained his own men to meet the enemy in light engagements. Because of this method of fighting, Fabius was given the name of Cunctator (Delayer). As his policy did not prevent the Carthaginians from moving about and plundering as they pleased, it made the dictator very unpopular. Yet Fabius, by avoiding a pitched battle, saved Rome for the time from another defeat. ad: *toward, in the direction of*. nūllō locō: abl. of place where, without a prep. cōgeret: impf. subj. in subordinate cl. in ind. disc. commissūrus: fut. part. denoting intention; *resolved to commit*.

255-260 modicō intervāllō: abl. of manner. ut . . . omitteret: cl. of result; *so that he . . . lost touch with*; or clause of purpose; *that he might . . . lose touch with*. intervāllī: part. gen. with "paulum"; lit. *a little of interval*. clādibus: dat. of interest. cunctātiō: *policy of holding back*; *Fabius' policy of holding back stemmed the tide for a short time*. ratiōne: *reason*. fortūna: *blind chance*. gereret: subj. in subordinate clause in ind. disc.; *who was waging*. togātōs: *civilians*. ratiō: *tactics*.

248 rescindō: *tear down*

255 modicus: *moderate*



army Rome had ever put in the field, they marched against Hannibal. The latter's army numbered about 50,000 men. The Battle of Cannae followed (216 B.C.).

Hannibal, cōpiīs in Āpūliam mōtīs, prope vīcum Cannās castra posuit āversa ā ventō quī per campōs siccōs nūbēs pulveris vehit. Cōsulēs, Poenum secūtī, ubi ventum ad Cannās est, bīna castra prope flūmen Aufidum mūniunt.

265 Posterō diē Varrō, cui sors eius diēi imperiī erat, nihil cōsultō collēgā signum prōposuit instrūctāsque cōpiās flūmen trādūxit, Paulō sequente sed nōn probante. Hannibal ita suam instrūxit aciem ut ventō et pulvere et sōle pugnāret. Itaque duo maximī exercitūs Rōmānī caedēbantur dōnec Hannibal 270 dīxit mīlitibus suīs, "Parcite ferrō." Ducum Rōmānōrum fūgit alter, alter occīsus est.

### Maharbal's Advice to Hannibal

Hannibalī cum cēterī grātulārentur suādērentque ut diēi quod reliquum esset noctemque īnsequentem ad quiētem fessīs daret mīlitibus, Maharbal, praefectus equitum, statim Rōmam

263-264 *ventum est*: impers. pass.; tr. by active. *ad Cannās*: "ad" with names of cities denotes *to the vicinity of*. *bīna*: two; the form "binī, ae, a" modifies a noun used only in the pl.

265-271 *cui . . . erat*: *to whom was the lot of command of that day, whom the lot had made commander for that day*. When the consuls were in joint authority, the supreme command alternated from day to day. This system could lead to disastrous results, especially when the consuls disagreed as to policy or tactics. *nihil*: adverbial acc.; here a strong negative with the abl. abs.; *without consulting his colleague at all*. *signum*: the red flag at the commander's tent. *flūmen*: "trādūcō" may take two accs., one dependent upon the verb, the other upon the prep. *Paulō*: Paulus, who preferred to follow the tactics of Fabius, could withhold approval of the policy of his colleague but could not refuse to support it. *ventō . . . sōle*: *with the aid of wind, dust, and sun*. *caedēbantur*: seven-eighths of the Roman army, including the consul Paulus and eighty senators, perished. Varro, who survived, collected the remnants of the army, scarcely 10,000 men. 272-274 *Hannibalī*: dat. with "grātulor"; note prominent position of the word. *cum*: *when*. *diēi*: part. gen. with "reliquum." *esset*: subj. in subordinate cl. in ind. disc. *ad quiētem*: "ad" with acc. denoting purpose. *Maharbal*: Hannibal's chief officer.

262 *siccus*: dry

prōgrediendum arbitrātus, “Ut sciās quid hāc pugnā sit 275  
 āctum,” inquit, “diē quīntō victor in Capitōliō cēnābis.  
 Sequere; cum equitibus praecēdam.” “Tuam voluntātem,”  
 inquit Hannibal, “laudō; sed ad cōsiliū capiendum temporis  
 opus est.” Tum Maharbal: “Nōn omnia eīdem deī dedēre:  
 vincere scīs, Hannibal, victōriā ūtī nēscīs.” Mora eius diēi 280  
 crēditur salūtī fuisse urbī atque imperiō.

### Hannibal at the Anio

Quīque post annīs Hannibal ad Aniēnem fluvium tria mīlia  
 passuum ab urbe castra mōvit. Ibi castrīs positīs ipse cum  
 duōbus mīlibus equitum ad portam Collīnam est prōgressus  
 atque, unde proximē poterat, moenia situmque urbis contem- 285  
 plābātur.

Posterō diē trāsgressus Aniēnem Hannibal in aciem cōpiās  
 ēdūxit; nec cōsulēs proelium dētrectāvēre. Instrūctīs utrim-  
 que exercitibus in pugnam tantam ut urbs Rōma victōrī  
 praemium esset, imber ingēns grandine mixtus ita utramque 290  
 aciem turbāvit ut vix armīs retentīs in castra sē recēperint.  
 Et posterō diē eōdem locō aciēs instrūctās eadem tempestās  
 dirēmit.

275-281 **prōgrediendum** (esse): pres. inf. of pass. periphrastic used impersonally; *an advance should be made, they ought to advance*. **sciās**: subj. in cl. of purpose; *that you may realize*. **sit āctum**: *has been accomplished*. **victor**: *as victor*. The Capitoliū, the temple of Jupiter, was situated on the summit of Mons Capitoliū in Rome. Here the consuls on entering office offered sacrifices; and hither a victorious general, who entered the city in triumph, was carried in his chariot to return thanks to Jupiter. **opus est**: *there is need*, with gen. of the thing needed; lit. *there is need of time for forming a plan*. **omnia** (acc.) **eīdem** (dat.) **deī** (nom.). **scīs**: *know how*, with complementary inf. **salūtī** (dat. of purpose) **fuisse urbī** (dat. of interest): *to have saved the city*.

282-292 The Anio flows into the Tiber three miles above Rome. The Colline Gate is in the northeastern part of Rome. **unde . . . poterat**: *from the nearest possible point*. **in pugnam**: *to engage in a battle*. **imber**: a Roman of that day might interpret such a storm as interference by the gods to save Rome. **castra**: pl. in meaning; *their respective camps*. **recēperint**: perf. subj. in a cl. of result. **instrūctās**: tr. by cl. expressing time. **eadem**: *a similar*.

285-286 **situs, -ūs**: site, location **contemplor**: survey

288-293 **dētrectō**: decline **imber, imbris**: rain, rainstorm **grandō, -inis**: hail  
**dirimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptum**: separate

Hannibal's victory at Cannae had been followed by revolt from Rome of the greater part of Southern Italy. Philip of Macedon concluded an alliance with Hannibal, and the city of Syracuse in Sicily revolted. "But the truth of Polybius's remark that the Romans are most to be feared when their danger is greatest was never better illustrated than by their conduct in the face of these accumulated disasters" (Pelham, *Outlines of Roman History*). From this time the Romans in great measure changed their plan of operations; they hemmed in Hannibal's movements on all sides and kept a force in every quarter of Italy to thwart the operations of his generals. Although Hannibal gained several victories, his forces gradually became weakened, while the Romans regained lost territory, reestablishing their authority in Sicily and elsewhere. Hannibal's object now was to maintain his ground in Southern Italy until his brother Hasdrubal with a fresh army should cross the Alps and appear in the North.

#### Hasdrubal Marches to Italy. The Battle of the Metaurus River, 207 B.C.

Inter Carthāginiēnsēs cōnstābat exercitum Hasdrubalī,  
 295 frātrī Hannibalis, ex Hispāniā in Italiā dūcendum esse. Dē  
 eius adventū cūra apud Rōmānōs in diēs crēscēbat. Omnēs  
 cēnsēbant Hasdrubalī occurrēdum dēscendentī ab Alpibus,  
 et Hannibalem simul suō propriō bellō occupandum. Cōsulēs,  
 M. Līvius et C. Claudius Nerō, dīversīs itineribus profectī  
 300 sunt ab urbe.

294-299 Hasdrubal was the son of Hamilcar Barca and brother of Hannibal. When Hannibal set out for Italy, Hasdrubal was left in command in Spain. In 207 B.C., he crossed the Alps and marched into Italy in order to aid his brother. **Hasdrubalī**: dat. of agent with passive periphrastic "dūcendum esse." **in diēs**: from day to day. **Hasdrubalī occurrēdum (esse)**: "Hasdrubalī" is dat. with "occurrō"; that Hasdrubal must be met. **propriō**: strengthens "suō." **occupandum**: supply "esse." **dīversīs itineribus**: Livius went to the north to intercept Hasdrubal, Nero to the south to watch Hannibal.

294 cōnstāt: it is agreed

Inter haec ab Hasdrubale quattuor equitēs cum litterīs missī ad Hannibalem, cum per tōtam ferē Italiam prōgressī essent, ā Rōmānīs captī ad Claudium cōnsulem dūcuntur. Tum Claudius, audendum esse aliquid imprōvīsum ratus, litterīs Hasdrubalis Rōmam ad senātum missīs, dē tōtō exercitū sex 305 mīlia peditum, mīlle equitēs dēlēgit, et quam maximīs itineribus ad collēgam dūcēbat. Postrēmō cum iam castrīs collēgae appropinquāret, substitit Claudius, nē rēs ab hostibus cognōscerētur. Silentio noctis ingressī, cum summā omnium laetitiā accipiuntur. 310

Posterō diē ingēns certāmen erat. Crēscēte certāmine elephantī inter duās aciēs versārī velut incertī quōrum essent, haud dissimilēs nāvibus sine gubernāculō vagīs. Ex omnibus partibus, ab fronte, ab latere, ab tergō trucidantur Hispānī. Postrēmō cum fortūna hostium esset, Hasdrubal, nē ipse 315 superesset tantō exercituī quī suum nōmen secūtus erat, concitātō equō sē in cohortem Rōmānam immīsīt; ibi pugnāns cecidit.

Claudius cōsul, cum in castra rediisset, caput Hasdrubalis,

301-306 *inter haec: meanwhile.* *cum litterīs:* with a letter containing the news that Hasdrubal was actually in Italy and on his way to join Hannibal, and even indicating the route that Hasdrubal intended to take. *audendum esse aliquid imprōvīsum ratus:* for he thought that he must venture something unexpected. *quam maximīs itineribus,* by forced marches, that is, as far as possible each day.

311-312 *certāmen:* The consuls found Hasdrubal occupied in crossing the Metaurus River. Hasdrubal wished to avoid a battle and to escape from the Romans, but his guides abandoned him. He was attacked by the Roman cavalry and detained until the Roman infantry came up. *crēscēte certāmine:* as the fighting grew more violent. *versārī:* the historical inf. is often used in narrative with the force of the impf. indic.; its subject is in the nom.; *the elephants ranged.* *quōrum:* pred. possessive gen.; *to whom (Carthaginians or Romans) they belonged.*

313-316 *vagīs:* drifting. *Hispānī:* many of Hasdrubal's most experienced soldiers were Spaniards. *hostium:* pred. possessive gen.; *when the fortune of the day was with the enemy.* *exercituī:* dat. with compound verb "supersum."

313 *gubernāculum:* tiller, helm



320 quod servātum cum cūrā attulerat, prōici ante hostium stationēs captīvōsque duōs solūtōs ire ad Hannibalem et exprōmere quae essent ācta, iussit. Hannibal, tantō simul pūblicō familiārīque ictus lūctū, agnōscere sē fortunam Carthāginis fertur dīxisse.

### The Romans Carry the War into Africa

It is a proof of Hannibal's talent as a general that, after the Battle of Metaurus, he was able for four years to keep the field in Southern Italy.

In 204 B.C. the Romans under the younger Scipio invaded Africa and met with such success that the Carthaginians recalled Hannibal from Italy.

325 Iam certum erat Hannibalem etiam ipsīus cōfessiōne posse vincī; sed fidūciae plēnus populus Rōmānus asperrimum hostem in suā Āfricā dēbellāre cōstituit. Duce igitur Scīpiōne in Āfricam maximae cōpiae missae sunt. Dēnique ipsās Carthāginis portās obsidiōne Scīpiō quatiēbat.

330 Nihil ultrā in Italiā ab Hannibale gestum est; nam ad eum lēgātī Carthāginiēnsēs revocantēs in Āfricam vērunt. Gemēns ac vix lacrimās tenēns dīcitur lēgātōrum verba audīvisse. "Iam nōn perplexē," inquit, "sed palam mē revocant quī vetābant supplēmentum et pecūniam mittī. Vicit ergō

320-324 cum cūrā: with "servātum." solūtōs: freed from their chains. ictus: stricken. agnōscere: construe, "fertur (is said) dīxisse sē agnōscere fortunam Carthāginis."

325-326 Hannibalem: subject of "posse." ipsīus: his own. fidūciae: gen. with adj. "plēnus."

327 in suā Āfricā: on his own soil of Africa. duce Scīpiōne: abl. abs.

333-334 quī: the antecedent of "quī" is the unexpressed subject of "revocant" they, who . . . , are recalling me.

320-323 prōiciō: throw (forward) exprōmō, -ere: disclose, reveal icō, -ere, icī, ictum: strike agnōscō: recognize

325-326 cōfessiō, -ōnis: admission fidūcia: confidence

327 dēbellō: subdue

332-333 gemō, -ere: groan perplexē: obscurely, ambiguously palam: openly

Hannibalem nōn populus Rōmānus totiēns pulsus fugātusque, 335  
sed senātus Carthāginiēnsis obtrectātiōne atque invidiā."

### Hannibal's Conference with Scipio

Hadrūmētum pervēnerat Hannibal, ubi ad reficiendōs ex itinere maritimō mīlitēs paucī diēs sūmptī sunt. Deinde certior factus omnia circā Carthāginem obtinērī armīs Rōmānīs, Zamam contendit. Zama quīnque diērum iter ab Carthāgine 340 abest. Inde speculātōrēs captī ab custōdibus Rōmānīs dēductī ad Scīpiōnem sunt; quōs Scīpiō per castra, quā vellent, circumducī iussit; cum satis omnia explōrāvissent, retrō ad Hannibalem dīmīsit.

Hannibal nihil eārum rērum quae nūtiābantur laetō animō 345 audīvit. Nūntium ad Scīpiōnem mīsīt ut colloquendī sēcum potestātem faceret. Colloquium igitur fuit inter eōs dē condiōnibus pācis. Infectā pāce ex colloquiō ad suōs cum sē recēpissent, frūstrā verba facta esse renūntiant; armīs dēcernendum esse.

350

337-344 **Hadrūmētum**: a seaport sixty miles south of Carthage. **omnia**: all the country. **ab Carthāgine**: "ab" is used with the names of cities with the verb "absum." **quā**: adv. **vellent**: subj. in subordinate cl. in ind. disc. **dīmīsīt**: the report that his scouts brought back was most discouraging to Hannibal, for on that very day one of the Numidian chieftains had brought into Scipio's camp a large force of infantry and cavalry.

346-350 **ut potestātem faceret**: to give (him) an opportunity. **colloquendī**: gen. of gerund completing meaning of "potestātem." **infectā pāce**: abl. abs.; when peace was not established; note negative force of "in-." **frūstrā . . . esse**: the discussion had been fruitless. The ind. disc. is continued in "armīs . . . esse." **dēcernendum esse**: pres. inf. of pass. periphrastic used impersonally; the matter must be decided.

336 **obtrectātiō**: jealousy

341 **speculātor**: scout

## The Decisive Battle of Zama, 202 B.C.

Nōn fuit maior sub imperiō Rōmānō diēs quam ille cum hī duo maximī ducēs comminus aciēs instrūxērunt. Hannibal pulsus bīduō et duābus noctibus Hadrūmētum pervēnit, quod abest ā Zamā circiter mīlia passuum trecenta. Vocātus inde  
355 Carthāginem rediit sextō et trīcēsīmō post annō quam puer inde profectus erat, atque in cūriā fassus est nōn proeliō modo sed bellō sē victum, nec spem salūtis alibī quam in pāce esse.

### Hannibal in the East

Hannibal became a magistrate at Carthage; in this office he showed himself a great statesman, effecting important political and financial reforms. But the jealousy of opposing factions in Carthage and fear that he might be handed over to the Romans led Hannibal to go into voluntary exile. He joined Antiochus, King of Syria, in a war against the Romans.

The Romans, in an effort to avert the war, sent an embassy to the king. Among the envoys was Scipio, the victor of Zama. There is a tradition that Scipio and Hannibal met at Ephesus and held the conversation that follows.

P. Scīpiō Āfricānus, ut trāditum est, in eā lēgātiōne fuit, atque Ephesī cum Hannibale collocūtus est. Āfricānō quaerentī  
360 quem fuisse maximum imperātōrem crēderet, Hannibal

351-357 **maior**: more notable. **sub imperiō Rōmānō**: in the history of the Roman Empire. **instrūxērunt**: when "cum" has a relative value (*when = on which*) it takes the indic. **bīduō**: abl. of time within which. **puer**: as a boy. **fassus est**: from "fateor." **nōn . . . modo**: not only. **victum**: supply "esse."

358-362 **Āfricānus**: an extra name was sometimes conferred on a Roman to commemorate a great achievement; thus Scipio was called Africanus in honor of his victories in Africa. **rēgem Macedonum**: king of the Macedonians; English prefers *king of Macedonia*. **manū**: force. **ultimās ōrās**: Alexander had advanced all the way to India.

352-357 **comminus**: at close quarters **fateor, -ēri, fassus sum**: admit, acknowledge **alibī**: elsewhere

respondit, Alexandrum rēgem Macedonum, quod parvā manū plūrimōs exercitūs vīcisset, quodque ultimās ōrās, quās vīsere suprā spem hūmānam esset, peragrāvisset.

Scīpiōnī quaerentī quem secundum pōneret, Pyrrhum dīxit, quod nēmō callidius loca castrōrum cēpisset praesidiaque 365 disposuisset; tantam artem etiam hominēs sibi conciliandī habuisse eum, ut Italicae gentēs sub imperiō rēgis externī quam populī Rōmānī esse mālrent.

Scīpiōnī quaerentī quem tertium dūceret, nōn dubiē sē ipsum dīxit. Tum rīsīt Scīpiō: "Quid tū dīcerēs sī mē vīcissēs?" 370 "Tum dīcerem mē et ante Alexandrum et ante Pyrrhum et ante omnēs imperātōrēs esse."

### The End of Hannibal's Life

When Antiochus was defeated by the Romans, Hannibal was forced to flee. For a time he found refuge with king Prusias of Bithynia.

Accidit ut lēgātī rēgis Prūsiae Rōmae apud Flāminīnum cēnārent, atque ex eīs ūnus dīceret Hannibalem in Bīthyniā esse. Id Flāminīnus senātuī dētulit. Patrēs cōnscrīptī lēgātōs 375 in Bīthyniam mīsērunt quī ab rēge peterent ut Hannibalem sibi dēderet. Hīs Prūsiās negāre nōn ausus est; petīvit autem nē id ā sē fierī postulārent quod adversus iūs hospitīi esset;

364-366 **Pyrrhum**: Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, invaded Italy in 280 B.C. and defeated the Romans in several battles. **loca castrōrum cēpisset**: had chosen the sites of his camps. **praesidia disposuisset**: had arranged his troops. **tantam . . . eum**: construe, "eum habuisse tantam artem . . ."; ind. disc. dependent on "dīxit" continues. **conciliandī**: of winning over men to him, of winning popularity. 369-370 **dūceret**: regarded. **rīsīt**: smiled. **dīcerēs . . . vīcissēs**: untrue condition, with apodosis referring to present time and protasis to past time: would say . . . had conquered.

373-378 **Prūsiae**: gen. **Rōmae**: loc. **negāre**: to refuse. **petīvit** introduces a passage of ind. disc., which continues to the end of the paragraph. **nē id . . .**: lit., that they would not demand that ("id") to be done by him which ("quod") was . . . .

362-363 **ultimus**: most distant **peragrō, -āre**: pass through, traverse

365-367 **callidē**: cleverly **externus**: foreign

378 **hospitium**: hospitality



# MĪLES RŌMĀNUS



ipsī, sī possent, comprehenderent; locum ubi esset facile inventūrōs.

380

Hūc cum lēgātī Rōmānōrum vēnissent ac multitudine mīlitum domum eius circumdedissent, puer, ab iānuā prōspiciēns, Hannibalī dīxit plūrēs praeter cōsuētūdinem armātōs appārēre. Quī imperāvit eī ut omnēs forēs aedificiū circummīret ac celeriter sibi nūntiāret num eōdem modō undique obsidērētur. Cum puer omnēs exitūs occupātōs ostendisset, sēnsit id nōn fortuitō factum sed sē petī. "Liberēmus," inquit, "diūturnā cūrā populum Rōmānum, quandō mortem senis exspectāre longum cēsent;" et memor pristinārum virtūtum, venēnum quod semper sēcum habēre cōsuēverat sūmpsit.

385  
390

Sīc vir fortissimus, multīs variisque perfūctus labōribus, annō acquiēvit septuāgēsīmō.

379 **comprehenderent**: they might arrest him.

383-390 **plūrēs** . . . **armātōs**: an unusual number of armed men. **quī** (imperāvit): Hannibal. **num**: whether. **occupātōs**: guarded. **sēnsit**: supply "Hannibal." **sē peti**: that it was he whom they were after. **liberēmus**: hortatory subj. **cūrā**: abl. of separation; the anxiety they have so long experienced. **quandō**: since. **longum**: tedious; modifies phrase "mortem senis exspectāre." In 183 B.C., Hannibal was sixty-three years old. **virtūtum**: gen. pl.; deeds of valor. **habēre**: in a ring. Through fifty years Hannibal had kept the oath which he had sworn as a boy. The news of his death delivered Rome "from the terrifying phantom which had pursued and haunted it . . . ever since the day of Zama." (Mommsen) The same year, 183 B.C., saw the death of Scipio, the victor of Zama.

382-390 **iānuā**: door **appārēō, -ēre**: appear, be seen **foris, -is**: door  
**fortuitō**: by chance **quandō**: since **pristinū**: former, previous **venēnum**: poison

391-392 **perfungor, -i, perfūctus sum**: perform **acquiēscō**: enter into rest  
**septuāgēsīmus**: seventieth

### QUESTIONS

What were the results of Hamilcar's exploits in Spain?  
What public oath was Hannibal required to take at Carthage?

1-10

11-82

Under what circumstances did Hannibal receive command of the army? At what age?

What impression did Hannibal make upon the Carthaginian army in Spain?

What character traits of Hannibal led to this impression?

What early success did Hannibal have in Spain?

How did the Roman Senate react to the appeal of the Saguntines for help? Was this policy successful?

What was Hannibal's reaction when he heard that envoys had come from Rome?

What was the reaction at Rome when news of the fate of Saguntum was received?

Trace Hannibal's march from New Carthage to the Rhone.

What counter move did the Romans make under Scipio?

What tribe tried to prevent Hannibal from crossing the Rhone? How did Hannibal circumvent them?

83-235

How did Hannibal get his elephants across the Rhone?

After a successful skirmish near the Rhone, Hannibal addressed his soldiers. What did he say?

What difficulties did the Carthaginians experience in their famous crossing of the Alps?

What clever strategy helped the Carthaginians at the Trebia River?

What was the policy of the dictator Quintus Fabius Maximus as Hannibal moved south?

What was the result of the Battle of Cannae? Why was this battle especially important?

236-357

What mistake did Hannibal make (according to Maharbal) after the Battle of Cannae?

What events led to the Battle of the Metaurus River?

What new Carthaginian general appeared here?

What change in policy did the Romans adopt after this battle?

Where was the Battle of Zama fought? What was the result?

## Caesar

GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR (102-44 B.C.). Julius Caesar followed the usual military service and career in public office (*cursus honorum*). He formed, with Pompey and Crassus, the "First Triumvirate," obtained the consulship in 59 B.C., and continued his policy of attacking the power of the Senate. Caesar secured appointment to Gaul for five years with command of the army and control of the government of Cisalpine Gaul, Illyricum, and Transalpine Gaul; the period was extended to ten years, to March of 49 B.C.

In January of 49 B.C., Caesar conducted a legion across the Rubicon, which formed the boundary between Italy and the province of Cisalpine Gaul, and thus launched the Civil War, in which Pompey was his principal opponent.

Campaigns were waged in Italy, Spain, Thessaly (where the decisive battle of Pharsalus was fought), Egypt, Asia Minor (where, at Zela, he sent the famous dispatch *vēni, vīdī, vīcī*), Africa, and again in Spain. Appointed dictator, Caesar enjoyed almost royal power. He did, however, execute many political reforms and was noted for his clemency toward former enemies. Caesar was assassinated on the Ides (15th) of March, 44 B.C.

The writings of Caesar consist of the *Commentarii de Bello Gallico* (7 books); *Commentarii de Bello Civili* (3 books); essays on philosophy, astronomy, divination, and grammar; poems; and a joke-book.



Of these works, all except the commentaries on the Gallic and the Civil War have been lost.

If Caesar's books other than his war records had survived, not so many people would have gained the impression that the Romans did nothing but fight and thought of nothing but war. Caesar's war books have the great merit of being written in lucid Latin; hence their wide circulation. Almost every other Latin prose writer, and nearly all the poets, attempted to write in what is called the rhetorical tradition. Their language tended to be mannered and self-conscious. Their work is often striking and ingenious; but for modern taste there is often too strong a hint of artificiality and even pomposity. The difference between the rhetorical style and that of Caesar was roughly the difference between "the curfew tolls the knell of parting day" and "it is 9 p.m."

Of course, Caesar is more eloquent than that analogy suggests. But he achieves his effects by brevity, directness, and understatement rather than through elaboration of structure or ornament. Cicero, no mean judge, speaks of Caesar's style as simple, direct, and genial, stripped of all embellishment. One of his officers says that Caesar wrote *bene atque emendatē, facile atque celeriter*, with distinction and precision, easily and rapidly.

In the passages included in this book, most of the characteristics of the man and of his style are to be seen. The straightforwardness of the narrative is matched by the modesty of the writer. Caesar reports his exploits in the third person. Perhaps by the very plainness of his reporting, he succeeds in underlining his resourcefulness, his energy, and his decisiveness. As a good general should, he gives full credit in his communiqués to his subordinates, and generously records individual feats of valor.

He respects the dignity of his enemies. He never treats them or refers to them as if they were savages. He admits that they may be treacherous, but his reports give a clearer impression of his own coolness and shrewd instincts than anything else, and there is no disparagement of "lesser breeds without the law." There is, of course, a constant suggestion that the Romans—"our side"—are steady, brave, clear-headed, and chivalrous. Indeed, the whole account of the wars in Gaul is a kind of epic on the theme of Roman *virtūs* and *clēmētia*, *manhood* and *fair-play*.

If, as many think, the *Commentarii* are propaganda, they wear the face of innocence for most readers. The man who wrote them had enviable gifts as a journalist. If our sympathies are slanted to Caesar's cause, the slanting is commendably subtle.

## THE ROMAN ARMY IN THE TIME OF CAESAR

The earliest fighters of Rome were citizen-warriors, who supplied their own arms and served without pay. By the time of the wars with Carthage they were well-drilled soldiers. In Caesar's day, the army was a body of highly trained professional soldiers, armed and paid by the state. "The great contributions of Rome to military science were organization, discipline, attention to details, farsighted preparation, the realization that battles could be won before they were fought." (E. S. McCartney, *Warfare by Land and Sea*)

**The Legionary Soldier.** In his campaigns, Caesar relied mainly upon his heavy infantry (*mīlitēs legiōnārii*), consisting of Roman citizens from 17 to 46 years old who had enlisted or had been drafted.

The Roman infantryman was close-cropped and clean-shaven. He wore a sleeveless woolen shirt or jersey (*tunica*) next to the skin; over this, a coat of leather with metallic bands across the breast, back, and shoulders (*lōrica*); and a metal-plated belt (*balteus*). In addition, he had a metal helmet (*galea*); sandals (*calcei*) or shoes (*caligae*); and in cold weather a military blanket (*sagum*). His legs were bare, but breeches (*brācae*) came into use during the campaigns in the north. He carried a straight two-edged sword (*gladius*) hanging at his right side from a strap over his left shoulder; a heavy javelin or pike (*pīlum*) six or seven feet long; and a rectangular shield (*scūtum*) covered with leather and having a metal knob in the center. The *scūtum* was about four feet high and two feet wide and curved about the body.

He also carried his personal pack (*sarcinae*) which contained a leather water bag, cooking utensils, his rations, and usually some trenching tools. This pack, together with his arms and armor, made a load of about 60 pounds.

**The Legion.** The largest unit of a Roman army was the legion. The soldiers of the legion (*mīlitēs legiōnārii*) were organized into centuries (*centuriae*), each with a theoretical strength of 100 men. Two centuries made a manipule (*manipulus*), three maniples a cohort (*cohors*), and ten cohorts a legion (*legiō*). A legion consisted in theory of 6,000 men; but during Caesar's campaigns in Gaul, the effective strength of a legion was probably not above 3,600 men.

	FULL STRENGTH	IN CAESAR'S ARMY
1 <i>centuria</i> ( <i>ōrdō</i> )	= 100 men ( <i>centum</i> )	60
2 <i>centuriae</i>	= <i>manipulus</i> = 200 men	120
3 <i>manipulī</i>	= <i>cohors</i> = 600 men	360
10 <i>cohortēs</i> = <i>legiō</i>	= 6,000 men	3,600

The legions were known by numbers; Caesar's favorite was the Tenth.

**Senior Officers.** In earlier days, one of the consuls acted as commander-in-chief (*imperātor*) of an army. Later, as the empire grew, the provincial governor, who was an ex-consul or an ex-praetor, served as commander-in-chief of the army of the province. As governor, Julius Caesar was in charge of an army.

The officer second in command was the quaestor, who looked after the food, pay, clothing, and arms of the troops. The legati or staff-officers served as a general staff and usually commanded the legions in battle. A legatus might be put in charge of a body of troops detached from the main force or of one of the winter camps.

Attached to each legion were six military tribunes (*tribūnī militum*). Many of Caesar's tribunes were brave and competent officers; some were young men of good family seeking military experience before entering politics. Though a tribune might command a legion on the march or have charge of smaller groups of men, he was usually assigned to routine duties.

**Centurions.** Each legion had sixty centurions, two in command of each maniple. The centurions began their career in the ranks, and won promotion for personal bravery and merit. In battle, they fought in the ranks along with the men, setting an example of steadiness and courage. There were several grades of centurions; a soldier could move up from the lowest grade until he became the first centurion of the first maniple of the first cohort.

**Other Troops.** Caesar's cavalry consisted mainly of foreigners—Gauls, Germans, and Spaniards. The cavalry were divided into *ālāe* (*wings*), subdivided into *turmae* (*troops*). Caesar used his cavalry chiefly for scouting, surprise attacks, skirmishing, and the pursuit of a retreating or fleeing enemy.

The auxiliary troops, supplied by allied or subject states, included lightly-armed men, slingers, and archers; these were useful for skirmishing and rapid movements, for they could move more quickly than the heavily armed legionary soldiers. Mounted patrols (*explōrātōrēs*) or single scouts, who might penetrate the enemy's lines, were used for reconnaissance.

**Standards.** The standard of the legion was a silver or gold eagle (*aquila*) mounted on a wooden staff. Care of the eagle was entrusted to the eagle-bearer (*aquilifer*). Loss of its eagle was the deepest disgrace a legion could suffer; more than once in Caesar's campaigns an eagle was carried or thrown into the ranks of the enemy in the expectation that the soldiers would fight their way through to save it.

Each cohort had its own ensign (*signum*). The signa varied in shape so that, in action, a soldier might more readily recognize the standard of his own unit.



**Baggage.** The heavy baggage of the legions, including provisions, tents, blankets, tools, and the parts of the artillery, was carried by pack animals. It has been estimated that it required more than five hundred animals to move the baggage of a single legion. To carry the baggage of an army made up of several legions through hostile country, especially if the ground was hilly, wooded, or swampy, was a difficult procedure; it is no wonder that the soldier nicknamed the baggage *impedimenta* (the hindrances).

**The March.** In spite of the length of its baggage train, a well-organized Roman army could move at great speed. The soldiers were up early and set off at sunrise. The day's march lasted for about seven hours, during which time the army covered a distance of fifteen to nineteen miles. Under stress, an army could make a forced march (*magnum iter*) of twenty-five miles in one day. It was always desirable to call a halt early in the afternoon to allow time for the fortification of a camp.

When marching through hostile territory, the army was protected by a vanguard (*agmen primum*) of cavalry, light infantry, and scouts, and by a rearguard (*agmen novissimum*).

Often there were rivers to cross. A ford, if available, was used; the Roman soldier could cross rather deep streams on foot. Under more difficult conditions the corps of engineers (*fabri*) went to work, building bridges of wood.

**The Camp.** It was the practice of a Roman army, when in hostile territory, never to halt for the night in the open. To secure protection against a possible attack, the army built a camp even when it intended to stop for one night only.

The best position for a camp was on a hill sloping gently toward the enemy, not too far from water and wood, and not too near a forest in which the enemy might gather his forces for an attack.

When the van of the army reached the site of the camp, it faced toward the enemy so as to protect the men at work. The engineering corps began to measure the ground and to stake out the camp. Some of the legions set to work on the fortifications of the camp, while others attended to various duties in it. It took four to five hours to complete the building of a camp.

The camp was a square or rectangle, with one gate on each of the four sides. Inside the camp, a series of streets on a regular pattern was laid out. Each army unit had its exact location. Near the middle was an open space in which stood the commander's tent.

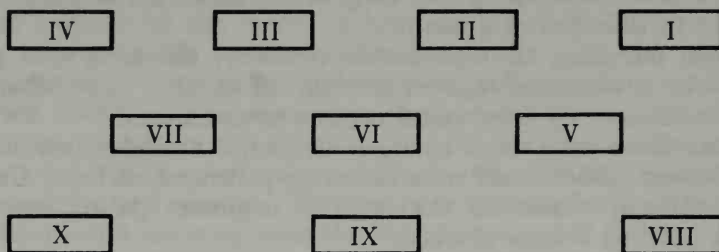
The camp had to be securely built. The main elements in the fortification were the trench (*fossa*) and the wall (*vallum*). The *fossa* was usually about nine feet wide and seven feet deep. Much of the material for the *vallum* came from the *fossa*. The outer slope of the *vallum* was quite steep; the inner slope was arranged



so that the soldiers could easily ascend it. The vallum was about six feet high, and was wide enough on top to allow the men to move about. On the outer edge was a row of palisades.

Roman commanders rarely conducted military operations during the winter season. When cold weather set in, the troops went into winter quarters (*castra hiberna*), where they were housed in huts of timber and earth.

**The Battle.** In battle, a legion was usually drawn up in three lines of cohorts (*triplex aciēs*). Four cohorts were placed in the front line, three in the second, and three in the third. Each cohort stood at a cohort's length from its neighbor. The cohorts of the second line covered the intervals between the cohorts of the first line. The exact position of the cohorts in the third line is uncertain. One possible arrangement of the ten cohorts is given below:



When several legions were engaged, they were drawn up side by side so as to form one long front.

It was important that the shock of the first charge should be as effective as possible. The first line was the strongest and was made up of the most experienced soldiers. Usually a battle began with skirmishing by the light infantry, who poured in showers of missiles, under cover of which the heavy infantry advanced. The first line was hurled against the foe. If the attacking troops failed to break the enemy or if they grew weary, they could fall back through the intervals, while the second line moved forward and came into action. If the battle continued, the procedure could be reversed: the second line would retire while the first would again come to grips with the foe. Meanwhile, the third line acted as a reserve: at the critical moment it joined in the deciding charge.

**Assault and Siege.** A modern fortress can quickly be rendered untenable by hostile aircraft and artillery. In ancient days, the advantage lay with the besieged fighting behind strong walls from which they could rain down showers of missiles upon the besiegers. Ancient artillery could not hurl projectiles of sufficient weight to breach solid walls. However, the Romans reached a high degree of skill in taking cities or strongholds without too great cost in the lives of their soldiers.

A small or poorly defended post might be stormed by a sudden assault. After the walls had been cleared by the missiles of archers and slingers, storming parties moved forward, filled the trenches with branches and earth, mounted the walls by scaling ladders (*scālae*), and swept into the post.

Often the attackers approached the walls in a "tortoise" formation (*testūdō*): with the first rank holding their shields in front, and the others locking their shields over their heads, the soldiers formed a protective screen against volleys of missiles.

An attacking general might resort to a blockade (*obsessiō*). By drawing a ring of troops or forts about the town, he could cut off all movement from or into the place until he starved the inhabitants into submission.

Often the attackers had to settle down to lengthy and more complicated operations, combining a blockade with a series of assaults. In order to be able to approach the enemy's walls and to carry on at close range, the Romans constructed a huge mound (*agger*) of earth and timber, beginning at some distance from the wall and gradually adding to the agger until its forward end neared the wall and its top was on a level with the enemy's battlements. The agger was made wide enough to allow a storming party to advance along it. While engaged in the work of construction the men were protected by sheds and shelters of various kinds (*testudinēs*).

On the agger itself, or on the ground, one or more "walking" towers (*turrēs ambulātōriæ*) were built, and these, by means of rollers or wheels, were pushed close to the walls. Artillery and light infantry placed in these towers discharged their missiles, driving the defenders from the walls. Battering rams (*arietēs*) were brought into action, the trench was filled, and preparations were made to storm the wall.

**Siege Machinery.** The principal engine used in attack was the battering ram (*ariēs*), a beam sixty to one hundred feet long, with a heavy iron end, frequently in the form of a ram's head. The ram was hung in a shed which was protected against fire by a wooden roof covered with hides. The beam was suspended about the center of its weight, and was swung against the wall by soldiers working it at the end farthest from the enemy.

The artillery (*tormenta*) was used chiefly in the assault and defense of fortified towns. The name tormenta (from *torquēre*, to twist) shows that "their construction was based upon the elasticity of torsion produced by twisted strands of gut or horsehair made taut by a windlass, which when released forced the discharge of the projectile." (*The Oxford Classical Dictionary*). There were various kinds of tormenta, each adapted to hurling a different type of missile—stones, pointed stakes, large pikes.

# 1. BRITAIN, GAUL, AND GERMANY

In his description of his military operations in Britain, Gaul, and Germany, Caesar includes short accounts of the geography and peoples of these countries.

These chapters are important because they are among the earliest descriptions we have of these regions.

## A. BRITAIN

### The Geography of Britain

Insula est nātūrā triquetra, cuius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Huius lateris alter angulus, quī est ad Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs appelluntur, ad orientem sōlem, inferior ad merīdiem spectat. Hoc latus pertinet 5 circiter mīlia passuum quīngenta. Alterum vergit ad Hispaniam atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia, dīmidiō minor, ut exīstimātur, quam Britannia, sed parī spatiō trānsmīssūs atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū est insula quae appellātur Mona; complūrēs 10 praetereā minōrēs subiectae insulae exīstimantur; dē quibus insulīs nōnnūllī scrīpsērunt diēs continuōs trīgintā sub brūmā esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus reperiēbāmus,



3-11 appelluntur: from "appellō, -ere"; *pul* in (of ships). alterum (latus): the second side. dīmidiō: abl. of measure of difference. ut: as. parī... atque: lit., of the same distance of crossing as; the distance across is the same as. in hōc mediō cursū: halfway across. subiectae (esse): to lie near. sub brūmā: at the time of the winter solstice. 12 dē eō: about this subject.

1-6 triquetrus: triangular  
oriēs sōl: the east meridiēs: the south  
vergō, -ere: slope; look toward  
occidēs sōl: the west

12 percontātiō, -ōnis: inquiry

nisi certis ex aqua mēnsuris breviorēs esse quam in continentī noctēs vidēbāmus. Huius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert illōrum opīniō, septingentōrum milium. Tertium est contrā septen- 15 triōnēs, cui partī nūlla est obiecta terra; sed eius angulus lateris maximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hoc milia passuum octingenta in longitūdinem esse exīstimātur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitū viciēs centum milium passuum.

### The Inhabitants and Resources of Britain

Britanniae pars interior ab eis incolitur quī nātī esse in 20 insulā dīcuntur, maritima pars ab eis quī praedae ac bellī inferendī causā ex Belgiō trānsierant, et bellō illātō ibi permānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum est infīnīta multitūdō crēberrimaque aedificia sunt similia ferē Gallicīs, pecorum magnus numerus. Ūtuntur aut nummō 25 aureō aut tāleīs ferreīs ad certum pondus exāminātīs prō nummō. Nāscitur ibi plumbum album in mediterrāneīs regiōnibus, in maritimīs ferrum, sed eius exigua est cōpia; aere ūtuntur importātō. Māteria cuiusque generis ut in Galliā est praeter fāgum atque abietem. Leporem et gallīnam 30 et ānserem gustāre fās nōn putant; haec tamen alunt animī voluptātisque causā. Loca sunt temperātiōra quam in Galliā, remissiōribus frīgōribus.

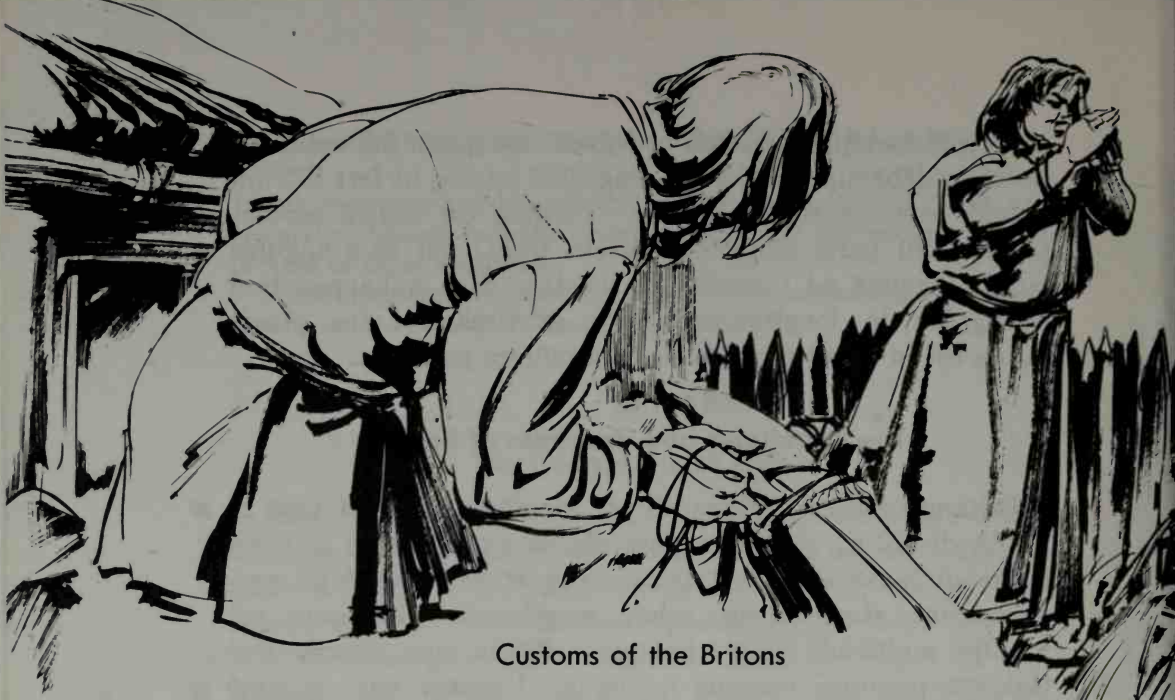
13-19 certis . . . mēnsuris: by exact measurements with the waterclock. The waterclock worked on the principle of the hourglass. ut . . . opīniō: as the natives think. septingentōrum milium: gen. of description; supply "passuum." viciēs: twenty times; Caesar overestimates the distance.

24-33 similia ferē: closely resembling. plumbum album: tin was used in the manufacture of bronze. The Phoenicians had, long before, exploited the tin mines of Cornwall. importātō: note the emphatic position; the bronze that they use is imported. cuiusque: from "quisque"; tr. every. animī . . . causā: for pastime and pleasure. loca: pl. of "locus"; the climate. remissiōribus frīgōribus: abl. abs.; as the cold is less severe.

15-16 septentriōnēs: the north

23-32 colō, -ere: till nummus: coin, money tālea: bar ferreus, adj.: of iron pondus: weight exāminō: weigh, test plumbum album: tin aes, aeris: bronze māteria: trees; timber fāgus: beech tree abiēs: fir tree lepus, leporis: hare gallīna: hen ānser, -eris: goose gustō: taste, eat fās, indecl.: right (by divine law) alō, alere: nourish, keep voluptās: pleasure, entertainment





Customs of the Britons

Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī quī Cantium in-  
 35 colunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, neque multum ā  
 Gallicā differunt cōnsuētūdine. Interiōrēs plērique frū-  
 menta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vīvunt pellibusque  
 sunt vestitī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō inficiunt, quod  
 caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc horridiōrēs sunt in pugnā  
 40 aspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō atque omnī parte corporis  
 rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius.

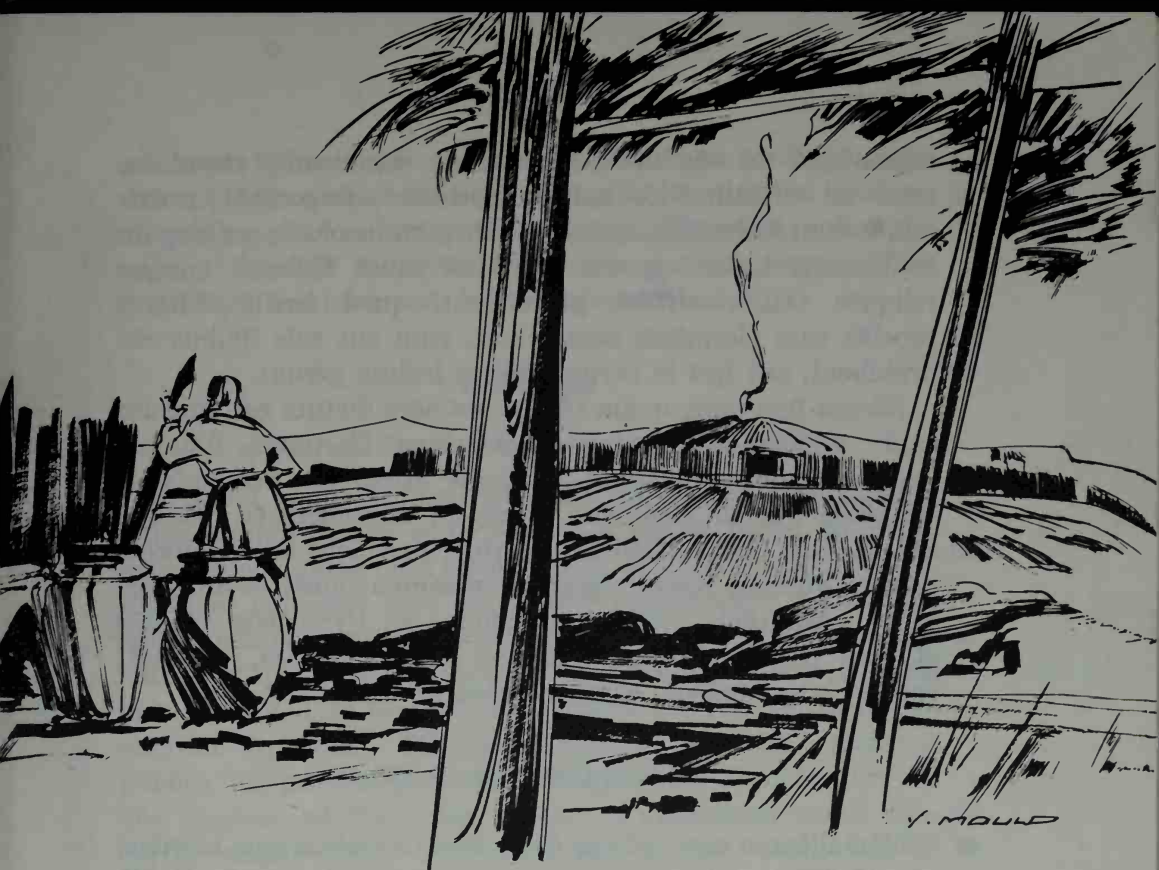
(*De Bello Gallico*, V, 12-14)

34-40 hūmānissimī: most highly civilized. quī: "eī quī." neque . . . cōnsuē-  
 tūdine: they differ but little from the Gallic manner of life. interiōrēs: adj. used as  
 noun; the inhabitants of the interior. vērō: emphasizes "omnēs"; without exception.  
 vitrō: with woad, a plant whose leaves yield an excellent blue dye. quod: rel.  
 pron. caeruleum: bluish; compare "caelum," sky. hōc: abl. of cause; tr. thus.  
 aspectū: abl. of respect. capillō prōmissō: abl. of description.

36-41 frūmenta, pl.: crops serō, -ere: sow lac, lactis: milk carō,  
 carnis: meat pellis, -is: skin, hide inficiō: dye capillus: hair prō-  
 mittō: let grow; prōmissus: long rādō: shave labrum: lip

### QUESTIONS

Draw an outline map of Britain as Caesar imagined it.  
 Mention some features of the civilization of the Britons,  
 e. g., people, customs, industries.



## B. GAUL

### The Geography and Peoples of Gaul

Gallia est omnis dīvisā in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam, quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna 45 flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit.

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte Prōvinciae longissimē absunt,

42-48 **Gallia . . . omnis:** note position of "omnis"; *Gaul as a whole.* Gaul is here used in the wide sense of the word, and corresponds to modern France, Belgium, and Switzerland. Later in the chapter Gaul is used in a narrower sense, being applied to a division of the whole. **quī:** "eī quī." **ipsōrum linguā:** *in their own language.* **nostrā:** supply "linguā." **dīvidit:** sing., as the two rivers form one boundary. **Prōvinciae:** the Roman province of Southern Gaul.

47 **proptereā quod:** because

minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant, atque ea,  
 50 quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent, important; proxi-  
 mīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum  
 continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque  
 reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs  
 proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs fīnibus eōs  
 55 prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt.

Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium  
 capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine,  
 Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et  
 Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae  
 60 ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiōrem  
 partem flūminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentriōnēs et orientem  
 sōlem. Aquītānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs montēs  
 et eam partem Ōceanī, quae est ad Hispāniam, pertinet;  
 spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.

### Political Conditions in Gaul

65 Nōn aliēnum esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus  
 et quō differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē prōpōnere. In Galliā  
 nōn solum in omnibus cīvitātibus atque in omnibus pāgīs  
 partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulīs domibus factiōnēs  
 sunt; eārumque factiōnum prīncipēs sunt quī summam auc-  
 70 tōritātem eōrum iūdictiō habēre exīstimantur, quōrum ad

49-55 **minimē saepe**: very seldom. **quae . . . pertinent**: which tend to weaken the character. **quā dē causā**: "quā" is a coordinating rel.; and for this reason. **fīnibus**: abl. of separation.

56-63 **eōrum ūna pars**: one division of them, the Gauls or Celts, the people being identified with the country. **ā flūmine**: at the river. **ab Sēquanīs**: on the side of the Sequani. **ad Hispāniam**: near Spain; the Bay of Biscay.

66-72 **quō**: abl. of respect. **eārumque . . . redeat**: the leaders of those parties are those (supply "ei") who . . . are considered to have the highest authority, so that ("quōrum ad arbitrium = ut ad eōrum arbitrium") to their decision . . . the final settlement . . . is referred.

49-54 **commeō, -āre**: visit      **praecēdō**: surpass      **contendō**: fight  
 65-66 **aliēnus**: inappropriate      **prōpōnō**: describe, set forth

arbitrium iudiciumque summa omnium rerum consiliorumque redeat. Idque eius rei causam antiquitus institutum videtur, ne quis ex plebe contra potentiores auxilium egeret; suos enim quisque opprimere et circumveniri non patitur, neque, aliter si faciat, ullam inter suos habeat auctoritatem.

75

## The Druids

### (a) The Three Classes of Gauls; the Power of the Druids

In omni Gallia eorum hominum qui aliquo sunt numero atque honore genera sunt duo; nam plebes paene servorum habetur loco, quae nihil audet per se, nulli adhibetur consilio. Plerique, cum aut aere alieno aut magnitudine tributorum aut iniuria potentiorum premuntur, sese in servitutem dicant 80 nobilibus; quibus in hos eadem omnia sunt iura quae dominis in servos. Sed de his duobus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. Illi rebus divinis intersunt, sacrificia publica ac privata procurant, religiones interpretantur: ad hos magnus adulescentium numerus disciplinae causam con- 85 currit, magnoque hi sunt apud eos honore. Nam ferre de omnibus controversiis publicis privatisque constituunt et, si quod est facinus admissum, si caedes facta, si de hereditate, de finibus controversia est, eidem decernunt, praemia poenaeque constituunt; si qui aut privatus aut populus eorum decreto 90 non stetit, sacrificiis interdicunt. Haec poena apud eos est

72-74 id: that practice. eius rei: explained by the cl. "ne . . . egeret." institutum (esse): to have become established. egeret: "egeō" is used with the gen. or abl. quisque: each chief. circumveniri: to be defrauded.

76-91 aliquo numero atque honore: abl. of description; of any account and distinction. plebes . . . loco: the common people are treated almost as slaves. aere alieno: the money of another, debt. quibus sunt in hos: who exercise over them. intersunt: take charge of. disciplinae causam: to be taught the secrets of their art. hi: the Druids. non stetit: does not abide by. (eos) sacrificiis (abl. of separation) interdicunt: translate using the passive, any individual or tribe refusing to abide by their decision is banned from taking part in public sacrifices.

71 summa (noun) consiliorum: the final decision

80-88 dico, -āre: bind interpretor, -āri: explain admittō: commit





gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hī numerō impiōrum  
 ac scelerātōrum habentur, hīs omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum  
 sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodī  
 95 accipiant, neque hīs petentibus iūs redditur neque honōs ūllus  
 commūnicātur. Hīs autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus,  
 quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hōc mortuō, aut,  
 sī quī ex reliquīs excellit dignitāte, succēdit, aut, sī sunt plūrēs  
 parēs, suffrāgiō druidum, nōnnumquam etiam armīs, dē  
 100 prīncipātū contendunt. Hī certō annī tempore in fīnibus  
 Carnutum, quae regiō tōtīus Galliae media habētur, cōnsidunt

92-101 quibus: dat. depending on "interdicō"; the antecedent is "hī." im-  
 piōrum ac scelerātōrum: *wicked criminals*. hīs omnēs dēcēdunt: *all men move*  
*out of their path*. incommodī: partitive gen. after "quid." petentibus: part. with  
 concessive force: *though they ask for it*. iūs: right of appeal. sī quī = "sī quis."  
 prīncipātū: the post of Chief Druid. media habētur: *is considered the center*.  
 considunt: *hold their meetings*.

94-95 contāgiō, -ōnis: contact honōs = honor

in locō cōsecrātō. Hūc omnēs undique quī contrōversiās habent conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētīs iūdicīisque pārent. Disciplīna in Britanniā reperta atque inde in Galliam trānslāta esse exīstimātur, et nunc quī dīligentius eam rem cognōscere 105 volunt plērumque illō discendī causā proficiūscuntur.

(b) *The Privileges of the Druids; their Education and Beliefs*

Druidēs ā bellō abesse cōnsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt. Tantīs excitātī praemiīs et suā sponte multī in disciplīnam conveniunt et ā parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versuum ēdiscere dīcuntur. 110 Itaque annōs nōnnūllī vīcēnōs in disciplīnā permanent. Neque fās esse exīstimant ea litterīs mandāre, cum in reliquīs ferē rēbus, pūblicīs prīvātisque ratiōnibus, Graecīs litterīs ūtantur.

Id mihi duābus dē causīs instituisse videntur, quod neque in vulgus disciplīnam efferri velint neque eōs quī discunt 115 litterīs cōnfīsōs minus memōriae studēre; quod ferē plērisque accidit ut praesidiō litterārum dīligentiam in perdiscendō ac memōriam remittant. In prīmīs hoc volunt persuādēre, nōn interīre animās, sed ab aliīs post mortem trānsīre ad aliōs, atque hōc maximē ad virtūtem excitārī putant, metū 120 mortis neglētō. Multa praetereā dē sīderibus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundi ac terrārum magnitūdine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortalīum vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

104-106 **disciplīna**: the whole Druidical system including both doctrine and training. **reperta** (esse): to have originated. **illō**: adv., for Britain.

107-113 **ā bellō abesse**: to be exempt from military service. **versuum**: lines containing the teachings of the Druids. **ea**: their teachings. **cum**: although. **Graecīs litterīs**: the Gallic language written in Greek characters. About 600 B.C., Greek settlers founded Massilia (now Marseilles) on the south coast of France. From Massilia knowledge of the Greek alphabet spread through Gaul.

115-122 **in vulgus efferri**: to become common property. **cōnfīsōs . . . studēre**: to trust . . . and to pay less attention to. **praesidiō litterārum**: if they rely on documents. **hoc** (acc.) **persuādēre**: to convince (men) of this. The inf. clauses which follow are in apposition to "hoc." **ab aliīs ad aliōs**: from one body to another, a common belief among the ancients and one still held by some Orientals. **hōc excitārī**: supply "hominēs"; that men are aroused by this belief. **metū . . . neglētō**: abl. abs.; tr. by a cl. **mundī . . . magnitūdine**: size of the universe and the world.

109-113 **propinquus**: relative **ēdiscō, -ere**: learn by heart **ratiō**: record, account

122 **mundus**: the universe **terrae, -arum**: the world

## The Knights

- 125 Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ferē ante Caesaris adventum quotannīs accidere solēbat, utī aut ipsī iniūriās inferrent aut illātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō versantur; atque eōrum ut quisque est genere cōpiisque amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum  
130 sē ambactōs clientēsque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiam potentiamque nōvērunt.

## Gallic Customs

### (a) Human Sacrifices

- Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōnibus, atque ob eam causam quī sunt affectī graviōribus morbīs quīque in proeliīs periculisque versantur aut prō victimīs ho-  
135 minēs immolant aut sē immolātūrōs vovent, administris ad ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur; quod, prō vitā hominis nisi hominis vitā reddātur, nōn posse deōrum immortalium nūmen plācārī arbitrantur; pūblicēque eiusdem generis habent īnstītūta sacrificia. Aliī immānī magnitūdine simulācra habent,

125-131 The knights were a military nobility; the Druids a priestly hierarchy. *cum*: whenever; note the mood. *quod*: lit. *which*; and *this*, explained by the clauses "utī . . . prōpulsārent"; "utī" = "ut." *inferrent*: offensive war. *prōpulsārent*: defensive war. *ut quisque . . . amplissimus, ita plūrimōs*: the more distinguished . . . the greater number. *genere cōpiisque*: in birth and resources. *hanc ūnam . . . nōvērunt*: "ūnam" emphatic; *this is the only . . . which they recognize*.

132-139 *omnis*: as a whole, in general. *dēdita religiōnibus*: superstitious. *quī*: supply "eī" as antecedent. *hominēs*: acc., object of "immolant" and "immolātūrōs (esse)." *administris*: in apposition with "druidibus," as attendants, as officiating priests. *pūblicē*: in the name of the state. *habent . . . īnstītūta* = "īnstituērunt."

125-130 *ūsus, -ūs*: need      *versor, -ārī*: engage in      *ambactus, -ī*: vassal  
*grātia*: sign of influence

132-139 *admodum, adv.*: remarkably      *morbis, -ī*: disease      *immolō, -āre*:  
sacrifice      *plācō, -āre*: appease      *immānis*: immense      *simulācrum*: figure

quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vīvīs hominibus com- 140  
 plent; quibus succēnsīs circumventī flammā exanimantur  
 hominēs. Supplicia eōrum quī in fūrtō aut in latrōciniō aut  
 in aliquā noxiā sint comprehēnsī grātiōra deīs immortālibus  
 esse arbitrantur; sed, cum eius generis cōpia dēficit, etiam ad  
 innocentium supplicia dēscendunt. 145

(b) *The Gallic Gods*

Deōrum maximē Mercurium colunt; huius sunt plūrima  
 simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt, hunc  
 viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecūniae  
 mercātūrāsque habēre vim maximam arbitrantur. Post hunc  
 Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam. Dē hīs eandem 150  
 ferē quam reliquae gentēs habent opīniōnem: Apollinem mor-  
 bōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum initia  
 trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtem bella  
 regere. Huic, cum proeliō dīmicāre cōstituērunt, ea quae  
 bellō cēperint plērumque dēvovent; cum superāvērunt, animā- 155  
 lia capta immolant, reliquās rēs in ūnum locum cōferunt.  
 Multīs in cīvitatibus hārum rērum exstrūctōs tumulōs locīs  
 cōnsecrātīs cōnspicārī licet. Neque saepe accidit ut neglēctā  
 quispiam religiōne aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita  
 tollere audēret; gravissimumque eī rei supplicium cum cruciātū 160  
 cōstitutum est.

140-145 **quōrum**: whose limbs, woven out of twigs, they fill . . . **quibus suc-  
 cēnsīs**: when these figures are set on fire. **cum** . . . **dēficit**: note the mood. **dēscen-  
 dunt**: they resort.

146-148 **maximē** . . . **colunt**: they reverence . . . most. **Mercurium**: Caesar gives  
 the names of Roman gods to the Gallic gods who resemble them. **hunc** . . .  
**ducem**: he points out the road ("viārum") and accompanies them on their journeys  
 ("itinerum").

154-160 **huic** = "Martī." **cum**: whenever; tr. "cōstituērunt" by English pres.  
**hārum** . . . **tumulōs**: heaps of such spoils . . . reared. **licet**: impersonal; one may.  
**neque saepe accidit ut** . . . **religiōne** . . . **audēret**: it has not often happened that . . .  
 has dared, in defiance of religious scruples. **capta**: spoils. **apud sē**: at home.  
**posita**: what has been consecrated, offerings. **eī rei**: for that offense.

140-145 **contextō**, supine **contextum**: weave **vīmen**: twig **membrum**:  
 limb **succendō**: set on fire **exanimō**: in pass., perish **latrōcinium**:  
 brigandage **noxia**: crime **dēscendō**: resort to

147-152 **ferō**: regard **quaestus**, -ūs: acquisition **mercātūra**: trade  
**artificia**, -ōrum: handicrafts

155-159 **dēvoveō**, -ēre: dedicate **quispiam** (indef. pron.): anyone **religiō**,  
 -ōnis: vow



(c) *Origin of the Gauls; their Treatment of Boys*

Gallī sē omnēs ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs praedicant idque ab druidibus prōditum dīcunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum sed noctium fīniunt; diēs nātālēs  
165 et mēnsium et annōrum initia sīc observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur. In reliquīs vītae īnstitūtīs hōc ferē ab reliquīs differunt, quod suōs liberōs, nisi cum adolēvērunt ut mūnus militiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adīre nōn patiuntur; filiumque puerilī aetāte in pūblicō in cōnspectū patris adsistere  
170 turpe dūcunt.

(d) *Dowries; Powers of the Head of the Family; Funeral Rites*

Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suīs bonīs, aestimātiōne factā, cum dōtibus commūnicant. Huius omnis pecūniae coniūctim ratiō habētur fructūsque servantur; uter eōrum vītā superāvit, ad eum pars  
175 utriusque cum fructibus superiōrum temporum pervenit. Virī in uxōrēs, sicut in liberōs, vītae necisque habent potestātem; et cum pater familiae illustriōre locō nātus dēcessit, eius

162-170 Dīte: Dis (Pluto) was the god of darkness or of the Underworld. The Gauls believed that they sprang from the soil, the world below them. ob eam causam: as they were the children of the god of darkness. diēs nātālēs: birth days; connect "nātālis" with "nāscor." nōn numerō . . . fīniunt: compare English "fortnight" (fourteen nights). sīc . . . ut: on the principle that. hōc: abl. of respect. ferē: generally speaking. suōs liberōs: etc.: contrast the Roman attitude. nisi: except. mūnus . . . sustinēre: perform military service. puerilī aetate: abl. of description. turpe (esse): the cl. "filium . . . adsistere" is the subject of "esse"; "turpe" is a pred. adj.

171-177 dōtis nōmine: as dowry. aestimātiōne factā: after making due reckoning. cum dōtibus commūnicant: add to the dowries. ratiō habētur: an account is kept. vītā superāvit: survives; "vītā" is abl. of respect. pars utriusque: the contribution of each, the joint shares. illustriōre locō nātus: of high birth.

162-168 prōgnātus: descended      adolēscō, -ere, adolēvī: grow up      mūnus, -eris: duty, service      palam, adv.: in public  
171-177 pecūniae, pl.: property      dōs, dōtis: dowry      ratiō: account  
fructus, -ūs: income      dēcēdō: die

propinquī conveniunt et dē morte, sī rēs in suspiciōnem vēnit, dē uxōribus in servilem modum quaestiōnem habent, et sī compertum est, ignī atque omnibus tormentīs exercuciātās 180 interficiunt. Fūnera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum magnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vīvīs cordī fuisse arbitrantur in ignem īferunt, etiam animālia; ac paulō suprà hanc memoriam servī et clientēs, quōs ab eīs dīlētōs esse cōstābat, iūstīs fūnebribus cōfectīs, ūnā cremābantur. 185

(e) Powers of the Magistrates

Quae cīvitātēs commodius suam rem pūblicam administrāre exīstimantur habent lēgibus sānctum, sī quis quid dē rē pūblicā ā fīnitimīs rūmōre ac fāmā accēperit, utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō communicet; quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque imperītōs falsīs rūmōribus terrērī 190 et ad facinus impellī et dē summīs rēbus cōnsilium capere cognitum est. Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt occultant, quaeque esse ex ūsū iūdicāverunt multitudinī prōdunt. Dē rē pūblicā nisi per concilium loquī nōn concēditur.

(De Bello Gallico, I, 1; VI, 11-20)

179-184 in servilem modum: as is done with slaves, i.e., by torture. sī compertum est: if proof is found, if their guilt is proved. prō cultū Gallōrum: considering the Gallic standard of living. vīvīs cordī fuisse: were dear to them when alive; "cordī," dat. of purpose. suprà hanc memoriam: before our time. iūstīs: regular.

186-194 quae cīvitātēs = "eae cīvitātēs quae." lēgibus sānctum: established by law, completed by the "utī"-clause; "utī = ut." quō: indef. anyone. communicet: share. quae vīsa sunt: supply "occultanda"; they have thought fit to conceal. esse ex ūsū: to be of advantage. per concilium: in the public assembly. nōn concēditur: impers.; one is not allowed.

182-185 cor, cordis: heart; cordī esse: to be dear diligō, -ere: love  
fūnebria, -ium: funeral rites cremō, -āre: burn

186-190 commodius: more efficiently, best temerārius: rash



Lullingstone Roman Villa, Eynsford, Kent. Mosaic floor of the fourth century A.D. Bellerophon on Pegasus, the Winged Horse.

### QUESTIONS

What were the three divisions of Gaul, and the names of the peoples who inhabited them?

Write a note on the Druids: their duties, privileges, powers, education and beliefs.

Who were the Knights? What function did they perform?

Discuss the customs of the Gauls under these headings:

- (a) their deities, (b) human sacrifices, (c) funeral rites, (d) administration of justice, (e) dowries.

## C. GERMANY

### Religious Customs; Mode of Life

Germānī multum ab hāc cōnsuētūdine differunt. Nam 195  
neque druidēs habent quī rēbus dīvinīs praesint neque sacri-  
ficiīs student. Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt quōs cernunt  
et quōrum apertē opibus iuvantur, Sōlem et Vulcānum et  
Lūnam; reliquōs nē fāmā quidem accēpērunt. Vīta omnis in  
vēnātiōnibus atque in studiīs reī mīlitāris cōsistit; ā parvīs 200  
labōrī ac dūritiae student.

### Ownership of Land

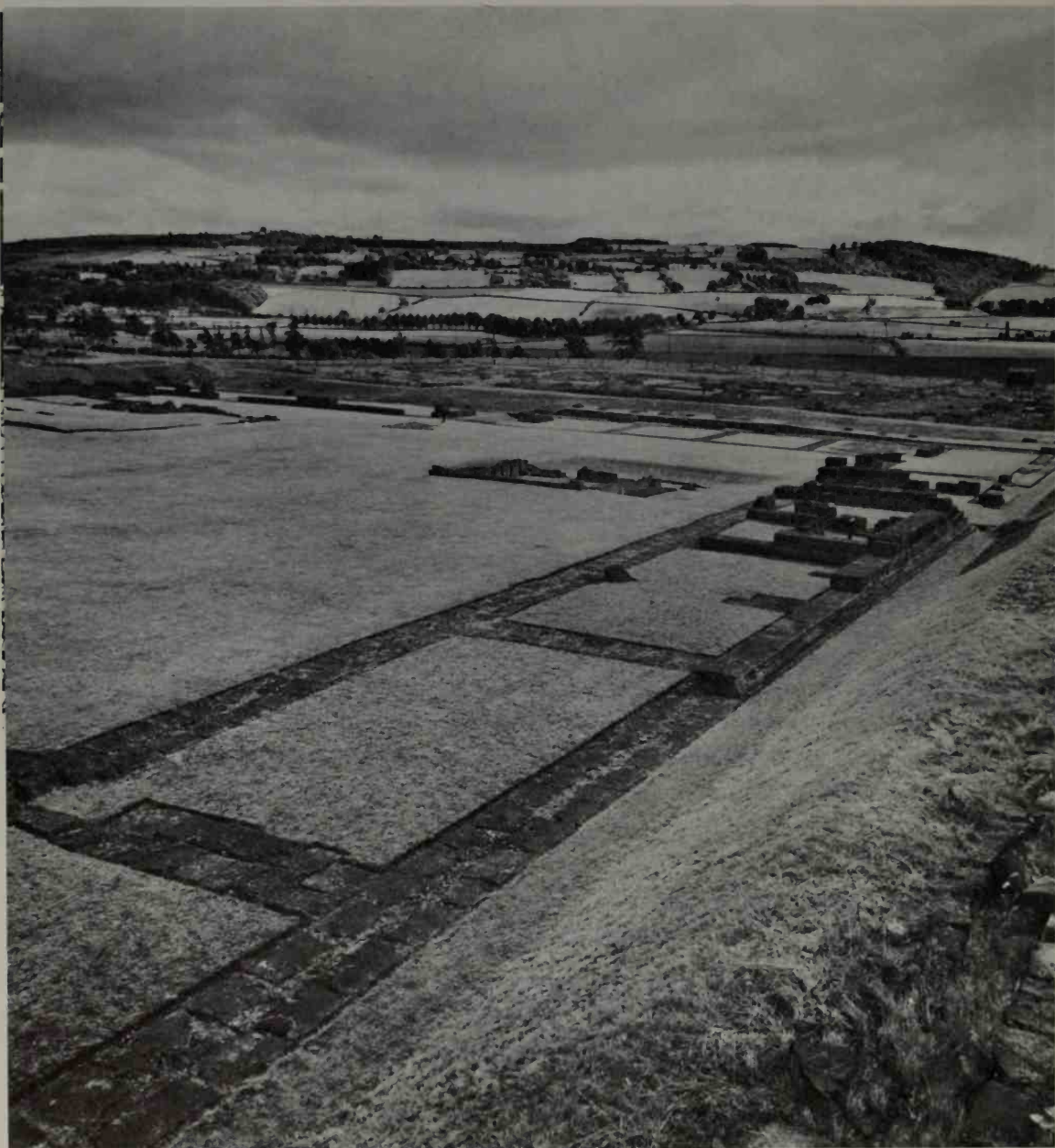
Agrī cultūrae nōn student, maiorque pars eōrum vīctūs  
in lacte, cāseō, carne cōsistit. Neque quisquam agrī modum  
certum aut finēs habet propriōs; sed magistrātūs ac principēs 205  
in annōs singulōs gentibus cognātiōnibusque hominum, quan-  
tum et quō locō vīsum est agrī attribuunt atque annō post  
aliō trānsīre cōgunt. Eius reī multās afferunt causās: nē  
assiduā cōnsuētūdine captī studium bellī gerendī agrī cultūrā  
commūtent; nē lātōs finēs parāre studeant, potentiōrēsque  
humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant; nē accūrātius ad frīgora 210  
atque aestūs vītandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae

196-200 praesint: subj. in a rel. cl. of purpose. deōrum numerō dūcunt: they reckon among the gods. fāmā: abl. of means, "fāmā accēpērunt": they have heard of. cōsistit: is spent.

205-211 in annōs singulōs: annually. quantum vīsum est agrī: as much land as they think best. annō: abl. of measure of difference; "annō post": a year later. assiduā cōnsuētūdine: by long association. agrī cultūrā: abl. of the thing received in exchange; English says "for an agricultural life." parāre: acquire. accūrātius: too carefully. qua: indef. adj.

197-201 studeō: pay attention to, indulge in opēs, opum: power, influence  
vēnātiō, -ōnis: hunting dūritia: hardship  
202-211 cultūra: cultivation victus, -ūs: food cāseus, -ī: cheese pro-  
prius: one's own cognātiō, -ōnis: kinsman aliō, adv.: elsewhere aestus,  
-ūs: heat





Corbridge Roman site (*Corstopitum*), Northumberland.  
Site of the great storehouse which existed here during the Roman occupation.

cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animī aequitāte plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī videat.

### Tribal Isolation; Military Leaders; Administration of Justice

Cīvitātibus maxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē, 215 vāstātis finibus, sōlitūdinēs habēre. Hoc proprium virtūtis exīstimant, expulsōs agrīs finitimōs cēdere, neque quemquam prope sē audēre cōsistere: simul hōc sē fore tūtiōrēs arbitrantur, repentīnae incursiōnis timōre sublātō. Cum bellum cīvitās aut illātum dēfendit aut infert, magistrātūs quī eī 220 bellō praesint, et vītae necisque habeant potestātem, dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed prīncipēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs dīcunt contrōversiāsque minuunt.

### Raiding Expeditions; Hospitality

Latrōcinia nūllam habent infāmiam quae extrā finēs cuiusque 225 cīvitātis fiunt, atque ea iuventūtis exercendae ac dēsidiāe minuendae causā fierī praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex prīncipibus in conciliō dīxit sē ducem fore, cōnsurgunt eī quī et causam et hominem probant suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque ā

213-214 animī aequitāte: in a contented state of mind. cum potentissimīs: contracted form of comparison, as often in Latin, for "cum opibus potentissimōrum."

216-223 finibus: an area adjacent to its frontiers. hoc: explained by the two following clauses, "cēdere . . . audēre." proprium virtūtis: a proof of valor. agrīs cēdere: to retire from their lands. prope cōsistere: to settle nearby. illātum . . . infert: wages a defensive or offensive war. praesint: subj. in rel. cl. of purpose. iūs dicunt: administer justice.

225 latrōcinia: acts of brigandage; antecedent of "quae." nūllam . . . infāmiam: involve no disgrace.

215-224 laus, laudis: pride, distinction      commūnis: central      iūs dīcere: to pass judgment      minuō, -ere: lessen; settle

226 dēsidia: idleness

230 multitūdine collaudantur; quī ex hīs secūtī nōn sunt, in  
dēsertōrum ac prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur omniumque hīs  
rērum posteā fidēs dērogātur. Hospitem violāre fās nōn  
putant; quī quācumque dē causā ad eōs vērunt ab iniūriā  
prohibent sāctōsque habent; hīsque omnium domūs patent  
235 vīctusque commūnicātur.

### The Gauls and Germans Compared

Ac fuit antea tempus cum Germānōs Gallī virtūte superārent,  
ultrō bella inferrent, propter hominum multitūdinem agrīque  
inopiam trāns Rhēnum colōniās mitterent. Itaque ea quae  
fertilissima Germāniae sunt loca, circum Hercyniam silvam  
240 (quam Eratosthenī et quibusdam Graecīs fāmā nōtam esse  
videō, quam illī Orcyniam appellant), Volcae Tectosagēs  
occupāverunt atque ibi cōsēderunt. Quae gēns ad hoc tempus  
hīs sēdibus sēsē continet summamque habet iūstitiae et bellicae  
laudis opīniōnem. Nunc, quod in eādem inopiā, egestāte, pa-  
245 tientiā quā ante Germānī permanent, eōdem vīctū et cultū  
corporis ūtuntur. Gallīs autem prōvinciārum propinquitās et  
trānsmarinārum rērum nōtitia multa ad cōpiam atque ūsūs  
largītur; paulatim assuēfactī superārī multisque victī proeliīs  
nē sē quidem ipsī cum illīs virtūte comparant.

230-234 *quī ex hīs: the volunteers who. secūtī nōn sunt: i.e., after having once volunteered. quī: supply "eōs" as antecedent. ab iniūriā prohibent: they protect against wrongdoing. hīs patent: are thrown open to them.*

239-249 *Hercyniam silvam: the Hercynian forest extended from the Black Forest to the Carpathian Mountains, and so included all the hill country of Southern Germany. "Eratosthenēs, -is," was a Greek geographer, born 272 B.C. quibusdam: some other. ad hoc tempus: Caesar is writing in 53 B.C. summam opīniōnem: the highest reputation. cultū corporis: clothing; some translate physical training. Gallīs: indirect object. autem: whereas; the general sense is: as the Germans have remained hardy while the Gauls have become effeminate, the Gauls have become inferior. prōvinciārum: the Roman provinces of Cisalpine Gaul (in northern Italy) and of Transalpine Gaul or Narbonensis (in southern Gaul). trānsmarinārum rērum: luxuries from across the sea, imported probably through the port of Massilia. multa . . . largītur: supply (the Gauls) with many articles for a number of different uses. ipsī: the Gauls. illīs: the Germans.*

232 *fidēs, -eī: confidence dērogō, -āre: deny; take away*

237-248 *ultrō: actually egestās, -tātis: privation patientia: hardship nōtitia: knowledge largior, -iri: supply, furnish*

## The Hercynian Forest

### (a) Extent; Animals

Huius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprā dēmōnstrāta est, 250  
lātitudō novem diērum iter expeditō patet; nōn enim aliter  
finīrī potest, neque mēnsūrās itinerum nōvērunt. Oritur ab  
Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et Rauracōrum fīnibus rēctāque flū-  
minis Dānuviī regiōne pertinet ad finēs Dācōrum et Anartium:  
hinc sē flectit sinistrōrsus dīversīs ā flūmine regiōnibus multā- 255  
rumque gentium finēs propter magnitudinem attingit; neque  
quisquam est huius Germāniae quī sē aut adīsse ad initium  
eius silvae dīcat, cum diērum iter sexāgintā prōcesserit, aut  
quō ex locō oriātur accēperit; multaque in eā genera ferārum  
nāscī cōstat quae reliquīs in locīs vīsa nōn sint; ex quibus 260  
quae maximē differant ā cēterīs et memoriae prōdenda vide-  
antur haec sunt.

### (b) The Reindeer

Est bōs cervī figurā, cuius ā mediā fronte inter aurēs ūnum  
cornū existit excelsius magisque dērēctum eīs quae nōbīs  
nōta sunt cornibus. Ab eius summō sicut palmae rāmīque 265  
lātē diffunduntur. Eadem est fēminae marisque nātūra, eadem  
forma magnitudōque cornuum.

251-261 lātitudō: from north to south. iter: acc. of extent of space, modified by gen. of description "novem diērum." expeditō: dat., for an unencumbered traveler. nōn aliter finīrī potest: in no other way can it (the width) be determined. nōn . . . nōvērunt: the Germans who live there have no exact system of measuring distances. rēctā regiōne: in a course parallel to the River Danube. dīversīs . . . regiōnibus: turning away from the river. huius Germāniae: the western part of Germany, with which alone Caesar was acquainted. quī dīcat: who can say. initium: the eastern end. cum: although. multa . . . nāscī: the inf. cl. is subject of "cōstat." memoriāe prōdenda: worthy of record.

263-266 bōs cervī figurā: an ox like a stag; the name "bōs" was applied by the Romans to any large animal. magis dērēctum: more upright, straighter. sicut . . . diffunduntur: palms (of the hands) and branches, as it were, spread out wide; branches spread out wide just like open hands. nātūra: characteristics.

251-260 pateō: extend, stretch      sinistrōrsus, adv.: to the left      cōstat: it is agreed

264-266 excelsus: high      dērēctus: straight      mās, maris: male



(c) The Elk

Sunt item quae appellantur alcēs. Hārum est cōnsimilis caprīs figurā et varietās pellium; sed magnitudīne paulō  
270 antecēdunt mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crūra sine nōdīs articulisque habent; neque quiētis causā prōcumbunt neque, sī quō afflictāe cāsū conciderunt, ērigere sēsē ac sublevāre possunt. Hīs sunt arborēs prō cubilibus; ad eas sē applicant atque ita paulum modo reclīnatae quiētem capiunt. Quārum  
275 ex vēstigiīs cum est animadversum ā vēmātōribus quō sē recipere cōsuērīnt, omnēs eō locō aut ab rādīcibus subruunt aut accīdunt arborēs, tantum ut summa speciēs eārum stantium relīnquātur. Hūc cum sē cōsuētūdīne reclīnāvērunt, infirmās arborēs pondere affligunt atque ūnā ipsae concidunt.

(d) The Wild Ox

280 Tertium est genus eōrum quī ūrī appellantur. Hī sunt magnitudīne paulō infīrā elephantōs, speciē et colōre et figurā taurī. Magna vīs eōrum est et magna vēlōcītās, neque hominī neque ferae quam cōspēxērunt parcent. Hōs studiōsē foveīs captōs interficiunt; hōc sē labōre dūrant adulēscentēs atque  
285 hōc genere vēmātīōnis exercent, et quī plūrimōs ex hīs interfēcērunt, relātīs in pūblicum cornibus quae sint testimōniō,

269-279 *varietās pellium*: *dappled skins*. *mutilae sunt cornibus*: *abl. of respect; they have blunt horns*. *quō*: *abl. of indef. adj.* *afflictāe*: *from "affligō"; knocked down*. *prō cubilibus*: *as resting places*. *cum . . . vēmātōribus*: *whenever hunters observe*. *quō . . . cōsuērīnt*: *their usual place of retreat*. *ab rādīcibus subruunt*: *undermine about the roots*. *tantum ut . . . relīnquātur*: *lit. so far that the perfect ("summa") appearance of them standing is left; so that to all appearances they are standing firmly*. *hūc*: *against them*. *cōsuētūdīne*: *as their custom is*. *ūnā*: *along with the trees*.

280-286 *est eōrum*: *consists of those*. *speciē, colōre, figurā*: *abl. of description completed by the gen. "taurī" instead of the more usual adj. in the abl.* *hōs captōs interficiunt*: *these (the Germans) catch and kill*. *relātīs . . . cornibus*; *tr. by a principal cl., bring the horns with them to a public place*. *quae . . . testimōniō*: *to serve as evidence*.

268-278 *alcēs, alcis*: *elk*      *capra*: *goat*      *crūs, crūris*: *leg*      *nōdus, -ī*: *knot*  
*articulus*: *joint*      *sē applicāre*: *to lean*      *modo, adv.*: *even*      *subruō, -ruere*:  
*undermine*      *reclīnō, -āre*: *lean*

280-283 *ūrus, -ī*: *wild ox*      *fera*: *wild beast*      *studiōsē*: *eagerly*      *fovea*:  
*pitfall*

magnam ferunt laudem. Sed assuēscere ad hominēs et mānsuē-  
fieri nē parvulī quidem exceptī possunt. Amplitūdō cornuum  
et figūra et speciēs multum ā nostrōrum boum cornibus  
differt. Haec studiōsē conquīsita ab labrīs argentō circum- 290  
clūdunt atque in amplissimīs epulīs prō pōculīs ūtuntur.

(*De Bello Gallico*, VI, 21-28)

288-290 nē . . . exceptī: not even if very young when caught. ab labrīs: at the rim.

287-291 assuēscō, -ere: become accustomed mānsuēfaciō, -ere: tame  
conquīrō, -ere: acquire circumclūdō, -ere: encircle pōculum: cup

### QUESTIONS

What difference in religious customs existed between the  
Gauls and the Germans?

What was peculiar about the German ownership of land?

In what important way were the Germans said to be  
superior to the Gauls? Why?

Describe three animals of the Hercynian Forest.

## 2. THE WAR WITH THE HELVETIANS

The Roman province of Narbonensis (often called *Prōvincia*, the *Province*) lay in southern Gaul between Aquitania and Cisalpine Gaul. North of the Province lived the Celts; east of them, across the Rhine, were the Germans.

In what is now Switzerland lived the Helvetians, who, thinking that their territories were too narrow, decided to emigrate and seek new homes in the fertile lands of the Santones in western Gaul. After spending two years in making their preparations, they burned their villages and fixed March 28, 58 B.C. as the day on which all were to assemble at the bank of the Rhone.

In 58 B.C. Julius Caesar was governor of the Roman provinces of Illyricum, Cisalpine Gaul and Narbonensis. When he learned that the Helvetians planned to march through the Province, Caesar, who was in the capital, left Rome and hurried north, collecting troops as he went. The Helvetians, when refused permission to pass through the Province, tried in vain to break through a Roman line of entrenchment. One other route lay open, through the country of the Sequani.

Caesarī renūntiātur Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum  
 Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs facere,  
 quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt, quae cīvītās est in  
 295 prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat magnō cum periculō prō-  
 vinciae futūrum, ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimī-  
 cōs, locīs patentibus maximēque frūmentāriīs fīnitimōs habēret.  
 Ob eās causās eī mūnitiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum  
 300 praeficit; ipse in Italiam magnīs itineribus contendit, duāsque  
 ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit, et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemā-  
 bant, ex hībernīs ēdūcit et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem  
 Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus ire  
 contendit.

### Three Gallic States Appeal to Caesar against the Helvetians

Helvētīi iam per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās  
 305 trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant eōrumque

292-295 **renūntiātur**: word was brought back by spies; historical present used of a past action. **Helvētiīs**: dat. of the possessor, used in the pred. with "esse in animō," that the Helvetians intended. **Santonum**: located on the west coast of Gaul. **Tolōsātium**: Tolosa, the chief town of the Tolosates, is represented by the modern city of Toulouse. **quae cīvītās**: a state which; the antecedent is incorporated in the rel. cl. **id sī fieret**: subordinate cl. in ind. disc.; in direct disc., "hoc sī fiet."

296-300 **futūrum**: supply "esse." **ut...habēret**: noun cl. introduced by "ut," subject of "futūrum." *It would be to the great peril of the Province that it should have; it would be very dangerous for the Province to have.* **locīs...habēret**: to have warlike men as neighbors to a district which was unprotected and rich in grain. Caesar gives as a further reason for not wanting the Helvetians to settle in Gaul the fear that the lands vacated by the Helvetians might be occupied by Germans, who would prove undesirable neighbors. **mūnitiōnī**: dat. with "praeficit." **lēgātum**: staff-officer. **Italiam**: Cisalpine Gaul. **magnīs itineribus**: by rapid stages. **cōnscrībit**: Caesar had four legions at first, and raised two additional legions. Thus, he had perhaps 21,600 heavy-armed men along with some light-armed auxiliary forces. The number of the Helvetians and their allies capable of bearing arms was 92,000. **Aquilēiam**: at the head of the Adriatic Sea.

301-305 **quā**: adv.; where. **iam**: by this time. The Helvetians probably started about the latter part of June. The long train of more than 8000 carts moved slowly. **angustiās**: The valley of the Rhone between Switzerland and France for a distance of about seventeen miles is a steep, narrow gorge.

296-300 **pateō**: lie open, extend

agrōs populābantur. Haeduī cum sē suaque ab eīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium. Eōdem tempore Ambarrī, necessāriī et cōnsanguineī Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē, dēpopulātīs agrīs, nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, 310 quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt, et dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit, dum, omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōn-sūmptīs, in Santonēs Helvētiī pervenīrent. 315

### Caesar Attacks the Divided Forces of the Helvetians and Defeats the Rearguard

Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs in utram partem fluat iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus iūctīs trānsībant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est iam trēs partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen 320

306-310 cum possent: causal. rogātum: acc. of the supine, used after "mittunt," a verb of motion, to express purpose; auxilium: object of the supine. dēpopulātīs: perf. part. of a dep. verb used with pass. meaning, *their lands having been laid waste*; tr. *since their lands had been laid waste*. Allobrogēs: part of this tribe lived on the route of the Helvetians.

311-315 sibi: dat. of the possessor. solum: noun, *soil*; compare n. adj. "solum." reliquī: partitive gen. after "nihil"; *they had nothing left*. quibus rēbus: *these complaints, these events*; "quibus" is a coordinating rel. dum pervenīrent: *until they should arrive*; subj. with "dum" because the cl. denotes a possibility contemplated by Caesar, which he resolved to prevent.

316-320 Arar: the modern Saone. in utram partem: *in which direction*. in . . . fluat: indirect question, subject of "iūdicārī possit." iūctīs: with "lintribus." trēs partēs: *three-quarters*. Helvētiōs: subject of "trādūxisse."

306-310 populor, -ārī: lay waste, ravage      necessārius: close friend      cōn-sanguineus: kinsman

316-320 lēnitās, -tātis: slowness      ratis, -is: raft      linter, -tris: small boat



trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impeditōs et inopināntēs aggressus magnam partem eōrum  
**325** concīdit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvītās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exisset, patrum nostrōrum memoriā L. Cassium cōsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum  
**330** mīserat. Ita sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum immortalīum, quae pars cīvītātis Helvētiae īnsignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit.

### Caesar Bridges the Arar; the Helvetians Send a Deputation

Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōsequī posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum  
**335** trādūcit. Helvētiī repentinō eius adventū commōtī, cum id,

**321-325** citrā: on the east or Caesar's side. dē tertiā vigiliā: here "dē" means just after the beginning of; the time would be just after midnight. impeditōs: while their movements were hampered. mandārunt = "mandāvērunt." in silvās: the acc. is used because motion is implied; they ran into the woods and hid there.

**326-330** dīvīsa est: is divided; the perf. is used of a present state resulting from a previously completed action. exisset = "exiisset." memoriā: abl. of time within which. sub iugum mittere: to send under the yoke. The yoke was a symbol of humiliation and defeat; it consisted of two upright spears supporting a third, under which the defeated enemy were led.

**331-335** quae pars: the antecedent "pars" is attracted into the rel. cl., which then precedes the principal cl. In translating, say "ea pars quae." populō: dat. with the compound verb "intulerat." prīnceps poenās persolvit: was the first to pay the penalty. pontem faciendum cūrat: he arranged for a bridge to be built, he had a bridge built; the gerundive is used in agreement with the direct object of "cūrō." in Ararī: over the Arar. cum . . . intellegent: construe, "cum intellegent illum ūnō diē fēcisse id quod ipsī. . ." ut flūmen trānsirent: noun cl. explanatory of "id"; he had done that, (namely) crossed the river.

**321-325** inopināns, -antis: unaware, off guard concīdō, -ere, -cidī: kill

**326-330** pāgus: canton sive . . . sive: whether . . . or

**331-335** īnsignis: remarkable, signal persolvō: pay (in full)

quod ipsī diēbus vīgintī aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cuius lēgātīōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cas-siānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat.

Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum 340 Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs ubi eōs Caesar cōstituisset atque esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminiscerētur et veteris in-commodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum eī quī flūmen 345 trānsīssent suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret; sē ita ā patribus maiōribusque suīs didicisse ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut īnsidiīs nīterentur. Quārē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōstitissent ex calamitāte populī 350 Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memori-am prōderet.

336-340 **sī pācem**: many passages in this selection are in ind. disc. As English meaning is often obscure in long passages of ind. disc., it is better to translate into direct discourse.

341-345 **Helvētiōs**: subject of inf. "itūrōs (esse)" and "futūrōs (esse)"; in direct discourse "ibunt atque erunt Helvētiī." **eōs**: subject of "esse." **cōstituisset, voluisset**: in direct discourse, "ubi tū cōstitueris atque volueris." **sīn . . . persevērāret**: in direct discourse, "sīn . . . persevērābis," but if you continue to harass them in war. **bellō**: abl. of means. **reminiscerētur**: the subj. represents the imperative of the direct, "reminiscere." **incommodī**: gen. with "reminiscerētur." **quod adortus esset**: in direct discourse, "quod (as to the fact that) adortus es."

346-352 **nē . . . dēspiceret**: in direct discourse, "nōlī ob eam rem aut tuae magnopere virtūtī tribuere (do not rate your own valor highly) aut nōs dēspicere." **didicisse**: from "discō." **magis quam**: rather than. **dolō, īnsidiīs**: abls. of means, with "nitor," rely upon. **quārē . . . prōderet**: in direct discourse, "Quārē nōlī committere ut (do not be guilty of causing) hic locus ubi cōstitimus (we have taken our stand) ex calamitāte . . . nōmen capiat aut memoriā prōdat (to become famed and remembered)."

341-345 **reminiscor, -ī**: remember      **prīstinus**: former, ancient

346-352 **maiōrēs**: ancestors      **dolus**: craft, guile      **quārē**: therefore      **in-terneciō, -ōnis**: massacre

## Caesar Protests but Offers Terms; the Helvetians Haughtily Reject his Offer

Hīs Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis dari, quod eās rēs, quās lēgātī Helvētīī commemorāssent, memoriā  
 355 tenēret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblivīscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriarum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam insolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē  
 360 impūne iniūriās tulisse admīrārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ab eīs sibi  
 365 dentur, utī ea quae polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et sī

353-355 eō . . . tenēret: in direct discourse, "Eō mihi minus dubitātiōnis datur quod (*I feel the less hesitation because*) eās rēs (*the defeat of Cassius*) quās vōs commemorāvistis memoriā teneō." eō: abl. of cause, explained by the cl. "quod . . . tenēret." commemorāssent = "commemorāvissent." Quod . . . posse?: in direct discourse, "Quod sī (*but if*) veteris contumēliae (gen. with "oblivīscī") oblivīscī velim (fut. less vivid condition), num . . . iniūriarum, quod mē invītō iter . . . temptāvistis (*the fact that you tried to force a passage*), quod Haeduōs . . . vexāvistis, memoriam dēpōnere possum?" "num . . . possum" in direct discourse is a rhetorical question, asked merely for effect; as it is equivalent to a statement, the vb. becomes an inf. in ind. disc.

356-360 Quod . . . pertinēre: in direct discourse, "Quod (*the fact that*) vestrā victōriā (abl. of cause) . . . glōriāminī, quodque . . . vōs impūne (*without being punished*) iniūriās tulisse admīrāminī, eōdem pertinent (*tend to the same result*)." The two "quod" clauses are subjects of "pertinent." Cōnsuēsse (= "cōnsuēvisse") . . . concēdere: in direct discourse, "cōnsuēvērunt enim deī immortālēs, quō (introducing purpose cl.) gravius hominēs . . . doleant, quōs . . . ulcīscī volunt, hīs . . . diūturniōrem (*quite long*) impūnitātem concēdere."

361-365 cum: *although*. sī . . . factūrum: in direct discourse, "sī obsidēs ā vōbīs mihi dabuntur, utī (= "ut") ea quae pollicēminī vōs factūrōs (esse) intellegam, et sī Haeduīs dē iniūriīs quās Haeduīs . . . intulistis . . . satisfaciētis, vōbīscum pācem faciam."

353-355 contumēlia: insult      oblivīscor, -ī: forget

356-360 vexō: harass, plunder      admīror, -ārī: wonder at

361-365 doleō: suffer      ulcīscor, -ī: punish      secundiōrēs rēs: greater prosperity      interdum: sometimes

Haeduīs dē iniūriīs quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum eīs pācem esse factūrum. Dīvicō respondit: Ita Helvētiōs ā maiōribus suīs īnstitūtōs esse utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint; eius rei populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō discessit. 370

### A Cavalry Skirmish. The Helvetians Move on, Followed by Caesar

Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar, equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit, quī videant quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen īnsecūtī aliēnō locō 375 cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt, et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt. Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn numquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat ac satis 380

366-370 cōnsuērint = "cōnsuēverint."

371-375 coāctum habēbat: *he had collected*; "habeō" with a perf. part. pass. in the pred. sometimes has a force almost equivalent to that of the perf. or plup.; the phrase so formed calls attention to the permanence of the result. quī videant: pl. agreeing in sense with the collective noun "equitātum." quī: *but these*; coordinating rel. cupidius: *rather too eagerly*. novissimum agmen: *rearguard*. locō: abl. of place where.

376-380 paucī dē nostrīs: *the rest fled at the instigation of their commander, Dumnorix. This Caesar found out later.* equitibus: abl. of means. audācius . . . coepērunt: *began on occasion to make a bolder stand, and with their rearguard to provoke our men to a fight.* satis habēbat: *considered it sufficient*; as Caesar's army was outnumbered by the enemy, he decided not to risk a decisive battle until he could choose his own time and place.

366-370 instituō: *teach, train*

371-375 aliēnus: *unfavorable*

376-380 quīngentī: *five hundred* prōpellō, -ere, -pulī: *repulse*



habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīnīs, pābulātiōnibus, popu-  
lātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcē-  
runt utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum  
nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs milibus passuum interesset.

### The Haeduans Fail to Cooperate with Caesar; He Complains to their Chiefs

386 Interim cotīdiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum, quod essent  
publicē pollicitī, flāgitāre. Nam propter frīgora, quod Gallia  
sub septentriōnibus posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs  
mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābulī quidem satis magna cōpia  
suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō, quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus  
390 subvexerat, proptereā minus utī poterat, quod iter ab Ararī  
Helvētīi āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē  
dūcere Haeduī; cōnferri, comportārī, adesse dicere.

Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstāre, quō diē frū-  
mentum militibus mētīrī oportēret, convocātis eōrum prīn-  
395 cipibus, quōrum magnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, in hīs

381-385 **hostem**: used collectively. **rapīnīs**: abl. of separation. **ita . . . utī**:  
*in such a way that*. **primum**: supply "agmen"; *vanguard*. **milibus**: abl. of  
comparison after "amplius." **quīnīs aut sēnīs**: the distributive numerals are used  
because this was the distance between the armies each day. **Haeduōs frūmentum**:  
double acc. after "flāgitāre," a vb. of asking. **quod essent pollicitī**: *which (as he  
said) they had promised*. The subordinate cl. has the subj. to imply that Caesar  
made this statement in demanding the grain.

386-390 **flāgitāre**: historical inf. **frīgora**: pl., *cold seasons, periods of cold*.  
**frūmenta**: pl., *standing crops*; it was now late in June. **pābulī**: for the cavalry  
horses and pack animals. **frūmentō**: with "utī." **quod . . . subvexerat**: *which  
he had brought up by way of the Arar*. **Ararī**: the abl. of way by which is a branch  
of the abl. of means. **minus**: *not very well*.

391-395 **diem ex diē**: *day after day*. **dūcere**: historical inf.; *kept putting him  
off*. **dicere**: historical inf.; supply "frūmentum" as subject of "cōnferri . . .  
adesse." **sē diūtius dūcī**: *that he was being put off too long*. **diem quō diē**: *the day  
on which*. **frūmentum . . . oportēret**: lit., *to measure out grain to the soldiers was  
a duty*; tr., *he had to distribute grain to the soldiers*. Grain was distributed twice a  
month. **in hīs**: *among these*.

381-385 **rapinae, -arum**: plundering **pābulātiō, -ōnis**: foraging

386-390 **flāgitō**: demand **septentriōnēs, -um**: the North **pābulum**:  
fodder **suppetō**: be at hand

391-395 **mētior, -īrī**: measure out **oportet, -ēre**: it is necessary; ought,  
should

Dīviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātūī praeerat, graviter eōs accūsāt, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī possit, tam necessariō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus, ab eīs nōn sublevētur; praesertim cum magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit, multō etiam gravius quod sit 400 dēstitūtus queritur.

### Liscus Explains that Certain Haeduans are Working against Caesar

Tum dēmum Liscus, ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus, quod antea tacuerat prōpōnit: Esse nōnnūllōs, quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī prīvātīm plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitū- 405 dinem dēterrēre nē frūmentum cōnferant quod dēbeant: praestāre, sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs libertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab eīsdem nostra 410

396-400 **Dīviciācō, Liscō**: in apposition with "prīncipibus." **quī . . . praeerat**: *who held the highest office.* **quod . . . nōn sublevētur**: subj. with "quod" to express a quoted reason; *because (as he said) he was not helped.* **cum . . . possit**: supply "frūmentum" as subject; *when grain could neither be purchased . . .* **necessariō tempore, propinquīs hostibus**: abls. abs.; *at so urgent a crisis, with the enemy so near at hand.* **praesertim . . . suscēperit**: *especially as he had undertaken the campaign largely in compliance with their entreaties.*

401-405 **quod**: supply "id" as antecedent of "quod" and object of "prōpōnit." **esse nōnnūllōs**: in direct discourse, "sunt nōnnūllī," *there are some few men, there are certain individuals.* **plūs possint**: *have more power.* **hōs**: subject of "dēterrēre."

406-410 **nē . . . cōnferant**: *from furnishing the grain*; "cōnferant" and "dēbeant" are pl. in agreement with the pl. sense of "multitūdinem." **praestāre . . . ēreptūrī**: in direct discourse, (*these men say*, the idea of speaking being suggested by "ōrātiōne"), "Praestat, sī (Haeduī) iam (*for the moment*) prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possunt, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāmus quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs libertātem sint ēreptūrī (*they intend to deprive the Haeduī of their freedom*)."

401-405 **queror, -ī**: complain **tum dēmum**: at length **sēditiōsus**: seditious, subversive **improbus**: violent

cōnsilia quaeque in castrīs gerantur hostibus ēnūntiārī. Hōs ā sē coercērī nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessariō rem coactus Caesarī ēnūntiārīt, intellegere sēsē quantō id cum periculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam quam diū potuerit tacuisse.

### Liscus Explains the Power of Dumnorix and his Interest in the Helvetians

- 415 Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Dīviciācī frātre, dēsignārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea quae in conventū dīxerat. Dīcit liberius atque audācius. Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit; reperit esse  
420 vēra: Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter liberālītātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaue omnia Haeduōrum vectīgālīa parvō pretiō redēpta habēre, proptereā quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem  
425 auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāsse;

411-415 quaeque = "et (ea) quae." sē: Liscus, the chief magistrate. quīn etiam: moreover. quod: as to the fact that. coactus: only under pressure.

416-420 plūribus praesentibus: abl. abs.; with too many present. ex sōlō: from him in private. reperit esse vēra: he learned that the true facts were; explained in the lines that follow. ipsum esse Dumnorīgem: that Dumnorix was the very man. summā audāciā: abl. of description; (a man) of boundless audacity.

421-425 rērum novārum: gen. with "cupidum." portōria: custom duties; vectīgālīa: other revenues. The state sold at auction the privilege of collecting duties and taxes. What the successful bidder was able to collect above the amount he paid the state was his profit. redēpta habēre: he had bought in. illō licente: abl. abs.; when he made a bid. contrā: against him. ad largiendum: for bribery. comparāsse = "comparāvisse."

416-420 dēsignō: mark out, mean iactō: discuss sēcrētō: separately  
reperiō, -īre: find out

421-425 grātiā: favor, popularity redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēemptum: purchase, buy  
liceor, -ērī: bid familiāris, -e: private facultātēs, -um: resources  
largior, -īrī: bribe

magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre; neque solum domī sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs largiter posse, atque huius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturigibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō ac potentissimō collo- cāsse; ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre. Sī quid accidat 430 Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō sed etiam dē eā quam habeat grātiā dēspērāre.

Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initium 435 eius fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque eius equitibus (nam equitātuī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Haeduī mīserant, Dumnorīx praeerat); eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.

### Caesar Decides to Punish Dumnorix but is Reluctant to Offend Diviciacus

Quibus rēbus cognitīs, cum ad hās suspīciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per finēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trā- 440

426-430 **domī**: loc.; in his own state. **huius potentiae causā**: to strengthen this influence. **sī quid . . . venīre**: in direct discourse, if anything should befall the Romans (i.e., should they be defeated) he conceives the highest hope that, by the aid of the Helvetians, he will secure the throne.

431-435 **imperiō**: abl. of attendant circumstances; whereas under the rule. **in quaerendō**: in the course of his enquiries. **quod proelium . . . factum**: as to the engagement which had taken place.

436-440 **equitātuī**: dat. with "praeerat." **cum . . . accēderent**: since undeniable facts were added to confirm these suspicions. **quod . . . accūsārētur**: noun clauses in apposition to "rēs"; that he had led the Helvetians . . .

426-430 **sūmptus, -ūs**: expense **alō, alere**: maintain, keep **largiter posse**: to possess great influence **collocō, -āre**: give in marriage

436-440 **accēdō, -ere**: be added





The Mausoleum of Hadrian, begun in 130 A.D., was used as a burial place by imperial families from the time of Hadrian to that of Caracalla in 217 A.D. During the middle ages, the huge monument was converted into a fortress called the Castel Sant'Angelo for defense of the western sector of the city, including the Vatican.

dūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussū suō et cīvitātis sed etiam inscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Haeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur quārē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut cīvitātem animadvertere iubēret.

445

Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Dīviciācī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cognōverat; nam nē eius suppliciō Dīviciācī animum offenderet verēbātur. Itaque priusquam quidquam cōnārētur, Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet et, cotīdiānīs interpretibus remōtīs, per C. Valerium Troucillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō colloquitur; simul commonefacit quae ipsō praesente in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et ostendit quae

455

441-445 **obsidēs** . . . **cūrāset** (= "cūrāvisset"): he had arranged for an exchange of hostages. **eōs**: the Helvetians and Sequanians. **iniussū** . . . **cīvitātis**: without Caesar's orders and those of the state. **inscientibus ipsīs**: abl. abs.; "ipsīs" = "Caesare et Haeduīs." **causae**: partitive gen. with "satis." **quārē** . . . **iubēret**: good grounds for him to punish Dumnorix himself or to order his state to do so.

446-450 **rēbus**: dat. with "repugnābat." **ūnum**: nom., explained by the "quod" cl.; There was one objection to this course: Caesar had come to realize the very high regard which Diviciacus, the brother (of Dumnorix), had for the Romans. **studium, voluntātem**, etc.: in listing items Latin usually says 'a, b, c' or 'a and b and c'; English, 'a, b and c.' **eius suppliciō**: by the punishment of Dumnorix. **priusquam** . . . **cōnārētur**: subj. with "priusquam" to express anticipation, before he should take any definite step.

451-455 **cui**: dat. with "fidem habeo," which has the meaning of "cōfidō"; in whom he had the utmost confidence. **simul** . . . **dixerit**: at the same time Caesar related the remarks which had been made in the presence of Diviciacus concerning Dumnorix . . . , and showed what each person had said separately to Caesar about Dumnorix.

441-445 **insciēns, -entis**: ignorant **animadvertō, -ere**: notice; with "in" + acc., punish

446-450 **repugnō, -āre**: fight back, resist; be in opposition **ēgregius**: exceptional

451-455 **cotīdiānus**: regular **interpretes, -etis**: interpreter **familiāris**: intimate friend **commonefaciō**: remind

sēparātīm quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit. Petit atque hortātur ut sine eius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō causā cognitā statuāt, vel cīvitātem statuere iubeat.

### Diviciacus Pleads for his Brother's Life; Caesar Pardons Dumnorix

Dīviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus obse-  
460 crāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātre statueret: Scīre sē illa  
esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere.

Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne vulgī com-  
movērī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum  
ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud eum tenēret, nēminem exīsti-  
465 mātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum utī  
tōtīus Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur. Haec cum plūribus  
verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prēndit;  
cōnsōlātus rogat fīnem ōrandī faciat; tantī eius apud sē grātiā  
esse ostendit utī et reī pūblīcae iniūriam et suum dolōrem eius  
470 voluntātī ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat,

456-460 **ut sine . . . iubeat**: that without offense to the feelings of Diviciacus he (Caesar) might either investigate the case and pass judgment upon Dumnorix, or order the state to do so. **complexus**: Diviciacus knelt and clasped Caesar's knees. **nē . . . statueret**: not to pass too heavy a sentence on his brother. **Scīre . . . capere**: in direct discourse, "Sciō ista (what you say) esse vēra, nec quisquam ex eō (that situation) plūs quam ego dolōris capit."

461-465 **dolōris**: partitive gen. with "plūs." **amōre frāternō**: by his love for his brother. **vulgī**: subjective gen. with "exīstimātiōne"; public opinion. **quod sī . . . āverterentur**: in direct discourse, "Quod sī (but if) quid eī ā tē gravius acciderit, cum (since) ego hunc locum (such a position) amīcitiae apud tē teneam, nēmō exīstimābit nōn meā voluntāte (without my consent) factum (esse); quā ex rē tōtīus Galliae animī ā mē āvertentur." **futūrum (esse)**: with "ut" and the subj. may replace the fut. inf. pass. in an indirect statement.

466-470 **cum**: while. **faciat**: supply "ut"; indirect command. **tantī**: gen. of value; (Caesar) assured him that his influence with him (Caesar) was of such value. **utī . . . condōnet**: lit., that he gave up both the injury to the state and his own vexation to his wish and prayers; tr., that he excused the injury to the state and the vexation felt by himself, in consideration for the goodwill and entreaties of Diviciacus.

456-460 **complector, -ī, complexus**: embrace **obsecrō**: implore

466-470 **fleō, flēre**: weep **prēndō**: grasp **cōnsōlor, -ārī**: cheer, console  
**condōnō, -āre**: overlook, pardon



frātre adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitās querātur, prōpōnit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspiciōnēs vītet; praeterita sē Dīviciācō frātrī condōnāre dīcit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

475

### Caesar Plans to Surprise the Helvetians

Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsius castrīs octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēsus, quī cognōscerent mīsīt. Renūtiātum est ascēsum esse facilem. Dē tertiā vigiliā Titum Labiēnum lēgātum cum duābus legiōnibus et 480 eīs ducibus quī iter cognōverant summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōsiliī sit ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit equitatumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī rei mīlitāris perītissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in 485 M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

### The Plan Fails through the Mistake of Considius

Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīngentīs passibus abesset, neque, ut posteā ex captīvīs comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō 490

471-475 *omnēs suspiciōnēs*: all grounds for suspicion. *praeterita*: n. pl., bygone; he was overlooking the past for his brother Diviciacus's sake. *Dumnorīgī* . . . *pōnit*: set agents to keep an eye on Dumnorix.

476-480 Caesar returns to his account of the campaign against the Helvetians. *quālis* . . . *ascēsus*: what sort of an ascent there was all round; Caesar wanted to find out the best point from which to ascend the hill. *quī cognōscerent mīsīt*: he sent (men) to find out. *cum eīs ducibus*: with those men as guides.

481-485 *cōsiliī*: gen. used in the pred.; what was involved in his plan. *dē quārtā vigiliā*: a little after 2 a.m. *habēbātur*: was considered. *in M. Crassī*: in (that) of Marcus Crassus.

486-490 *cum*: with "tenērētur, abesset, cognitus esset." *ipse*: Caesar. *ut*: as. *equō admissō* . . . *accurrit*: rode up at full gallop.

471-475 *adhibeō*: summon *reprehendō*: blame *praetereō, -īre*: pass by

486-490 *comperiō*: find out



ad eum accurrit, dicit montem quem a Labiēnō occupārī voluerit ab hostibus tenērī; id sē a Gallicīs armīs atque insignibus cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit.

- 495 Labiēnus, ut erat ei praeceptum a Caesare nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsius cōpiae prope hostium castra visae essent, ut undique unō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupatō nostrōs expectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explorātōrēs Caesar cognōvit et montem a  
500 suis tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum quod nōn vīdisset prō visō sibi renūntiāsse. Eō diē, quō cōsuērat intervallō, hostēs sequitur et milia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

### Caesar Marches for Bibracte to Secure Supplies; the Helvetians Follow

- Postridiē eius diē, quod omnīnō bīdūum supererat cum  
505 exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod a Bibracte,

491-495 **insignibus**: decorations (on their helmets and shields). **ut . . . praeceptum**: as he had been instructed.

496-500 **ipsius** = "Caesaris." **visae essent**: in direct discourse, "visae erunt." **ut . . . fieret**: purpose cl. **proeliō**: abl. of separation. **multō diē**: late in the day.

501-505 **quod**: supply antecedent "id." **prō visō**: as having seen. **sibi** = "Caesari." **quō . . . intervallō** = "eō intervallō (abl. of manner) quō sequi cōsuēverat." **supererat**: from "supersum." **cum . . . oportēret**: as two days in all remained before it was proper to issue the grain-ration to the army.

491-495 **insigne, -is**: ornament, decoration **subducō**: withdraw **praeci-piō**: instruct, order

496-500 **dēnique**: finally

501-505 **postridiē**: on the day following **bīdūum**: two days

oppidō Haeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum duodēvīgintī aberat, rei frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimāvit; itaque iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit ac Bibracte ire contendit. Ea rēs per fugitivōs L. Aemiliī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu 510 quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē exīstimārent (eō magis quod prīdiē, superiōribus locīs occupātīs, proelium nōn commīsissent), sīve eō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōnfīderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īnsequī ac lacescere coepērunt. 515

### Both Sides Prepare for Battle; the Helvetians Attack

Postquam id animadvertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūxit equitātumque quī sustinēret hostium impetum mīsīt. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; sed in summō iugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōnscrīpserat et omnia 520

506-510 **rei frūmentāriae**: dat. with "prōspiciendum (esse)"; *that provision ought to be made for supplies*. **Bibracte**: acc.; *to Bibracte*. **fugitivōs**: deserters. **seu . . . commīsissent**: *either because they thought that the Romans were moving away from them because of sheer panic, the more so because . . . they had not joined battle although they had seized the higher ground*.

511-515 **exīstimārent**: subj. in a quoted reason; Caesar suggests the reason existing in the minds of the Helvetians. **sīve . . . cōnfīderent**: *or because they were confident that the Romans could be cut off from their grain-supply*. **rē frūmentāriā**: abl. of separation. **itinere conversō**: The Helvetians should have continued on their march, keeping well ahead of Caesar, and avoiding a battle; instead, they returned and gave Caesar the chance he had been waiting for. **ā novissimō agmine**: *began to follow and harass our rear*.

516-520 **quī . . . impetum**: i.e., to check the advance forces of the enemy and give Caesar time to form his lines. **in colle mediō**: *halfway up the hill*. **quās . . . cōnscrīpserat**: it was not wise to put these inexperienced troops in the fighting line.

506-510 **cōpiōsus**: wealthy, rich      **amplius**: *adv.*, more      **decuriō, -ōnis**: decurion (officer in charge of ten horsemen)

511-515 **prīdiē**: on the day before      **interclūdō**: cut off      **laccessō, -ere**: provoke, attack

516-520 **citerior, -ius**: nearer, hither

auxilia collocārī ac tōtum montem hominibus complērī, et  
intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōnferri, et eum ab eīs quī in  
superiōre aciē cōstitērant mūniri iussit. Helvētīi cum omni-  
bus suis carrīs secūtī impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt;  
525 ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē, reiectō nostrō equitatū, phalange factā  
sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

### The Helvetians Retire

Caesar, prīmum suō, deinde omnium ex cōspectū remōtīs  
equīs, ut aequātō omnium periculō spem fugae tolleret, co-  
hortātus suōs proelium commisit. Militēs ē locō superiōre  
530 pīlīs missīs facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā dis-  
iectā, gladiīs dēstrictīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs magnō  
ad pugnam erat impedimentō quod, plūribus eōrum scūtīs  
ūnō ictū pīlōrum trānsfixīs et colligātīs, cum ferrum sē inflex-  
isset, neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impeditā satis commodē  
535 pugnāre poterant, multī ut diū iactātō bracciō praeoptārent

521-525 **auxilia**: auxiliary troops. **sarcinās**: the men's packs. **eum**: supply  
"locum." **eīs**: the new legions and the auxiliary troops. **quī... cōstitērant**:  
who were stationed in line on the higher ground. **phalange**: To appreciate the tactics  
of a Gallic phalanx, we must picture a large mass of men in close formation.  
The soldiers overlapped their shields, shingle fashion, the front ranks holding  
their shields in front of them, the others, above their heads. As long as the phalanx  
remained unbroken, it could be used as a battering ram; but once broken, it  
was at a decided disadvantage.

526-530 **suō**: supply "equō remōtō." **omnium**: of all the mounted officers.  
**pīlīs**: the "pīlum," which could be thrown about 30 yards, consisted of two  
parts, the wooden shaft and the iron point.

531-535 **Gallīs** = "Helvētīiis." **Gallīs, impedimentō**: dats. of interest and  
purpose; the Gauls were greatly hampered by the fact that... **plūribus... poterant**:  
As the shields of the Helvetians overlapped, the Roman javelins in many cases  
pierced through several shields at once and locked them together; the iron point  
was bent and the Helvetians could neither withdraw it nor fight properly with the  
left arm (the shield arm) thus encumbered. **cum**: since. **sē inflexisset**: had been  
bent. **satis commodē**: to much advantage. **multī**: placed before "ut" for emphasis.  
**ut... praeoptārent**: cl. of result, so that many preferred. **iactātō bracciō**: in an  
effort to shake out the javelin and thus separate their shields.

521-525 **carrus**: cart **cōnfertus**: closely packed

528-535 **aequō, -āre**: equalize **perfringō, -ere, -frēgi**: break through  
**disiciō**: scatter, disperse **dēstringō, -ere, supine dēstrictum**: draw (a sword)  
**colligō, -āre**: pin together **praeoptō, -āre**: prefer



The Forum of Rome lies between the Palatine, Capitoline, and Esquiline hills. Placed at the heart of the city, it was the commercial, religious, and political center of the city. This view is of the site of the Temple of Castor and Pollux and of the Temple of the Deified Caesar.



scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pugnāre. Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns aberat circiter mīlle passūs, eō sē recipere coepērunt.

### The Romans Follow; Allies of the Helvetians Arrive; a Double Battle Develops

Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Boiī et Tulingī, quī  
540 hominum mīlibus circiter quīndecim agmen hostium claudē-  
bant et novissimīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere  
apertō aggressī circumvenīre, et id cōspicātī Helvētiū, quī in  
montem sēsē recēperant, rūsus īnstāre et proelium redinte-  
grāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa signa bipartītō intulērunt,  
545 prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victīs ac summōtīs resisteret, tertia,  
ut venientēs sustinēret.

### The Helvetians, Defeated, Retreat; Caesar Follows

Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācriter pugnātum est. Diūtius  
cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut  
coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedīmenta et  
550 carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab

536-540 **nūdō corpore**: with no body protection. **captō . . . nostrīs**: they gained the heights, and as our men followed up . . . The Boii and Tulingi were allies of the Helvetians. They had been at the front of the line of march; they became the rear when the Helvetians turned about to attack Caesar.

541-545 **ex itinere**: marched up and immediately attacked. **ab latere apertō**: the exposed or unprotected flank was the right flank. **circumvenīre**: depends on "coepērunt"; with the Helvetians in front and the allies working around behind, the Romans were in danger of being encircled. Caesar immediately took action, as explained in the next sentence. **conversa . . . intulērunt**: lit., bore forward their wheeled standards in two divisions; tr., wheeled and charged in two divisions. **victīs**: the main body of the Helvetians.

546-550 **venientēs**: the newcomers, the Boii and Tulingi. **ancipitī proeliō**: in a battle with two fronts. **alterī . . . alterī**: the one body (the Helvetians) . . . the other (the Boii and Tulingi). **hōc tōtō proeliō**: in the course of this whole battle. **cum**: although.

541-545 **cōspicor, -ārī**: catch sight of      **summoveō**: drive off

546-550 **anceps, ancipitis**: double, twofold

hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnātum est, proptereā quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcērant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōnnūllī inter carrōs raedāsque matarās ac trāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedimentis castrisque nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis filia atque ūnus ē filiis captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia cxxx superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt; nūllam partem noctis itinere intermissō in finēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera mīlitum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī trīduum morātī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonēs litterās nūntiōsque mīsīt nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent: quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipse trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiis eōs sequī coepit.

551-555 āversum hostem: the back of an enemy. ad impedimenta: by the baggage. prō vāllō: as a rampart.

556-560 impedimentis: abl. with "potītī sunt." captus est: in agreement with "ūnus," the nearer subject. eā tōtā nocte: during that whole night. finēs Lingonum: about seventy miles from the scene of the battle. diē quārtō: three days later, according to our method of reckoning.

561-565 occīsōrum: of the slain. nē: telling them not to; the idea of speaking is suggested by "nūntiōs mīsīt." quī... habitūrum: in direct discourse, "sī iūveritis, vōs eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habēbō"; if you (the Lingones) help (the Helvetians), I shall treat you in the same way as (I treated) the Helvetians (i.e., as enemies).

551-555 obiciō: place in front      raeda: wagon      matara: lance      trāgula: javelin

556-560 potior, -irī, potītus sum: gain possession of (with abl.)      continenter: continuously

561-565 sepultūra: burial      intermittō: in pass., elapse

## The Survivors Surrender; Six Thousand Escape Temporarily

- Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne  
ad eum mīserunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque  
ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petīs-  
570 sent, atque eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum  
exspectāre iussisset, pārūrunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit,  
obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent poposcit. Dum  
ea conquīruntur et cōferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter  
hominum mīlia sex eius pāgī quī Verbigenus appellātur, sive  
575 timōre perterritī nē armīs trāditīs suppliciō afficerentur, sive  
spē salūtis inductī, quod in tantā multitudīne dēditiciōrum  
suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō ignōrārī posse existimā-  
rent, primā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī, ad Rhēnum  
finēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.
- 580 Quod ubi Caesar rescīit, quōrum per finēs ierant, hīs utī  
conquīrerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, im-  
perāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs,  
obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs, in dēditiōnem accēpit.

## The Helvetians are Ordered to Return to their Lands

- Helvētiōs in finēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit;  
585 et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil erat quō famem

566-570 **quī cum . . . convēnissent**: *when they met him*. **petīssent** = "petīvis-  
sent." **eōs** = "Helvētiōs." **essent**: subj. because part of Caesar's order.

571-575 **perfūgissent**: runaway slaves from the Roman army; subj. because part  
of Caesar's demands. **ea**: n. pl. referring to "obsidēs, arma, servōs." **perterritī**:  
m. pl. agreeing with idea of "men" in "hominum mīlia."

576-580 **primā nocte**: *in the early part of the night*. **quod**: coordinating rel.  
**rescīit** = "rescīvit": from "rescīscō," *find out*. **quōrum**: the antecedent is "hīs."

581-585 **sibi**: dat. of reference; *in his estimation*. **reductōs . . . habuit**: *those  
who were brought back he treated as enemies*; having violated a military agreement,  
they were put to death or sold as slaves. **in dēditiōnem accēpit**: *he accepted their  
surrender*. **quō tolerārent**: rel. cl. of characteristic.

566-570 **suppliciter**: as suppliants

571-575 **conquīrō**: seek out      **suppliciō afficere**: to punish

576-580 **dēditicius**: prisoner      **occultō, -āre**: conceal

581-585 **pūrgātus**: guiltless      **perfuga**: deserter      **frūgēs, -um**: grain

tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut eīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vicōsque quōs incenderant restituere iussit.

Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex suīs finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsīrent et fīnitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent.

### The Number of the Helvetians and their Allies

In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litterīs Graecīs cōfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs nōminātīm ratiō cōfecta erat, quī numerus domō exīssset eōrum quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātīm quot puerī, senēs mulierēsque.

Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum quī domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium c et x.

DE BELLO GALLICO, I, 10-29

586-590 **ut . . . facerent**: to supply them with grain. **ipsōs**: the Helvetians and their allies. **eā maximē ratiōne**: mainly for this reason; explained by the "quod" cl. that follows.

591-595 **Allobrogibusque**: and especially of the Allobroges, who lived in the Province. **litterīs Graecīs**: The Gauls, not having an alphabet of their own, borrowed the Greek alphabet from the Greek colony of Massilia (now Marseilles). **repertae**: "repertae et relātae sunt." **cōfectae**: modifies "tabulae."

596-600 **quī . . . exīssset** (= "exiisset"): indirect question. **quī . . . possent**: rel. cl. of characteristic, of such as could bear arms. **fuērunt**: agrees in number with "mīlia" in the pred. **ad**: adv., about. **cēnsū**: A census of those who returned home showed a total of 110,000; probably over 100,000 were lost in the battle.

586-590 **vacō, -āre**: be uninhabited      **bonitās, -tātis**: fertility

591-595 **tabulae**: lists, records      **nōminātīm**: by name

596-600 **ratiō**: account      **cēnsus, -ūs**: enumeration





Aurel Cazian

Athens. Ruins of the temple of Zeus, a colossal structure begun in the sixth century, B.C. Although work was resumed in Hellenistic times, the temple was not completed till centuries later.

Long before the summer of 58 B.C. was over, the Helvetian threat had been crushed. The enemy who had menaced the existence of the Roman Province had been converted into a bulwark against the tribes farther north. By military skill and diplomacy Caesar had become the arbiter of Southern Gaul. Representatives from various Gallic tribes now came to him seeking aid against the German Ariovistus who had entered Gaul. Caesar answered the appeal, and by the end of the year had crushed the invader. Caesar now exercised virtual control over all Central Gaul.

Following his victories of 58 B.C., Caesar kept his army in Gaul. The Belgian tribes regarded the Roman legions near their frontiers as a menace to their independence. To meet a Belgian confederacy Caesar invaded their country and in a hardfought campaign established Roman control there. Meanwhile one of Caesar's generals had subdued the tribes along the Atlantic seaboard.

The next year, 56 B.C., saw Rome's suzerainty established in Southwestern Gaul and other areas. The Rhine was now established as the frontier not only of Gaul but also of the Roman Empire. In 55 Caesar crossed the Rhine, ravaged the territory of some of the German tribes, and recrossed the river. He was now free to undertake an expedition to Britain.

## QUESTIONS

Why did the Helvetians decide to emigrate? (Use the map.)

What reply did Caesar make to their request to be allowed to march through the Province?

What route did the Helvetians actually take?

What action did Caesar take when he learned that they intended to settle among the Santones? Why?

What three states appealed to Caesar for help against the Helvetians?

In reply to their appeal what decision did Caesar make? And how did he avenge a previous Roman defeat?

What did the Helvetians do after their defeat?

How did Caesar reply to their accusations (a) by words, (b) by deeds?

What tribe of the three mentioned failed to cooperate with the Romans? Explain.

Liscus, the chief of this tribe, then told Caesar that a 'fifth column' was working against the Romans. What person in particular did Liscus designate?

Caesar decided to punish this man but hesitated to do so. Why?

Diviciacus, the brother of Dumnorix, made a plea for his brother's life. How did Caesar act and why?

Why did Caesar's plan for a double attack miscarry?

Where did Caesar go to obtain supplies? What action did the Helvetians take?

Caesar chose favorable ground and the battle was joined. How did it result?

What allies came to the aid of the Helvetians in this crisis?

What tactics did the Romans adopt? Were they successful?

What was the final result of this battle upon the Helvetians (a) with respect to their future home, (b) with respect to the losses incurred?

292-332

333-401

402-475

476-600

### 3. CAESAR'S FIRST EXPEDITION TO BRITAIN, 55 B.C.

#### Caesar Decides to Invade Britain

Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs (quod  
omnis Gallia ad septentrionēs vergit) mātūrae sunt hiemēs,  
tamen in Britanniam proficiscī contendit, quod omnibus ferē  
Gallicīs bellīs hostibus nostrīs inde sumministrāta auxilia  
605 intellegēbat; et, sī tempus annī ad bellum gerendum dēficeret,  
tamen magnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur, sī modo īnsulam  
adīssset, genus hominum perspēxisset, loca, portūs, aditūs  
cognōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallīs erant incognita. Neque  
enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque  
610 eīs ipsīs quidquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs  
quae sunt contrā Galliam nōtum est. Itaque vocātīs ad sē  
undique mercātōribus, neque quanta esset īnsulae magnitūdō,  
neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum  
belli habērent aut quibus īstitutīs ūterentur, neque quī  
615 essent ad maiōrum nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs  
reperīre poterat.

601-608 *exiguā parte reliquā*: abl. abs.; tr. by concessive cl. *ad septentrionēs vergit*: has a northerly trend. *omnibus Gallicīs bellīs*: abl. of time when. *sī adīssset . . .*: the three "sī"-clauses are the real subjects of "fore."

609-616 *neque quidquam*: and nothing. *vocātīs . . . mercātōribus*: although he summoned. Note the indirect questions ("esset, incolerent," etc.); these clauses depend on "reperīre poterat." *quae aut quantae nātiōnēs*: tr. as if "quae nātiōnēs eam incolerent aut quantae essent." *belli*: in war.

605 *dēficiō*: fail; be insufficient

609 *temerē*: with any regularity      *illō*: to that place

## Reconnaissance; British Envoys Arrive

Ad haec cognōscenda, priusquam perīculum faceret, idō-  
neum esse arbitrātus Gāium Volusēnum cum nāvī longā  
praemittit. Huic mandat, ut, explōrātīs omnibus rēbus, ad  
sē quam primum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in 620  
Morinōs proficīscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britan-  
niam trāiectus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex finitimīs regiōnibus et,  
quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum effēcerat classem  
iubet convenīre.

Interim cōsiliō eius cognitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō 625  
ad Britannōs, ā complūribus īnsulae cīvitatibus ad eum lēgātī  
veniunt, quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī  
Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus audītīs, liberāliter pollicitus  
hortātusque, ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum  
remittit; et cum eīs ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus 630  
superātīs rēgem ibi cōstituerat, cuius et virtūtem et cōsiliū  
probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur, cuiusque  
auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus magnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic  
imperat, quās possit, adeat cīvitatēs hortēturque, ut populī  
Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. 635  
Volusēnus, perspectīs regiōnibus omnibus, quīntō diē ad  
Caesarem revertitur, quaeque ibi perspēxisset renūntiat.

617-623 *priusquam perīculum faceret: before making the attempt; "priusquam,"*  
to denote something anticipated, is used with the subj. in *Morinōs*: Caesar  
uses the name of a Gallic tribe in prepositional phrases to stand for the territory  
it occupies; tr. *for the country of the Morini*, who lived in that part of Gaul nearest  
Britain, in the district of Boulogne and Calais. *quam*: the antecedent is "clas-  
sem." *Veneticum bellum*: *the war with the Veneti*; in 56 B.C., the Veneti had  
led a confederacy of the maritime tribes of northwestern Gaul against Caesar  
and had been defeated in a battle at sea.

627-635 *quī polliceantur*: rel. cl. of purpose. *dare, obtemperāre*: after "polli-  
ceor" we usually find the fut. inf. with the subject expressed. *Commium*:  
Commius was a chief of the Atrebates. *magnī*: gen. of price or value; *in high*  
*esteem*. *imperat*: supply "ut," which introduces three indirect commands  
("adeat, hortētur, nūntiet"). *ut fidem sequantur*: *to accept the protection*; depends  
on "hortētur."

619-623 *mandō = imperō* *Veneticus, adj.*: against the Veneti

628-637 *obtemperāre = pārere* *perspiciō*: reconnoiter



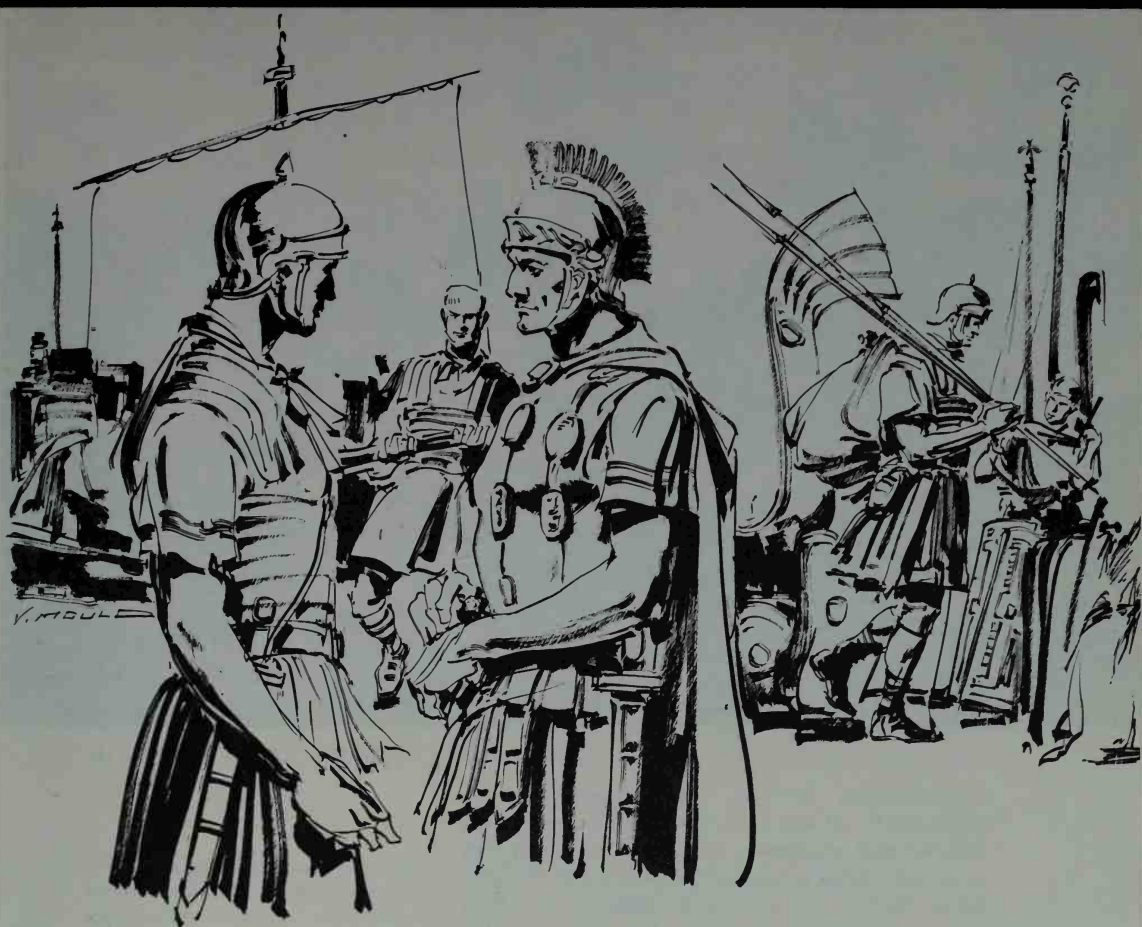
## Submission of the Morini; Preparations for Sailing

Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vērunt, quī sē  
640 dē superiōris temporis cōsiliō excūsarent, quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōsuētūdinis imperīī bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea, quae imperāsset, factūrōs pollicērentur. Hoc sibi Caesar satis opportūnē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī  
645 gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat, magnum eīs numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductīs eōs in fidem recēpit.

Nāvibus circiter octōgintā onerāriīs coāctīs, quot satis esse ad duās trāsportandās legiōnēs existimābat, quod praeterea  
650 nāvium longārum habēbat, quaestōrī, lēgātīs praefectisque distribuit. Hūc accēdebant duodēvīgintī onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā milibus passuum octō ventō tenēbantur; hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Q. Titūriō Sabīnō et L. Aurunculēiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs  
655 atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum, ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vērunt, dūcendum dedit; P. Sulpiciū Rūfū lēgātū cum eō praesidiō, quod satis esse arbitrābatur, portum tenēre iussit.

## The Crossing of the Channel; Landing Preparations

Hīs cōstitūtīs rēbus, nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem, tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit, equitēsque in ulteriorem  
660 portum prōgredi et nāvēs cōscendere et sē sequī iussit. Ipse hōrā diē circiter quārtā cum primīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōspēxit. Cuius locī haec erat nātūra: ita montibus angustē mare continēbatur utī ex locīs superiōribus in lītus  
665 tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs expectāvit.



639-647 *quī . . . excūsārent . . . pollicērentur*: rel. cl. of purpose. *dē superiōris temporis cōsiliō*: for their conduct of the season before. *hominēs barbarī*: in apposition with the unexpressed subject of “fēcissent”; insert the part. “being” before the descriptive words. *imperāssēt* = “imperāvissēt”; in direct discourse “imperāveris.” *arbitrātus*: tr. by pres. part. *eōs*: the Morini. *in fidem recipere*: to admit to terms.

648-656 *quot*: subject of “esse,” depending on “existimābat”: a number which. (id) *quod . . . habēbat*: what galleys he had besides. *hūc*: to this number. *ā*: at a distance of. *dūcendum*: with “exercitum.”

659-667 *tempestātem*: weather. *tertiā vigiliā*: just after midnight the morning of August 27. *solvit*: supply “nāvēs.” *ulteriōrem portum*: eight miles east of the harbor from which Caesar himself sailed. *hōrā quārtā*: about 8:30 or 9 a.m. *Britanniam attigit*: near Dover. *collibus*: the famous white cliffs of Dover. *haec*: as follows. *utī* = “ut.” *convenīrent*: should assemble; “dum,” until, to denote purpose, or something expected or anticipated, is used with the subj.

641 *barbarus*: uncivilized

648 *quot*, *indec.*: as many as

664-665 *angustē*: closely      *nēquāquam*, *adv.*: by no means



Monmouthshire, England. Two entrances to the amphitheatre at Caerleon, site of a Roman fortress founded and garrisoned by the second legion. This force was landed in England by the emperor Claudius during the first century. The amphitheatre and field barracks are the best structural remains revealed by excavation.





Interim, lēgātīs tribūnīsque mīlitum convocātīs, et quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset et quae fierī vellet ostendit; monuitque ut ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab eīs administrārentur. 670 Hīs dīmissīs, et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātīs ancorīs, circiter mīlia passuum septem ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac plānō lītore nāvēs cōstituit.

### The Britons Try to Prevent the Landing

At barbarī cōsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitātū 675 et essedāriīs, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter magnitudinem nisi in altō cōstituī nōn poterant; mīlitibus autem, ignōtīs locīs, impedītīs manibus, magnō et gravī onere armōrum oppressīs, simul et dē nāvibus dē- 680 siliendum et in flūctibus cōsistendum et cum hostibus erat

670-673 *ad nūtum et ad tempus*: smartly at the right moment, or, combining the ideas, in the nick of time at a hint from him. *ut administrārentur*: indirect command after "monuit." *aestum*: the tides set up a current which runs alternately up and down the English Channel. *datō signō, sublātīs ancorīs*: abl. abs.; tr. by principal clauses. *lītore*: Caesar landed on the east coast of Kent.

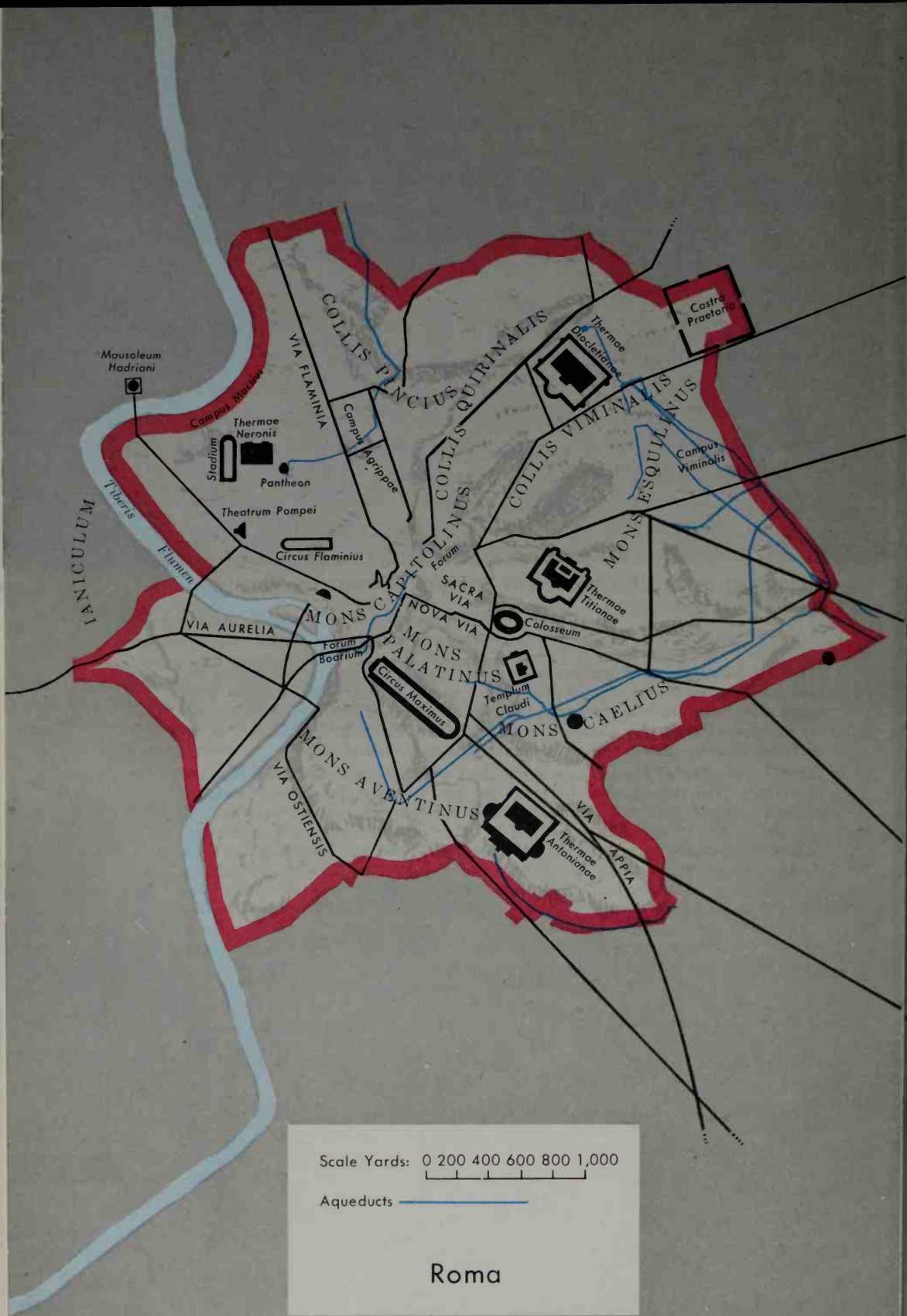
676-677 *essedāriīs*: The Britons, unlike the Gauls of Caesar's day, used chariots in warfare. The two-wheeled chariot ("essedum") carried the driver ("auriga," *he that handles the reins*) and a highly trained and well-armed warrior ("essedārius," *a fighter in a war-chariot*). In his chariot, the warrior might move about the battlefield discharging missiles, or co-operate with the cavalry and join in its charges; he might dismount and fight on foot while his driver waited nearby with his chariot. Caesar had to learn how to deal with this type of warrior. He found that the charioteers were helpless against a legion in battle-formation, and that a sufficiently large force of cavalry, supported by infantry, could break up a body of charioteers by a well-timed charge. *reliquīs cōpiīs*: abl. of accompaniment; in military phrases the abl. without "cum" may be used when modified by any adj. except a numeral. *prohibēbant*: impf. of attempted action (conative impf.). *hās*: the following.

678-680 *nisi in altō*: except in deep water. *mīlitibus*: dat. of agent with pass. periphrastic "dēsiliendum erat," etc.; *the soldiers had to . . .* *oppressīs*: dat., modifies "mīlitibus."

670 *nūtus, -ūs*: nod, command

676 *essedārius*: charioteer





pugnandum; cum illi aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prō-  
gressi, omnibus membrīs expeditīs, nōtissimīs locīs, audācter  
tēla conicerent et equōs insuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus  
nostrī perterriti atque huius omnīnō generis pugnae imperitī, 685  
nōn eādem alacritāte ac studiō quō in pedestribus ūti proeliis  
cōnsuērant ūtēbantur.

### The Romans Force a Landing; a Centurion Leads the Way

Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum  
speciēs erat barbarīs inūsītātior, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs  
nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōstituī, 690  
atque inde fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostēs prōpellī ac sum-  
movērī iussit; quae rēs magnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam et  
nāvium figurā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsītātō genere tormen-  
tōrum permōtī barbarī cōstitērunt ac paulum modo pedem  
rettulērunt. Atque nostrīs militibus cunctantibus, maximē 695  
propter altitudinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis aquilam  
ferēbat, obtestātus deōs, ut ea rēs legiōnī fēliciter ēvenīret,  
“Dēsilīte,” inquit, “commilitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus  
prōdere; ego certē meum reī pūblīcae atque imperātōrī officium  
praestiterō.” Hoc cum vōce magnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit 700

682-687 **cum**: with “conicerent”; *whereas*. **illi**: denotes a change of subject; tr. by noun. **pedestribus proeliis**: *battles on land*, in which infantry was mainly used. **cōnsuērant** = “cōnsuēverant.”

688-694 **quod**: object of “animadvertit.” **inūsītātior**: *less familiar* as compared with the transport vessels and such sailing ships as the Britons and Gauls used. **rēmīs incitārī**: *full speed ahead*. **latus apertum**: the right flank, unprotected by their shields. **quae rēs**: *this maneuver*. **paulum modo**: *but only a little*.

695-700 **nostrīs . . . cunctantibus**: abl. abs.; tr. by cl. with *while*. **quī**: supply “is” as antecedent. **decimae legiōnis**: Caesar’s favorite legion. **certē**: with “ego”; *I, for my part*. **praestiterō**: the tense expresses the certainty and completeness of the action: *I shall be found to have done*.

684 **insuēfactus**: trained

689-694 **inūsītātus**: unfamiliar, strange **tormentum**: engine of war; *pl.* artillery

697-698 **obtestor, -ārī**: implore, appeal to **commilitōnēs**: fellow soldiers

atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē, nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum cōspēxissent, subsecūtī hostibus appropinquārunt.

### The Britons are Routed

- 705 Pugnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque fīrmiter īnsistere neque signa subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī quibuscumque signīs occurrerat sē aggregābat, magnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex litore aliquōs singulārēs  
710 ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōspēxerant, incitātīs equīs impeditōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia mīlitibus complērī iussit, et quōs labōrantēs cōn-  
715 spēxerat, hīs subsidia summittēbat. Nostrī, simul in āridō cōstitērunt, suīs omnibus cōsecūtīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius prōsequī potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque īnsulam capere nōn potuerant. Hōc ūnum ad prīstinam fortūnam Caesarī  
720 dēfuit.

702-703 inter sē: one another. ex proximīs nāvibus: those who were in the nearest ships.

705-711 ab utrīsque: on both sides. nostrī . . . perturbābantur: tr. principal cl. first. fīrmiter īnsistere: to get a firm footing. alius aliā ex nāvī: men from different ships. quibuscumque . . . occurrerat: whatever standards they met. vērō: freely, while. ubi: whenever. ex litore: with "cōspēxerant." impeditōs: supply "eōs," i.e., "aliquōs" just mentioned; while they were in difficulties. adoriēbantur, etc.: repeated action.

712-720 quod: coordinating rel. quōs: the antecedent is "hīs." summittēbat: kept sending. simul = "simul atque." neque: but . . . not . . . longius: any great distance. ad prīstinam . . . Caesarī: to complete Caesar's usual good fortune.

702 dēdecus, -oris, n.: disgrace ūniversus: all together

709 singulārīs: one by one; pl. in small numbers

713-719 scapha: (small) boat speculātōria nāvigia: scouting vessels  
prīstinus: usual

## The Britons Sue for Peace

Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; sēsē obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāssēt factūrōs pollicitī sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprà dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemisum. Hunc illī ē 725 nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcērant; tum proeliō factō remisērunt, et in petendā pāce eius reī culpam in multitudinem contulērunt et propter imprudentiam ut ignōscerētur petīvērunt. Caesar questus quod, cum ultrō in conti- 730 nentem lēgātīs missīs pācem ab sē petīssēt, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere sē imprudentiae dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, prīncipēsque undique convenīre et sē cīvitatēsqe 735 suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

## The Cavalry Transports are Dispersed by a Storm

Hīs rēbus pāce cōnfirmātā, post diem quārtum quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs duodēvīgintī, dē quibus suprà dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre

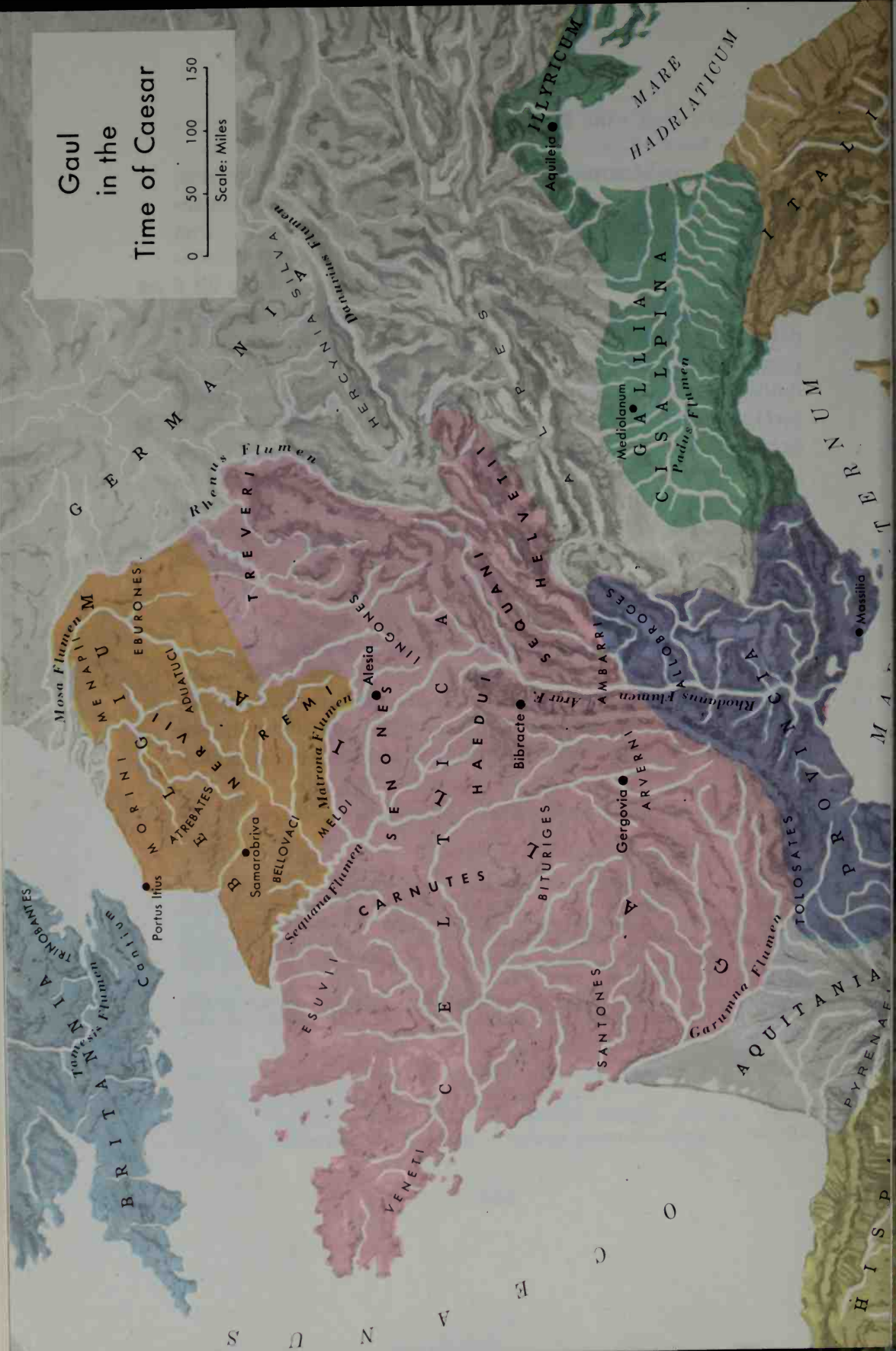
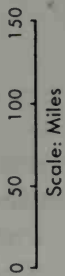
723-734    datūrōs: for "sē datūrōs esse." quaeque = "et ea quae." imperāssēt: *what he should require.* suprà: see line 630. ōrātōris modō: *as an ambassador.* eius reī: the seizure of Commius. ignōscerētur: *impers.; tr. that they might be pardoned.* quod: introduces "intulissent." cum petīssēt: *though they had sought.* illī: marks change of subject. remigrāre: *to move back from their strongholds to their farms.*

737-739    post . . . quam: "diē quārtō postquam." est in Britanniam ventum: *Britain was reached.* nāvēs: *nom.* suprà: see line 651. sustulerant: *had taken on board.*

726-730    modus: character, manner    ultrō: of their own accord



Gaul  
in the  
Time of Caesar



portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum appropinquārent 740  
 Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō  
 cōorta est, ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae  
 eōdem, unde erant profectae, referrentur, aliae ad inferiōrem  
 partem insulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, magnō suō  
 cum periculō dēicerentur; quae tamen, ancorīs iactīs, cum 745  
 fluctibus complērentur, necessariō adversā nocte in altum  
 prōvectae, continentem petiērunt.

### Many Ships are Wrecked off the British Coast

Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs  
 aestūs maximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōsuēvit, nostrisque id  
 erat incognitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quibus 750  
 Caesar exercitum trāsportāverat, quāsque in āridum sub-  
 dūxerat, aestus complēbat et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant  
 dēligātae, tempestās afflictabat, neque ūlla nostrīs facultās  
 aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvi-  
 bus frāctīs, reliquae cum essent, fūnibus, ancorīs reliquisque 755  
 armāmentīs āmissīs, ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, magna tōtius  
 exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae,  
 quibus reportārī possent, et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendās  
 nāvēs erant ūsuī, et, quod omnibus cōnstābat hiemārī in Galliā  
 oportēre, frūmentum in hīs locīs in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat. 760

740-747 solvērunt: set sail. quae . . . complērentur: nevertheless, the ships cast anchor, but when (or since) they began to fill. necessariō . . . prōvectae . . . petiērunt: they were forced to put out . . . and make for. adversā nocte: abl. abs.; in the face of night.

748-760 lūna plēna: the night of August 30. quī diēs: a time which. maritimōs aestūs maximōs: the tides often rise to 20 or 25 feet. nostrīs incognitum: the Romans knew little about tides, as the Mediterranean is an almost tideless sea. longās nāvēs . . . complēbat et onerāriās . . . afflictabat: tr. by turning into the pass. voice, thus keeping the Latin order with its emphasis on "longās nāvēs" and "onerāriās." neque ūlla: tr. as if "et nūlla." complūribus nāvibus: tr. the abl. abs. and "cum" by as. ad reficiendās nāvēs: with "ūsū"; for repairing ships. omnibus cōnstābat: it was generally agreed. hiemārī oportēre: that they ought to pass the winter.

743-747 eōdem, adv.: to the same place prōvehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum: carry out

749-756 aestus, -ūs: tide auxilior, -ārī: lend help armāmenta, -ōrum: rigging, tackle

## The Britons Plan to Renew the War

Quibus rēbus cognitīs prīncipēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē collocūtī sunt. Cum et equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse intellegerent et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cognōscerent, 765 optimum factū esse dūxērunt, rebellīōne factā, frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōdūcere, quod hīs superātīs aut reditū interclūsīs nēminem postea bellī inferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōnfidēbant. Itaque paulātīm ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex agrīs 770 dēdūcere coepērunt.

### Caesar Repairs his Fleet

At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cognōverat, tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs dare intermiserant, fore id quod accidit suspicābātur. Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs 775 cotīdiē in castra cōnferēbat et, quae gravissimē afflictae erant nāvēs, eārum mātēriā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur et quae ad eās rēs erant ūsuī ex continentī comparārī iubēbat. Itaque, cum summō studiō ā mīlitibus administrārētur, duodecim nāvibus āmissīs, satis commodē nāvīgāre potuit.

765-767     *factū*: the abl. supine is used as an abl. of respect with some adjectives; "optimum factū": *the best course to follow*; "optimum esse" has as subjects "prohibēre" and "prōdūcere." *dūxērunt*: *they thought*. *rebellīōne factā*: tr. as if "rebelliōnem facere." *rem*: *the campaign*. *hīs superātīs*, etc.: the ablatives absolute have the force of conditional clauses.

772-779     *ex eō quod*: *from the fact that*. *id*: subject of "fore." *suspiciābātur*: *was beginning to suspect*. *ad*: *to meet*. *quae . . . nāvēs*: the antecedent is included in the rel. cl.; tr. as though it read "eārum nāvium quae." *mātēriā, aere*: note the case. *quae*: supply "ea" as antecedent; *whatever*. *nāvibus āmissīs*: abl. abs., with concessive force.

765-768     *colloquor, -ī*: confer     *exiguitās, -tātis*: smallness     *rebelliō, -ōnis*: renewal of hostilities     *cōnfidō*: be confident, feel sure

772-779     *ēventus, -ūs*: disaster; accident     *intermittō*: cease     *commodē*: easily, readily; *satis commodē*: reasonably well

## The Britons Attack a Foraging Party

Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōsuētūdine ūnā frūmen- 780  
tātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ūllā ad id  
tempus bellī suspīciōne interpositā, — cum pars hominum  
in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, — eī quī  
prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant Caesarī nūntiāvērunt  
pulverem maiōrem quam cōsuētūdō ferret in eā parte vidērī 785  
quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id quod erat  
suspiciātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōsiliī, cohortēs  
quae in statiōnibus erant sēcum in eam partem proficiscī,  
ex reliquīs duās in statiōnem succēdere, reliquās armārī et  
cōnfestim sēsē subsequī iussit. Cum paulō longius ā castrīs 790  
prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et  
cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conicī animadvertit.  
Nam quod, omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmesso frūmentō, pars  
ūna erat reliqua, suspiciātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs,  
noctū in silvīs dēlituerant; tum dispersōs, dēpositīs armīs 795  
in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī, paucīs interfectīs reliquōs  
incertīs ordinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs  
circumdederant.

780-789 legiōne missā, suspīciōne interpositā: tr. these ablatives absolute by principal clauses; insert *but now* as a connective before the main cl. "eī . . . nūntiāvērunt." frūmentātum: the acc. supine is used after verbs of motion to express purpose; *to forage*. neque . . . interpositā: *no suspicion . . . had arisen*. hominum: the Britons. in agrīs remanēret: to disarm suspicion. in statiōne: a cohort or half cohort was placed at each gate of the camp to guard against surprise. quam . . . ferret: *than usual*. id quod erat: *what was actually the case*. aliquid novī cōsiliī: *some fresh design*. armārī: *to arm themselves*.

790-797 paulō longius: *some little distance*. cōnfertā legiōne: abl. abs. ex reliquīs partibus: *from the rest of the neighborhood*. dēlituerant: *had hidden*; from "dēlitescō." dispersōs: supply "nostrōs." incertīs ordinibus: abl. abs.; *whose ranks were unformed*.

783-789 ventitō, -āre: keep coming  
succēdō, -ere: take the place of, relieve

792-793 cōnfertus: crowded together

pulvis, pulveris: dust; cloud of dust

dēmetō, supine dēmessum: reap, cut





### The Britons' Method of Chariot Fighting

Genus hoc est ex essedīs pugnae. Prīmō per omnēs partēs  
 800 perequitant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum  
 et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant, et cum sē  
 inter equitum turmās īnsinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et  
 pedibus proeliantur. Aurīgae interim paulātim ex proeliō  
 excēdunt atque ita currūs collocant, ut, sī illī ā multitudīne  
 805 hostium premantur, expeditum ad suōs receptum habeant.

799-801 hoc: as follows. equōrum: subjective gen. ōrdinēs: the enemy's  
 ranks.

799-805 essedum: chariot perequitō, -āre: ride through; ride about  
 strepitus, -ūs: noise, din rota: wheel sē īnsinuāre: work one's way into  
 receptus, -ūs: means of retreat



Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliis praestant ac tantum ūsū cotīdiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt, utī in dēclīvī ac praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō insistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōsuērint. 810

802-810 equitum: their own cavalry; when the fighting men dismounted from the chariots, the British line was made up of bodies of cavalry and men on foot; the chariots meanwhile lined up in the rear. cum, when = whenever is used with the indic. ("insinuāvērunt"). illi: the fighting men. expeditum receptum: a ready retreat. utī . . . cōsuērint (= "cōnsuēverint"): result cl. depending on "efficiunt." ac: and even. incitātōs: from "incitō"; at the gallop. iugō: a wooden crossbar resting on the horses' necks and supporting the pole.

806-810	mōbilitās: mobility	stabilitās: steadiness, staying power
praestō: display, exhibit	dēclīvis: sloping	praeceps, -cipitis: steep
moderor, -ārī: check, control	flectō: turn	tēmō, -ōnis: pole cito:
swiftly; citissimē: at top speed		

## Caesar Rescues the Seventh Legion

Quibus rēbus perturbātis nostrīs tempore opportūnissimō  
Caesar auxilium tulit; namque eius adventū hostēs cōnsti-  
tērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō, ad lacessen-  
dum hostem et ad committendum proelium aliēnum esse  
815 tempus arbitrātus suō sē locō continuit et, brevī tempore  
intermissō, in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur,  
nostrīs omnibus occupātis, quī erant in agrīs reliquī disces-  
sērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs  
quae et nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pugnā  
820 prohibērent.

## The Britons Assemble for a Final Effort

Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsērunt pau-  
citātemque nostrōrum mīlitum suīs praedicāvērunt et quanta  
praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī liberandī facultās  
darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt.  
825 Hīs rēbus celeriter magnā multitūdine peditātūs equitātūsque  
coāctā, ad castra vērunt.

## The Britons are Defeated

Caesar, etsī idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore  
vidēbat, — ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte perīculum

811-819 nostrīs: dat. with "auxilium tulit." quō factō: concessive; in spite of this. aliēnum: modifies "tempus." suō locō: place where. quī erant reliquī: supply "ei" as antecedent. quae . . . continērent: which had the effect of keeping, severe enough to keep.

823-824 suī liberandī: of freeing themselves; for the construction see Appendix, Section 296(c). expulissent: plup. subj. in subordinate cl. in ind. disc., representing an original fut. perf. indic.; if they should drive.

827-828 idem fore ut: "idem" is acc. subject of "fore." ut effugerent: in apposition with "idem." ut: namely that. essent pulsī: see note on "expulissent," line 824.

813-814 lacessō, -ere, -ivī, -itum: provoke; harass aliēnus: unfavorable



effugerent, — tamen nactus equitēs circiter trīgintā, quōs Commius Atrebās (dē quō ante dictum est) sēcum trānsportā-<sup>830</sup> verat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōstituit. Commissō proeliō, diūtius nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī quantum cursū et vīribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex eīs occīdērunt; deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificiīs incēnsīs<sup>835</sup> sē in castra recēpērunt.

### Caesar Returns to Gaul

Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vērērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum quem antea imperāverat duplicāvit, eōsque in continentem addūcī iussit; quod, propinquā diē aequinoctiī, infirmīs nāvibus hiemī<sup>840</sup> nāvīgatiōnem subiciendam nōn exīstimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervērērunt; sed ex eīs onerariae duae eōsdem portūs quōs reliquae capere nōn potuērunt et paulō infā dēlātae sunt.<sup>845</sup>

(*De Bello Gallico*, IV, 20-36)

830-834 ante: see lines 630 and 724. ac: but. tantō spatiō: the abl. of the route by which often expresses the space over which, and so is close to the acc. of extent of space in meaning. cursū et vīribus: lit. by speed and strength; as far as they were strong enough to run.

838-845 hīs: for them. propinquā diē, infirmīs nāvibus: ablatives absolute expressing cause. Caesar left Britain perhaps ten days before the equinox, after a stay of three weeks or, at most, a month. subiciendam: supply "esse." eōsdem . . . reliquae: the same harbors as the rest. paulō infā: farther to the south.

840 hiems: winter; stormy weather

### QUESTIONS

How many ships did Caesar have? What kinds of ships?

What was the result of the battle at the shore?

Describe the British method of chariot fighting.

What was the result of the Britons' final effort?

What terms of peace did Caesar require?



## 4. THE REVOLT OF THE NERVII

After his second expedition to Britain in 54 B.C., Caesar returned to Gaul and distributed his legions among many states. Soon, however, Ambiorix, king of the Eburones, attacked one of the Roman camps. Failing to capture the camp, he asked for a parley and persuaded the Romans, under promise of safe passage, to leave their fortified position and march off to join Labienus, some fifty miles to the south. The little force left the entrenchments at daybreak and were led into a trap from which escape was hopeless. When night fell only a few stragglers were left alive.

Elated by his success, Ambiorix persuaded the Aduatuci and the Nervii to join him in an attack on Cicero's camp.

### The Gauls Attack Cicero's Camp

Itaque cōfestim dīmissīs nūntiīs ad Ceutronēs, Grudiōs, Levacōs, quī omnēs sub eōrum imperiō sunt, quam maximās possunt manūs cōgunt, et dē imprōvisō ad Cicerōnis hīberna advolant, nōndum ad eum fāmā dē Titūrī morte perlātā. Huic  
850 quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nōnnūllī mīlitēs, quī lignātiōnis mūnitiōnisque causā in silvās discessissent, repentinō equitum adventū interciperentur. His circumventīs, magnā manū Eburōnēs, Nervī, Aduatuci atque hōrum omnium socii et clientēs legiōnem oppugnāre incipiunt. Nostrī celeriter  
855 ad arma concurrunt, vāllum cōnscendunt. Aegrē is diēs sustentātur, quod omnem spem hostēs in celeritāte pōnēbant atque hanc adeptī victōriam in perpetuum sē fore victōrēs cōnfidēbant.

Cicero at once tried to inform Caesar of his situation, but his messengers were intercepted. Meanwhile the Romans strengthened their fortifications and resisted the attacks of the enemy for several days.

Titurius and Cotta had been the generals in command of the force trapped and destroyed by the Gauls.

849-857 **advolant:** swoop down. **huic:** refers to Cicero; in his case too, as well as in that of Cotta and Titurius. **quod fuit necesse:** as was inevitable. **lignātiōnis mūnitiōnisque causā:** to gather wood for the fortification. **adepti:** part. with conditional force; if they won.

846-856 **cōnscendunt = statim** **dē imprōvisō:** suddenly **lignātiō, -ōnis:** gathering wood **repentinus:** sudden **sustentō, -āre:** withstand, endure



This view of the Colosseum shows the massive concrete structure which supported the seating area for 50,000 people. Crumbled by earthquakes in the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, portions of the outer arcade, with travertine facing, provided material for construction of palaces and churches during the Renaissance.

## Cicero Refuses to Accept the Terms of the Nervii

Tunc ducēs prīncipēsque Nerviorum, quī aliquem sermōnis  
 860 aditum causamque amīctiae cum Cicerōne habēbant, colloquī  
 sēsē velle dīcunt. Factā potestāte, eadem, quae Ambiorīx cum  
 Titūriō ēgerat, commemorant: omnem esse in armīs Galliam;  
 Germānōs Rhēnum trānsisse; Caesaris reliquōrumque hīberna  
 oppugnārī. Addunt etiam dē Sabīnī morte; Ambiorīgem  
 865 ostentant fideī faciendae causā. Errāre eōs dīcunt, sī quidquam  
 ab eīs praesidiī spērent quī suīs rēbus diffīdant; sēsē tamen hōc  
 esse in Cicerōnem populumque Rōmānum animō, ut nihil  
 nisi hīberna recūsant, atque hanc inveterāscere cōsuētūdinem  
 nōlint; licēre illīs per sē incolumibus ex hībernīs discēdere et,  
 870 quāscumque in partēs velint, sine metū proficīscī.

Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondit: Nōn esse cōsuē-  
 tūdinem populī Rōmānī accipere ab hoste armātō condi-  
 cionem; sī ab armīs discēdere velint, sē adiūtōre ūtantur  
 lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant.

## The Nervii Besiege the Roman Camp

875 Ab hāc spē repulsī Nervii vāllō pedum decem et fossā pedum  
 quīndecim hīberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrum annōrum  
 cōsuētūdine ā nōbīs cognōverant et quōsdam dē exercitū  
 nactī captīvōs ab hīs docēbantur; sed nūllā ferrāmentōrum  
 cōpiā, quae esset ad hunc ūsum idōnea, gladiīs caespitēs  
 880 circumcīdere, manibus sagulīsque terram exhaurīre cōgēbantur.

859-860 aliquem sermōnis aditum: *some claim to address.* causam amīctiae: *grounds of friendship.*

865-873 fideī faciendae causā: *in order to inspire credit (for their story).*  
 hōc animō: *so disposed toward ("in").* per sē: *as far as they were concerned.* sē  
 adiūtōre ūtantur: *they might use his (Cicero's) assistance.*

875-879 pedum decem: *in height.* pedum quīndecim: *in width at the top.*  
 cōsuētūdine: *from their association (with us).* nūllā cōpiā: *abl. abs.*

862-868 commemorō, -āre: *state, recount* errō, -āre: *be mistaken* diffidō:  
*distrust; despair* recūsō, -āre: *refuse* inveterāscō: *become established*

876-880 cingō: *encircle* ferrāmentum: *tool* caespes, -itis: *sod, turf*  
 circumcīdō: *cut around, cut* sagulum: *military cloak* exhauriō: *lift out;*  
*carry away*

Quā quidem ex rē hominum multītūdō cognōscī potuit; nam minus hōrīs tribus mīlium passuum trium in circuitū mūnitiōnem perfēcērunt. Reliquīs diēbus turrēs ad altitūdinem vāllī facere coepērunt.

The Nervii continued their vigorous attack on the Roman camp. They threw fireballs which, aided by a heavy wind, burned much of the camp. At one time victory seemed within their grasp.

At tanta mīlitum virtūs atque ea praesentia animī fuit ut, 885  
cum undique flammā torrērentur maximāque tēlōrum multītūdine premerentur suaeque omnia impedīmenta atque omnēs fortūnās cōnflagrāre intellegerent, nōn modo dē vāllō dēcēderet nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem quisquam; ac tum omnēs ācerimē fortissimēque pugnārent. 890

Hic diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit, sed tamen hunc habuit ēventum ut eō diē maximus numerus hostium vulnerārētur atque interficerētur. Paulum quidem intermissā flammā, et quōdam locō turrī adāctā et contingente vāllum, tertiae cohortis centuriōnēs ex eō quō stābant locō recessērunt suōsque 895  
omnēs remōvērunt; nūtū vōcibusque hostēs, sī introīre vellent, vocāre coepērunt; quōrum prōgredi ausus est nēmō. Tum ex omnī parte lapidibus coniectīs dēturbātī, turrisque succēnsa est.

883-884 reliquīs diēbus: on the days that followed. ad altitūdinem vāllī: (corresponding) to the height of the (Roman) rampart.

885-889 ea: such. praesentia animī: presence of mind or possibly resolution. cum: although. maximā . . . multītūdine: by a hail of missiles. fortūnās: possessions. sed paene . . . quisquam: but scarcely anyone even looked behind him.

891-896 hunc habuit ēventum: the result was. nūtū vōcibusque: by signs and shouts.

886-888 torreō: scorch dēcēdō: leave

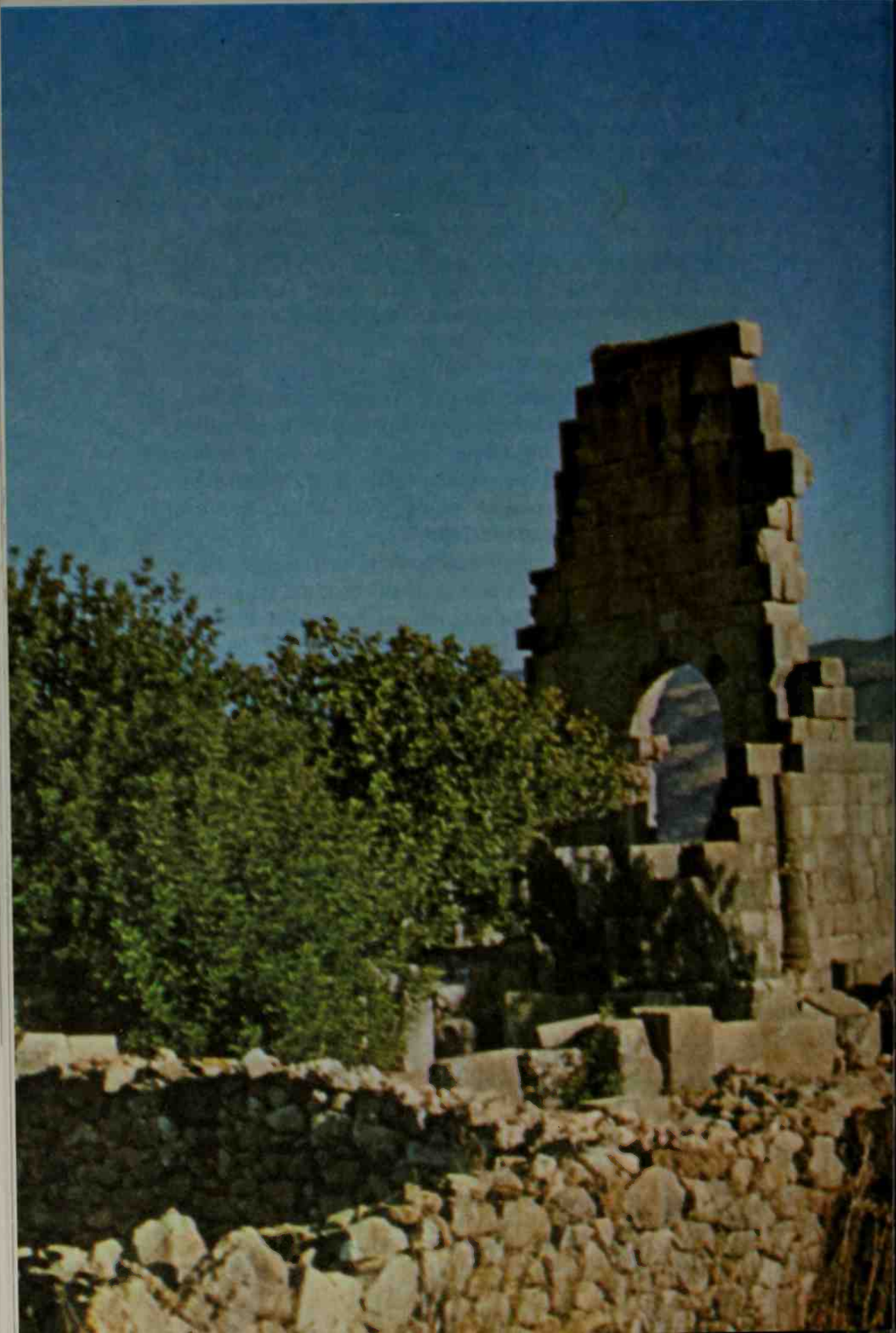
893-894 intermittō: abate adigō, -ere: move up contingō, -ere: touch

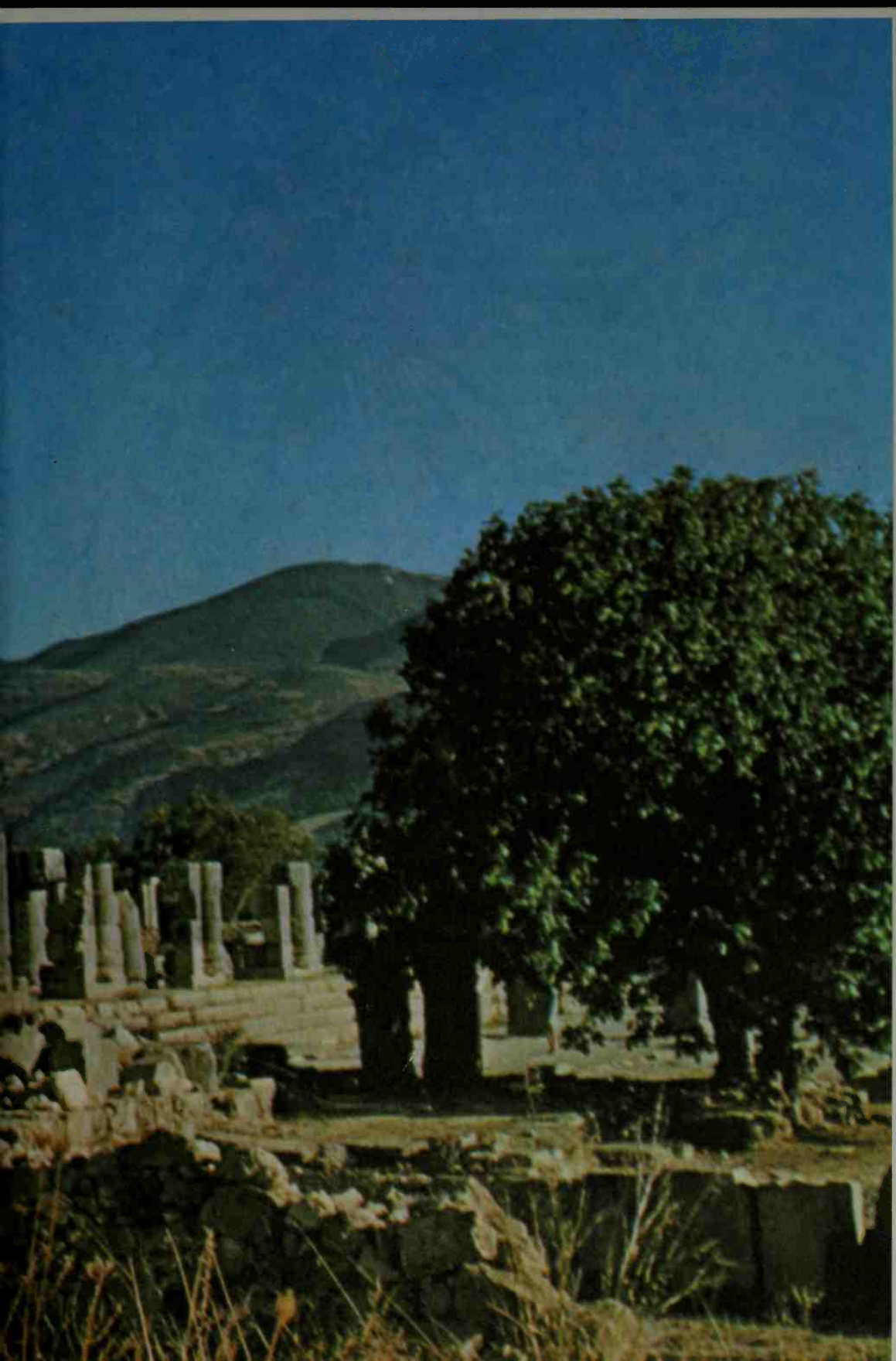
### 325

An arch stands amid ruins of the ancient Roman city of Volubilis in Morocco, located twelve miles north ► of the modern town of Meknes.

Noverre Musson









### The Rival Centurions

Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, quī prīmīs  
 900 ōrdinibus appropinquārent, T. Pullō et L. Vorēnus. Hī per-  
 petuās inter sē contrōversiās habēbant, uter alterī anteferrētur,  
 omnibusque annīs dē locō summīs simultātibus contendēbant.  
 Ex hīs Pullō, cum ācerrimē ad mūnitiōnēs pugnārētur, “Quid  
 dubitās,” inquit, “Vorēne? aut quem locum tuae probandae

899-904 quī . . . appropinquārent: so brave indeed that they were nearing pro-  
 motion to first rank. uter . . . anteferrētur: which was the better man. omnibus  
 annīs: year after year. dē locō: for promotion. summīs simultātibus: with the  
 keenest competition. quid: why? locus: chance, occasion.

901-904 anteferō: prefer locus: position, promotion simultās, -tātis:  
 rivalry, jealousy quid: why locus: chance



virtūtis expectās? Hic diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiis iudicābit.” 905  
 Haec cum dīxisset, prōcēdit extrā mūnitiōnēs, quaeque pars  
 hostium cōnfertissima est vīsa, in eam irrumpit. Nē Vorēnus  
 quidem sēsē vāllō continet, sed omnium veritus exīstimātiōnem  
 subsequitur.

Mediocrī spatiō relictō Pullō pīlum in hostēs immittit atque 910  
 ūnum ex multitūdine prōcurrentem trāicit; quō percussō et  
 exanimātō, hunc scūtīs prōtegunt hostēs, in illum ūniversī  
 tēla coniciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem. Trāns-  
 figitur scūtum Pullōnī et verūtum in balteō dēfigitur. Āvertit  
 hic cāsus vāgīnam et gladium ēdūcere cōnantī dextram morātur 915  
 manum, impedītumque hostēs circumsistunt. Succurrit ini-  
 mīcus illī Vorēnus et labōrantī subvenit. Ad hunc sē cōnfestim  
 ā Pullōne omnis multitūdō convertit; illum verūtō trānsfixum  
 arbitrantur. Vorēnus gladiō rem comminus gerit atque ūnō  
 interfectō reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius īstat, in 920  
 locum dēiectus īferiōrem concidit. Huic rūsus circumventō  
 fert subsidium Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs complūribus  
 interfectīs summā cum laude sēsē intrā mūnitiōnēs recipiunt.  
 Sīc fortūna in contentiōne et certāmine utrumque versāvit,  
 ut alter alterī inimīcus auxiliō salutīque esset, neque dīiudicārī 925  
 posset uter utrī virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.

908 omnium existimatiōnem: what everyone would think.

910-916 mediocrī . . . relictō: at a moderate distance. quō percussō et exani-  
 mātō, hunc . . . prōtegunt: the ordinary construction would be “quem percussum  
 et exanimātum prōtegunt”; the construction as it stands is due to the writer’s  
 wish to contrast “hunc” and “illum.” illum = “Pullōnem.” Pullōnī: dat. of  
 interest, the person affected; the shield, (unfortunately) for Pullo, was pierced;  
 Pullo, unfortunately, had his shield pierced. āvertit . . . vāgīnam: this accident  
 threw his scabbard out of place. cōnantī: supply “ei”; as he tried. morātur:  
 transitive. impedītum: supply “eum”; while he was thus hampered.

916-926 inimīcus: his rival. rem gerit: fights. in locum . . . concidit: he  
 stumbled into a hole and fell. rūsus: in turn. in contentiōne et certāmine: in  
 their bitter rivalry. utrumque versāvit: shuttled them back and forth. uter . . .  
 vidērētur: which was to be considered the better man in valor.

910-915 mediocris: moderate; small percutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussum: strike  
 through, pierce exanimātus: unconscious, stunned trānsfigō: pierce  
 verūtum: dart; javelin balteus: sword belt vāgīna: scabbard

919-925 comminus: at close quarters ambō: both versō, -āre: treat,  
 deal with dīiudicō, -āre: decide





The Great Baths in the photograph above represent only a small portion of the huge complex of buildings forming Hadrian's Villa near Tivoli. Constructed between 118 A.D. and 138 A.D., the "villa" was comparable to a rural city and comprised more than five times the 150 acres throughout which ruins may now be seen.

## Cicero Tries to Inform Caesar of his Danger

Quantō erat in diēs gravior atque asperior oppugnātiō, tantō crēbriōrēs litterae nūntiūque ad Caesarem mittēbantur; quōrum pars dēprehēnsa in cōspectū nostrōrum mīlitum cum cruciātū necābātur. Erat ūnus intus Nervius, nōmine Verticō, 930 locō nātus honestō, quī ā primā obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat, suamque eī fidem praestiterat. Hic servō spē lībertātis magnisque persuādet praemiīs ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hās ille in iaculō illigātās effert, et Gallus inter Gallōs sine ūllā suspiciōne versātus ad Caesarem pervenit. 935 Ab eō dē periculīs Cicerōnis legiōnisque cognōscitur.

Caesar, now informed of the critical situation, alerted the commanders of three of the camps. He ordered Crassus to set out at once and join him; Fabius, to relocate his troops; and Labienus, if he thought it advisable, to advance to the lands of the Nervii. Caesar himself remained ready for action with four hundred cavalry.

Crassus and Fabius joined Caesar; Labienus held his ground but explained to Caesar his reasons for doing so.

## Caesar Sends a Dispatch to Cicero

Caesar, cōnsiliō eius probātō, etsī opīniōne trium legiōnum dēiectus ad duās redierat, tamen ūnum commūnis salūtis auxilium in celeritāte pōnēbat. Vēnit magnīs itineribus in Nerviorum finēs. Ibi ex captīvīs cognōscit quae apud Cicer- 940 ōnem gerantur quantōque in periculō rēs sit. Tum cuidam

927-934     **quantō . . . tantō**: ablatives of measure of difference; *the more serious . . . the siege became from day to day, the more frequent were the dispatches . . . sent . . . . cum cruciātū necābātur*: was tortured to death. **ūnus Nervius**: a single Nervian; Vertico was a nobleman and had probably brought his servants and followers with him. **intus**: adv.; *in the camp*. **locō . . . honestō**: of good family. **ā primā obsidiōne**: at the beginning of the siege. **ille**: the slave. **illigātās**: the dart was probably hollow with the letter contained in it.

937-941     **etsī . . . redierat**: *though, disappointed in his expectation of (having) three legions, he had been reduced (lit. he had returned) to two*. **ūnum**: the one and only. **apud Cicerōnem**: in Cicero's camp.

927-934     **asper**: rough; fierce, violent     **cruciātus, -ūs**: torture     **illigō, -āre**: bind

937-938     **opiniō**: expectation     **dēiciō**: cast down; disappoint

- ex equitibus Gallīs magnīs praemiīs persuādet utī ad Cicerōnem epistulam dēferat. Hanc Graecīs cōnscrip̄tam litterīs mittit, nē, interceptā epistulā, nostra ab hostibus cōnsilia cognōs-
- 945 cantur. Sī adire nōn possit, monet ut trāgulam cum epistulā ad āmentum dēligātā intrā mūnitiōnēs castrōrum abiciat. In litterīs scribit sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter adfore; hortātur ut pristinam virtūtem retineat. Gallus perīculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, trāgulam mittit.
- 950 Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit, neque ā nostrīs bīduō animadversa tertiō diē ā quōdam mīlite cōspicitur, dēmp̄ta ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille perlēctam in conventū mīlitum recitat maximāque omnēs laetitiā afficit. Tum fūmī incendiōrum procul vidēbantur, quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum
- 955 expulit.

The Gauls, informed of the turn of events by scouts, now raised the siege of Cicero's camp and hurried to face Caesar. But Caesar, through his own scouts, learned of the approach of the Gauls; he slowed his march and strengthened his position.

### Caesar Induces the Enemy to Attack him on his own Ground

- Eō diē parvulīs equestribus proeliīs ad aquam factīs utrīque sēsē suō locō continent: Gallī, quod ampliōres cōpiās, quae nōn-
- dum convēnerant, expectābant; Caesar, sī forte timōris simulātiōne hostēs in suum locum ēlicere posset, ut citrā
- 960 vallem prō castrīs proeliō contenderet; sī id efficere nōn posset,

943-946 **epistulam**: the historian Dio Cassius says that the message read: "Caesar to Cicero. Be of good courage. Expect aid." **adire**: get into the camp. **āmentum**: a leather strap attached to the middle of the spear to give impetus to the throw.

950-953 **cāsū adhaesit**: chanced to lodge. **perlēctam . . . recitat**: he read the letter over and then read it aloud. **fūmī incendiōrum**: columns of smoke from burning buildings.

956-960 **parvulīs proeliīs**: skirmishes. **sī . . . contenderet**: Caesar's thought is, "if I can ("poterō") lure the enemy . . . , I shall fight . . ." **sī . . . nōn posset**: failing that.

945-946 **trāgula**: javelin **āmentum**: thong **dēligō, -āre**: fasten

950-952 **adhaereō, -ēre, -haesi**: stick to **dēmō**: take down **perlegō**: read through **recitō**: read aloud

959-960 **simulātiō, -ōnis**: pretense **ēliciō, -ere**: lure, entice **citrā**: on this side of

ut explorātīs itineribus minōre cum periculō vallem rīvumque trānsiret. Primā lūce hostium equitātus ad castra accēdit proeliumque cum nostrīs equitibus committit. Caesar cōsultō equitēs cēdere sēque in castra recipere iubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiōre vāllō mūnīrī portāsque obstruī atque in 965 hīs administrandīs rēbus quam maximē concursārī et cum simulātiōne agī timōris iubet.

### The Gauls are Routed

Quibus omnibus rēbus hostēs invītātī cōpiās trādūcunt aciemque inīquō locō cōstituunt; nostrīs vērō etiam dē vāllō dēductīs propius accēdunt et tēla intrā mūnitiōnem ex omni- 970 bus partibus coniciunt, praecōnibusque circummissīs prōnūntiārī iubent, seu quis Gallus seu Rōmānus velit ante hōram tertiam ad sē trānsire, sine periculō licēre; post id tempus nōn fore potestātem. Ac sic nostrōs contempsērunt, ut, obstrūctīs in speciem portīs singulīs ōrdinibus caespitem, quod eā 975 nōn posse intrōrumpere vidēbantur, aliī vāllum manū scindere, aliī fossās complēre inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā equitātūque ēmissō celeriter hostēs in fugam dat, sic utī omnīnō pugnandī causā resisteret nēmō; magnumque ex eīs numerum occīdit atque omnēs armīs exuit. 980

963-967 cōsultō: adv. with "cēdere." obstruī: by piling a single row of sods against the gate. As the whole wall was faced with sods, the gates would look solid, but the sods in the gateway could easily be knocked down when the Romans were ready to issue forth. concursārī, agī: the infinitives are impers.; that there should be as much running to and fro as possible and that the work should be done with a pretense of fear.

968-980 invītātī: lured on. seu quis . . . Rōmānus: if anyone (whether) Gaul or Roman. sic nostrōs . . . inciperent: after translating this sentence literally, try a freer translation in three English sentences: *The gates were blocked up, though merely for show ("in speciem"), with single rows of turfs. The Gauls, however, thought that they could not break in that way ("eā"). Utterly contemptuous of us, they began . . . resisteret: stood his ground. nēmō: in emphatic position; "omnīnō nēmō": not a single man. omnēs armīs exuit: lit. he robbed all of their arms ("armīs," abl.); all had to drop their arms.*

965 obstruō, -ere: barricade, block up

968-980 invītō, -āre: tempt praecō, -ōnis: herald scindō, -ere: tear down exuō: despoil, strip





The Acropolis (upper city), Athens. Here in the fifth century B.C., the Greeks erected beautiful temples constructed of white marble cut from the mountains nearby. The buildings which stood here contained magnificent art treasures.

## Caesar Joins Cicero, and Congratulates him on his Defense

Longius prōsequī veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdebant, omnibus suis incolumibus cōpiis eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervēnit. Institūtās turrēs, testudinēs, mūnitiōnēsque hostium admīrātur; legiōne prōductā, cognōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum mīlitem sine vulnere; ex hīs 985 omnibus iūdicat rēbus quantō cum periculō et quantā cum virtūte rēs sint administrātae. Cicerōnem prō eius meritō legiōnemque collaudat; centuriōnēs singillatim tribūnōsque mīlitum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem testimoniō Cicerōnis cognōverat. Dē cāsū Sabīnī et Cottae certius ex 990 captīvīs cognōscit.

Posterō diē, cōntiōne habitā, rem gestam prōpōnit; mīlitēs cōnsolātur et cōnfīrmat: quod dētrīmentum culpā et temeritāte lēgātī sit acceptum, hōc aequiōre animō ferendum docet, quod, beneficiō deōrum immortālium et virtūte eōrum 995 expiātō incommodō, neque hostibus diūtina laetitiae neque ipsīs longior dolor relinquātur.

In spite of Cicero's successful defense and Caesar's great victory there was still considerable unrest in Gaul. Caesar, therefore, decided to spend the winter there.

A rebel chief, Indutiomarus, attacked Labienus' camp but was badly defeated and the revolt was crushed. At the end of the campaign Caesar was able to report that "he now found Gaul somewhat more peaceable."

983-985     institūtās: tr. by a rel. cl.     prōductā: paraded before him.     nōn decimum quemque: not one soldier in ten.

989-996     appellat: addresses.     certius cognōscit: he obtains more accurate information.     quod dētrīmentum: the loss which.     culpā et temeritāte: the blame-worthy rashness.     hōc: a combination of abl. of measure of difference and abl. of cause; with all the greater calmness, because.     expiātō incommodō: the loss has been wiped out.

981-984     intercēdō: intervene, be in the way     prōducō: parade

988-996     singillatim: individually     cōntiō, -ōnis: parade     temeritās, -tātis: rashness     expiō: repair, make good     diūtīnus: lasting

The conquest of Gaul, begun in 58 B.C., seemed practically completed. But the Gallic nobles regretted the loss of their independence. They were encouraged by events at Rome, where it looked as if Caesar's political enemies would succeed in thwarting his plans for further conquests and secure his recall.

Among the Arverni was a patriotic young nobleman named Vercingetorix. With a genius for organization, he collected troops, made himself king of his tribe, and stirred up revolt in many states. The Gauls had at last found a national leader.

Vercingetorix avoided pitched battles with the Romans and adopted a scorched earth policy. Caesar made progress against the Gauls, but suffered a severe repulse when he besieged Gergovia. Then the Gauls, defeated in an attack on Caesar, retired to Alesia. Here they were shut up in the town by the Romans. A long siege followed; a large army of Gauls made an unsuccessful attempt to relieve the town. Vercingetorix was forced to surrender. The revolt was finally crushed the following year, 51 B.C.

Of the many men mentioned in Caesar's account of the Gallic War, two stand out preeminently, Caesar himself and his chief opponent Vercingetorix. The latter, alone of the chiefs of Gaul, was able, by force of character and tact, to unite the discordant elements of Gaul and to weld them into a single force; "he drove one of the greatest generals of the world, whose army was in all but numbers far superior to his, to the point of withdrawing from the theater of war" (T. Rice Holmes).

### QUESTIONS

How did Caesar, after returning to Gaul, distribute his legions?

Why did Ambiorix, king of the Eburones, attack one of the Roman camps?

Although he failed in his attack, what plan did he persuade the Romans to follow? How did his plan succeed?

What Gallic tribes now joined Ambiorix in his attempt to attack Cicero's camp?

What was Cicero's reply to the Gauls' demand for surrender?

How did the Romans, under Cicero's leadership, defend their camp?

What further steps did Cicero take to save the situation?

What traits of character are highlighted by the story of Pullo and Vorenus?

How did Cicero eventually get through to Caesar and inform him of his danger?

What general plan of troop arrangement did Caesar now adopt to rescue Cicero?

The Gauls who were besieging Cicero's camp were now "on the horns of a dilemma." How did they act?

How did Caesar's strategy pay off?

What plan did Caesar adopt to prevent further Gallic revolts?





## Ovid

PUBLIUS OVIDIUS NASO, Ovid (43 B.C.-17 A.D.). Born at Sulmo in Central Italy, Ovid was trained as a lawyer and held minor public offices until his decision to devote himself entirely to poetry. In 9 A.D., Ovid was banished by the Emperor Augustus and spent the last years of his life in exile at Tomis.

Some of his more important writings are the *Metamorphoses* (15 books of stories from Greek mythology, mostly involving changes of form); *Fasti* (6 books on the first 6 months of the Roman year, including history, astronomy, and religion); *Tristia* (5 books of letters from Ovid in exile); and *Epistulae ex Ponto* (4 more books of a similar nature).

Although it would be foolish to pretend that Ovid was a profound writer, the winsome quality prevalent throughout his work and the extensive influence he exerted upon Latin and European letters have won for him a position of respect among classical writers. Ovid writes to entertain, but his work goes beyond the level of the naive reader. He is frank and light-handed; his stories are innocent and charming and they move swiftly. Ovid took the chaotic mass of Greek myths, never before portrayed in orderly fashion, and made both sense and good plots. Though he misses some of the deep meanings of the myths, he also omits the unseemly features that are typical of folklore. If his tales lack depth, they appear gay, neither serious nor dull, neither earnest nor pretentious. Indeed, it was through Ovid that the names of Greek myths became household words.

◀ The stadium on the island of Delos was situated in the mountains high above the sea. At some indeterminate time the Pythian games were transferred to this part of the country.



As a writer, Ovid has certain flaws. His characters are frequently shallow and naive with motives and feelings lightly sketched. The plots—which constitute the most significant part of the work—are occasionally repetitious. Ovid was able to create superbly entertaining stories. He was, however, unable in many instances to provoke much thought or deep feeling. Characterized by undeniable smoothness, his verses may become monotonous. Notice the repeated use of the formula:

Adjective A—Adjective B—Verb—Noun B—Noun A

and the slight modifications of this formula. There is a tendency toward a display of knowledge in this type of poetry. Characters are designated not by name but by some scholarly reference (a device that was later to be used extensively by Milton) designed for elegance and for the flattery of the sophisticated reader.

Standing midway between the Age of Augustus and the Silver Age of Latin literature, Ovid was a poet whose work was destined to survive the literary trends of succeeding generations. His work was in great favor during the Middle Ages with their tradition of “courtly love.” He was scrutinized and accepted by the humanists of the Renaissance. Now the poetry of Ovid has regained popularity in modern society.

## VERSE-RHYTHM (METER OF OVID AND HORACE)

1. The sources of rhythm in poetry are different in English and Latin. English depends on stress:

The stág at éve had drúnk his fíll  
Where dānced the móon on Mónan's ríll.

- Latin poetry depends on the length of syllables:

Fōrsītān|āudīē|rīs ālī|quām cēr|tāmīnē|cūrsūs

For purposes of scansion, long syllables (as in the example) are marked — and short syllables ~ : e.g., fīlīūs āudīmūs

Your own language, by the way, has long and short syllables, with the quality varying accordingly. Compare the following:

fāble	with	fābulous
tōne		tōnic
lēthal		lēthargy .

2. A *Foot* is a combination of syllables, like a bar in music. Typical feet are | — ~ ~ | and | — — | . Compare | d d d | and | d d | .

The foot  $\text{—}\sim$  is called a *Dactyl* (from the Greek word for finger), and  $\text{—}\text{—}$  is called a *Spondee*. We will concentrate on these two. In scanning, we divide feet from each other by bar-lines.

3. Note that a long syllable  $\text{—}$  is twice as long as a short syllable  $\sim$ . So  $\text{—}$  is equal to  $\sim\sim$ . Very often in Latin verse,  $\text{—}\text{—}$  and  $\text{—}\sim$  are interchangeable.

4. In the selections from Ovid, the lines are made up on the base

$\text{—}\sim   \text{—}\sim   \text{—}\sim   \text{—}\sim   \text{—}\sim   \text{—}\sim$	
In the first 4 feet any $\text{—}\text{—}$ may be replaced by $\text{—}\sim$ . How many combinations are possible?	The 5th foot is almost always $\text{—}\sim\sim$ . The final syllable may be $\sim$ or $\text{—}$ .

This line is called a *Dactylic Hexameter*, i.e., 6 feet of dactyls or their equivalents. Here are some possible rhythm-plans in this kind of line; the other 13 may be invented by the students:

Down in the|deep dark|dell was an|old cow |lazily|chewing.  
 Down at the|end of the|dell were|old cattle |lazily|chewing.  
 Down, deep|down, in the|dell were|old cows |lazily|chewing.

5. The first, and persistent, problem in reading Latin verse is to distinguish readily between long and short syllables.

A syllable is long:

- (a) if it contains a long vowel: *vēlōcēs*, *rūmor*;
- (b) if it contains a diphthong: *lāude*, *prāemia*;
- (c) if its vowel is followed by two consonants or by x: *pōssēs*, *dūm notat*, *opifēx*; the two consonants need not be in the same word.

When a mute (p, b, t, d, c, g) is followed by a liquid (l, r) the syllable may be long or short: *pātrēs* or *pātrēs*.

A syllable not long is short.

Note:

(a) The letter h is ignored in scansion; in the group *vincar habēbis*, the syllable *-car* does not become long.

(b) The letter i is a consonant when it stands at the beginning of a word and is followed by a vowel, and also when it appears in a word between two vowels: *iuvenis*, *Trōia*.

(c) The combination *qu* is treated as a single consonant: so, in *cōnsequitur*, the second syllable is short.

6. Here are some handy devices:

(a) Read aloud, actually or mentally, as much as you can. Most of you will soon pick up the rhythm by ear.



(b) Learn to recognize a few common long vowels in endings:

	<i>nom.</i>	<i>gen.</i>	<i>dat./abl.</i>	<i>acc.</i>
<i>sing.</i>		ī, ūs	ō, ī	
<i>plur.</i>	ī, ēs, ūs	ōrum ārum	īs	ās, ōs ēs, ūs

amās, amāmus, monēs, monēmus, audīs, audīmus, amābāmus etc.

(c) If there are no rules to guide you, long syllables will have to be recognized by ear, by calculation, or just plain luck. Practice reading aloud the following, pronouncing clearly, keeping the voice even, and using very little stress on long syllables:

vīvit, et instantem turbam violenta procōrum  
dīxerat, ac nīmīōs iuvenum damnārat amōrēs  
obstipuit tollēnsque manūs, "Ignōscite," dīxit

Now try:

Dum dubitat, tremebunda videt pulsāre cruentum  
membra solum, retrōque pedem tulit ōraque buxō  
pallidiōra gerēns exhorruit aequoris īnstar,  
quod tremit exigūa cum summum stringitur aurā.

7. When the last syllable of a word ends in a vowel or diphthong, or in *am, em, um*;

and when the next word begins with a vowel or *h*:

then this final syllable is slurred, i.e., the vowel(s) or group is run over into the next word. This is known as *Elision*. It occurs in the poetry of many languages.

mēt(a) est; penduntqu(e) ex; quīqu(e) aethera; vi(ae) est;  
faci(em) ac; magn(um) et; cert(um) est; peter(e) hōc;  
mōnstr(um) horrend(um) infōrm(e) ingēns.

8. As in music, a break in rhythm often occurs within a line. This break is called a *Caesura*. The *Caesura* comes at the end of a word but within the verse foot. The *Caesura* most often occurs within the third foot of the verse. It may occur in the second or fourth foot, instead of in the third, or in both second and fourth feet

dum notat haec hospes, || dēcursa novissima mēt(a) est  
ille fuit, superābat enim; || nec dicere possēs

## ATALANTA

The goddess Venus tells Adonis the story of Atalanta and Hippomenes.

### Fair the Reward; High the Stakes

Forsitan audieris aliquam certamine cursū  
 vĕlōcēs superāsse virōs. Nōn fābula rūmor  
 ille fuit, superābat enim; nec dīcere possēs,  
 laude pedum fōrmaene bonō praestantior esset.  
 Territa sorte dēi per opācās innuba silvās  
 vīvit, et īstantem turbam violenta procōrum  
 condiōne fugat, "Nec sum potiēda, nisi," inquit,  
 "victa prius cursū. Pedibus contendite mēcum;  
 mors pretium tardīs; ea lēx certāminis estō."

5

Sēderat Hippomenēs cursūs spectātor īnīquī,  
 et "Petitur cuiquam per tanta perīcula coniūnx?"  
 dīxerat, ac nīmīōs iuvenum damnārat amōrēs.

10

1-4 **audieris** = "audiveris"; perf. subj., *you may have heard*. **aliquam**: from "aliquis"; *a certain girl*. **cursūs**: gen. **superāsse** = "superāvisse." **fābula**: *an idle tale*. **rūmor**: subject of "fuit." **nec dīcere possēs**: the Latin use of the second pers. sing. as indefinite is like that of English (*nor could you* (i.e., *anyone*) *have said*); French uses "on" to the same effect. **laude . . . esset**: *whether (supply "utrum") she was more distinguished for the fame of her speed* (lit. *feet*) or ("ne") *the charm of her beauty*.

5-9 **sorte**: When Atalanta, the daughter of Schoeneus, a king of Boeotia, had consulted the oracle about a husband, the god had replied, "Avoid a husband. Yet you will not escape marriage." **violenta condiōne fugat**: in translating, transfer "violenta," which modifies the subject, to "condiōne"; *with harsh terms she repelled*. **potiēda**: from "potior"; *I am not to be won*. **pedibus**: *in a race*. **tardīs**: dat.; *death (shall be) the reward for those who lag behind*. **estō**: fut. imperative of "sum"; *let that be the condition*. Even on this condition a throng of suitors came to try their fate.

10-12 Hippomenes, the son of Megareus of Onchestus in Boeotia, had been invited to act as a judge at one of the contests. **īnīquī**: *ill-matched*. **cuiquam**: from "quisquam"; poetic dat. of agent. **nīmīōs amōrēs**: *the headstrong love*. **damnārat** = "damnāverat."

1-4 **forsitan**: perhaps **cursus**: race **vĕlōx**: swift **laus, laudis**: fame  
**fōrma**: beauty **praestāns**: distinguished

5-9 **sors, sortis**: oracle **opācus**: shady **innubus**: unmarried  
**īnstāns**: insistent **procus**: suitor **potior, -īri**: obtain **tardus**: slow,  
 sluggish

12 **nimius**: excessive, headstrong **damnō**: condemn

- Ut faciem et positō corpus vēlāmine vīdit,  
 obstipuit tollēnsque manūs, "Ignōscite," dīxit,  
 15 "quōs modo culpāvī. Nōndum mihi praemia nōta."  
 Dum notat haec hospes, dēcurſa novissima mēta est,  
 et tegitur fēstā victrīx Atalanta corōnā.  
 Dant gemitum victī, penduntque ex foedere poenās.

### Hippomenes Will Face the Risk

- Nōn tamen ēventū iuvenis dēterritus hōrum  
 20 cōstitit in mediō, vultūque in virgine fīxō,  
 "Quid facilem titulum superandō quaeris inertēs?  
 Mēcum cōnfer!" ait; "seu mē fortūna potentem  
 fēcerit, ā tantō nōn indignābere vincī;  
 (namque mihī genitor Megareus Onchēstius: illī  
 25 est Neptūnus avus: pronepōs ego rēgis aquārum;  
 nec virtūs citrā genus est;) seu vincar, habēbis  
 Hippomenē victō magnum et memorābile nōmen."

13-15 **ut**: *when*. **positō** = "dēpositō"; translate abl. abs. first; *when she had laid aside her outer robe and he beheld . . .* **quōs**: rel. pron.; its antecedent is the subject of the verb "ignōscite." **modo**: *just now*. **praemia**: pl. in a kind of collective sense; *inducement*. **nōta**: supply "erant."

16-18 **notat**: While Hippomenes watched, he fell desperately in love with Atalanta and hoped that she would win. **haec**: the progress of the race and the girl's beauty. **mēta**: *the last lap of the race was run*. **tegitur victrix**: *was crowned victor*. **fēstā corōnā**: abl. of means; the laurel wreath was the symbol of victory. **victī**: from "vincō." **ex foedere**: *according to the contract*.

19-27 **ēventū hōrum**: *by the fate of these men*. **quid**: *why*. **facilem titulum**: *an easily won renown*. **superandō**: abl. of gerund; its object is "inertēs." **cōnfer**: imperative; *strive*. **seu . . . seu** (line 26): *if . . . or if*. **potentem**: *the winner*. **ā tantō**: *by one so important*. **indignābere**: second sing. fut. indic. of "indignor": *you will think it a disgrace*. **Onchēstius**: adj., of *Onchestus*. **ego**: supply "sum." **nec virtūs (mea) est citrā genus (meum)**: *nor is my manly worth inferior to my noble birth*. **Hippomenē victō**: abl. abs., expressing cause.

13-15	faciēs, -ēi: face; figure	vēlāmen: cloak	obstipēscō: be amazed
	ignōscō: forgive	culpō: blame	
16-18	notō: mark, notice	hospes: stranger	dēcurrō: run down
	fēstus: festal	gemitus: groan	pendō: pay
19-25	ēventus, -ūs: fate	vultus, -ūs: face, gaze	fīgō: fix
	inactive, sluggish	aiō: say	namque: for
	great-grandson	genitor: father	pronepōs:



### To Win or to Lose?

Tālia dīcentem mollī Schoenēia vultū  
 aspīcit, et dubitat, superārī an vincere mālit.  
 Atque ita "Quis deus hunc fōrmōsīs," inquit, "inīquus  
 perdere vult, cāraeque iubet discrīmine vītae  
 coniugium petere hoc? Nōn sum, mē iūdīce, tantī."

30

28-32 dīcentem: supply "eum." (utrum) mālit: whether she prefers. hunc: direct object of "perdere." fōrmōsīs: dat. with adj. "inīquus"; handsome men. discrīmine: at the risk. coniugium hoc: marriage with me. mē iūdīce: abl. abs.; if I am the judge. tantī: gen. of price; I am not worth so great a price.

28-32 mollis: soft, gentle aspīcō: gaze on inīquus: hostile cārus: dear  
 iūdex: judge



## Hippomenes Prays to Venus

- Iam solitōs poscunt cursūs populusque paterque,  
 cum mē sollicitā prōlēs Neptūnia vōce  
 35 invocat Hippomenēs, “Cytherēa,” que “comprecor, ausīs  
 adsit” ait, “nostrīs et quōs dedit, adiuvet ignēs.”  
 Dētulit aura precēs ad mē nōn invida blandās:  
 mōtaque sum, fateor, nec opis mora longa dabātur.  
 Est ager, indigenae Tamasēnum nōmine dīcunt,  
 40 tellūris Cypriae pars optima, quam mihi prīscī  
 sacrāvēre senēs templīsque accēdere dōtem  
 hanc iussēre meīs; mediō nitet arbor in arvō,  
 fulva comās, fulvō rāmīs crepitantibus aurō:  
 hinc tria forte meā veniēns dēcerpta ferēbam  
 45 aurea pōma manū; nūllīque videnda nisi ipsī  
 Hippomenēn adiū docuīque, quis ūsus in illīs.

### The First Apple

Signa tubae dederant, cum carcere prōnus uterque  
 ēmicat, et summam celerī pede libat arēnam.

36-46 *adsit*: may be near and assist. *ignēs*: the fire of love. (*agrum*) *Tamasēnum*: the field of Tamasus. *prīscī*: tr. as phrase, in ancient times. *templīs* . . . *meīs*: lit. bade this gift to be added to my temples. *comās*: acc. of respect, a Greek construction. *forte*: adv. *nūllī videnda* (nom.): invisible to all. *quis ūsus in illīs*: how to use the apples.

47-48 *carcere*: with “ēmicat”; from the barrier. *summam arēnam*: the surface of the sandy course.

33-45 *solitus*: accustomed *sollicitus*: anxious; suppliant *prōlēs*: offspring; youth *Neptūnius*, *adj.*: of Neptune, Neptunian *invocō*: call on  
*comprecor*: pray *ausum*: a bold deed *adiuvō*: aid *aura*: breeze  
*invidus*: envious, unfavorable *blandus*: pleasant, agreeable *fateor*: confess (*ops*), *opis*: aid *mora*: delay *indigena*: native *tellūs*: land  
*Cyprius*, *adj.*: of Cyprus, Cyprian *prīscus*: ancient *sacrō*: set apart as sacred, consecrate *dōs*, *dōtis*: (dowry); gift, offering *niteō*: gleam  
*arvum*: field *fulvus*: gold-colored *coma*: hair; foliage *crepitō*: crackle  
*dēcerptō*, -*cerpere*, -*cerpsī*, -*cerptum*: pluck off *pōmum*: apple  
 47-48 *tuba*: trumpet *carcer*, -*eris*: barrier *prōnus*: crouching low  
*ēmicō*: flash forth *libō*: skim over *arēna*: sand; ground

Adiciunt animōs iuvenī clāmorque favorque  
 verbaque dīcentum. "Nunc, nunc incumbere tempus! 50  
 Hippomenē, properā! Nunc vīribus ūtere tōtīs!  
 Pelle moram, vincēs!" Dubium, Megarēius hērōs  
 gaudeat an virgō magis hīs Schoenēia dictīs.  
 Ō quotiēns, cum iam posset trānsīre, morāta est,  
 spectātōsque diū vultūs invīta reliquit! 55  
 Āridus ē lassō veniēbat anhēlitus ōre,  
 mētaque erat longē. Tum dēnique dē tribus ūnum  
 fētibus arboreīs prōlēs Neptūnia mīsīt.  
 Obstipuit virgō nitidīque cupīdine pōmī  
 dēclīnat cursūs aurumque volūbile tollit. 60  
 Praeterit Hippomenēs; resonant spectācula plausū.

### The Second Apple

Illa moram celerī cessātaque tempora cursū  
 corrigit, atque iterum iuvenem post terga relinquit,  
 et rūsus pōmī iactū remorāta secundī  
 cōnsequitur trānsitque virum. 65

49-53 **clāmorque favorque**: shouts of applause; this is an example of hendiadys, the expression of a single idea by means of two words joined by "et" or "-que." **dīcentum** = "dīcentium"; shouts of applause and the words of those who cried to him lent encouragement to the young man. **incumbere**: depends on "tempus (est)." **ūtere**: imperative of "ūtor." **dubium**: supply "est utrum." **Megarēius**: son of Megareus. **dictīs**: noun; abl. of cause.

54-61 **cum iam**: just when. **spectātōs diū vultūs**: lit. his face long looked upon; after gazing long upon his face (as she could do while she ran even with him) she left him behind. **ē lassō ōre**: from his weary throat. **fētibus arboreīs** (adj.): fruits of the tree, i.e., the apples. **mīsīt**: threw (to one side of the course). **cupīdine**: in her eager desire. **spectācula**: the seats of the spectators; here the spectators themselves.

62-64 **celerī cursū**: putting on a spurt. **moram cessātaque tempora**: hendiadys; the time lost through the delay. **iactū**: at the tossing.

49-52 **adiciō, -ere**: add to      **incumbō**: exert one's self      **pellō**: put aside  
**dubius**: doubtful

56-61 **āridus**: dry      **lassus**: weary      **anhēlitus**: panting      **dēnique**:  
 at length      **fētus, -ūs**: fruit      **obstipēscō**: be astounded      **nitidus**: shining  
**dēclīnō**: turn aside      **volūbilis**: rolling      **praetereō**: pass      **plausus, -ūs**:  
 applause

62-64 **cessō**: waste (of time)      **corrīgō**: make up for      **iterum**: again  
**iactus, -ūs**: throwing      **remoror**: delay

## The Third Apple

Pars ultima cursūs

restābat. "Nunc," inquit, "ades, dea mūneris auctor."  
 Inque latus campī, quō tardius illa redīret,  
 iēcit ab obliquō nitidum iuvenāliter aurum.

70 An peteret, virgō vīsa est dubitāre; coēgī  
 tollere, et adiēcī sublātō pondera mālō,  
 impediūque oneris pariter gravitāte morāque.  
 Nēve meus sermō cursū sit tardior ipsō,  
 praeterita est virgō; dūxit sua praemia victor.

67-74 ades: imperative of "adsum"; be present now to help me. mūneris auctor: giver of my gift. quō: in order that. ab obliquō: sideways. iuvenāliter: with all his youthful strength. an: whether she should go after it. coēgī: Venus herself is telling the story. sublātō mālō: to the apple she picked up. impediī = "impedivī"; supply "eam." morā: the loss of time. nēve: and lest. tardior: longer. dūxit: led away; "dūcō" also means lead home as wife, i.e., marry. praemia: poetic pl.; his cherished prize.

67-73 restō: remain      mūnus, -eris: gift      tardē: slowly      pondus,  
 -eris: weight      gravitās: weight      sermō: story

### QUESTIONS

For what two qualities was Atalanta famous?  
 Why did she persistently refuse to marry?  
 What did she require of the suitor who should win her?  
 Who was Hippomenes and how did he become involved?  
 When he challenged Atalanta, what did he tell her about himself?  
 What were Atalanta's thoughts as she looked on Hippomenes?  
 Before entering the contest, to whom did Hippomenes pray for help? What answer was given to his request?  
 How did Hippomenes use the apples — especially the third — to win the race?  
 What additional help did Venus give Hippomenes with the third apple?  
 In your opinion was Atalanta happy at the outcome?

## NIOBE

Niobe was a proud queen: the talents of her husband Amphion, their noble birth, the pomp and power of their kingdom of Thebes, all helped to make her proud. But, above all, she was proud of her children.

One day a priestess had gone rushing through the streets, calling on the women of Thebes: "Come, crown your heads with laurel wreaths; offer incense and your prayers to Latona and her children." The women obeyed. Then Niobe appeared with her attendants. She swept her proud gaze over the throng and cried: "What madness is this, to honor gods of whom you have merely heard more highly than those you can see? Tantalus is my father; Jupiter and Atlas are my grandfathers. I am as beautiful as any goddess. Add to this my seven sons and seven daughters. Why ignore me in favor of Latona with her one son and one daughter?"

The women, awed by Niobe, removed their garlands and left the rites unfinished. Latona was indignant. She called on her children, Apollo and Diana, to avenge the insult offered to her by the queen. Soon Niobe's sons were slain by the arrows of Apollo.

### The Defiant Queen

Heu quantum haec Niobē Niobē distābat ab illā, 75  
quae modo Lātōis populum submōverat ārīs  
et mediam tulerat gressūs resupīna per urbem  
invidiōsa suīs, at nunc miseranda vel hostī.  
Corporibus gelidīs incumbit et ōrdine nūllō  
ōscula dispēnsat nātōs suprēma per omnēs. 80

75 Niobē (nom.) Niobē (abl.): Alas, how different was this Niobe from that Niobe.

76-80 gressūs: her course; had walked. invidiōsa suīs: an object of envy to her friends. vel: even.

76-80 modo: but now Lātōus: of Latona resupīnus: with head thrown back; proudly incumbō: throw one's self upon dispēnsō: bestow nātus: son suprēmus: last



Ā quibus ad caelum liventia bracchia tollēns,  
 "Pāscere, crūdēlis, nostrō, Lātōna, dolōre,  
 pāscere," ait, "satiāque meō tua pectora lūctū,  
 corque ferum satiā," dīxit; "per fūnera septem  
 85 efferor. Exsultā victrīxque inimīca triumphā.  
 Cūr autem victrīx? Miserae mihi plūra supersunt,  
 quam tibi fēlicī; post tot quoque fūnera vincō."

Dīxerat, et sonuit contentō nervus ab arcū,  
 quī praeter Niobēn ūnam conterruit omnēs.  
 90 Illa malō est audāx. Stābant cum vestibus ātrīs  
 ante torōs frātrum dēmissō crīne sorōrēs.  
 Ē quibus ūna trahēns haerentia vīscere tēla  
 impositō frātrī moribunda relanguit ōre.

### The Final Disaster

Altera sōlārī miseram cōnāta parentem  
 95 conticuit subitō duplicātaque vulnere caecō est.

81-85 ā quibus: from them (her sons). liventia: blackened with bruises. pāscere, satiā: imperatives. per . . . efferor: lit., through seven deaths I am carried forth (to burial); tr., I die seven deaths. exsultā . . . triumphā: exult, and triumph in your hateful victory.

86-90 plūra: nom. quoque: even. dīxerat: she finished speaking. contentō: tight-drawn, taut. malō audāx: emboldened by misfortune; "malō," abl. of cause.

91-95 dēmissō crīne: with loosened hair, as a sign of mourning. trahēns: while trying to draw. vīscere: from her brother's flesh; abl. of separation. tēla: poetic pl. for sing. impositō . . . ōre: sank down dying, with her face upon him. altera: a second. duplicāta est: was bent double. caecō: (a wound) from an unseen source.

81-85 pāscor, -ī: feed upon, with abl. satiō: glut ferus: bloodthirsty

86-90 supersum: be left sonō: sound, twang nervus: bowstring con-  
 terreō: terrify

91-95 torus: bier relanguēscō: sink down sōlor: console conticēscō,  
 -ere, conticui: fall silent

Haec frūstrā fugiēns collābitur, illa sorōrī  
 immoritur; latet haec; illam trepidāre vidērēs.  
 Sexque datīs lētō dīversaue vulnera passīs,  
 ultima restābat; quam tōtō corpore māter,  
 tōtā veste tegēns, "Ūnam minimamque relinque. 100  
 Dē multīs minimam poscō," clāmāvit, "et ūnam."  
 Dumque rogat, prō quā rogat, occidit.

## All Tears

### Orba resēdit

exanimēs inter nātōs nātāsque virumque,  
 dēriguitque malīs. Nullōs movet aura capillōs,  
 in vultū color est sine sanguine, lūmina maestīs 105  
 stant immōta genīs; nihil est in imāgine vīvum.  
 Nec flectī cervīx nec bracchia reddere mōtūs  
 nec pēs ire potest; intrā quoque vīscera saxum est.  
 Flet tamen, et validī circumdata turbine ventī  
 in patriam rapta est. Ibi fixa cacūmine montis 110  
 liquitur, et lacrimās etiam nunc marmora mānant.

### METAMORPHOSES, BOOK VI

96-100 *haec, illa, haec, illam*: four of the remaining daughters. *latet*: tries to hide. *illam . . . vidērēs*: you might have seen another rushing about in terror. *sex*: abl. abs. with "datīs" and "passīs" (from "patior," endure). *minimamque (nātū)*: and that the youngest.

101-105 *et ūnam*: and that but one. *prō quā*: supply antecedent "ea." *virum*: her husband, Amphion, in grief at the death of his sons, had taken his own life. *dēriguit malīs*: became rigid from her woes; grief turned her to stone. *sine sanguine*: bloodless.

106-110 *reddere mōtūs* = "movērī." *intrā . . . est*: within also, her vital organs are stone. *validī . . . turbine ventī*: by a whirling gust of violent wind. *patriam*: Phrygia, in Asia Minor.

111 *liquitur*: she continues to weep. *lacrimās marmora mānant*: tears trickle from her marble (face).

96-100 *collābor, -ī*: fall      *immorior*: die upon      *lētum*: death      *dīversus*: various

101-105 *orbus*: childless      *residō, -ere*: sit down      *exanimis*: lifeless  
*dērigescō, -ere, dērigui*: become stiff      *color*: complexion      *lūmina*: eyes

106-110 *immōtus*: fixed, motionless      *genae, -ārum*: cheeks; face      *imāgō*: picture  
*cervīx*: neck      *cacūmen*: peak

## QUESTIONS

- What was the cause of Niobe's pride?  
Why did she claim higher honors than Latona?  
How did Latona first punish Niobe for her pride?  
Why did Niobe's pride still endure in spite of this punishment?  
What further punishment did Latona inflict?  
What was Niobe's final request of Latona? What was Latona's answer?  
On whom did the final punishment fall and what was its nature?

## DAEDALUS

Daedalus, the cunning craftsman, was born in Athens, but had to leave the city because he had killed his nephew who surpassed him in skill. He went to Crete, where his fame won him the friendship of King Minos. Later Daedalus, incurring the king's displeasure, was imprisoned. Set free by the queen, Daedalus could not escape from Crete since Minos had seized all the ships on the coast. Daedalus, however, made good his escape by constructing wings for himself and his son Icarus.

### The Craftsman at Work

Daedalus intereā, Crētēn longumque perōsus  
exsilium tāctusque locī nātālis amōre,

112-113 Crētēn: acc. sing.; a Greek form. Crētēn longumque exsilium: *his long exile in Crete*; hendiadys (see note on line 49). perōsus: from "perōdi," *hate utterly*. tāctus amōre: *filled with longing*.

113 tangō: touch nātālis, *adj.*: of one's birth

clausus erat pelagō. "Terrās licet," inquit, "et undās  
obstruat: at caelum certē patet; ībimus illāc.  
Omnia possideat, nōn possidet āera Mīnōs."

115

Dixit, et ignōtās animum dīmīttit in artēs  
nātūramque novat. Nam pōnit in ōrdine pennās,  
atque ita compositās parvō curvāmine flectit,  
ut vērās imitētur avēs. Puer Īcarus ūnā  
stābat et, ignārus sua sē tractāre perīcla,  
ōre renīdentī modo, quās vaga mōverat aura,  
captābat plūmās, flāvam modo pollice cēram  
mollībat lūsūque suō mīrābile patris  
impediēbat opus.

120

125

### A Lesson in Aviation

Postquam manus ultima coeptō  
imposita est, geminās opifex librāvit in ālās  
ipse suum corpus, mōtāque pependit in aurā.

114-116 **clausus erat pelagō**: (could not escape from Crete because) *he was hemmed in by the sea*; "pelagō," abl. of means. **licet (Mīnōs) obstruat**: "licet" with the subj. has concessive force; *although Minos may block my way*. **at**: yet. **omnia**: all else. **possideat**: jussive subj., here with concessive force, *granted that he possess*. **āera**: Greek acc. sing.

117-124 **dīmīttit**: sets. **ignōtās artēs**: sciences never explored before. **nātūram novat**: alters the laws of nature. **pōnit . . . pennās**: lays feathers in order. **ita compositās**: when he had arranged them in this way. **ut . . . avēs**: to make them look like real birds' wings. **ūnā**: adv., beside him. **perīcla** = "perīcula"; the materials he was handling were to endanger his life. **ōre renīdentī**: with gleeful face. **modo . . . modo**: now . . . now, at one time . . . at another. **cēram mollībat** (= "mollīēbat"): softening the wax (that his father wished to set). **lūsū suō**: by his pranks. **-que**: and (as a result).

126-128 **manus ultima**: the finishing touches. **coeptō**: dat. with compound verb "impōnō." **librāvit**: balanced his body on his two wings. **pendit**: from "pendeō"; hung poised. **mōtā**: beaten (by his wings).

114-116 **pelagus**: sea **obstruō, -ere**: block up **pateō**: lie open **illāc**: by that route **possideō**: possess **āēr**: air

118-124 **novō**: change, make new **penna**: feather **curvāmen**: curve **flectō**: bend **imitor**: imitate **avis**: bird **tractō**: handle **captō**: catch at **plūma**: feather **flāvus**: yellow **pollex**: thumb **cēra**: wax **mollīō**: soften **lūsus, -ūs**: play, sport

126-127 **coeptum**: undertaking **impōnō**: place on **geminī**: double; two **opifex**: master workman







- Hōs aliquis tremulā dum captat harūndine piscēs,  
 145 aut pāstor baculō stīvāve innīxus arātor  
 vīdit et obstipuit, quīque aethera carpere possent  
 crēdidit esse deōs.

### Flying Too High

- Et iam Iūnōnia laevā  
 parte Samos—fuerant Dēlosque Parosque relictæ—  
 150 dextra Lebinthos erat fēcundaque melle Calymnē,  
 cum puer audācī coepit gaudēre volātū,  
 dēseruitque ducem caelīque cupīdine tractus  
 altius ēgit iter. Rapidī vīcīnia sōlis  
 mollit odōrātās, pennārum vincula, cērās.  
 155 Tābuerant cērae. Nūdōs quatit ille lacertōs,  
 rēmigiōque carēns nōn ūllās percipit aurās;

144-147 **aliquis**: taken with all three nouns, (fisherman), shepherd, plowman.  
**captat**: tries to catch. **innīxus**: from "innitor." **vīdit et obstipuit**: caught sight of  
 them and stood stock still in astonishment. **quīque** = "et eōs, quī." **aethera**: Greek  
 acc. sing. **possent**: subj. in rel. clause of reason; "quī," who = since they.

148-150 **Iūnōnia Samos**: Juno had a famous temple on the island of Samos.  
 The names of all five islands are Greek nom. forms. **laevā parte**: on the left.  
**Samos**, etc.: if Daedalus is heading for Italy and Sicily, his course is a strange one.  
 The poet's geography is not to be taken seriously. He has chosen five Aegean  
 islands with names that fit his meter nicely. He does create the impression of  
 onward flight.

151-156 **coepit**: a "cum"-clause which contains the main statement of the  
 sentence has the indic. mood. **volātū**: abl. of cause with "gaudēre." **caelī** . . .  
**tractus**: drawn on by his eagerness for the open sky. **altius**: pred. acc.; directed his  
 course too high. **vīcīnia**: the nearness of the devouring sun, i.e., the scorching rays  
 of the sun as he drew near it. **vincula**: in apposition with "cērās"; that bound his  
 wings together. **nūdōs**: the important word in the clause; naked (i.e., wingless)  
 are his arms as he beats them up and down. **rēmigiō**: abl. of separation with  
 "carēns." **percipit**: takes hold on.

144-146 **tremulus**: flexible, quivering **harūdō**: rod **piscis**: fish  
**baculum**: crook **stīva**: plow-handle **-ve**: or **innīxus**: leaning upon  
**arātor**: plowman **aether**: air

150 **fēcundus**: fruitful, rich **mel, mellis**: honey

151-156 **volātus**, -ūs: flight **rapidus**: consuming **odōrātus**: fragrant  
**vinculum**: bond, fastening **tābescō**, -ere, **tābui**: melt **quatīō**: shake, flap  
**lacertus**: arm **rēmigiū**: (oarage); wings **careō**: lack

ōraque caeruleā patrium clāmantia nōmen  
exciuntur aquā, quae nōmen trāxit ab illō.

At pater infēlīx, nec iam pater, “Īcare,” dīxit,  
“Īcare,” dīxit, “ubi es? Quā tē regiōne requīram?  
Īcare,” dīcēbat; pennās aspēxit in undīs,  
dēvōvitque suās artēs, corpusque sepulcrō  
condidit, et tellūs ā nōmine dicta sepultī.

160

157-158 ōra: nom., *his lips*. exciuntur: *are swallowed up*. nōmen trāxit: *took its name*, Mare Icarium in the southeast Aegean.

159-163 nec iam: *now no longer*. quā regiōne: *in what place*. requīram: *deliberative subj.* dīcēbat: *the impf. is very effective; called again and again*. tellūs: *the island of Icaria in the Aegean*. dicta: *supply “est.”* sepultī: *supply “puerī.”*

According to the legend, Daedalus went to Cumae on the west coast of Italy. Here he built a vast temple to Apollo, to whom he dedicated his wings.

157 caeruleus: *dark blue* patrius *adj.*: *of a father*

160-163 requirō: *search for* dēvoveō: *curse* sepulcrum: *tomb* condō: *bury* sepeliō: *bury*

### QUESTIONS

Why did Daedalus wish to construct the wings?

How did Icarus show his interest as the work progressed?

When the wings were completed, what advice did Daedalus give to his son?

What reasons did he give to support this advice?

What general course did Daedalus and Icarus follow in their flight?

What three spectators of the flight are mentioned in the poem? Whom did they think they were seeing?

What was the result of Icarus' failure to follow his father's instructions?

Select two or three lines in the poem which suggest (a) Daedalus' love for his son, (b) Daedalus' fear that some disaster might occur, (c) Daedalus' grief when the disaster did occur.



## PALLAS AND ARACHNE

The Greek goddess Pallas Athene, whom the Romans identified with Minerva, was the patroness of arts and crafts, among which spinning and weaving were prominent.

### Arachne, Proud of Her Skill in Weaving, Challenges Pallas Athene

- Nōn illa locō nec oriġine gentis
- 165 clāra, sed arte, fuit. Scīrēs ā Pallade doctam,  
quod tamen ipsa negat, tantāque offēnsa magistrā  
“Certet,” ait, “mēcum; nihil est, quod victa recūsem.”  
Pallas anum simulat; falsōsque in tempora cānōs  
addit et infirmōs baculō quoque sustinet artūs.
- 170 Tum sic orsa loquī: “Nōn omnia grandior aetās,  
quae fugiāmus, habet. Sērīs venit ūsus ab annīs.  
Cōnsilium nē sperne meum. Tibi fāma petātūr  
inter mortālēs faciendae maxima lānae;  
cēde deae, veniamque tuīs, temerāria, dictīs
- 175 supplice vōce rogā. Veniam dabit illa rogantī.”

164-165 illa: Arachne. locō . . . gentis: for place of birth or noble descent. scīrēs: you (one) would have known that she had been taught (“doctam esse”) by Pallas.

166-170 tantā offēnsa magistrā: offended at the suggestion that she had had any teacher, no matter how famous. certet: jussive subj. quod . . . recūsem: which I would not forfeit if beaten. anum simulat: assumed the form of an old woman. falsōs cānōs (supply “capillōs”): false locks of gray. orsa: supply “est.” nōn . . . habet: lit., advanced age has not all things that we are to shun; tr., not everything that advanced age brings in its train are we to shun.

171-175 sērīs ab annīs: with ripper years. nē sperne: poetic = “nōlī spernere.” tibi: dat. of agent, used with pass. forms in poetry. petātūr: jussive subj.; Pallas suggests that Arachne seek to establish a reputation by competing with mortals only. faciendae lānae: gen. gerundive construction; handling wool. deae: dat. veniam tuīs dictīs: pardon for your words. illa: Pallas. rogantī: supply “tibi”; part. with conditional force.

164-165 ars: skill

166-170 certō, -āre: strive tempus, -oris: temple (side of the head)  
cānus: gray sustineō: support artus, -ūs: limb ordior, -irī, orsus  
sum: begin grandis: old

171-175 sērus: late ūsus: experience lāna: wool temerārius: reck-  
less supplex, -icis: humble

Aspicit hanc torvīs, inceptaque fīla relinquit  
vixque manūs retinēns cōfessaque vultibus īram  
tālibus obscūram resecūta est Pallada dictīs:

“Mentis inops longāque venīs cōfecta senectā,  
et nimium vīxisse diū nocet. Audiat istās, 180  
sī qua tibī nurus est, sī qua est tibi filia, vōcēs.  
Cōnsiliī satis est in mē mihi. Nēve monendō  
prōfēcisse putēs, eadem est sententia nōbīs.  
Cūr nōn ipsa venit? Cūr haec certāmina vītāt?”

Tum dea, “Vēnit,” ait; fōrmamque remōvit anīlem, 185  
Palladaque exhibuit. Venerantur nūmina nymphae  
Mygdonidēsque nurūs. Sōla est nōn territa virgō.

### Arachne Persists in the Contest

Perstat in inceptō, stolidaeque cupīdine palmae  
in sua fāta ruit. Neque enim Iove nāta recūsāt,  
nec monet ulterius, nec iam certāmina differt. 190

176-180 **hanc**: the old woman. **torvīs**: supply “oculīs”; *sullenly*. **incepta fīla**: the threads (i.e., the weaving) which she had begun. **cōfessa vultibus īram**: showing anger on her face; with anger showing plainly on her face. **Pallada**: Greek acc. sing. **mentis inops**: feeble-minded. **cōfecta**: nom. **senectā**: abl. **vīxisse (tibī) nocet**: lit., to have lived too long harms you; tr., you have lived too long, that is your trouble. **audiat**: jussive subj. **istās vōcēs**: those words of yours.

181-185 **sī qua**: if any. **cōnsiliī . . . mihi**: enough of advice is to me in me; i.e., I am quite able to advise myself. **monendō**: abl. of gerund, expressing means. **nēve . . .**: and lest you may think that you have accomplished (anything) by your warning, I (“nōbīs” = “mihi”) am still of the same opinion: tr., do not think . . . for I am . . .

186-190 **nūmina**: acc. pl.; her godhead. **Mygdonidēs nurūs**: the Mygdonian women who had gathered from the neighborhood to watch Arachne at her spinning. **perstat in inceptō**: she persists in her challenging. **stolidae**: transferred epithet; in her stupid desire for the prize. **nāta**: from “nāscor”; born of Jupiter, i.e., Pallas, the daughter of Jupiter.

176-180 **aspiciō**: regard **torvus**: stern, grim **fīlum**: thread **cōnfiteor**,  
-ēri, **cōfessus sum**: confess **obscūrus**: disguised **resequor**: reply  
**inops**: bereft **cōfectus**: spent **senecta**: old age **nimium**: too much

181-185 **nurus**: daughter-in-law **prōficiō**: make progress **vītō**, -āre:  
avoid **anilis**: *adj.*, of an old woman

186-190 **exhibeō**: display **veneror**: worship **stolidus**: stupid **recūsō**:  
refuse **differō**: put off

Haud mora; cōsistunt dīversīs partibus ambae,  
et gracilī geminās intendunt stāmine tēlās.

On her tapestry Arachne depicts some scenes that are not complimentary to the gods. Pallas is shocked at these scenes but is forced to admire Arachne's skill.

195 Nōn illud Pallas, nōn illud carpere Līvor  
possit opus. Doluit successū flāva virāgō  
et rūpit pictās — caelestia crīmina — vestēs.  
Utque Cytōriacō radium dē monte tenēbat,  
ter quater Īdmoniae frontem percussit Arachnēs.  
Nōn tulit infēlīx, laqueōque animōsa ligāvit  
guttura. Pendentem Pallas miserāta levāvit,  
200 atque ita, "Vīve quidem, pendē tamen, improba," dīxit,  
lēxque eadem poenae, nē sīs sēcūra futūrī,  
dicta tuō generī sērīisque nepōtibus estō!"

191-195 cōsistunt . . . ambae: they took up position in different parts of the room. gracilī: modifies "stāmine"; in translating transfer to modify "tēlās." geminās: emphasizes the idea of two; each stretched the slender threads upon her loom. illud: Arachne's work. carpere possit: could find a flaw. doluit successū: was indignant at Arachne's success. virāgō: heroic maiden, i.e., Pallas. caelestia crīmina: the heavenly crimes, i.e., which displayed the crimes committed by the gods.

196-200 Cytōriacō . . . monte: lit., a shuttle from Mount Cytorus (on the north shore of Asia Minor); tr., a shuttle of Cytorian boxwood. Īdmoniae: modifies "Arachnēs"; Idmon was Arachne's father. "Arachnēs" with Greek gen. ending. nōn tulit: could not endure it. Suddenly Arachne felt the irresistible power of Pallas and attempted to hang herself. Transfer "animōsa" from "guttura" to the girl; she, with a show of spirit. pendentem: supply "eam." miserāta: filled with pity.

201-202 lēx: subject of "estō," fut. imperative of "sum"; lit., let the same doom of punishment be declared for your race. futūrī: gen. with adj. "sēcūra"; that you may not be free from care for the future, i.e., that you may fear for the future.

191-195 ambō, ambae, ambō: both stāmen, -minis: thread tēla: loom  
carpō: find fault with Līvor: Envy flāvus: golden-haired rumpō:  
rend pictus: embroidered vestis: tapestry

196-200 ut: as frōns: forehead percutiō: strike laqueus: noose  
ligō: bind guttur: throat pendeō: hang miseror, -āri: pity im-  
probus: wicked

201-202 nepōs, nepōtis: grandchild

## Arachne is Transformed into a Spinning Spider

Fitque caput minimum; tōtō quoque corpore parva est.  
In latere exilēs digitī prō crūribus haerent,  
cētera venter habet; dē quō tamen illa remittit  
stāmen, et antīquās exercet arānea tēlās.

205

### METAMORPHOSES, BOOK VI

203-206 in latere . . . haerent: the slender fingers cling to her side as legs. cētera . . . habet: lit., the belly has the rest, i.e., the rest is belly. dē quō: from that belly. remittit stāmen: spins a thread. antīquās . . . tēlās: as a spider is busy with her web as of old.

204-206 exilīs: slender crūs, crūris: leg arānea: spider

### QUESTIONS

What is the scientific name of the class to which the spiders belong?

What was Arachne's social status? By whom had she been trained?

What led to the challenge?

What did the goddess do in an effort to save the girl?

Describe Arachne's reaction to the suggestions of the goddess.

Describe the course of the contest and the final result.

Did Arachne deserve her fate?

## ORPHEUS AND EURYDICE

According to Greek tradition, Orpheus was a famous poet and musician. Apollo gave him the lyre, and the Muses taught him how to use it.

Orpheus with his lute made trees  
And the mountain tops that freeze  
Bow themselves, when he did sing.  
Everything that heard him play,  
Even the billows of the sea,  
Hung their heads, and then lay by.

SHAKESPEARE



The story opens during the wedding festivities of Orpheus and the nymph Eurydice.

### The Bride's Ill-Fortune; the Groom's Distress

- Nam nūpta per herbās  
dum nova Nāiadum turbā comitāta vagātur,  
occidit, in tālum serpentis dente receptō.
- 210 Quam satis ad superās postquam Rhodopēius aurās  
dēflēvit vātēs, nē nōn temptāret et umbrās,  
ad Styga Taenariā est ausus dēscendere portā,  
perque levēs populōs simulācraque fūncta sepulcrō  
Persephonēn adiūt inamoenaque rēgna tenentem  
215 umbrārum dominum; pulsisque ad carmina nervīs  
sic ait:

### Can Music Charm the Gods? Orpheus Tells his Story

“Ō positī sub terrā nūmina mundī,  
in quem recidimus, quidquid mortāle creāmur:

207-208 nūpta nova: the bride, Eurydice. The Naiades were nymphs of fresh water. turbā: abl.

209-215 occidit: she lost her life. dente receptō: abl. abs., expressing cause. quam: coordinating rel. ad superās aurās: in the upper world. Rhodopēius vātēs: the Thracian bard, Orpheus; Rhodope was a mountain in Thrace. nē nōn = “ut” in a cl. of purpose; that he might rouse the sympathy of the shades as well. Styga: Greek acc. sing.; the Styx was one of the rivers of Hades. Taenariā portā: abl. of means; Taenarum, in the south of Greece, was said to be an entrance to Hades. levēs populōs: the unsubstantial throngs. fūncta sepulcrō (abl.): who have had experience of (i.e., have received) burial; “functor” with abl. Only those spirits whose bodies had received burial rites could be carried over the River Styx by Charon; others were doomed to wander about the bank of the river for a hundred years. Persephonēn: Greek acc.; Proserpina, wife of Pluto. tenentem: modifies “dominum,” Pluto, king of the underworld. adiūt: the second “-i” has been lengthened for metrical purposes. ad carmina: in accompaniment to his song.

217-218 Ō nūmina: O ye deities who rule the world which lies beneath the earth; referring to Pluto and Proserpina. quidquid . . . creāmur: all of us who are born mortal.

207-208 herba: grass comitō: accompany

209-215 tālus: ankle dēns, dentis: tooth; fang dēfleō: weep over  
vātēs: bard temptō: try simulācrum: phantom fungor: fulfill, dis-  
charge inamoenus: unlovely carmen: song nervus: string (of lyre)

218 recidō: fall back

causa viae est coniūnx, in quam calcāta venēnum  
 vīpera diffūdit, crēscētēsq̄ abstulit annōs. 220  
 Posse patī voluī, nec mē temptāsse negābō;  
 vīcit Amor. Superā deus hic bene nōtus in ōrā est;  
 an sit et hīc, dubitō. Sed et hīc tamen auguror esse;  
 fāmaque sī veteris nōn est mentīta rapīnae,  
 vōs quoque iūnxit Amor. Per ego haec loca plēna timōris, 225  
 per Chaos hoc ingēns vāstīque silentia rēgnī,  
 Eurydicēs, ōrō, properāta retexite fāta.  
 Omnia dēbēmur vōbīs, paulumque morātī  
 sērius aut citius sēdem properāmus ad ūnam.  
 Tendimus hūc omnēs, haec est domus ultima, vōsque 230  
 hūmānī generis longissima rēgna tenētis.  
 Haec quoque, cum iūstōs mātūra perēgerit annōs,  
 iūris erit vestri; prō mūnere poscimus ūsum.  
 Quod sī fāta negant veniam prō coniuge, certum est  
 nōlle redīre mihī; lētō gaudēte duōrum." 235

219-223 calcāta: when trampled on; vīpera: nom. crēscētēs: budding. temptāsse = "temptāvisse." an sit et hīc: whether he may be (known) here too.

224 fāma: if the story of that kidnapping in days gone by does not lie.

225-231 per with acc., used in oaths and prayers; by. Note the position of "ego." hoc ingēns: with "Chaos." retexite fāta: lit. unweave (the web of) fate, i.e., restore her life too quickly ended. omnia: acc. of respect; in all things. longissima rēgna: the most lasting sway (over).

232-235 haec: Eurydice. iūstōs annōs: her proper span of years. mātūra: of ripe age. prō . . . ūsum: I ask the enjoyment of her as a gift from you. veniam: noun; a reprieve. certum est mihī: I am resolved.

219-223 calcō: tread upon vīpera: snake diffundō: pour crēscō: grow superus: upper ōra: (shore); world auguror: imagine

224 mentior, -irī, mentitus sum: lie, tell a lie rapīna: carrying off

226-230 Chaos: void vāstus: vast, huge paulum: a little while sērius: later citius: more quickly sēdēs: abode tendō: make one's way

232-235 peragō: complete iūs, iūris: right lētum: death



### The Gods are Moved; They Call Eurydice

Tunc primum lacrimis victarum carmine fama est  
 Eumenidum maduisse genas. Nec regia coniunx  
 sustinet orantem, nec qui regit ima, negare,  
 Eurydicenque vocant. Umbras erat illa recentem  
 inter, et incessit passum de vulnere tardum.

240

236-240 lacrimis: with "maduisse." victarum carmine: overcome by his song. fama est: they say. sustinet negare: has the heart to say, "No." orantem: dat., supply "Orpheus." qui = "is qui." inter: governs "umbras recentem" (newly arrived). passum tardum: abl. of manner; even as a shade she still suffered from the serpent's bite.

237-240 Eumenides: the Furies madescō: become moist gena: cheek  
 regius: of a king, royal incēdō: advance, walk

## The Bride Restored; but on What Terms!

Hanc simul et lēgem Rhodopēius accipit Orpheus,  
nē flectat retrō sua lūmina dōnec Avernās  
exierit vallēs; aut irrita dōna futūra.

## The Goal in Sight but Not Quite Reached

Carpitur acclīvis per mūta silentia trāmes,  
arduus, obscūrus, cālīgine dēnsus opācā.  
Nec procul āfuerunt tellūris margine summae.  
Hīc, nē dēficeret metuēns, avidusque videndī,  
flexit amāns oculōs; et prōtinus illa relāpsa est.

245

## The Last Farewell

Bracchiaque intendēns prēndīque et prēndere certāns  
nīl nisi cēdentēs infēlīx arripit aurās.  
Iamque iterum moriēns nōn est dē coniuge quicquam  
questa suō—quid enim nisi sē quererētur amātam?—  
suprēmumque “Valē,” quod iam vix auribus ille  
acciperet, dīxit revolūtaque rūsus eōdem est.

250

241-243 hanc: Eurydice. lēgem: the condition told in the next two lines.  
exierit: here a trans. verb; he had left. futūra: supply “esse”; inf. in indirect  
statement.

244 per mūta silentia: through places of utter silence.

246-248 āfuerunt: the vowel “-e” is short. tellūris summae: of the upper  
earth. nē dēficeret: that she might faint. videndī: gen. of gerund with adj.  
“avidus.” relāpsa est: into Hades

249-254 intendēns: supply “Orpheus.” moriēns: supply “Eurydicē.” nōn  
questa est quidquam: uttered no complaint. quid quererētur: what had she to  
complain of. suprēmum “Valē”: object of “dīxit”; a last farewell. quod . . .  
acciperet: (so low) that he scarce caught it. eōdem: to the same place (from which  
she had come), i.e., “the lower world.”

242-243 retrō: back lūmina: pl. eyes dōnec: until irritus: unavailing

244-245 carpō: take acclīvis: sloping upward trāmes: path arduus:  
steep cālīgō: darkness opācus: shaded, pitchy

246-248 tellūs, -ūris: earth margō: margin avidus: eager prōtinus:  
instantly relābor: slip back

249-254 brachium: arm intendō: stretch out prēndō: grasp certō:  
struggle arripō: clasp queror: complain auris: ear revolvō: in  
pass. fall back



## QUESTIONS

What caused the death of Eurydice?  
 To whom did Orpheus appeal in the Underworld?  
 With what argument did Orpheus attempt to win back his bride?  
 On what terms was Eurydice restored?  
 What brought about the final catastrophe?

## PYRAMUS AND THISBE

Gentles, perchance you wonder at this show;  
 But wonder on, till truth make all things plain.  
 This man is Pyramus, if you would know;  
 This beauteous lady Thisby is certain.  
 This man, with lime and roughcast, doth present  
 Wall, that vile Wall which did these lovers sunder;  
 And through Wall's chink, poor souls, they are content  
 To whisper. At which let no man wonder.  
 (Shakespeare, *A Midsummer Night's Dream*, Act V, Sc. 1.)

### Love's Young Dream

255     Pȳramus et Thisbē, iuvenum pulcherrimus alter,  
          altera, quās Oriēns habuit, praelāta puellīs,  
          contiguās tenuēre domōs, ubi dīcitur altam  
          coctilibus mūrīs cīnxisse Semīramis urbem.  
          Nōtitiam prīmōsque gradūs vīcīnia fēcīt.

256-259     Oriēns: *the East*; the story is set in ancient Babylon. puellīs: dat. with compound verb "praeferō"; tr. *fairer than any of the maidens*. Semiramis was the wife of Ninus (line 278), the legendary founder of Babylon. nōtitiam prīmōsque gradūs: *the first steps in their acquaintance*; hendiadys (see note on line 49).

256-259     Oriēns: *the East*     praeferō: *prefer*     contiguus: *side by side*  
 coctilēs mūrī: *walls of burned brick*     cingō: *encircle*     nōtitia: *acquaintance*  
 gradus, -ūs: *step*     vīcīnia: *nearness*

Tempore crēvit amor; taedae quoque iūre coissent,  
 sed vetuēre patrēs; quod nōn potuēre vetāre,  
 ex aequō captīs ārdēbant mentibus ambō.  
 Cōnscius omnis abest; nūtū signīsque loquuntur.

260

"And such a wall, as I would have you think,  
 That had in it a crannied hole or chink,  
 Through which the lovers, Pyramus and Thisby,  
 Did whisper often very secretly."

Fissus erat tenuī rīmā, quam dūxerat ōlim  
 cum fieret, pariēs domuī commūnis utrīque.  
 Id vitium, nūllī per saecula longa notātum,  
 (quid nōn sentit amor?) prīmī vīdistis, amantēs,  
 et vōcis fēcistis iter; tūtāeque per illud  
 murmure blanditiae minimō trānsīre solēbant.  
 Sub noctem dīxere "Valē", partīque dedere  
 ōscula quisque suae, nōn pervenientia contrā.

265

270

260-267    **taedae iūre**: in the rite of the torch, i.e., in lawful marriage; the torch furnished light for the evening procession which was part of a Roman wedding. Here we find Ovid introducing a Roman custom of his own day into a tale of the ancient East; he is interested, not in historical accuracy, but in telling a good story. **coissent** = "coiissent": from "coeō"; plup. subj.; *would have come together*, i.e., *would have been united*. **quod**: a thing which, looking forward to the statement of the next line. **ex aequō**: equally. **fissus erat**: the subject is "pariēs" (in the next line), the wall between the two houses. **quam dūxerat**: which it had received (had developed). **cum fieret**: when it was being built. **id vitium**: this flaw, i.e., the chink; object of "vīdistis." **nūllī**: dat. of agent, used with pass. forms in poetry. **prīmī vīdistis**: you were the first to see. **amantēs**: part. as noun.

269-271    **murmure minimō**: in the gentlest of whispers. **partī quisque suae**: each to his own side. **contrā**: to the other side.

260-263    **crēcō**: grow    **taeda**: marriage-torch    **iūs**: law    **ārdeō**: (burn) be inflamed    **ambō**: both    **cōnscius**: a go-between    **nūtus, -ūs**: nod

264-266    **findō, findere, fidī, fissum**: split    **tenuis**: slender    **rima**: crack, chink    **pariēs**: wall    **saeculum**: an age, years    **notō**: notice

269    **blanditiae**: loving words



Two views of Hadrian's Wall. This structure, extending seventy-three miles across England from east to west, formed the northern frontier of the Roman province. Sentries patrolled the wall, seeking to check forays by Picts and Scots.





## "Oh, Let's Elope!" The Rendezvous

Postera nocturnōs Aurōra remōverat ignēs,  
 sōlque pruīnōsās radiīs siccāverat herbās;  
 ad solitum coiēre locum. Tum, murmure parvō  
 multa prius questī, statuunt ut nocte silentī  
 fallere custōdēs foribusque excēdere temptent,  
 cumque domō exierint, urbis quoque tēcta relinquant,  
 convenient ad busta Ninī lateantque sub umbrā  
 arboris. Arbor ibī niveīs ūberrima pōmīs  
 ardua mōrus erat, gelidō contermina fontī.

275

280

Pacta placent, et lūx tardē discēdere vīsa  
 praecipitātur aquīs, et aquīs nox exit ab īsdem.

### Thisbe Arrives First: She Sees the Lioness

Callida per tenebrās versātō cardine Thisbē  
 ēgreditur fallitque suōs, adopertaque vultum

272-278    **nocturnōs ignēs**: the starry beacons of the night. **coiēre**: from "coeō."  
**multa questī**: with many a lament. **statuunt**: usually completed by a complementary inf., here used with "ut" and the subj. ("temptent, relinquant, convenient, lateant"). **exierint**: perf. subj.; in direct, fut. perf. indic. **ad busta Ninī**: at Ninus' tomb.

279-282    **ūberrima**: loaded with. **contermina**: close by; modifies "mōrus" (fem.). **pacta**: their plan. **lūx**: tr. both as light and sun: the daylight seemed slow to depart, but at last the sun plunged into the waters. **isdem** = "eīsdem."

283-284    **callida**: skillful; tr. as adv., stealthily. **versātō cardine**: lit. turning the hinge; turning the door on its hinges. **vultum**: acc. of respect; lit. veiled as to her face.

272-278    **Aurōra**: the Dawn    **pruīnōsus**: covered with frost    **radius**: ray  
**siccō**: dry    **herba**: grass    **solitus**: accustomed    **fallō**: elude, slip past  
**foris**: door    **tēctum**: (roof) dwelling    **lateō**: hide

279-282    **niveus**: snow-white    **ūber**: rich, fertile    **pōmum**: fruit    **mōr-**  
**us**: f. mulberry tree    **gelidus**: cool    **fōns**: spring    **praecipitō**: throw down  
 headlong

283-284    **tenebrae**: darkness    **adopertiō**: cover, veil



- 285 pervenit ad tumulum dictaque sub arbore sedit.  
 Audacem faciebat amor. Venit ecce recentī  
 caede leaena boum spūmantēs oblita rictūs,  
 dēpositūra sitim vicīnī fontis in undā.  
 Quam procul ad lūnae radiōs Babylōnia Thisbē  
 290 vīdit et obscurum timidō pede fūgit in antrum;  
 dumque fugit, tergō vėlāmina lāpsa reliquit.  
 Ut lea saeva sitim multā compēscuit undā,  
 dum redit in silvās, inventōs forte sine ipsā  
 ōre cruentātō tenuēs laniāvit amictūs.

"Anon comes Pyramus, sweet youth and tall,  
 And finds his trusty Thisby's mantle slain."

- 295 Sērius ēgressus, vēstīgia vīdit in altō  
 pulvere certa ferae, tōtōque expalluit ōre  
 Pȳramus. Ut vērō vestem quoque sanguine tīnctam  
 repperit, "Ūna duōs," inquit, "nox perdet amantēs,  
 ē quibus illa fuit longā dignissima vītā;  
 300 nostra nocēns anima est: ego tē, miseranda, perēmī,  
 in loca plēna metūs quī iussī nocte venirēs,  
 nec prior hūc vērī. Nostrum dīvellite corpus,  
 et scelerāta ferō cōnsūmite vīscera morsū,

285-288 dictā arbore: the trysting-tree. venit ecce: but look! there comes. boum: gen. pl. spūmantēs oblita (from "oblinō") rictūs: lit. smeared as to her frothing jaws; "oblita" modifies "leaena." dēpositūra: fut. part. expressing purpose; to slake.

289-293 ad radiōs: by the rays. tergō: abl. of separation with "lāpsa." multā undā: by copious draughts. inventōs laniāvit amictūs: she found and tore the garment. forte: adv. sine ipsā: without its owner.

295-301 vēstīgia certa: unmistakable tracks. tōtō ōre: abl. of place where. longā vītā: abl. with adj. "dignissima." miseranda: f. sing. voc. (ut) venirēs: in place of regular complementary inf. with "iubeō."

285-288 tumulus: tomb leaena: lioness bovēs: cattle spūmō:  
 foam oblinō, oblitum: smear rictus, -ūs: jaw sitis: thirst vicinus:  
 nearby

290-294 obscurus: dark antrum: cave vėlāmen: mantle lābor:  
 fall, slip compēscō: quench cruentātus: bloody tenuis: light laniō:  
 tear, rend amictus, -ūs: robe, garment

295-303 sērius: later fera: wild beast expallēscō: grow pale vērō:  
 however vestis: cloak tingō: tinge, smear reperiō: find nocēns:  
 guilty anima: soul miserandus: pitiable, poor perimō: destroy, slay  
 dīvellō: rend scelerātus: guilty ferus: fierce cōnsūmō: devour  
 vīscera: pl. flesh morsus: (bite) teeth

Ō quicumque sub hāc habitātis rūpe, leōnēs.  
Sed timidī est optāre necem." Vēlāmina Thisbēs  
tollit, et ad pactae sēcum fert arboris umbram.

305

### The Price of Love

"Accipe nunc," inquit, "nostrī quoque sanguinis haustūs."  
Quōque erat accīctus, dēmīsit in īlia ferrum.  
Ecce metū nōndum positō, nē fallat amantem,  
illa redit iuvenemque oculis animīsque requīrit,  
quantaque vitārit nārrāre perīcula gestit.  
Utque locum et vīsā cognōscit in arbore fōrmam,  
sic facit incertam pōmī color. Haeret an haec sit.  
Dum dubitat, tremebunda videt pulsāre cruentum  
membra solum, retrōque pedem tulit ōraque buxō  
pallidiōra gerēns exhorruit aequoris īnstar,  
quod tremīt exigūa cum summum stringitur aurā.

310

315

"Asleep, my love?  
What, dead, my dove?  
O Pyramus, arise!"

Sed postquam remorāta suōs cognōvit amōrēs,  
percutit indignōs clārō plangōre lacertōs,

304-305 leōnēs: voc. timidī: pred. possessive gen.; *it is a coward's way.*  
optāre: (merely) to wish for.

307-313 accipe haustūs: drink deep; addressed to the mulberry tree. quōque  
= "et quō"; "et dēmīsit . . . ferrum quō . . ." positō = "dēpositō." nē fallat:  
clause of purpose. vitārit = "vitāverit": indirect question. utque . . . sic: and  
although . . . yet. vīsā in arbore = "vīsae arboris"; of the familiar tree. incertam:  
supply "eam." haeret . . . sit: "an" here = "num"; she wonders if this is the tree.

315-317 membra: acc., subject of "pulsāre." gerēns: with. aequoris īnstar:  
"īnstar" with the gen. usually means like or in the manner of. summum: the  
surface.

318-319 suōs amōrēs = "suum amantem." indignōs: innocent.

304-306 rūpēs: cliff nex, necis: death pactus: agreed upon

307-311 haustus, -ūs: a draught accingō: gird dēmīttō: plunge  
īlia: bowels fallō: disappoint requīrō: look for vitō: (avoid) escape  
gestiō: be eager

314-317 tremebundus: quivering pulsō: beat cruentus: bloody  
membrum: limb solum: the ground retrō: back buxum: box-wood  
pallidus: pale exhorrēscō: tremble aequor: sea tremō: quiver  
stringō: graze

318-319 remoror: delay percutiō: smite plangor: loud lamentation  
lacertus: the arm



- 320 et laniāta comās amplexaque corpus amātum  
vulnera supplēvit lacrimīs flētumque cruorī  
miscuit, et gelidīs in vultibus ōscula figēns,  
“Pȳrame,” clāmāvit, “quis tē mihi cāsus adēmit?  
Pȳrame, respondē! Tua tē cārissima Thisbē  
325 nōminat. Exaudī vultūsque attolle iacentēs!”

- Ad nōmen Thisbēs oculōs ā morte gravātōs  
Pȳramus ērēxit, vīsāque recondidit illā.  
Quae postquam vestemque suam cognōvit et ēnse  
vīdit ebur vacuum, “Tua tē manus,” inquit, “amorque  
330 perdidit, infēlīx. Est et mihi fortis in ūnum  
hoc manus, est et amor; dabit hic in vulnera vīrēs.

320-325 comās: acc. of respect; translate the part. by the active, *tearing her hair*. mihi: dat., *from me*. vultūs iacentēs (from “iaceō”): *drooping head*.

326-327 Thisbēs: gen. recondidit: supply “oculōs.”

328-331 ēnse: abl. of separation. in ūnum hoc: *for this one deed*. hic: i.e., “amor.”

320-325 coma: hair amplexor: embrace suppleō: fill flētus: weep-  
ing, tears cruor: blood misceō: mingle figō: fix cāsus: mischance  
adimō: take away nōminō: call attollō: lift iaceō: lie

326-327 gravātus: heavy ērigō: raise recondō: close (eyes)

328-329 ēnsis: sword ebur: (ivory) scabbard vacuus: empty

"At tū, quae rāmīs arbor miserābile corpus  
nunc tegis ūnūs, mox es tēctūra duōrum,  
signa tenē caedis, pullōsque et lūctibus aptōs  
semper habē fētūs, geminī monumenta cruōris."

335

Dīxit, et aptātō pectus mūcrōne sub īmum  
incubuit ferrō, quod adhūc ā caede tepēbat.

### The Memorial

Vōta tamen tetigēre deōs, tetigēre parentēs;  
nam color in pōmō est, ubi permātūruit, āter,  
quodque rogīs superest ūnā requiēscit in urnā.

340

332-337 es tēctūra: will shelter. pullōs habē fētūs: bear fruit of a dark color.  
ferrō: dat. with compound verb "incubuit."

338-340 tamen: although the lovers were dead. quodque = "et id quod."  
rogīs: dat. pl. with "superest."

332-337 rāmus: branch tegō: (cover) shelter pullus: dark-colored  
lūctus: grief aptus: fit fētus, -ūs: fruit geminus: double monu-  
mentum: memorial cruor: death aptō: fit pectus: breast mūcrō:  
swordpoint incumbō: fall forward on adhūc: still tepeō: be warm  
338-340 vōta: pl. prayers permātūrēscō: be fully ripe rogos: funeral  
pyre requiēscō: rest

### QUESTIONS

Where does this story take place?

What part does the wall play?

What was the lovers' rendezvous? Why had this place  
been chosen?

What event led Pyramus to misjudge the situation?  
With what result?

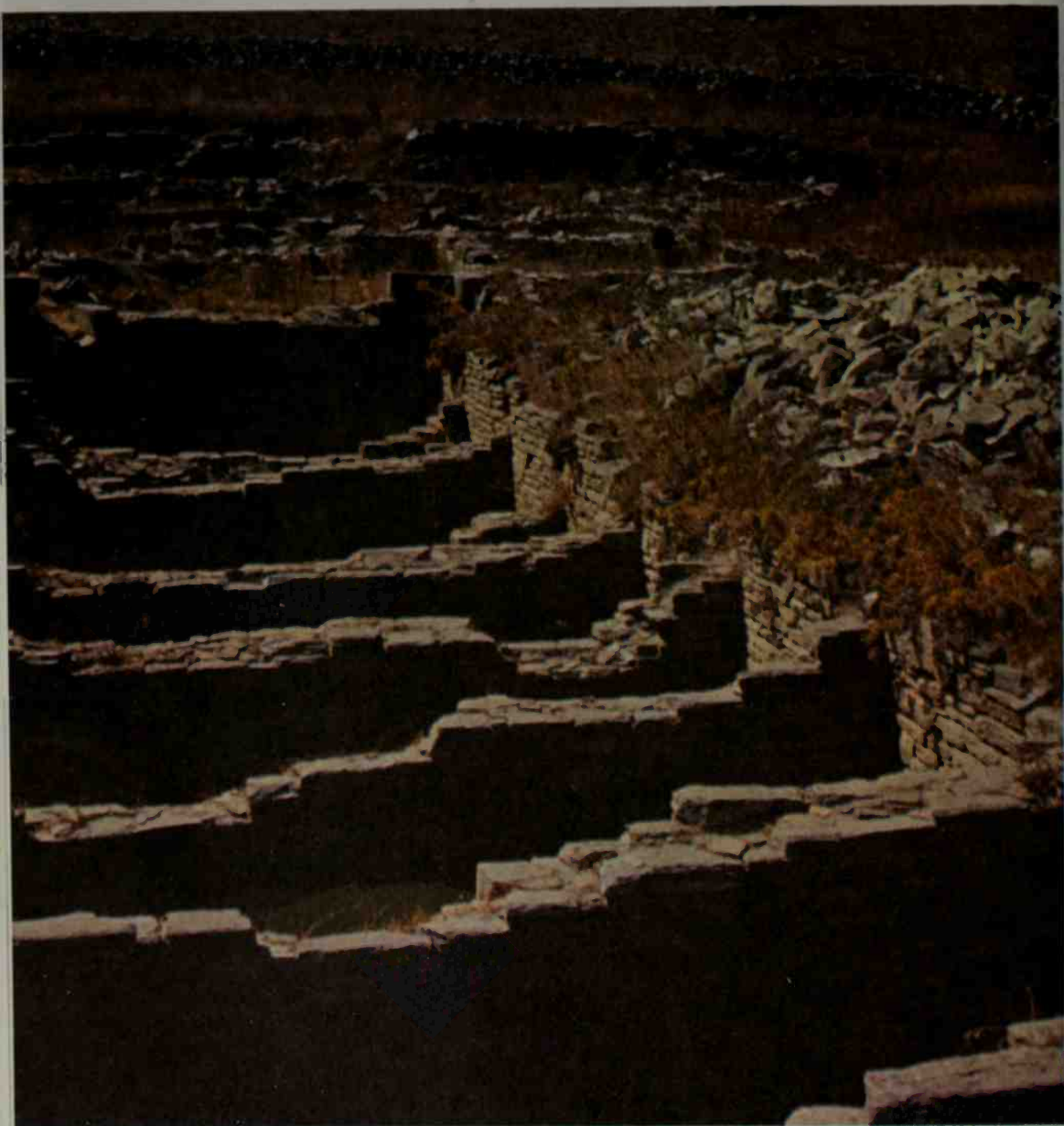
Describe Thisbe's action on finding the dying Pyramus.

What effect had the tragedy on the lovers' parents?  
On the tree?

What parallels do you find in this story and that of  
Romeo and Juliet?

Pyramus and Thisbe is an example of a perfect short  
story. Discuss this statement.





Ruins of public cisterns on the island of Delos, smallest of the Aegean Cyclades. In the second century B.C., water from these cisterns was piped to the shore to furnish a fresh water supply for ships which stopped there.

## Aulus Gellius

What little we know of Aulus Gellius we learn from the author's own writings. He was probably born in Rome about 123 A.D.; at any rate he was in Rome when, at the age of fifteen or sixteen, he assumed the gown of manhood. He came of a good family and possessed considerable means.

At school he pursued the usual course of study with emphasis on rhetoric. After completing his studies in Rome he went to Athens for a year for instruction in philosophy. After returning to Rome he was appointed a judge in private cases. He continued his legal practice to the end of his life, at the same time pursuing the study of philosophy. He enjoyed the friendship of many of the intellectual men of his day.

He was a man of universal interests and a lover of cultured, scholarly conversation. All this is reflected in his twenty books of casual talk, to which, in memory of his year in Athens, he gave the title *Noctes Atticae*. His work is a collection of interesting notes on many themes: antiquities, biography, history, philosophy, natural sciences, law, grammar, literary criticism. It gives us valuable information in many fields of knowledge; it contains extracts from numerous Greek and Roman writers, whose works are otherwise wholly or in great part lost. In the main he is accurate and conscientious, neither profound nor original, but modest and fond of learning; for him culture is an essential element of life. His style is that of a scholar of his day, sometimes made obscure by unusual words and expressions, but as a rule easy reading.

## SELECTIONS FROM THE NOCTĒS ATTICAE OF AULUS GELLIUS

### The Ring Finger

Veterēs Graecōs ānulum habuisse in digitō accēpimus sinistrae manūs quī minimō est proximus. Rōmānōs quoque hominēs aiunt sic plērūque anulīs ūsōs esse. Causam esse huius rei Apiōn in librīs Aegyptiacīs hanc dīcit, quod insectīs  
 5 apertisque hūmānīs corporibus, ut mōs in Aegyptō fuit, reperi-  
 tum est nervum quendam tenuissimum ab eō ūnō digitō dē  
 quō dīximus ad cor hominis pergere ac pervenīre; propterea  
 nōn īnscītum vīsum esse eum digitum tālī honōre decorandum,  
 quī continēns et quasi cōnexus esse cum corde vidērētur.  
 (10.10)

### Croesus' Dumb Son

10 Fīlius Croesī rēgis, cum iam fārī per aetātem posset, infāns  
 erat et, cum iam multum adolēvisset, item nihil fārī poterat.  
 Mūtus diū habitus est. Cum in patrem eius hostis gladiō  
 ēductō, rēgem esse ignōrāns, invāderet, adulēscēns didūxit ōs,  
 clāmāre nītēns, eōque nīsū vitium nōdumque linguae rūpit  
 15 plānēque ēlocūtus est, clāmāns in hostem nē rēx Croesus  
 occīderētur. Tum et hostis gladium redūxit et rēx vītā dōnātus  
 est, et adulēscēns loquī prōrsum deinceps incēpit. (5.9)

1-5 *accēpimus*: we have heard. *Apiōn*: author of *Aegyptiaci libri* (*Egyptian History*).

6-9 *tālī* . . . *decorandum*: should be honored with such an ornament.

10-17 *fārī* . . . *posset*: was old enough to speak. *nōdum linguae*: the bond upon his tongue. *in hostem*: to the enemy. *prōrsum deinceps*: from that time on.

1-5 *ānulus*: ring    *digitus*: finger    *insecō, -āre, insecuī, insectum*: cut into  
 6-9 *nervus*: nerve    *tenuis*: fine, delicate    *pergō, -ere*: proceed, go forward  
*īnscītus*: unreasonable    *decorō, -āre*: adorn    *continēns*: continuous  
*cōnexus*: united

10-16 *for, fārī, fātus sum*: say, speak    *infāns* (*in-, negative*): dumb    *mūtus*:  
 mute    *invādō, -ere*: rush upon    *didūcō*: open    *nīsus, -ūs*: effort  
*vitium*: impediment    *plānē*: plainly    *dōnō, -āre*: present

## Remarks of Marcus Cato

Mārcus Catō, cōsulāris et cēnsōrius, pūblicīs iam prīvā-  
tisque opulentīs rēbus, villās suās inexcultās et rudēs fuisse  
dīcit ad annum usque aetātis suae septuāgēsimum. Atque ibi 20  
posteā hīs verbīs ūtitur: "Neque mihi," inquit, "aedificātiō  
neque vāsum neque vestīmentum ūllum est pretiōsum neque  
pretiōsus servus neque ancilla. Sī quid est," inquit, "quod  
ūtār, ūtor; sī nōn est, egeō. Suum cuique per mē ūtī atque  
frui licet." Tum deinde addit: "Vitiō vertunt, quia multa 25  
egeō; at ego illīs, quia nōn possunt egēre." (13.24)

## Alexander and Bucephalas

Equus Alexandrī rēgis Būcephalas appellātus est. Super hōc  
equō dignum memoriā vīsum est, quod, ubi ōrnātus erat  
armātusque ad proelium, haud umquam sē īncendī ab aliō  
nisi ab rēge passus sit. 30

18-22 Marcus Porcius Cato (234-149 B.C.), born of peasant stock, fought as a youth in the Second Punic War and was at the Battle of Metaurus, 207 B.C. He rose to the highest offices in the state. His policy was one of reconstruction: moral, social, and economic. **pūblicīs . . . rēbus**: abl. abs.; *when the State and private individuals were already wealthy.* **ibi**: *in that connection, on that subject.*

23-26 **sī quid est quod ūtār**: "quod ūtār" is a rel. cl. of characteristic; *if I have anything to use.* **cuique per mē . . . licet**: lit., *it is permitted to each one through me*; i.e., *as far as I am concerned each man may . . .*; note the acc. "suum" where classical Latin uses the abl. with "ūtor." **vitiō vertunt**: lit., *they turn it for a fault*; tr., *they find fault with me.*

27-30 Alexander the Great of Macedon ruled 336-323 B.C. Bucephalas in Greek means *ox-headed*, referring to the breadth of the horse's forehead. **memoriā**: abl. with "dignus." **passus sit**: from "patior."

18-22 **cōsulāris**: ex-consul **cēnsōrius**: ex-censor **pūblicus**: of the people, of the State **privātus**: individual, private **opulentus**: wealthy **in-**  
**excultus**: unadorned **rudis**: plain **aetās, aetātis**: age **septuāgēsimus**:  
seventieth **aedificātiō**: building **vāsum**: vessel, utensil **vestīmentum**:  
garment **pretiōsus**: valuable, costly

23-25 **ancilla**: woman servant, maid **egeō, -ēre**: do without **fruor, frui**:  
enjoy **vitium**: fault

27-30 **super**: about, concerning **īncendō, -ere**: mount





Ancient well and water jars. Pompeii. The water supply for private households in Roman cities often came from public wells sunk deep in layers of volcanic lava or from the numerous fountains at street corners and crossroads.

Dum insidēns in eō Alexander bellō Indicō facinora facit fortia, in hostium multitudinem, nōn satis sibi prōvidēns, im- mīsit. Coniectīs undique in Alexandrum tēlīs, cum vulneribus altīs in cervīce atque in latere equus perfossus esset, mori- bundus tamen ē mediīs hostibus rēgem vīvācissimō cursū 35 rettulit, atque ubi eum extrā tēla extulit, ilicō concidit et animam expīrāvit. Tum rēx Alexander, partā eius bellī vic- tōriā, oppidum in eīsdem locīs condidit idque ob equī honōrēs Būcephalon appellāvit. (5.2)

### The Priest of Jupiter (*Diālis Flāmen*)

Religiō est equō Diālem flāminem vehī; item religiō est exer- citum armātum vidēre; idcirco rārō flāmen Diālis creātus cōsul est, quod bella cōsulibus mandābantur; item iūrāre Diālem fās numquam est; item ānulō ūtī nisi perviō. 40

Nōdum in apice neque in cīnctū neque in aliā parte ūllum habet. Capillum Diālis, nisi quī liber homō est, nōn dētōnset. 45

Dē lectō suō trinoctium continuum nōn dēcubat neque in eō lectō cubāre alium fās est.

Uxōrem sī amīsit, flāminiō dēcēdit. Locum in quō bustum est numquam ingreditur, mortuum numquam attingit. (10.15)

40-42 *religiō est: it is unlawful. vehī: to ride. armātum: in battle array. iūrāre: to take an oath.*

46 *dē lectō: away from his bed.*

31-39 *insideō: sit upon Indicus: Indian facinus, -oris, n.: deed prō- videō: look out immittō: drive cervix, -icis: neck perfodiō, -ere, -fodi, -fossus, pierce through moribundus: dying vīvāx, vīvācis: swift ilicō: immediately expīrō, -āre: breathe out pariō, -ere, peperī, partum: win, secure*

40-43 *flāmen, -inis: priest idcirco: therefore pervius: perforated*

44-49 *apex, apicis: headdress cīnctus, -ūs: girdle dētōnseō: cut lectus: bed trinoctium: cf. "trīduum" dēcubō, -āre: sleep flāminium: the office of "flāmen" dēcēdō: abdicate, resign from bustum: tomb*

## How a Vestal Virgin was "Taken" by the Chief Pontiff

50 Eī quī dē virgine capiendā scrīpsērunt, minōrem quam annōs  
sex, maiōrem quam annōs decem nātam, negāvērunt capī fās  
esse; item quae linguā dēbili sēnsūve aurium dēminūta sit.  
Sed eam cuius soror ad id sacerdōtium dēlēcta est excūsā-  
tiōnem merērī aiunt; item cuius pater flāmen aut augur est.

55 Virgō autem Vestālis simul atque est capta atque in ātrium  
Vestae dēducta et pontificibus trādita est, statim ē patris  
potestāte exit. Ea quae capta prīma est ā Numā rēge est  
capta.

"Capī" autem virgō proptereā dīcī vidētur, quia pontificis  
60 maximī manū prēnsa ab eō parente in cuius potestāte est, velut  
bellō capta, abdūcitur. Ea sunt verba pontificis: "Sacerdōtem  
Vestālem, quae sacra faciat quae iūs sit sacerdōtem Vestālem  
facere prō populō Rōmānō, tē, Amāta, capiō."

"Amāta" ā pontifice maximō appellātur, quod quae prīma  
65 capta est hoc fuisse nōmen trāditum est. (1.12)

50-54 nātam: from "nāscor." linguā dēbili: with an impediment in her speech.

55-58 Numā: Little is known of the origin of this cult; it was said to have  
originated with King Numa.

59-65 "Capī" . . . vidētur: a Vestal is said "to be taken," it appears. prēnsa ab  
eō parente . . . abdūcitur: having been grasped . . . she is led away from the parent.  
Sacerdōtem Vestālem: to be taken with "tē, Amāta, capiō"; I take you, Amata,  
as priestess of Vesta. quae sacra faciat: rel. cl. of purpose; to perform the rites.  
quae . . . Rōmānō: which it is lawful for a priestess of Vesta to perform for the  
Roman people. quae prīma: "(eius virginis) quae prīma."

50-54 minor: younger fās: lawful lingua: tongue dēbilis: disabled,  
infirm sēnsus, -ūs: faculty of perceiving, perception auris, auris: ear  
dēminuō: lessen, diminish sacerdōtium: priesthood excūsātiō: exemption  
mereor, -ēri: deserve augur: augur, soothsayer

55-58 ātrium: House pontifex: priest Numa: Numa, second king of  
Rome

59-61 proptereā quia: for the reason that, because prēndō, -ere, prēndī,  
prēnsus: grasp, take velut: as abdūcō: lead away

## Demetrius the Besieger at Rhodes

Rhodum īnsulam celebritātis antīquissimae oppidumque in eā pulcherrimum ōrnātissimumque obsidēbat Dēmētrius, dux aetātis suae inclutus, quī multās māchinās ad capiēda oppida reppererat. Tum ibi in obsidiōne aedēs quāsdam, quae extrā urbis mūrōs cum parvō praesidiō erant, aggredī et vāstāre 70 atque cōnsūmere ignī parābat.

In eīs aedibus erat memorātissima imāgō, Prōtogenis manū facta, illūstris pictōris, cuius operis pulchritūdinem Rhodiīs invidēbat. Mittunt Rhodiī ad Dēmētrium lēgātōs cum hīs verbīs: “Quae, malum,” inquiunt, “ratiō est ut tū imāginem 75 nostram velīs incendiō aedium factō disperdere? Nam, sī nōs omnēs superāveris et oppidum hoc tōtum cēperis, imāgine quoque illā integrā et incolumī per victōriam potiēris; sīn nōs vincere obsidendō nequiveris, petimus ut cōnsiderēs nē turpe tibi sit, quia nōn potueris bellō Rhodiōs vincere, bellum cum 80 Prōtogene mortuō gessisse.” Hoc ubi ex lēgātīs audīvit, et imāginī et civitātī pepercit. (15.31)

## The Rise of Ventidius Bassus

Multī in vetere memoriā altissimum dignitātis gradum ascenderunt ignōbilissimī prius hominēs. Ventidius Bassus Picēns fuit, genere et locō humili, et māter eius ā Pompeiō Strabōne, 85

66-68 Demetrius ruled Macedonia 294-288 B.C. He was a famous besieger of cities. *aetātis suae*: of his age. Protogenes was a celebrated Greek painter who spent the greater part of his life in Rhodes and died 300 B.C.

75-81 *malum*: you plague. *imāgine*: abl. with “potior.” *nē . . . sit . . . gessisse*: lest it bring shame upon you . . . to have waged.

83-85 *in vetere memoriā*: in ancient times. *Picēns*: born in Picenum, on the Adriatic coast. *genere . . . humili*: of a humble station.

66-71 *celebritās, -tātis*: fame, renown *inclutus*: famous *māchina*: (military) engine *aedēs, -is*: *sing.*, temple; *pl.*, house, building

72-76 *memorātus*: famous *imāgō*: picture *illūstris*: distinguished *pictor, -ōris*: painter *ratiō*: reason *disperdō, -ere*: destroy

78-79 *sīn*: but if *nequeō, -īre, -ivī*: be unable *cōnsiderō, -āre*: take thought

83-85 *gradus, -ūs*: grade *ignōbilis*: of obscure birth



Pompeii Magni patre, bello sociali, capta cum ipso est; mox triumphante Pompeio Strabone is puer inter ceteros ante cur-  
rum imperatoris sinu matris vectus est. Postea, cum adole-  
visset, victum sibi aegre quaesivit comparandis mulis et  
90 vehiculis quae magistratus conducebant. In isto quaestu notus  
esse coepit C. Caesar, et cum eo profectus est in Gallias.  
Tum, quia in ea provincia satis naviter versatus est et deinceps  
civilis bello mandata sibi strenue fecit, non modo in amicitiam  
Caesaris sed ex ea in amplissimum quoque ordinem pervenit.  
95 Mox tribunus quoque plebis ac deinde praetor creatus est,  
atque in eo tempore iudicatus est a senatu hostis. Post ea  
non pristinam tantum dignitatem recuperavit sed pontificatum  
ac deinde consulatum quoque adeptus est. Eamque rem tam  
intoleranter tulit populus Romanus, qui Bassum Ventidium  
100 meminerat curandis mulis vixisse, ut vulgo per vias urbis  
versiculi proscriberentur:

Concurrite omnes augures, haruspices!

Portentum inusitatum conflatum est recens.

Nam mulos qui fricabat consul factus est. (15.4)

### Tales That Travelers Tell

105 Cum e Graecia in Italiam rediremus et Brundisium iremus  
egressique a navi in terram in portu illo ambularemus, fascis  
librorum venalium expositos vidimus. Atque ego avidae statim  
pergo ad libros. Erant autem isti omnes libri Graeci miracu-  
lorum fabularumque pleni. Percontatus pretium sum, et,

86-99 *bello sociali*: the Social War, between Rome and her Italian allies, 90-89 B.C. *Gallias*: pl., the Gallic provinces. *versatus est*: he acted. *non . . . tantum*: not only. *intoleranter ferre*: be indignant.

86-90 *triumpho*, -are: celebrate a triumph *sinus*, -us: bosom *victus*, -us: means of living, livelihood *comparo*, -are: procure *mulus*: mule  
*conduco*: hire *quaestus*, -us: occupation

91-100 *naviter*: energetically *verso*, -are: turn *mando*: entrust  
*strenue*: promptly, actively *amplissimus*: highest *pontificatus*, -us: pontificate  
*vulgo*: everywhere

101-104 *versiculus*: (little) verse *proscribo*: post *haruspex*, -icis: soothsayer  
*inusitatus*: strange *confluo*, -are: produce, cause *frico*, -are: rub down, curry

105-109 *fascis*, -is: bundle *venalis*: for sale *percontor*, -ari: ask

adductus mīrā atque inspērātā vilitate, librōs plūrimōs aere 110  
paucō emō, eōsque omnēs duābus proximīs noctibus cursim  
trānseō.

Erant in illīs librīs scrīpta huius modī: Scythōs, quī sub ipsīs  
septentriōnibus aetātem agunt, corporibus hominum vescī;  
item esse hominēs sub eādē regiōne caelī ūnum oculum in 115  
frontis mediō habentēs; aliōs item esse hominēs singulāris  
vēlōcitātis, vēstīgia pedum habentēs retrō porrēcta, nōn, ut  
cēterōrum hominum, prōspectantia. Praetereā trāditum esse  
in ultimā quādam terrā quae Albānia dīcitur nāscī hominēs  
quī in pueritiā cānēscant et plūs cernant oculīs per noctem 120  
quam interdiū.

Id etiam in eīsdem librīs scrīptum est (quod postea in librō  
Plīnī Secundī *Nātūrālis Historiae* septimō lēgī) esse quāsdam  
in terrā Āfricā hominum familiās vōce et linguā fascinan-  
tium, quī sī forte laudāverint pulchrās arborēs, segetēs lae- 125  
tiōrēs, infantēs amoeniōrēs, ēgregiōs equōs, moriantur repente  
haec omnia. Item esse in montibus terrae Indiae hominēs  
canīnīs capitibus; atque esse item apud ultimās orientis terrās  
hominēs singulīs crūribus saltātīm currentēs; quōsdam etiam  
esse nūllīs cervīcibus, oculōs in humerīs habentēs. Eīdem illī 130  
scrīptōrēs aiunt gentem esse apud extrēma Indiae corporibus  
avium rītū plūmantibus; Pygmaeōs quoque haud longē ab eīs  
nāscī, quōrum quī longissimī sint nōn longiōrēs esse quam  
pedēs duo et quadrantem. (9.4)

114-123 aetātem agunt: *pass their life.* porrēcta: from "porrigō." Plīnī:  
Gaius Plinius Secundus, A.D. 23/24 -79, author and scientist, author of *Naturalis  
Historia*.

125-129 laetiōrēs: *plentiful.* singulīs crūribus: *with their single leg.*

110-115 inspērātus: *unexpected* vilitās, -tātis: *cheapness* cursim: *rapidly*  
vescor, -ī: *with abl., eat*

116-120 frōns, frontis: *forehead* prōspectō: *point forward* pueritia:  
*childhood* cānēscō, -ere: *turn white*

121-125 interdiū: *by day* fascinō, -āre: *work spells* seges, segetis:  
*crop*

126-130 amoenus: *charming* canīnus: *adj., of dogs* saltātīm: *by hopping*  
humerus: *shoulder*

131-134 rītū: *after the manner of* plūmāns: *feathered* quadrāns, -antis:  
*a fourth part, a quarter*

### QUESTIONS

Why did the Greeks and Romans consider the fourth finger of the left hand the ring finger?

How did the son of Croesus save his father's life?

What possessions were unimportant to Cato?

In what respect was Cato criticized? For what did he criticize others?

Tell the story of Alexander's horse. Can you name other famous horses?

What Roman religious official was forbidden to touch a dead body? To what other restrictions was he subjected?

To whom was the name Amata given? What was the origin of this name?

What argument did the Rhodians use to persuade Demetrius to abandon his attack?

Name three steps in the rise of Ventidius Bassus.

## Cicero

Marcus Tullius Cicero was born at Arpinum near Rome in 106 B.C. He was educated for the law in Rome and pursued further studies in Athens and Rhodes. He won the greatest distinction as an orator and gradually became the leading advocate in Rome. Entering the field of politics, he held, in turn, the offices of quaestor, aedile, and praetor. In 63 he gained the great object of his ambition, the consulship. During his year of office occurred the conspiracy of Catiline, which was suppressed and crushed through Cicero's prudence and energy. In the Civil War Cicero leaned to Pompey's side, and after the death of Caesar in 44, he violently opposed Caesar's successor, Mark Antony. In 43 he was assassinated by Antony's henchmen.

It is as an author that Cicero deserves the highest praise. In his works the Latin language appears in the greatest perfection. Cicero was the most voluminous writer of the Roman world. His writings include rhetorical works, philosophical treatises, orations (of which fifty-seven survive), and letters.

During the most important period of his life Cicero kept up a close correspondence with members of his family, with Atticus (a banker and publisher) and with a wide circle of literary and political friends. We now have upward of 800 letters, covering a space of twenty-six years. In his letters, characterized by extreme frankness and self-revelation, we have a clear picture of the man. We see how he reacts to every fluctuation in day-to-day politics, how fear and hope are interchanged as failure or success attends him; we recognize his seriousness and his sincere concern for Rome and its people, his deep attachment to his family and friends, his care for his household slaves; we learn with what efforts this man from back country reached and held his high place in a critical period of Roman history.





## FROM THE CORRESPONDENCE OF MARCUS TULLIUS CICERO

1. In October, 58 B.C. Cicero writes to Atticus from Thessalonica complaining that he has received no letters.

CICERŌ ATTICŌ SAL. Trīgintā diēs erant cum hās dabam litterās, per quōs nullās ā vōbīs accēperam. Mihi autem erat in animō iam, ut antea ad tē scrīpsī, ire in Ēpīrum et ibi omnem cāsum potissimum exspectāre. Tē ōrō ut, sī quid erit quod perspicīās quaecumque in partem, quam plānissimē ad 5 mē scrībās et meō nōmine, ut scrībīs, litterās, quibus putābis opus esse, ut dēs. Data v Kal. Novembrīs.

AD ATT. 3.21

2. In December, 49 B.C. Caesar visited the villa of Philippus, where his large escort gave considerable trouble. Cicero who was to be Caesar's next host was understandably alarmed.

CICERŌ ATTICŌ SAL. Cum ad Philippum vesperī vēnisset, villa ita complēta militibus est ut vix triclinium, ubi cēnātūrus ipse Caesar esset, vacāret; quippe hominum duo mīlia! Sānē 10 sum commōtus quid futūrum esset postrīdiē, ac mihi Barba Cassius subvēnit: custōdēs dedit. Castra in agrō; villa mea dēfēnsa est.

1-5 Sal.: "salūtem dicit," gives greetings. erant, dabam, accēperam: epistolary tenses. The writer of a letter often used tenses which are not appropriate at the time of writing, but which will be so at the time when his letter is received. A tense thus used is called an epistolary tense. The natural tense "scrībō," I am writing, may become the epistolary tense "scrībēbam," I was writing; "scrīpsī," I have written, I wrote, may become "scrīpseram," I had written. ibi potissimum: there preferably. quod perspicīās: rel. cl. of characteristic. quaecumque (from "quicūque") in partem: i.e., whether favorable or not.

6-7 meō nōmine: in my behalf. ut scrībīs: as you suggest. opus esse: with abl., there is need. dēs: send, write.

With the date at the close of the letter, the word "data" or the contraction "D." was sometimes written. It indicates that the letter was given at such a time (and place) to the person by whom it was to be delivered. From "data" is derived our word "date." v. Kal. Novembrīs: short for "ante diem quintum Kalendās Novembrīs," which is October 28.

8-13 vesperī: in the evening. vacāret: could be kept free quippe: it is a fact that. castra: supply a verb.

8-13 triclinium: dining room subveniō: with dat., come to one's assistance

The Erechtheum, an Ionic temple of Athena on the Acropolis at Athens, is famous for its exquisite perfection of detail. Shown here is the Porch of the Maidens (Caryatides), unsurpassed in the grace and beauty of its statues.

Post merīdiem ille ambulāvit in lītore. Post hōram octā-  
 15 vam in balneum iit; ūnctus est, accubuit. Ēdit et bibit  
 iūcundē. Praetereā tribus trīclīniīs acceptī sunt comitēs  
 cōpiōsē; servīs nihil dēfuit. Quid multa?

Hospes tamen nōn is cui dīcerēs, “Amābō tē, ad mē rever-  
 tere.” Semel satis est. Quid quaeris? Dēlectātus est et  
 20 libenter fuit. Puteolīs sē aiēbat ūnum diem fore, alterum  
 ad Baiās.

Ego paulisper hīc, deinde in Tūsculānum.

AD ATT. 13.52

3. In July, 51 B.C. Cicero, on his way to his province of Cilicia, writes to Atticus from near Ephesus.

CICERŌ ATTICŌ SAL. Ante quam aliquō locō cōnsēderō, neque  
 longās ā mē neque semper meā manū litterās exspectābis; cum  
 25 autem erit spatium, utrumque praestābō. Nunc iter cōficiē-  
 bāmus aestuōsā et pulverulentā viā. Dederam Ephesō prīdiē.  
 In prōvinciā meā fore mē putābam Kal. Sextilibus. Intereā  
 tamen haec mihi quae vellem afferēbantur, prīmum ōtium  
 Parthicum, deinde cōfectae pactiōnēs pūblicānōrum, postrē-  
 30 mō sēditio mīlitum sēdāta ab Appiō.

14-22 ille: the important man, Caesar. hōram octāvam: about 2 p.m. ūnctus  
 est: he made his toilet. accubuit: he took his place at table. comitēs: Caesar's  
 suite. cui dīcerēs: rel. cl. of characteristic; the guest was not the sort of person to  
 whom you would say. Puteoli and Baiae were seaport towns in Campania.  
 Tūsculānum: Cicero's favorite villa at Tusculum in Latium.

25-29 utrumque: i.e., both long letters and letters written by my own hand.  
 cōficiēbāmus: epistolary tense; so also “dederam, putābam, afferēbantur, erat  
 (lines 26-34).” dederam: I sent (letters) yesterday. Kalendīs Sextilibus (the  
 month later called “Augustus”): Aug. 1. haec: these items of news. ōtium  
 Parthicum: peace with the Parthians; at this time the Parthians were a serious  
 threat to Rome's eastern provinces. cōfectae . . . pūblicānōrum: the conclusion  
 of contracts with the tax collectors. Appius was Cicero's predecessor in the East.

15-19 balneum: bath unguō, -ere, ūnxī, ūnctum: anoint edō, edere,  
 ēdī: eat iūcundē: with satisfaction cōpiōsē: plentifully, hospitably  
 quid: why semel: once dēlectō, -āre: delight, please

23-30 cōnsidō, -ere, -sēdī: settle down aestuōsus: hot pulverulentus:  
 dusty sēditio: mutiny sēdō, -āre: suppress

Nōs Asia accēpit admīrābiliter. Adventus noster nēminī nē minimō quidem fuit sūmptuī. Magnō timōre sum, sed bene spērāmus. Omnēs iam nostrī praeter Tullium tuum vērunt. Erat mihi in animō rēctā proficīscī ad exercitum, aestīvōs mēnsēs reliquōs rē militārī dare, hibernōs iūris dictiōnī. 35

Habēs epistulam plēnam festīnātiōnis et pulveris; reliquae subtiliōrēs erunt.

AD ATT. 5.14

4. From Athens Trebonius reports that Cicero's son is studying hard at the University (44 B.C.).

TREBŌNIUS CICERŌNĪ S. S.v.b.e. Athēnās vērī ante diem xi Kalendās Iūniās atque ibi (quod maximē optābam) vīdī filium tuum dēditum optimīs studiīs. Quā ex rē quantam voluptā- 40 tem cēperim scīre poteris, etiam mē tacente. Nōn enim nescīs quantī tē faciam, et quō modō tuīs etiam minimīs commodīs gaudeam. Nōlī putāre, mī Cicerō, mē hoc auribus tuīs dare. Nēmō est adulēscēte tuō aut amābilior ex omnibus eīs quī Athēnīs sunt, neque studiōsior eārum artium quās tū maximē 45 amās. Itaque tibi — quod vērē facere possum — libenter grātulor.

32-37 timōre: Cicero feared a Parthian invasion. Tullius: a friend of Atticus. subtiliōrēs: more detailed.

38-42 S.: "salūtem." S.v.b.e.: "Sī valēs, bene est, "if you are well, I am glad (lit., it is well). ante diem xi Kalendās Iūniās: May 22. cēperim: perf. subj. in indirect question. quantī tē faciam: lit., of how much I rate you; tr., how highly I prize you. commodīs: abl. of cause, with "gaudeō."

43-47 auribus tuīs dare: lit., give to your ears; tr., flatter you. adulēscēte: abl. of comparison.

31-36 admīrābiliter: wonderfully sūmptus, -ūs: expense rēctā (viā): directly aestīvus: of the summer hibernus: of the winter iūris dictiō: administration of justice festīnātiō, -ōnis: haste

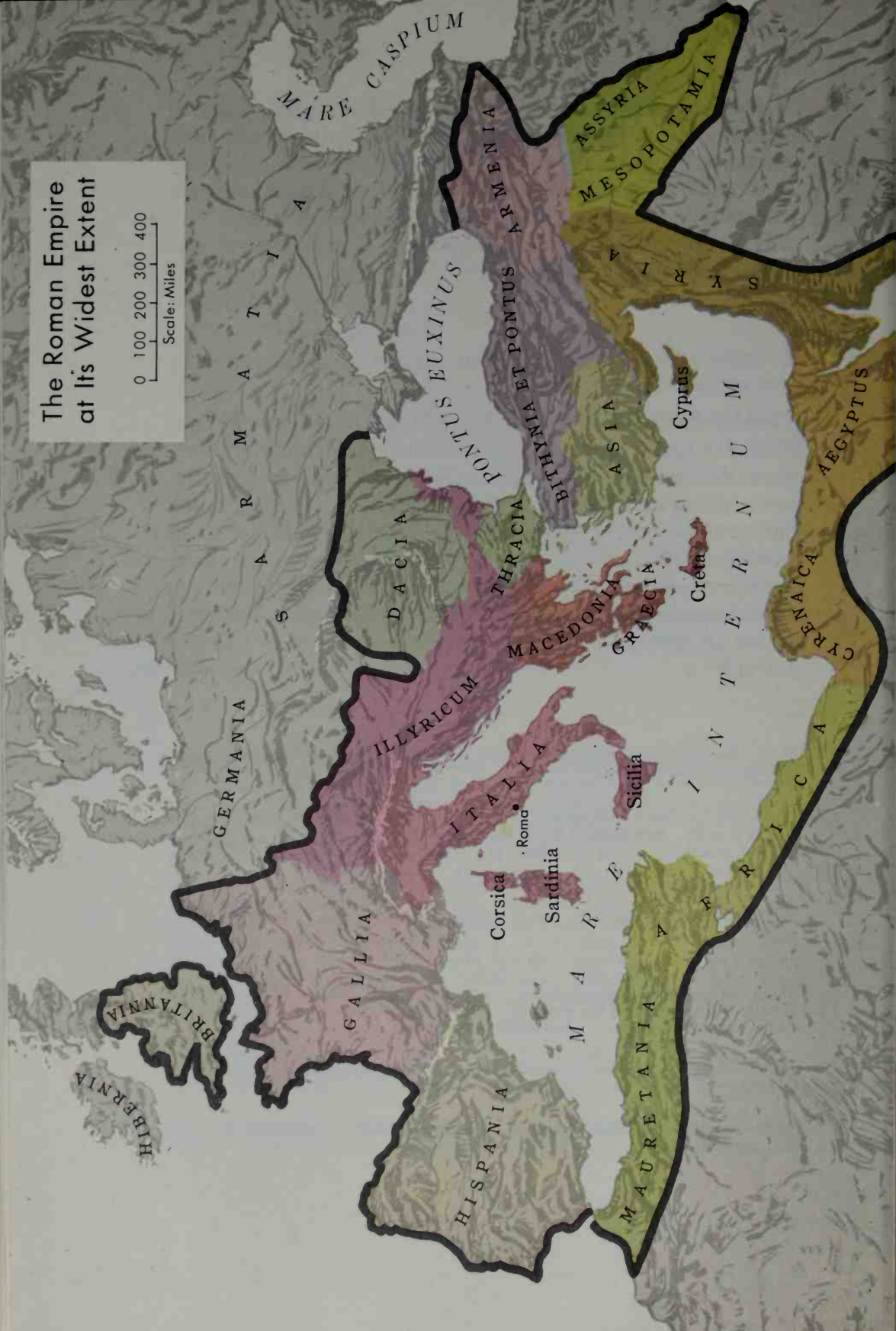
40-42 dēditus: devoted studia: pl., studies, pursuits commodum: advantage, interest

43-47 amābilis: attractive, amiable libenter: gladly grātulor, -ārī: with dat., congratulate



# The Roman Empire at Its Widest Extent

0 100 200 300 400  
Scale: Miles



Puer cum mihi in sermōne iniēcisset sē velle Asiam vidēre, nōn modo invitātus, sed etiam rogātus est ā mē ut id faceret; nam mēcum eō ire poterit cum in Asiam prō cōnsule ierō. 50 Illud quoque erit nōbīs cūrae, ut Cratippus cum eō sit, nē putēs illum futūrum in Asiā fēriātum ab eīs studiīs. Illum etiam videō parātum esse in diēs discendō exercendōque sē prōcēdere. D. viii K. Iūn. Athēnīs.

A Series of Letters Written by Cicero to his Wife  
Terentia in 48-47 B.C.

5. TULLIUS TERENTIAE SUAE S. D. Quod nōs in Italiam 55  
salvōs vēnisse gaudēs, perpetuō gaudeās velim; sed perturbātī  
dolōre animī magnisque iniūriīs metuō nē id cōsiliū cēperimus  
quod nōn facile explicāre possīmus. Quā rē, quantum potes,  
adiuvā; quid autem possīs, mihi in mentem nōn venit. In  
viam quod tē dēs hōc tempore, nihil est; et longum est iter et 60  
nōn tūtum, et nōn videō quid prōdesse possīs sī vēneris. Valē.  
D. pr. Nōn. Nov. Brundisiō.

AD FAM. 14.12

48-52 prō cōnsule: as proconsul, as governor (of a province). ut . . . sit: cl. in apposition with "illud"; that Cratippus should be with him. Cratippus was a philosopher who spent much of his time in Athens and was a teacher of young Cicero.

53-54 in diēs: from day to day.

55-62 S.D.: "salūtem dicit." Quod gaudēs: as to your rejoicing. Italiam: Cicero was at Brundisium, where he had gone after the Battle of Pharsalus. gaudeās velim: I hope that you may rejoice. mihi . . . venit: does not occur to me. in . . . est: there is no reason for your coming to me. pr. Nōn. Nov.: short for "pridiē Nōnās Novembrīs," which is Nov. 4.

48-54 sermō, -ōnis: conversation      iniciō: mention      fēriātus: on holiday  
prōcēdō: make progress

58-61 explicō: explain; disentangle      adiuvō: help      prōsum, prōdesse:  
be of assistance, help

6. TULLIUS TERENTIAE SUAE S. D. In maximīs meīs dolō-  
ribus excruciat mē valētūdō Tulliae nostrae, dē quā nihil est  
65 quod ad tē plūra scribam, tibi enim aequē magnae cūrae esse  
certō sciō. Quod mē propius vultis accēdere, vidēō ita esse  
faciendum; etiam ante fēcissem, sed mē multa impedivērunt,  
quae nē nunc quidem expedita sunt. Sed ā Pompōniō exspectō  
litterās, quās ad mē quam primum perferendās cūrēs velim.  
70 Dā operam ut valeās.

AD FAM. 14.19

7. TULLIUS TERENTIAE SUAE SAL. PLŪRIMAM. Ad cēterās  
meās miseriās accessit dolor et dē Dolābellae valētūdine et dē  
Tulliae. Omnīnō dē omnibus rēbus nec quid cōsiliī capiam  
nec quid faciam sciō. Tū velim tuam et Tulliae valētūdinem  
75 cūrēs. Valē.

AD FAM. 14.9

8. TULLIUS TERENTIAE SUAE S. D. Sī quid habērem quod  
ad tē scriberem, facerem id et plūribus verbīs et saepius.  
Nunc quae sint negōtia vidēs; ego autem quō modō sim  
affectus ex Trebātiō poteris cognōscere. Tū fac ut tuam et  
80 Tulliae valētūdinem cūrēs. Valē.

AD FAM. 14.17

9. TULLIUS S. D. TERENTIAE. Sī valēs, bene est. Cōsti-  
tuerāmus, ut ad tē antea scripseram, obviam Cicerōnem Cae-

66-69 quod vultis: as to your wish. quās perferendās cūrēs velim: which I should like you to see are delivered.

72-74 accessit: from "accēdō," is added. Dolābellae: husband of Tullia, Cicero's daughter. quid cōsiliī capiam: what plan (course of action) I am to adopt. tū velim: I should wish that you = please. Written at Brundisium, Dec. 17, 48 B.C.

78-79 quō . . . affectus: how worried I am. Trebātius: an intimate friend of Cicero.

64-70 excrucio, -āre: torture, torment valētūdō, -inis: health certō:  
surely expediō, -ire: settle, adjust operam dare: to give heed, take care

72 miseria: wretchedness, misery dolor: grief, sorrow valētūdō: health

82 obviam: to meet

sarī mittere, sed mūtāvimus cōnsilium quia dē illius adventū nihil audiēbāmus. Dē cēterīs rēbus, etsī nihil erat novī, tamen quid velīmus et quid hōc tempore putēmus opus esse ex Siccā 85 poteris cognōscere. Tulliam adhūc mēcum teneō. Valētūdinem tuam cūrā dīlīgenter. Valē. xii K. Quīntīlīs.

AD FAM. 14.15

10. S. v. b. e. v. Nōs cotīdiē tabellāriōs exspectāmus, quī sī vēnerint, fortasse erimus certiōrēs quid nōbīs faciendum sit, faciēmusque tē statim certiōrem. Valētūdinem tuam cūrā 90 dīlīgenter. Valē. K. Septembr.

AD FAM. 14.22

83-87 illius: Caesar's. (nihil) erat: epistolary tense. xii K. Quīntīlīs = "ante diem duodecimum Kalendās Quīntīlīs," June 20.

91 Written at Brundisium, Sept. 1, 47 B.C. K. Septembr.: short for "Kalendis Septembribus."

88-91 tabellārius: letter-carrier, courier fortasse: perhaps dīlīgenter: carefully

### QUESTIONS

What were the names of (1) Cicero's wife, (2) Cicero's daughter, (3) Cicero's banker friend, (4) the governor designate who wrote Cicero from Athens?

Describe Caesar's visit to Cicero in 49 B.C.

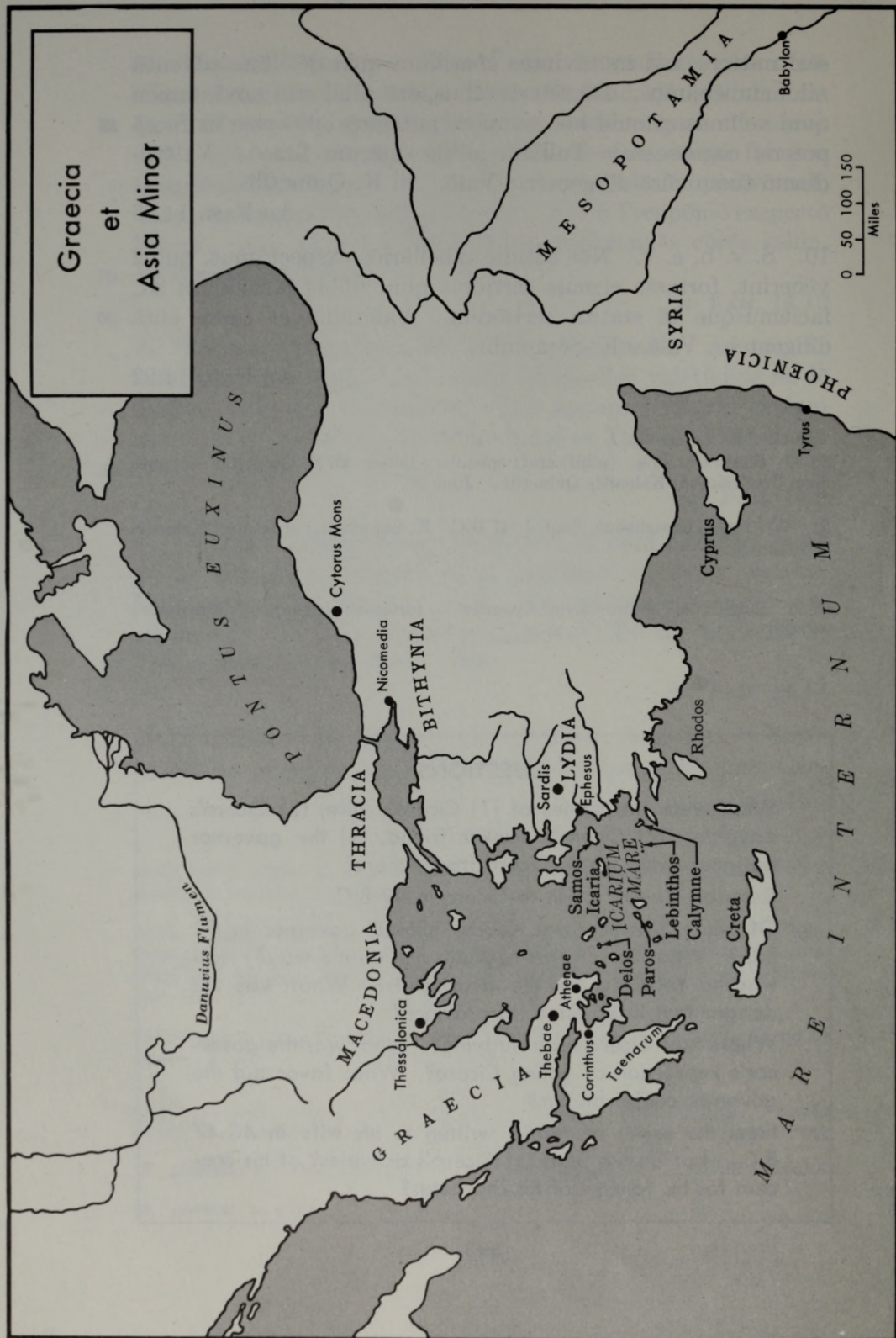
Of what province was Cicero himself governor in 51 B.C.? What good news reached him on the way? How was he received by the provincials? What was the danger that threatened his province?

Where was Cicero's son studying? What was the governor's impression of young Cicero? What favor did the governor confer on him?

From the series of letters written to his wife in 48-47 B.C., what do we learn of Cicero's activities? of his concern for his family? of his character?



Graecia  
et  
Asia Minor



## Pliny

GAIUS PLINIUS CAECILIUS SECUNDUS, Pliny the Younger (A.D. 61-113). Pliny the Younger, born at Novum Comum (Como) in Cisalpine Gaul, was brought up by his uncle, the famous scientist, known as Pliny the Elder. A lawyer, Pliny was a member of the court circle under the Emperor Domitian and an official under Nerva and Trajan. In 111-112 A.D., Trajan appointed him governor of Bithynia with special powers to reorganize the finances of that province. Pliny was the author of the *Panegyricus* and of 10 books of *Letters*.

Pliny describes the life of his age as seen by a refined man moving amid a cultivated circle. He writes letters both official and personal to the Emperor Trajan. There may be a hint of excessive humility in them, but there is also respect and affection. Trajan's answers are brief and, generally, kindly. Pliny gives us a good idea how an urbane man of letters spends his time at work and on holiday, and of his relations with his family and the community. In one of his letters, he mentions the first Board of Education on record. In another, he gives a rather formal account of his religious obligations, as he instructs his architect about the rebuilding of a temple to Ceres.

Pliny's style is attractive; it is polished but not ornate. He writes self-consciously, probably foreseeing that his letters would be made public. The total impression he leaves is that of a well-groomed, amiable, efficient, and conscientious man of affairs.

## THE GOVERNOR AND THE EMPEROR

Gaius Plinius Caecilius Secundus was governor of the Roman province of Bithynia in Asia Minor in A.D. 111-112. The following selections are taken from his correspondence with the Emperor Trajan.

### 1. Pliny Congratulates Trajan on his Succession to the Empire

C. PLINIUS TRAIANŌ IMPERĀTŌRĪ. Tua pietās, imperātor sānctissime, optāverat ut quam tardissimē succēderēs patrī; sed deī immortālēs festināverunt virtūtēs tuās ad gubernācula reī pūblicae admovēre. Precor ergō ut tibi et, per tē, generī  
5 hūmānō prōspēra omnia contingant. Fortem esse tē et fēlicem, imperātor optime, et prīvātim et pūblicē optō. (10.1)

### 2. A Request to Grant Roman Citizenship to Pliny's Physician

C. PLINIUS TRAIANŌ IMPERĀTŌRĪ. Proximō annō, domine, gravissimā valētūdine usque ad perīculum vītāe vexātus medicum adsūmpsī; cuius sollicitūdīnī et studiō tuā tantum  
10 indulgentiā referre grātiā possum. Quā dē causā rogō ut dēs eī cīvitatē Rōmānam. Est enim peregrīnus; vocātur ipse Harpocras. (10.5)

1-6 Note the simplicity of the salutation: Gaius Pliny to the Emperor Trajan. *pietās*: loyal affection, filial reverence. *sānctissime*: most sacred, a conventional term as applied to an emperor. *succēderēs*: subj. in indirect command. *patrī*: the Emperor Nerva, Trajan's adoptive father, died after a short reign. *gubernācula*: Pliny may have used the plural, as an ancient vessel was steered with two large oars, one on each side of the stern. *fortem*: healthy. *et prīvātim et pūblicē*: Pliny's good wishes are those of a friend for a friend and of a subject for his emperor.

7-10 *proximō*: last. *indulgentiā*: abl. of means; some favor on your part.

3-5 *festinō*: hasten *gubernāculum*: helm *admoveō*: move toward, advance *contingō*: happen, turn out

8-11 *valētūdō*, -dinis: illness *vexō*: attack *medicus*: physician  
*adsūmō*: employ *indulgentia*: favor *peregrīnus*: foreigner

### 3. The Emperor Grants Pliny Leave of Absence

TRĀIĀNUS PLĪNIŌ. Et propter rem tuam prīvātam et rem publicam, multās causās petendī commeātūs mihi dedistī; mihi autem sōla voluntās tua sufficit. Neque enim dubitō tē, cum 15 primum potueris, ad tuum officium reversūrum.

Statuam pōnī mihi ā tē, quamquam eius modī honōrum sum parcissimus, tamen patior nē videar impedire cursum ergā mē pietātis tuae. (10.9)

### 4. Congratulations to Trajan on his Victory over the Dacians

C. PLĪNIUS TRĀIĀNŌ IMPERĀTŌRĪ. Victōriae tuae, optime 20 imperātor, maximae, pulcherrimae, et tuō nōmine et reī publicae grātulor; deōsque immortalēs precor ut omnia cōnsilia tua tam laetus sequātur ēventus, ut tuīs virtūtibus tantīs glōria imperiī et novētur et augeātur. (10.14)

### 5. Plans for a Journey

C. PLĪNIUS TRĀIĀNŌ IMPERĀTŌRĪ. Quod cōnfidō, domine, ad 25 cūram tuam pertinēre, nūntiō tibi mē Ephesum cum omnibus meis nāvigāvisse. Contrāriīs ventīs retentus, nunc parō partim nāvibus partim vehiculīs prōvinciam petere. Nam sicut itinerī gravēs sunt aestūs, ita continuī ventī nāvigātiōnī sunt impedimentō. (10.15) 30

13-18 rem: affairs. sōla voluntās tua: the mere expression of a wish on your part. pōnī: to be erected. eius modī: gen. of description. honōrum: gen. with adj. "parcissimus"; Trajan allowed few statues of himself to be erected. videar: subj. in cl. of purpose.

20-24 The Dacians were a warlike people living north of the Danube. In a lengthy war Trajan conquered their country and made it into the Roman province of Dacia. victōriae (dat.) grātulor: I congratulate your victory, i.e., I congratulate you on your victory. tuō nōmine: on your account. reī publicae: supply "nōmine." cōnsilia: acc. imperiī: empire. novētur: subj. in cl. of purpose.

25-29 ad cūram tuam pertinēre: the news is of interest to you. Ephesum: acc.; motion to with name of city; Ephesus was an important seaport of Asia Minor. meis: including his wife and his official and personal retinue. petere: to make for. itinerī gravēs sunt: prevent traveling by land.

14-19 commeātus, -ūs: leave of absence sufficiō: suffice officium: post  
parcus: sparing pietās: loyalty

23-24 ēventus, -ūs: result novō, -āre: make new, renew

28-29 vehiculum: carriage aestus, -ūs: heat wave



## 6. Trajan's Reply

TRĀIĀNUS PLĪNIŌ. Rēctē nūntiāvistī, mī Secunde cārissime. Cognōscere enim volō quālī itinere in prōvinciam perveniās. Prūdenter autem cōstituis interim nāvibus interim vehiculīs ūtī, ut loca suāserint. (10.16)

## 7. Trajan's Interest in the Affairs of Bithynia

- 35 TRĀIĀNUS PLĪNIŌ. Quō diē pervēnissēs in Bīthŷniam cognōvī, Secunde cārissime, litterīs tuīs. Prōvinciālēs, crēdō, prōspectum esse sibi ā mē intellegent. Nam tū dabis operam ut manifestum sit illīs tē missum esse meī locō. In prīmīs autem ratiōnēs urbium tibi excutiendae sunt.
- 40 Mēnsōrēs vix etiam eīs operibus quae aut Rōmae aut in finitimō fiunt sufficientēs habeō. Sed in omnī prōvinciā inveniuntur mēnsōrēs quibus crēdere possīs. (10.18)

## 8. Disastrous Fire in Nicomedia, a Celebrated City of Bithynia

- C. PLĪNIUS TRĀIĀNŌ IMPERĀTŌRĪ. Cum partem prōvinciae circumīrem, Nicomēdiae vāstissimum incendium multās prīvā-
- 45 tōrum domōs et duo pūblica opera absūmpsit. Est autem lātius dispersum et violentiā ventī et inertīā hominum quī immōbiles spectātōrēs adstitērunt. Nullus usquam in pūblicō sīphō, nūlla hama, nūllum dēnique īnstrūmentum ad incendia compēscenda. Haec, ut iam praecēpī, parābuntur.
- 50 Putāsne, domine, collēgium fabrōrum īnstituendum esse? (10.33)

31-34 nūntiāvistī: supply "mihi haec." perveniās: subj. in indirect question. interim: sometimes. suāserint: fut. perf. indic., from "suādeō"; as the nature of the country suggests.

35-41 pervēnissēs: subj. in indirect question. prōspectum esse: from "prōspiciō": impers.; that thoughtful provision has been made. meī locō: in place of me. in prīmīs: especially. ratiōnēs: financial affairs. tibi: dat. agent with pass. periphrastic. in finitimō: in the neighborhood.

44-49 Nicomēdiae: loc. lātius: adv. spectātōrēs: as spectators. in pūblicō: for public use. ut: as.

36-40 prōvinciālēs: the provincials operam dare: to take care manifestus: clear excutiō: investigate mēnsor, -ōris: surveyor

44-50 circumeō: travel around absūmō: destroy inertia: laziness, inactivity sīphō: fire engine hama: bucket compēscō: suppress, check collēgium: guild faber, fabri: fireman

## SELECTIONS FROM PLINY'S PERSONAL LETTERS

### 9. A Day on his Tuscan Estate

C. PLINIUS FUSCŌ SUŌ S. Quaeris quem ad modum in Tūscīs diem aestāte dispōnam. Ēvigilō cum libuit, plērumque circā hōram prīmam, saepe ante, tardius rārō. Clausae fenestrae manent. Līber et mihi relictus sum. Cōgitō sī quid in manibus habeō. Notārium vocō, et diē admissō ea quae fōrmāveram 55 dictō. Abit, rūrsusque revocātur, rūrsusque dīmittitur.

Hōrā quārtā vel quīntā—neque enim est certum tempus—ut diēs suāsīt, domō exeō; reliqua meditor et dictō.

Vehiculum ascendō; ibi quoque idem quod ambulāns faciō. Paulum dormiō, dein ambulō, mox ōrātiōnem Graecam 60 Latīnamve clārē et intentē nōn tam vōcis causā quam stomachi legō.

Cēnantī mihi, sī cum uxōre vel paucīs, liber legitur; post cēnam comoedus aut lyristēs; mox cum meis ambulō, quōrum in numerō sunt ērudītī. 65

Ita longissimus diēs cito conditur. (9.36)

51-58 **quem ad modum**: *how*. in Tūscīs: *on my Tuscan estate*. **hōram primam**: the first hour after sunrise; this was rather late by Roman standards. **mihi relictus**: *left to myself*. **reliqua . . . dictō**: *I consider and dictate what remains (of the subject I have in hand), i.e., I continue my composition and dictation*.

59-66 **vehiculum**: Pliny's villa had a hippodromos for riding and driving. **Latīnamve**: *or Latin*. **clārē et intentē**: *aloud and vigorously*; an ancient physician recommends reading aloud and walking afterwards as beneficial in disorders of the stomach. **comoedus**: a slave trained to read or recite scenes from comedies. The custom of dramatic readings at dinners is mentioned by several writers of this period. **lyristēs**: frequently the Romans had flute-players at their banquets; with the increase of luxury, musicians playing on various sorts of lyres were introduced. **meīs**: members of my family, including guests. **conditur**: *is laid to rest, is brought to an end*.

52-65	<b>ēvigilō</b> : awaken	<b>libet, libēre, libuit</b> : it pleases	<b>fenestra</b> : window
	<b>cōgitō</b> : ponder	<b>notārius</b> : shorthand writer, secretary	<b>fōrmō</b> : compose
	<b>dictō</b> : dictate	<b>dein</b> : next, then	<b>ērudītī</b> : scholars
		<b>lyristēs</b> : musician	

## 10. Pliny Chides his Friend for not Writing

C. PLINIUS FABIŌ IUSTŌ SUŌ S. Ōlim mihi nūllās epistulās mittis. Nihil est, inquis, quod scribam. At hoc ipsum scribe nihil esse quod scribās, vel solum illud unde incipere priōrēs  
 70 solēbant "Sī valēs, bene est; ego valeō." Hoc mihi sufficit; est enim maximum. Lūdere mē putās? Sēriō petō. Fac sciam quid agās, quod sine sollicitūdine summā nescīre nōn possum. Valē. (1.11)

## 11. Pliny Enjoys Hunting

C. PLINIUS CORNELIŌ TACITŌ SUŌ S. Ridēbis, et licet rideās.  
 75 Ego ille quem nōvistī aprōs trēs et quidem pulcherrimōs cēpī. "Ipse?" inquis. Ipse; nōn tamen ut omnīnō ab inertīā meā et quiēte discēderem. Ad rētia sedēbam; erat in proximō nōn lancea sed stilus et pugillārēs. Meditābar aliquid scribēbamque, ut, sī manūs vacuās, plēnōs tamen pugillārēs reportārem.  
 80 Nōn est quod contemnās hoc studendī genus. Nam animus mōtū corporis excitātur. Undique silvae et sōlitūdō ipsumque illud silentium quod vēratiōnī datur cōgitatiōnēs incitant. Itaque cum vērāberis, licēbit auctōre mē ut pugillārēs tēcum ferās. Nōn solum Diana sed etiam Minerva in montibus errat. (1.6)

67-72 ōlim . . . mittis: for a long time you have sent. illud unde: that phrase with which. priōrēs: our forefathers. quid agās: how you are.

74-79 Tacitus, the great historian, Pliny's intimate friend. licet rideās: laugh you may. nōvistī: from "nōscō." et quidem: and I am telling you. nōn tamen ut omnīnō: yet not so that . . . entirely. ad rētia sedēbam: Roman sportsmen were not interested in the excitement of the hunt but rather in the number of animals taken. Frequently they hunted by enclosing a large space in the forest with strong nets and by using beaters and dogs to drive the game into a narrow area from which there was no escape. The hunters could then kill the beasts in comparative safety. Pliny says that while he waited at the nets he busied himself with literary composition. ut . . . reportārem: cl. of purpose.

83-84 auctōre mē: upon the strength of my example. Diana: goddess of the chase; Minerva: goddess of wisdom.

71-72 lūdō: jest sollicitūdō: apprehension, anxiety

75-83 aper, aprī: boar quiēs, quiētis: sedentary ways pugillārēs: writing tablets  
 vēratiō: hunting cōgitatiōnēs: thoughts vērator, -ārī: hunt

## 12. Sad Death of Fundanus' Young Daughter

C. PLINIUS MÄRCELLINÖ SUÖ S. Tristissimus haec tibi scribō. 85  
Fundānī nostrī filia minor dēfūncta est, quā puellā nihil um-  
quam fēstivius, amābilius, nec modo longiōre vitā sed prope  
immortālitate dignius vidī. Nōndum annōs quattuordecim  
implēverat, et iam illī prūdētia mātṛōnālis gravitāsque erat,  
et tamen suāvitās puellāris cum virginālī verēcundiā. Ut illa 90  
patris cervicī inhaerēbat! Ut nōs amīcōs paternōs et amanter  
et modestē complectēbātur! Quā illa patientiā, quā etiam  
cōstantiā novissimam valētūdinem tulit! Plūrimās gravissi-  
māsque nōbīs causās reliquit et dēsideriū et dolōris.

Iam dēstināta erat ēgregiō iuvenī, iam ēlēctus nūptiārum 95  
diēs, iam nōs vocātī. Quod gaudium quō maerōre mūtātum  
est! Nōn possum exprimere verbīs quantum animō vulnus  
accēperim, cum audīvī Fundānum ipsum praecipientem ut,  
quod in vestēs gemmāsque fuerat ērogātūrus, hoc in tūs et  
unguenta impenderētur. (5.16) 100

## 13. Pliny Helps to Endow a School

C. PLINIUS CORNELIÖ TACITÖ SUÖ S. Tē salvum in urbem  
vēnisse gaudeō. Ipse paucīs adhūc diēbus in Tūsculānō  
commorābor ut opusculum quod est in manibus cōficiam.

86-99 quā puellā: abl. of comparison. vitā: abl. with adj. "dignus." puellāris,  
virginālis: adjectives; relate to "puella" and "virgō." ut illa: how she used to . . .  
fuerat ērogātūrus: he would have spent.

101-102 This letter gives us an insight into Pliny's generosity and shrewdness,  
and tells us something about education in the provinces in his day. tē . . .  
vēnisse: with "gaudeō" the cause of joy may be expressed by an acc. and inf.  
paucīs adhūc diēbus: for the next few days; Pliny sometimes uses an abl. of time  
how long. in Tūsculānō: on my estate at Tusculum. Tusculum was a town in  
Latium, about ten miles southeast of Rome, high in the mountains.

86-94 minor: younger dēfūngor: die fēstivus: lively amābilis:  
lovable impleō: complete mātṛōnālis: womanly gravitās: dignity  
suāvitās: attractiveness verēcundia: modesty inhaereō: cling to, with  
dat. amanter: affectionately modestē: modestly cōstantia: heroism  
dēsiderium: regret

95-100 dēstinō: betroth nūptiae, -ārum: wedding maeror: grief  
exprimō: express praecipiō: give instructions tūs, tūris, n.: incense  
unguentum: perfume impendō: expend

103 opusculum: a little work





Delphi. The *Sacra Via* leading to the Temple of Apollo. The spring of Castalia and remains of the earliest shrine. The photograph shows the entrance to the gorge and the border of the spring cut into the rock. A pilgrim wishing to consult the oracle was ritually purified by the waters of this spring.

Proximē, cum in patriā meā fuī, vēnit ad mē salūtandum  
mūnicipis meī filius praetextātus. Huic ego “Studēs?” inquam. 106  
Respondit, “Etiam.” “Ubi?” “Mediōlānī.” “Cūr nōn hīc?”

Et pater eius (erat enim ūnā atque etiam ipse addūxerat  
puerum), “Quod nūllōs hīc praeceptōrēs habēmus.”

“Quārē nūllōs? Nam interest vestrā, quī patrēs estis,”—et  
opportūnē complūrēs patrēs audiēbant—“līberōs vestrōs hīc 110  
discere. Ubi enim aut iūcundius morentur quam in patriā,  
aut pudīcius contineantur quam sub oculīs parentum, aut  
minōre sūmptū quam domī? Facile est, collātā pecūniā,  
condūcere praeceptōrēs. Atque ego, quī nōndum līberōs habēō,  
parātus sum prō rē públicā nostrā, quasi prō filiā vel parente, 115  
tertiā partem eius quod cōferre vōbīs placebit dare.

“Nihil honestius praestāre līberīs vestrīs, nihil grātius patriae  
potestis. Ēducentur hīc quī hīc nāscuntur.”

Haec ā fonte repetīvī ut suscipiās id quod petō. Rogō ut  
ex cōpiā studiōsōrum, quae ad tē ex admīrātiōne ingenīi tuī 120  
convenit, circūspiciās praeceptōrēs quōs sollicitāre possīmus.  
Valē. (4.13)

#### 14. Pliny Plans to Enlarge a Temple to Ceres.

##### A Letter to his Architect

C. PLINIUS MUSTIŌ SUŌ S. Harūspicum monitū reficienda est  
mihi aedēs Cereris in praediīs in melius et in maius. Vetus  
sānē est et angusta, cum sit statō diē frequentissima. Nam 125

104-107 *proximē: recently. cum . . . fuī: indic. as denoting time simply. patriā: his hometown of Comum in Cisalpine Gaul. praetextātus: The toga praetexta, with a purple border, was worn by boys of free birth until they assumed the toga virilis, the plain white toga of manhood. studēs: do you go to school? ūnā: adv.*

109-118 *interest vestrā: it is to your interest. morentur, contineantur: deliberative subj. eius: of the sum. ēducentur: from “ēducō, ēducāre”; jussive subj.*

123-125 *The soothsayers interpreted the will of the gods. in praediīs: on my estate. cum: although. statō diē: on a particular day; as the region is an agricultural one, the temple of Ceres would be crowded on a festival in her honor.*

105-108 *mūniceps: fellow townsman Mediōlānum: Milan praeceptor: teacher (of rhetoric)*

110-121 *opportūnē: opportunely pudicē: modestly contineō: supervise sūmptus, -ūs: cost condūcō: hire honestus: glorious praestō: confer cōpia: number studiōsus: learned ingenium: genius, talents sollicitō: engage*

123-124 *harūspex, -icis: soothsayer monitus, -ūs: advice aedēs, aedis: temple*

Idibus Septembribus magnus ē regiōne tōtā coit populus,  
multae rēs aguntur, multa vōta suscipiuntur, multa redduntur.  
Sed nūllum in proximō suffugium est aut imbris aut sōlis.  
Videor ergō mūnificē simul religiōsēque factūrus, sī aedem  
130 quam pulcherrimam exstrūxerō, addiderō porticūs aedī, illam  
ad ūsum deae, hās ad hominum.

Velim ergō emās quattuor marmoreās columnās, cuius tibi  
vidēbitur generis. Erit etiam vel faciendum vel emendum  
ipsius deae signum, quia antīquum illud ē lignō vetustāte  
135 truncātum est. (9.39)

## 15. The Boy and the Dolphin

C. PLINIUS CANINIŌ SUŌ S. Fābulam audīvī vērā dignamque  
tuō poētico ingeniō.

Est in Āfricā Hipponēnsis colōnia, marī proxima. Hīc omnis  
aetās piscandī, nāvigandī, atque etiam natandī est cupida,  
140 maximē puerī. Hīs est glōria et virtūs altissimē prōvehī; victor  
est ille quī longissimē et lītus et cēterōs natantēs reliquit.

Hōc certāmine puer quīdam audācior erat cēterīs. Del-  
phīnus puerō occurrit, et nunc praecēdere puerum, nunc sequī,  
nunc circumīre, postrēmō subīre, dēpōnere, iterum subīre,  
145 trepidantemque puerum perferre primum in altum, mox flectit  
ad lītus, redditque terrae et comitibus.

126-133 Īdibus Septembribus: September 13. aguntur: are transacted. reddun-  
tur: are paid. velim emās: please buy. vidēbitur: shall seem best.

137-141 ingeniō: abl. with adj. "dignus." Āfricā: the Roman province of  
Africa. Hipponēnsis colōnia: a colonial town named Hippo; now Bizerte. hīc:  
adv. omnis aetās: people of every age. piscandī: gen. of gerund, with adj.  
"cupidus." hīs = "puerīs"; dat. of possession. altissimē prōvehī: to swim out  
into the deepest water. longissimē: at the greatest distance. natantēs: part. used as  
noun.

143-145 puerō: dat. with "occurrit." praecēdere: this and the infs. that follow  
are historical infs. subīre: got under, i.e., took upon his back. mox: then.

126-135 coeō, coīre: come together, assemble suffugium: shelter imber,  
imbris: rain mūnificē: bountifully religiōsē: with reverence for the gods  
exstruō: erect, construct porticus, -ūs: portico marmoreus: marble  
(adj.) vel...vel: either...or lignum: wood vetustās: age trun-  
cō: mutilate

139-143 piscor, -ārī: fish certāmen, -minis: contest delphīnus: dolphin

Serpiť per colōniam fāma. Concurrere omnēs, ipsum puerum tamquam mīrāculum aspicere, interrogāre, audire, nārrāre. Posterō diē obsident litus. Natant puerī; inter hōs ille, sed cautius. Delphīnus rūrsus ad puerum venit. Fugit ille cum 150 cēterīs. Delphīnus, quasi puerum invitet, exsilit et mergitur.

Hoc alterō diē, hoc tertiō, hoc plūribus. Puer quī prīmus expertus est īnsilit tergō, fertur referturque; sē amārī putat, amat ipse; neuter timet, neuter timētur. (9.33)

## 16. THE ERUPTION OF VESUVIUS

The eruption of Vesuvius, for which two letters of Pliny the Younger are our chief sources of information, is the theme of Bulwer Lytton's *The Last Days of Pompeii*.

Evidently the people of Pompeii did not realize that such a catastrophe was imminent, for they had grown used to the rumblings of Vesuvius. In November A.D. 79 they were disturbed by a preliminary outburst of an alarming nature. Many people seem to have left the city, but to have returned later to collect their goods in case a quick withdrawal became necessary. While thus occupied, they were surprised by terrific eruptions. A great part of the city was quickly buried, and the people entombed. The city remained buried for about eighteen centuries until archaeologists began excavating and found everything well preserved in a casing of lava and ashes.

In his first letter Pliny described to the historian Tacitus the eruption of Vesuvius and the death of Pliny's uncle (Pliny the Elder). The following is adapted from a second letter written from the neighboring town of Misenum, continuing the account of the eruption.

147-153 serpiť fāma: the story spreads. ille: the hero of the previous day. quasi: as if, used with subj. mergitur: immerses himself, i.e., dives. alterō: the next. tergō: dat. with compound verb "īnsilit."

147-153 serpiť: creep      exsiliť: leap out      īnsiliť: leap on



- 165 C. PLINIUS TACITO SUO S. Ais tē, adductum litteris quās ex-  
gentī tibi dē morte avunculī meī scrīpsī, cupere cognōscere  
quōs ego Mīsēnī relictus nōn solum metūs vērū etiam cāsūs  
pertulerim. “Quamquam animus meminisse horret, incipiam.”

### The Night of the Eruption

- Profectō avunculō ipse reliquum tempus studiīs (ideō enim  
160 remānseram) impendī: mox balneum, cēna, somnus inquiētus  
et brevis. Illā vērō nocte tremor terrae ita invaluit ut nōn  
movērī omnia sed vertī crēderentur. Irrumpit cubiculum  
meum māter. Resīdimus in āreā domūs, quae mare ā tēctīs  
modicō spatiō dīvidēbat.

### They Leave the House in the Morning

- 165 Iam hōra diēi prīma, et adhūc dubius et quasi languidus diēs.  
Tum dēmum excēdere oppidō vīsum: sequitur vulgus attoni-  
tum. Ēgressī tēcta cōnsistimus. Multa ibi mīranda, multās  
formīdinēs patimur. Nam vehicula quae prōdūcī iusserāmus,  
quamquam in plānissimō campō, in contrāriās partēs agēban-  
170 tur, ac nē lapidibus quidem fulta in eōdem vēstīgiō quiēscēbant.

155-160 quōs: with “metūs” and “cāsūs.” Mīsēnī: loc. pertulerim: from  
“perferō.” quamquam . . . incipiam: the quotation is from Vergil, *Aeneid*, II,  
12. profectō: from “proficīscor.”

161-165 vertī: “vertō” is often used of violent motion. tēctīs: the buildings.  
hōra diēi prīma: note omission of verb; about 6 a.m. at that time of year in  
Campania; normally the sun would be well above the horizon in a cloudless sky.  
diēs: daylight.

166-170 vīsum (est): impersonal; it seemed best, i.e., we decided. tēcta: acc.  
with “ēgressī,” here used transitively. vehicula . . . in contrāriās partēs agē-  
bantur: the carriages . . . rolled from side to side. nē . . . quiēscēbant: not even  
when propped up by stones, kept steady in the same place.

155-160 exigō, -ere: ask horreō, -ēre: dread, shudder at studium:  
study ideō: on that account impendō, -ere, -pendī: spend, employ  
balneum: bath inquiētus: restless, unquiet

161-165 invalēscō, -ere, -valui: become violent cubiculum: bedroom  
residō, -ere: sit down ārea: grounds, courtyard modicus: moderate  
languidus: faint

166-170 attonitus: astonished, dismayed formidō, -inis: fear, terror; pl.,  
terrifying experiences contrārius: opposite fulciō, -īre, fulsi, fultum:  
support, prop up

## Pliny Refuses to Save Himself without his Family

Tum vērō amīcus avunculī ācrius et īstantius "Sī," inquit, "tuus avunculus vīvit, vult esse vōs salvōs; sī periit, superstitēs voluit: proinde quid cessātis ēvādere?" Respondimus nōn commissūrōs nōs ut dē salūte illius incertī nostrae cōn-sulerēmus. Nōn morātus ultrā, prōripit sē, effūsōque cursū 175 aufertur. Nōn multō post illa nūbēs dēscendere in terrās, operīre maria. Tum māter ōrāre, hortārī, iubēre quōquō modō fugerem; posse enim iuvenem, sē et annīs et corpore gravem bene moritūrā, sī mihi causa mortis nōn fuisset. Ego contrā, salvum mē nisi ūnā nōn futūrum: deinde manum eius amplexus, 180 addere gradum cōgō. Pāret aegrē, incūsātque sē quod mē morētur. Iam cinis, adhūc tamen rārus: respiciō, dēnsa cālīgō tergīs imminēbat, quae nōs, torrentis modō īnfūsa terrae, sequēbātur. "Dēflectāmus," inquam, "dum vidēmus, nē turbā in tenebrīs obterāmur."

185

171-175 **respondimus**: we answered that we should not be guilty of looking out for our own safety (supply "salūtī") while still uncertain ("incertī," nom.) about his safety. **effūsō cursū**: on the full run.

176-180 **dēscendere, operīre**: historical infs. **quōquō**: from "quisquis." (mē) **posse (fugere) iuvenem**: ind. disc. after idea of saying in "ōrāre," etc.; in translating add *saying*. **iuvenem**: in apposition with "mē." **fuisset**: for the fut. perf. of the direct. **ego**: supply "dixī." **ūnā**: supply "cum eā."

181-185 **torrentis modō**: like a torrent. **dēflectāmus**: hortatory subj. **vidēmus**: we can see.

171-175 **īstanter**: urgently **superstes, -stis**: living, surviving **cessō, -āre**: delay **ēvādō, -ere**: escape **sē prōripere**: to hurry off **effūsus** (from "effundō"): hasty, hurried

176-180 **operiō, -īre**: cover **bene**: happily **amplector, -ī, amplexus sum**: clasp

181-185 **addō**: quicken **gradus, -ūs**: step, pace **incūsō, -āre**: blame **moror, -ārī**: transitive, delay, hamper **cinis, cineris**: ashes **cālīgō, -inis**: thick darkness, fog **imminēō, -ēre**: hang over, with dat. **īnfūsus**: spread over **dēflectō**: turn aside **obterō, -ere**: trample on

## Confusion of the Mob in the Dark

Vix cōnsiderāmus, et nox, nōn quālis illūnis aut nūbila, sed quālis in locīs clausīs, lūmine exstīctō. Audīrēs ululātūs fēminārum, infāntium quirītātūs, clāmōrēs virōrum: aliī parentēs, aliī liberōs, aliī coniugēs vōcibus requirēbant, vōcibus  
 190 nōscitābant: hī suum cāsum, illī suōrum miserābantur: erant quī metū mortis mortem precārentur: multī ad deōs manūs tollere.

## With the Coming of Day Conditions Worsen

Mox diēs vērū, sōl etiam effulsit, lūridus tamen, quālis esse, cum dēficit, solet. Regressī Mīsēnum, suspēnsam dubiamque  
 195 noctem spē ac metū exēgimus. Metus praevalēbat: nam tremor terrae perseverābat. Nōbīs tamen nē tunc quidem, quamquam et expertīs perīculum et exspectantibus, abeundi cōnsilium, dōnec dē avunculō nūntius. (6.20)

186-190 locīs clausīs: in a closed room. audīrēs: you (one) might hear.

191-195 quī...precārentur: rel. cl. of characteristic. quālis...solet: lit., what - like it is accustomed to be, when it is in eclipse; tr., as it generally is when it is in eclipse.

196-198 expertīs: with "nōbīs." cōnsilium: supply a verb; we had no thoughts of leaving. dōnec: until we could receive some news... The body of the elder Pliny had been recovered the previous day, but in the confusion and terror no news had yet reached Misenum.

186-190 cōnsidō, -ere, -sidī: sit down      illūnis: moonless      nūbilus: cloudy  
 ululātus, -ūs: wailing cry      quirītātus, -ūs: whimpering      requirō, -ere:  
 search for      nōscitō, -āre: recognize      miseror, -ārī: lament

191-195 effulgeō, -ēre, -fulsī: shine forth      lūridus: wan, ghastly      dēficiō:  
 be in eclipse      suspēnsus: doubtful      exigō, -ere, -ēgi: pass (time)      prae-  
 valeō: prevail

196-198 experior, -īrī, expertus sum: experience



## QUESTIONS

As far as you can judge from the letters read, what were the relations between the Emperor and the Governor?

Why did Pliny request citizenship for the physician?

To what military actions of the Emperor did Pliny refer?

Where is Bithynia? What do we learn about that province from Pliny's letter?

What do we learn about Pliny's character and way of life from his letters?

What are your reactions to Pliny's manner of hunting?

List some of the admirable qualities of Fundanus' young daughter. What can we learn about Roman marriage customs and funeral customs from the letter describing her death?

What help did Pliny offer for establishing a school in his home town?

To what deity was the temple dedicated which Pliny planned to enlarge? Why was an extension necessary?

What instructions did Pliny give to his architect?

What is our chief source of information about the eruption of Vesuvius?

Give the date of the eruption. Locate Vesuvius, Pompeii, Misenum.

To whom was Pliny's letter addressed? He had already written one letter; why did he write a second?

What did Pliny do after the departure of his uncle?

What did Pliny's mother request, and what did Pliny reply?

Describe the scene Pliny and his mother encountered on leaving their house.

Describe the conduct of the mob in the dark.

With the coming of day where did Pliny and his mother go?

What happened to Pliny's uncle?

1-73

74-154

155-198



# Horace

Horace (Quintus Horatius Flaccus) was born, Dec. 8, 65 B.C., in Venusia, on the border of Lucania and Apulia. His father was a freedman, employed as a collector of taxes, who was able to save enough to buy a small property near Venusia. The father's chief interest was in his son, whose companion, guide and friend he strove to be. Instead of sending Horace to the school of the provincial town, the father went to Rome with his son and took him to the school of the renowned grammarian Orbilius. At about the age of twenty Horace went to Athens to pursue philosophical studies. It is probable that he got as much pleasure out of his first contacts with the Greek lyric poets as he did out of his study of the philosophers.

After the assassination of Caesar, Horace, like many of his fellow-students, in the autumn of 44 B.C. joined the army of Brutus. With the rank of military tribune he fought in the Battle of Philippi, in which his conduct was, as he admits, far from heroic.

When, later, he returned to Italy, he found his father dead and his paternal property confiscated. He secured a post as clerk in the quaestor's office, which assured him a livelihood but cannot have given him much satisfaction. In his spare time he wrote poetry.

His verse attracted the friendship of Vergil and Varius, who secured for Horace an introduction to Maecenas, the foremost patron of literature at Rome (39 B.C.). Horace had friends at court now; the rough paths were made as smooth as one could wish whose tastes were moderate and whose life was simple. His patron gave him a small country estate in the Sabine hills near Tibur and about thirty miles from Rome. From this resort Horace derived the greatest enjoyment; to it he could retreat to devote himself to literary work, to meditate, and to entertain his friends far from the din of the capital. He continued to live on the most intimate terms with Maecenas, and this friendship brought Horace to the notice of other great men of the period and at length to that of the emperor Augustus himself. Horace died in 8 B.C., a few months after Maecenas.

Among the works of Horace are two books of Satires (*Sermones*), a book of Epodes, four books of Odes, and two books of Epistles. The Satires, written in an easy and graceful style, in a loose hexameter verse, deal mainly with social topics. An acute observer of human nature and of the social life of the day, he sets forth the



From the pharos (or lighthouse) at Dover, England, the Romans sent signals to their supply ships crossing from the continent. This lighthouse near the Roman city of Dubrae is one of the earliest constructed in western Europe.

vices and follies of mankind. He does not cry out against his fellows, but rather, with genial humor and good-natured raillery, sets forth the laughable aspects of these vices. The Satires of Horace have always been among the most admired works of Latin literature.

## 1. THE TOWN AND THE COUNTRY MOUSE

Ōlim

- rusticus urbānum mūrem mūs paupere fertur  
accēpisse cavō, veterem vetus hospes amīcum,  
asper et attentus quaesītīs, ut tamen artum  
5 solveret hospitīis animum. Quid multa? neque ille  
sēpositī ciceris nec longae invīdit avēnae,  
āridum et ōre ferēns acinum sēmēsaque lardī  
frusta dedit, cupiēns variā fastīdia cēnā  
vincere tangentis male singula dente superbō;  
10 cum pater ipse domūs paleā porrectus in hornā  
ēsset ador loliumque, dapīs meliōra relinquiēns.  
Tandem urbānus ad hunc: "Quid tē iuvat," inquit, "amīce,  
praeruptī nemoris patientem vīvere dorsō?  
Vīs tū hominēs urbemque ferīs praepōnere silvīs?  
15 Carpe viam, mihi crēde, comes, terrestria quandō

1-5 *rusticus* . . . : note the order of the first four words in line 2; compare the order of the last four words in line 3. *fertur*: such is the tale. *asper*: roughly (he lived, not self-indulgent). *attentus quaesītīs*: with a watchful eye on his hoard. *artum* . . . *animum*: he could open his thrifty soul in acts of hospitality. *quid multa?*: in short.

6-10 *sēpositī ciceris*: his store of chick-peas. *fastīdia vincere* . . . *superbō*: to overcome the daintiness (of a guest) who with squeamish tooth would scarcely touch each morsel. *pater domūs*: the master of the house.

11-15 *ēsset*: impf. subj. of "edō, ēsse," eat. *patientem vīvere*: living so hard a life. *vīs tū?*: can't you?, won't you? *carpe viam*: set out (with me). *terrestria*: earthly creatures.

1-5 *rusticus*: of the country    *urbānus*: of the town    *mūs, mūris*: mouse  
*cavus*: hole    *quaesita, -ōrum*: acquisitions

6-10 *invidēō*: grudge    *avēna*: oats    *āridus*: dried    *acinus*: raisin  
*sēmēsus*: half-eaten    *lardum*: bacon    *frustum*: piece    *palea*: straw  
*porrectus*: stretched out    *hornus*: this year's

11-15 *ador loliumque*: spelt and darnel    *daps, dapīs*: feast    *praeruptus*:  
steep    *nemus, nemoris*: grove    *dorsum*: ridge    *quandō*: since

mortālēs animās vīvunt sortīta, neque ūlla est  
aut magnō aut parvō lētī fuga: quō, bone, circā,  
dum licet, in rēbus iūcundīs vīve beātus,  
vīve memor quam sīs aevī brevis." Haec ubi dicta  
agrestem populēre, domō levis exsilit; inde  
ambō prōpositum peragunt iter, urbis aventēs  
moenia nocturnī subrēpere. Iamque tenēbat  
nox medium caelī spatium, cum pōnit uterque  
in locuplēte domō vēstīgia, rubrō ubi coccō  
tīncta super lectōs candēret vestis eburnōs,  
multaque dē magnā superessent fercula cēnā,  
quae procul exstrūctīs inerant hesterna canistrīs.  
Ergō, ubi purpureā porrectum in veste locāvit  
agrestem, velutī succīnctus cursitat hospes  
continuatque dapēs, nec nōn vernīliter ipsīs  
fungitur officiīs, praelambēns omne quod affert.  
Ille cubāns gaudet mūtātā sorte bonisque  
rēbus agit laetum convīvam, cum subitō ingēns  
valvārum strepitus lectīs excussit utrumque.  
Currere per tōtum pavidī conclāve, magisque

20

25

30

35

16-20 mortālēs animās sortīta: having mortal lives allotted to them by fate. quō, bone, circā: = "quōcircā, bone." quam . . . brevis: lit., of how brief life you are. populēre = "populērunt," impressed. levis: tr. as an adv.

21-25 peragunt iter: pursue the journey.

26-30 procul exstrūctīs canistrīs: in baskets piled up hard by. ubi . . . agrestem: when (the town mouse) has the rustic stretched out on purple covers. velutī succīnctus: as if girt up (for waiting on table); tr., in waiter-style. continuat dapēs: brings up one dish after the other. nec nōn . . . officiīs: and also performing all the duties of a home-bred slave.

31-35 ille: the country mouse. bonis rēbus: amid the good cheer. agit: plays the part of. currere, trepidāre: historical infs.

16-20 sortior, -īri, sortitus sum: decide by lot lētum: death quōcircā: therefore agrestis: a rustic exsiliō, -īre: leap forth

21-25 aveō: be eager subrēpō, -ere: creep under locuplēs, -plētis: wealthy rubrum coccum: scarlet tīngō, -ere, tīnxī, tīnctum: dip, dye candeō: glitter vestis: covers eburnus: ivory

26-30 supersum: be left over fercula: pl., courses insum: be in hesternus: of yesterday cursitō: bustle about vernīliter: like a house-bred slave

31-35 praelambō, -ere: taste beforehand cubō, -āre: recline (at table) convīva: guest valvae: the doors (actually the two halves of the "iānuā") excutiō, -ere, -cussi: hurl, tumble out pavidus: frightened conclāve: room



exanimēs trepidāre, simul domus alta Molossīs  
personuit canibus. Tum rusticus “Haud mihi vītā  
est opus hāc,” ait, “et valeās; mē silva cavusque  
tūtus ab insidiīs tenuī sōlābitur ervō.”

SATIRES, II.6.79-117

## 2. UNPLEASANT COMPANY

### A Talkative Fellow

- 40 Ībam forte Viā Sacrā, sicut meus est mōs,  
nesciō quid meditāns nūgārum, tōtus in illīs.  
Accurrit quīdam nōtus mihi nōmine tantum,  
arreptāque manū, “Quid agis, dulcissime rērum?”  
“Suāviter, ut nunc est,” inquam, “et cupiō omnia quae vīs.”  
45 Cum adsectārētur, “Num quid vīs?” occupō. At ille

36-39 simul = “simul atque.” Molossian hounds, from Epirus, were famous.

### UNPLEASANT COMPANY

The Sacra Via was the principal street in Rome; it ran from the valley between the Caelian and Esquiline Hills, past the Forum Romanum, to the Capitol. (See map of Rome.) Picture the poet strolling along the Sacra Via, “pondering some trifle or other and wholly absorbed in it,” when suddenly the bore whom the poet hardly knew rushed up to him. Horace’s first speeches are polite and nothing more.

40-45 sicut . . . mōs: with “meditāns.” quīdam: a fellow. quid agis?: how goes it? dulcissime rērum: my dearest fellow. suāviter: tolerably well. cupiō . . . vīs: I wish you every success. adsectārētur: note tense, he kept following me up. num quid vīs?: there’s nothing you wish, is there? The poet hopes to close the conversation but fails. occupō: I anticipate him with . . .

36-39 exanimis: half-dead (with fear) personō, -āre, -sonuī: resound  
insidiae: alarms tenuis: humble, homely sōlor, -ārī: solace ervum: vetch

40-45 sicut: as meditor, -ārī: ponder nūgae, -ārum: trifle tantum:  
only arripō, supine arreptum: seize adsector, -ārī: follow up

"Nōris nōs," inquit; "doctī sumus." Hīc ego, "Plūris  
 hōc," inquam, "mihi eris." Miserē discēdere quaerēns,  
 īre modo ōcius, interdum cōsistere, in aurem  
 dīcere nesciō quid puerō, cum sūdor ad īmōs  
 mānāret tālōs. "Ō tē, Bōlāne, cerebrī  
 fēlicem!" aiēbam tacitus; cum quidlibet ille  
 garrīret, vīcōs, urbem laudāret. Ut illī  
 nīl respondēbam, "Miserē cupis," inquit, "abīre;  
 iamdūdum vidēō; sed nīl agis; usque tenēbō;  
 persequar; hinc quō nunc iter est tibi?" "Nīl opus est tē  
 circumagī; quendam volō vīsere nōn tibi nōtum;  
 trāns Tiberim longē cubat is, prope Caesaris hortōs."  
 "Nīl habēō quod agam, et nōn sum piger; usque sequar tē."  
 Dēmittō auriculās, ut inīquae mentis asellus,  
 cum gravius dorsō subiūt onus. Incipit ille:

46-50 nōris = "nōveris" (fut. perf.), *you'd better get to know me*; note the bore's use of the plural "nōs." doctī: *learned, a man of letters*. plūris: gen. of price; *because of this* (the fact that we are both men of letters) *I'll think all the more of you*. īre, cōsistere, dīcere: historical inf. puerō: a slave accompanying his master. cum: *while*. tē: acc. of exclamation. cerebrī: gen. with "fēlicem"; *O Bolanus, you lucky man with your hot temper*. (Bolanus was a friend of Horace.)

51-55 tacitus: *to myself*. quidlibet: *anything and everything*. ut: *when*; note the impf. "respondēbam." iamdūdum vidēō: *I've long seen that*. nīl agis: lit., *you are accomplishing nothing*. usque tenēbō: *I'll stick with you*. nīl . . . circumagī: *there's no need for you to be taken so far round*.

56-60 hortōs: Julius Caesar had left an estate on Mount Janiculum to the citizens of Rome. nīl quod agam: *nothing to do*. inīquae mentis: *sullen-tempered*. cum . . . onus: *when too heavy a load is placed upon his back*.

46-50 nōscō, -ere, nōvī: *become acquainted with (a person)* hīc: *hereupon* miserē: *awfully* modo . . . interdum: *sometimes . . . sometimes* auris, auris: *ear*; *diminutive* "auricula," line 59 sūdor: *sweat* mānō, -āre: *flow, run* tālus: *heel* cerebrum: *brain*; *quick temper*

51-55 garriō, -īre: *chatter* vicus: *street* iamdūdum: *now this long time* opus esse: *to be need*

56-60 vīsō, -ere: *visit* cubō: *lie sick* hortus: *garden* piger: *lazy* dēmittō: *let fall* asellus: *(a little) ass* dorsum: *back*

"Sī bene mē nōvī, nōn Viscum plūris amīcum,  
nōn Varium faciēs; nam quis mē scribere plūrēs  
aut citius possit versūs? quis membra movēre  
mollius? invideat quod et Hermogenēs ego cantō."

### What the Gypsy Foretold

65 Interpellandī locus hīc erat: "Est tibi māter,  
cognātī, quīs tē salvō est opus?" "Haud mihi quisquam;  
omnēs composuī." "Fēlicēs! Nunc ego restō.  
Cōnfice; namque īstat fātum mihi trīste, Sabella  
quod puerō cecinit dīvinā mōtā anus urnā:

70 "Hunc neque dīra venēna, nec hosticus auferet ēnsis,  
nec laterum dolor aut tussis, nec tarda podagra;  
garrulus hunc quandō cōnsūmet cumque; loquācēs,  
sī sapiat, vītet, simul atque adolēverit aetās."

61-65 sī . . . nōvī: if I know anything about myself. nōn Viscum plūris amīcum . . . faciēs: you will not value Viscus more highly as a friend. Viscus is not an important person; Varius was one of the most distinguished poets of the day. mē: abl. of comparison. mollius: more gracefully; dancing was a rather disreputable accomplishment among the Romans at this time. invideat . . . cantō: construe, "id cantō quod et Hermogenēs invideat"; I sing that which even Hermogenes might envy; tr., my singing even Hermogenes might envy. Elsewhere Horace speaks of Hermogenes as "optimus cantor." est . . . : Horace suggests that the bore ought not to risk catching a fatal disease from the sick man.

66-70 quīs = "quibus," dat.; lit., to whom there is need of you safe. composuī: have laid to rest. cōnfice: finish me off. Sabella . . . urnā: construe, "quod mihi puerō anus Sabella cecinit urnā dīvinā mōtā." The fortune teller would write on pebbles certain names or words, here the names of various forms of death, and drop them in an urn; then, as she shook the urn, the pebbles would jump out.

71-73 laterum dolor: pleurisy. tarda podagra: crippling gout. quandō . . . cumque: take as one word, "quandōcumque," at some time or other.

61-65 versus, -ūs: verse membra movēre: to dance interpellō, -āre: interrupt

66-70 cognātus: relative restō: be left instō: be at hand Sabellus: Sabellian canō, -ere, cecinī: foretell dīvinus: prophetic anus, -ūs: old woman urna: urn dīrus: dread hosticus: of an enemy ēnsis: sword

71-73 tussis: cough garrulus: chatterbox loquāx, -ācis: talker adolēscō, -ere, adolēvī: grow up

## No Help in Sight

Ventum erat ad Vestae, quārtā iam parte diēi  
praeteritā, et cāsū tunc respondere vadātō  
dēbēbat; quod nī fēcisset, perdere litem. 75  
“Sī me amās,” inquit, “paulum hīc ades.” “Inteream sī  
aut valeō stāre aut nōvī cīvīlia iūra;  
et properō quō scīs.” “Dubius sum quid faciam,” inquit,  
“tēne relinquam an rem.” “Mē, sōdes.” “Nōn faciam,” ille, 80  
et praecēdere coepit. Ego, ut contendere dūrum est  
cum victōre, sequor.

## Introduce Me to Maecenas

“Maecēnās quōmodo tēcum?”  
hinc repetit: “paucōrum hominum et mentis bene sānae;  
nēmō dexterius fortūnā est ūsus. Habērēs 85

74-75 ad (templum) Vestae: they had now reached the south end of the Forum, near which was the Temple of Vesta and the courts of justice. It was now past 9 a.m. cāsū . . . dēbēbat: it chanced that at that hour he was bound to answer a plaintiff. If he did not make an appearance in court, he would forfeit a deposit he had made to guarantee his appearance and the case would go against him by default.

76-80 sī me amās: if you will be so kind; the vowel in “me” is short and is not elided. ades: imperative; attend me in court and give me your advice and support. valeō stāre: have the strength to stand all through a trial. faciam, relinquam: deliberative subjs. rem: my case. sōdes (sī audēs): if you please.

81-85 Now we learn what the bore really wants — an introduction to Maecenas, the patron of Rome’s best poets. The bore suggests to Horace that, if made a member of Maecenas’ circle, he will support Horace and aid him in shoving all his rivals aside. Maecēnās . . . tēcum: on what terms is Maecenas with you? hinc repetit: so he begins afresh. paucōrum . . . sānae: he is a man of few friends and has a very level head.

74-80 praetereō: go past      vadātus: a plaintiff in a lawsuit      perdō, -ere: lose  
lis, litis: lawsuit      hīc: here

81-85 praecēdō: lead the way      ut: as      contendō: fight      dexterius: more shrewdly





Caerwent (*Venta Silurum*), near the Welsh border, was founded by the Romans. Above, the remains of the south wall looking east; below, the south gate, inner face.



magnum adiūtōrem, posset quī ferre secundās,  
hunc hominem vellēs sī trādere; dispeream nī  
submōssēs omnēs.” “Nōn istō vīvimus illīc  
quō tū rēre modō; domus hāc nec pūrior ūlla est  
nec magis hīs aliēna malīs; nīl mī officit,” inquam, 90  
“dītor hic aut est quia doctior; est locus ūnī  
cuique suos.” “Magnum nārrās, vix crēdibile!” “Atquī  
sīc habet.” “Accendis, quārē cupiam magis illī  
proximus esse.” “Velīs tantummodo: quae tua virtūs,  
expugnābis; et est quī vincī possit, eōque 95  
difficilēs aditūs prīmōs habet.” “Haud mihi deerō:  
mūneribus servōs corrumpam; nōn, hodiē sī  
exclūsus fuerō, dēsistam; tempora quaeram,  
occurram in triviīs, dēdūcam. Nīl sine magnō  
vīta labōre dedit mortālibus.” Haec dum agit, ecce 100  
Fuscus Aristius occurrit, mihi cārus et illum  
quī pulchrē nōsset. Cōsistimus. “Unde venīs?” et  
“Quō tendis?” rogat et respondet. Vellere coepī  
et prēnsāre manū lentissima braccia, nūtāns,  
distorquēns oculōs, ut mē ēriperet. Male salsus 105

86-90 *ferre secundās* (partēs): a stage term for ‘the second lead’; tr., *support you*. *hunc hominem*: *your humble servant*. *submōssēs* = “submōvissēs”: the plup. suggests the completion or the rapidity of the action; *you would find that you had cleared every one from your way; you would shove them all aside in a twinkling*. *nōn istō . . .*: construe, “nōn vīvimus illīc istō modō quō tū rēre.” *rēre* = “rēris:” from “reor.” *hāc*: abl. of comparison; the house of Maecenas. *magis . . . malīs*: *more free from such intrigues*. *nīl mī officit*: *it doesn’t trouble me*.

91-95 *hic*: *one*. *quia*: place at beginning of clause. *magnum nārrās*: *what you tell me is wonderful*. *quārē cupiam* = “ut eā rē cupiam”; result cl. *velīs . . . expugnābis*: *you have only to wish it — such is your valor — you will storm the fort*. *quī . . . possit*: rel. cl. of characteristic. *eōque . . . habet*: *and for that reason he makes the first approaches difficult*.

96-100 *haud . . . deerō*: *I’ll not fail myself*. *fuerō*: here = “erō.” *tempora*: *the fitting time*. *triviīs*: *at the street corners*. *dēdūcam*: *I’ll escort him on his way downtown to the Forum*. *haec . . . agit*: *while he is thus running on*.

101-105 *quī . . . nōsset*: *one who, I felt sure, knew the fellow right well*; “nōsset” = “nōvisset.” *rogat et respondet*: *is asked and answered on both sides*. *vellere*: *to pull his toga*. *lentissima*: *unresponsive*. *male salsus*: *with cruel humor*.

86-87 *adiūtōr*: helper, backer *trādō*: introduce *dispereō*: perish

90-105 *officiō*: trouble *dītor*, comp. of “dīs”: richer *atquī*: and yet *accendō*, -ere: inflame, fire *mūnus*, -eris: gift *exclūdō*: shut out *prēnsō*, -āre: seize, clasp *nūtō*, -āre: nod *distorqueō*: roll, twist

rīdēns dissimulāre; meum iecur ūrere bīlis.  
 "Certē nesciō quid sēcrētō velle loquī tē  
 aiēbās mēcum." "Memini bene, sed meliōre  
 tempore dīcam; hodiē trīcēsima sabbata; vīn tū  
 110 nostrīs Iūdaeīs oppēdere?" "Nūlla mihi," inquam,  
 "rēligiō est." "At mī; sum paulō infirmior, ūnus  
 multōrum. Ignōscēs; aliās loquar." Huncine sōlem  
 tam nigrum surrēxe mihi! Fugit improbus ac mē  
 sub cultrō linquit.

### Saved!

115 Cāsū venit obuius illī  
 adversārius, et, "Quō tū, turpissime?" magnā  
 inclāmat vōce, et "Licet antestārī?" Ego vēō  
 oppōnō auriculam. Rapit in iūs; clāmor utrimque,  
 undique concursus. Sic mē servāvit Apollō.

SATIRES, I.9

106-110 **dissimulāre**: historical inf.; *he pretended not to understand*. **meum . . . bīlis**: lit., *bile burnt my liver*; tr., *I grew hot with anger*; the liver was supposed to be the seat of the passions, here of anger. **Certē . . . mēcum**: construe, "certē aiēbās tē velle loquī sēcrētō nesciō quid mēcum." **trīcēsima**: *thirtieth*; probably an invention of Fuscus, who was enjoying Horace's plight. **vīn** = "vīsne."

111-115 **rēligiō**: *religious scruple*; Horace does not mind talking business on the Sabbath; Fuscus, however, says that he is not strong-minded enough to be free from superstition. **huncine . . . mihi**: *to think that this day's sun rose so black for me*; **surrēxe** = "surrēxisse," exclamatory inf. **sub cultrō**: *like a victim about to be sacrificed*. **venit obuius**: *comes to meet*.

116-119 **adversārius**: the plaintiff in the lawsuit. **licet antestārī**: *may I use you as a witness* that this fellow was abroad at this hour instead of being in court? **oppōnō**: *I offer my ear to touch*, signifying my willingness to appear as a witness. **rapit in iūs**: *he hurries the man to court*. Note how the central figure of the poem is clearly indicated in the first and last phrases: "Ibam forte . . . sic mē servāvit Apollō."

106-110 **Iūdaeus**: Jew      **oppēdō, -ere**: insult

111-115 **aliās**: on another occasion      **culter, -trī**: knife

116-119 **inclāmō**: cry      **utrimque**: on both sides      **conkursus**: crowding, running to and fro



## QUESTIONS

What is the moral of the tale of the two mice?

Contrast the home life of the country mouse with that of the city mouse.

Contrast the characters of the two mice.

In this simple tale Horace at times rises to a mock-heroic style. Give an example or two.

Have you ever had an experience like that of Horace? How did you escape?

What was Horace doing when the bore pounced on him?

How did Horace describe the bore? How did the bore describe himself? What was the bore really seeking?

Give the contents of the old woman's prophecy.

Describe the part played by Aristius Fuscus.

Wherein does the humor of the satire lie?



## The Vulgate

The Vulgate (*Vulgata Editio*) is the name commonly given to the Latin version of the Bible prepared by Jerome in the latter part of the fourth century A.D.

Jerome (Sophronius Eusebius Hieronymus) was born of Christian parents near Aquileia at the head of the Adriatic Sea about 348 A.D. As a boy he went to school at Rome, where he studied the classical writers. Later he commenced the study of theology, being ordained a priest in 379. He travelled widely, and died in 420.

Jerome's best known work is his translation of the Bible into Latin, which since that time has remained in use in the Roman Church. His translation of the New Testament, begun at the invitation of Pope Damasus, was little more than a revision of the existing Latin text. His Old Testament version, however, was an independent translation from the Hebrew into Latin.

The Latin used by Jerome is strongly influenced by the language of the people in the fourth century A.D. Sentence structure is much simpler than in the periodic prose of Caesar. Syntax varies a great deal. In place of the accusative and infinitive in an indirect statement, the conjunction *quia* or *quod* is used with the indicative or subjunctive (See line 5). Indicative and subjunctive are frequently interchanged. The use of prepositions is widely extended. As you read the selections from the Vulgate, note some of these departures from Classical Latin.

## THE STORY OF JOSEPH

The English forms of the proper names found in these selections are: Canaan, Dothan, Gilead, Goshen, Jacob, Joseph, Judah, Midianites, Pharaoh, Potiphar, Reuben, Shechem.

### Joseph and his Brothers

Habitāvit Iacōb in terrā Chanaān. Iōsēph, cum sēdecim esset annōrum, pāscēbat gregem cum frātribus suīs adhūc puer. Iacōb autem diligēbat Iōsēph super omnēs filiōs suōs, quod in senectūte genuisset eum; fēcitque eī tunicam polymitam. Videntēs autem frātrēs eius quod ā patre plūs cūctīs filiīs 5 amārētur, ōderant eum, nec poterant eī quidquam pācificē loquī. Accidit quoque ut vīsum somnium referret frātribus suīs; quae causa maiōris odiī fuit.

Dīxitque ad eōs: "Audīte somnium meum quod vīdī: putābam nōs ligāre manipulōs in agrō, et quasi cōsurgere manipu- 10 lum meum, et stāre, vestrōsque manipulōs circumstantēs adōrāre manipulum meum." Respondērunt frātrēs eius: "Num rēx noster eris? aut subiciēmur ditiōnī tuae?"

Aliud quoque vīdit somnium, quod nārrāns frātribus ait: "Vīdī per somnium, quasi sōlem et lūnam et stellās ūndecim 15 adōrāre mē." Quod cum patrī suō et frātribus rettulisset, increpāvit eum pater suus, et dīxit: "Quid sibi vult hoc somnium quod vīdistī? Num ego et māter tua et frātrēs tuī adōrābimus tē super terram?" Invidēbant eī igitur frātrēs suī; pater vērō rem tacitus cōsīderābat. 20

1-5 "Iacōb" and "Iōsēph" are indeclinable. quod amārētur: in medieval Latin "quod" with the subj. often replaced the acc. and inf. construction.

16-20 quid sibi vult: what means? super terram: to the ground. rem cōsīderābat: kept the matter in mind.

1-5 pāscō, -ere: feed grex, gregis: flock diligō, -ere: love senectūs, -tūtis: old age gignō, -ere, genuī: beget tunica: coat polymitus: many-colored cūctus: all

6-10 pācificē: peaceably referō: tell ligō: bind manipulus: sheaf quasi: lo!

11-20 adōrō: bow down subiciō: put under, subject ditiō, -ōnis: authority increpō, -āre: rebuke

Cum frātrēs illius in pāscendīs gregibus patris morārentur in Sichem, dīxit ad eum pater: "Frātrēs tuī pāscunt ovēs: venī, mittam tē ad eōs." Quō respondente, "Praestō sum," ait eī: "Vāde et vidē sī cūncta prōspera sint ergā frātrēs tuōs et  
 25 pecora: et renūntiā mihi quid agātur." Missus vēnit in Sichem. Invēnitque eum vir errantem in agrō, et interrogāvit quid quaereret. At ille respondit: "Frātrēs meōs quaerō; indicā mihi ubi pāscant gregēs." Dīxitque eī vir: "Recessērunt. dē locō istō: audīvī autem eōs dīcentēs 'Eāmus in  
 30 Dothain.'"

Iōsēph invēnit eōs in Dothain. Quī, cum vīdissent eum procul, antequam accēderet ad eōs, cōgitāvērunt illum occīdere. Et mūtuō loquēbantur: "Ecce, somniātor venit. Venīte, occīdāmus eum, et mittāmus in cisternam veterem, dīcē-  
 35 musque: 'Fera pessima dēvorāvit eum'; et tunc appārēbit quid illi prōsint somnia sua."

Audiēns autem hoc, Ruben nītēbātur liberāre eum dē manibus eōrum, et dīcēbat: "Nōlīte interficere animam eius; sed prōicite in cisternam hanc manūsque vestrās servāte innoxias."  
 40 Hoc autem dīcēbat, volēns ēripere eum dē manibus eōrum, et reddere patrī suō. Cōnfestim igitur ut pervēnit ad frātrēs suōs, nūdāvērunt eum tunicā mīsēruntque eum in cisternam, quae nōn habēbat aquam. Et sedentēs ut ederent pānem vīdērunt viātōrēs venīre dē Galaad. Dīxit ergō Iūdās frātribus suīs: "Quid nōbīs prōdest sī occīderimus frātre nostrum?"  
 45

21-25 praestō sum: I am ready. ergā frātrēs: with your brothers. quid agātur: what is going on.

26-30 eāmus: hortatory subj.

31-35 antequam accēderet: before he could come near.

36-40 prōsint: from "prōsum."

21-25 ovis, -is: sheep vādō, -ere: go sī: whether

26-30 indicō, -āre: tell recēdō: withdraw, go away iste, ista, istud: this, that

31-35 cōgitō: conspire mūtuō: to one another somniātor: dreamer mittō: throw cisterna: pit

36-40 nītor, -ī: try anima: life prōiciō: throw, cast innoxius: blameless, innocent

41-45 nūdō, -āre: strip pānis, -is: bread

Melius est ut vëndundetur." Acquiëvêrunt frâtrês sermônibus illius. Et praetereuntibus Madianitîs, negôtiâtôribus, extrahentês eum dē cisternā, vëndidêrunt eum vîgintî argenteîs: quî dūxêrunt eum in Aegyptum.

Reversusque Ruben ad cisternam nōn invēnit puerum. 50 Pergens ad frâtrês suôs, ait: "Puer nōn adest, et ego quō ibō?" Tulêruntque autem tunicam eius, et in sanguine haedî quem occiderant tînxêrunt; mittentês quî ferrent ad patrem et dicerent: "Hanc invēnimus; vidē utrum tunica filiî tuî sit an nōn." Quam cum agnôvisset pater, ait: "Tunica filiî mei est; 55 fera pessima comēdit eum, bēstia dēvorāvit Iôsêph." Scissisque vestibus lūgēbat filium suum multō tempore. Congregâtis autem cūctis liberis eius ut lēnîrent dolōrem patris, nōluit cōsōlātiōnem accipere.

GENESIS, XXXVII

### Joseph in Egypt

Igitur Iôsêph ductus est in Aegyptum, ēmitque eum Putiphar, 60 princeps exercitûs, vir Aegyptius. Fuitque Dominus cum eō, et erat vir in cūctis prōsperē agēns; habitāvitque in domō dominî suî, quî optimē nōverat Dominum esse cum eō. Invēnitque Iôsêph grātiā cōram dominō suō, et ministrābat eî. Ā quō praepositus omnibus gubernābat crēditam sibi domum, 65

51-55 mittentês quî ferrent: *sending (some men) to bring.*

60-65 nōverat: from "nōscō."

46-50 vëndundō, -āre: sell      acquiëscō, -ere: acquiesce in, give assent to  
negôtiâtôr: merchant      extrahō: draw out      argenteus: piece of silver

51-55 haedus: kid      tîngō, -ere, tînxî: dip, dye      utrum . . . an: whether  
. . . or      agnôscō: recognize

56-59 comedō, -esse, -ēdî: devour      bēstia: beast      scindō, -ere, scidî,  
scissum: rend      lūgēō: mourn      congregō, -āre: assemble      lēniō, -îre:  
soothe

60-65 grātia: grace      cōram: before, in the eyes of      ministrō, -āre: serve  
praeponō: put in charge      gubernō: manage      crêdō: entrust



et ūniversa quae eī trāditā fuerant: benedīxitque Dominus domū Aegyptī propter Iōsēph. Erat autem Iōsēph pulchrā faciē, et decōrus aspectū.

When Pharaoh dreamed two dreams the meaning of which baffled the magicians of Egypt, he was informed that Joseph could interpret dreams. Pharaoh sent for Joseph and consulted him.

Respondit Iōsēph: "Quae factūrus est Deus, ostendit Phara-  
70 ōnī. Ecce septem annī venient fertilitātis magnae in ūniversā terrā Aegyptī, quōs sequentur septem annī aliī tantae sterilitātis: cōsūmptūra est famēs omnem terram. Nunc ergō prōvideat rēx virum sapientem et industrium, et praeficiat eum terrae Aegyptī: quī cōstituatur praepositōs per cūctās  
75 regiōnēs: et omne frūmentum sub Pharaōnis potestāte condātur servēturque in urbibus." Dīxit ad Iōsēph: "Tū eris super domum meam et ad tuī ōris imperium cūctus populus oboediet." Tulitque ānulum dē manū suā et dedit eum in manū eius.

In seven years of plenty Joseph gathered up great stores of grain. When the years of famine came there was bread in Egypt. Then, as the famine spread to all the surrounding lands, men came to Egypt to buy grain. Joseph's brethren likewise came to Egypt.

80 Et Iōsēph erat prīnceps in terrā Aegyptī, atque ad eius nūtum frūmenta populīs vēndēbantur. Cumque adōrāssent eum frātrēs suī, et agnōvisset eōs, quasi ad aliēnōs dūrius loquēbātur, interrogāns eōs: "Unde vēnistis?" Quī respondērunt: "Dē terrā Chanaān ut emāmus victuī necessāria." Et  
85 tamen frātrēs ipse cognōscēns, nōn est cognitus ab eīs.

66-70 quae: "(ea) quae."

71-75 prōvideat: jussive subj.

76-80 ad . . . imperium: according to the command of your mouth.

81-85 adōrāssent = "adōrāvissent." dūrius: roughly.

66-70 benedīcō: bless, with dat. faciēs, -ēī: appearance; face decōrus: becoming, beautiful

71-75 sterilitās: barrenness famēs: hunger, famine cōstituō: appoint praepositus: overseer condō, -ere: store up

76-80 oboediō, -ire: obey

Nōn sē poterat ultrā cohibēre Iōsēph multīs cōram adstanti-  
 bus; unde praecēpit ut ēgrederentur cūctī forās, et nūllus  
 interesset aliēnus agnitiōnī mūtuae. Ēlevāvit vōcem cum  
 flētū, et dīxit frātribus suīs: “Ego sum Iōsēph; adhūc pater  
 meus vīvit?” Nōn poterant respondēre frātrēs nimio terrōre 90  
 perterritī. Ad quōs ille clēmenter: “Accēdite,” inquit, “ad  
 mē.” Et cum accessissent prope, “Ego sum,” ait, “Iōsēph,  
 frāter vester, quem vēdidistis in Aegyptum. Nōlīte pavēre,  
 neque vōbīs dūrum esse videātur quod vēdidistis mē in hīs 95  
 regiōnibus; prō salūte enim vestrā mīsīt mē Deus ante vōs in  
 Aegyptum. Festināte et dēscendite ad patrem meum, et  
 dicētis ei: ‘Haec mandat filius tuus Iōsēph: Deus fēcīt mē  
 dominum ūniversae terrae Aegyptī: dēscende ad mē, nē  
 morēris; et habitābis in terrā Gessen, erisque iūxtā mē tū, et  
 filiī tuī, et filiī filiōrum tuōrum, ovēs tuae et armenta tua et 100  
 ūniversa quae possidēs.’ ”

Profectusque est Iacōb cum omnibus quae habēbat; mīsīt  
 autem Iūdā ante sē ad Iōsēph. Iūctō Iōsēph currū suō  
 ascendit obviam patrī suō; vidēnsque eum, irruit super collum  
 eius, et inter amplexūs flēvit. Dīxitque pater ad Iōsēph: 105

86-90 nōn ultrā: *no longer*. multīs . . . adstantibus: abl. abs. with concessive  
 force.

91-95 neque . . . videātur: *nor let it seem hard to you, i.e., do not reproach  
 yourselves.*

96-100 nē morēris = “nōlī morārī.”

101-105 omnibus: n.

86-90 cohibeō: *refrain* forās: *out of doors* intersum: *be present*  
 agnitiō: *recognition* ēlevō, -āre: *raise* nimius: *excessive*

91-95 paveō: *fear*

96-100 festinō, -āre: *hasten* iūxtā: *near, close too* armentum: *herd,  
 flock*

101-105 iungō: *make ready* irruō, -ere, -ruī: *fall on* collum: *neck*  
 amplexus, -ūs: *embrace* flēō, flēre, flēvī: *weep*

“Tam laetus moriar, quia vīdī faciem tuam.”

Post haec intrōdūxit Iōsēph patrem suum ad rēgem, et statuit eum cōram eō; quī benedīcēns illī, et interrogātus ab eō: “Quot sunt diēs annōrum vītāe tuae?” Respondit: “Diēs 110 peregrinātiōnis meae centum trīgintā annōrum sunt, parvī et malī.” Et benedictō rēge, ēgressus est forās. Iōsēph vērō patrī et frātribus suīs dedit possessiōnem in Aegyptō in optimō terrae locō, ut praecēperat Pharaō.

GENESIS, XXXIX-XLVII

106-110 statuō, -ere, statui: set peregrinātiō: travel, sojourn

### QUESTIONS

What was the occupation of the sons of Jacob?

What was the attitude of his brothers towards Joseph?

What were the reasons for this attitude? and what was the result?

What did Joseph dream? What did Pharaoh dream? What interpretations were given to these dreams?

Describe the conduct of Reuben. How did it differ from that of his brothers?

What effect did the “death” of Joseph have on his father?

Describe the rise of Joseph in Egypt.

According to Joseph, what divine purpose was served by his sale into Egypt?

Describe the final reunion.



# REVIEW OF SYNTAX

## APPENDIX

202 The verb agrees with its subject in person and number.  
The verb agrees with its subject in person and number.  
The verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

203 The verb agrees with its subject in person and number.  
The verb agrees with its subject in person and number.  
The verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

204 The verb agrees with its subject in person and number.  
The verb agrees with its subject in person and number.  
The verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

205 The verb agrees with its subject in person and number.  
The verb agrees with its subject in person and number.  
The verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

206 The verb agrees with its subject in person and number.  
The verb agrees with its subject in person and number.  
The verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

207 The verb agrees with its subject in person and number.  
The verb agrees with its subject in person and number.  
The verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

208 The verb agrees with its subject in person and number.  
The verb agrees with its subject in person and number.  
The verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

209 The verb agrees with its subject in person and number.  
The verb agrees with its subject in person and number.  
The verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

210 The verb agrees with its subject in person and number.  
The verb agrees with its subject in person and number.  
The verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

211 The verb agrees with its subject in person and number.  
The verb agrees with its subject in person and number.  
The verb agrees with its subject in person and number.



# REVIEW OF SYNTAX

## AGREEMENT

- 196 The verb agrees with its subject in person and number.  
**Hostēs lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt.**  
The enemy send envoys to Caesar.
- 197 A plural verb may have two singular subjects.  
**Filius et filia prīncipis capiuntur.**  
The chief's son and daughter are captured.
- 198 A verb with two singular subjects may agree with the nearer subject.  
**Filius eius et filia capta est.**  
His son and daughter were captured.
- 199 A singular collective noun when used as the subject has a singular verb.  
**Vult populus Rōmānus.**  
It is the wish of the Roman people.
- 200 When the subjects are of different persons, the first person is preferred to the second or third, the second to the third.  
**Ego et tū dēlēctī sumus.**  
You and I have been chosen.
- 201 An adjective or a participle agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.  
**Castra sunt magna.**  
The camp is large.  
**Lūcānius, dum circumventō filiō subvenit, interficitur.**  
Lucanius is killed while coming to the support of his son who had been surrounded.

202 When an adjective or participle modifies two or more nouns referring to persons, the adjective or participle is generally in the plural, and the masculine takes precedence over the feminine.

**Et pater et māter Rōmam profectī sunt.**

Both father and mother have set out for Rome.

203 A noun in apposition is in the same case as the noun which it explains.

**Pompeius, interpretem suum, mittit.**

He sends Pompeius, his own interpreter.

## CASES

### NOMINATIVE

204 The subject of a verb in the indicative or subjunctive mood is in the nominative.

**Caesar exercitum redūcit ad mare.**

Caesar leads his army back to the sea.

**Puerī nōbiscum veniant.**

Let the boys come with us.

205 A predicate noun corresponding to the subject is in the nominative. (Predicate Nominative)

**Britannia est insula.**

Britain is an island.

**Cincinnātus dictātor dictus est.**

Cincinnatus was named dictator.

### GENITIVE

206 The genitive is used to express possession. (Possessive Genitive)

**Ager agricolae est parvus.**

The farmer's field is small.

207 The genitive is used to denote the whole of which a part is taken. (Partitive Genitive)

**Partem obsidum statim dedērunt.**

Part of the hostages they gave at once.

208 The partitive genitive is often used with such words as **quid**, *what*, **plūs**, *more*, **satis**, *enough*. (See Section 92)

**Quid cōnsiliī capiunt?**

What plan (*literally*, What of plan) are they adopting?

209 A noun in the genitive modified by an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing. The Genitive of Description is used if the descriptive phrase has to do with numerals.

**Est vir magnae virtūtis.**

He is a man of great courage.

**Mūrus trium pedum.**

A three-foot wall.

210 The genitive may be used to express the subject of the action implied in the noun on which it depends. (Subjective Genitive; see Section 85)

**Dē fugā exercitūs certior factus est.**

He was informed of the flight of the army. (The army has fled.)

211 The genitive may be used to express the object of the action implied in the noun on which it depends. (Objective Genitive; see Section 85)

**Propter mortis timōrem fūgit.**

He fled because of his fear of death. (He feared death.)

212 The genitive is used with some adjectives to complete their meanings. (For list see Section 85)

**Cupidus imperiī est.**

He is eager for power.

213 The genitive may be used with **causā** and **grātiā**, *for the sake of*; the genitive regularly precedes.

**Liberōrum meōrum causā.**

For the sake of my children.

#### DATIVE

214 The indirect object (the person to whom something is given, said, or shown) is expressed by the dative case.

**Militibus arma dat.**

He gives arms to the soldiers.



215 The dative is used with certain special verbs.

**Nōbīs facile persuāsit.**

He easily persuaded us.

**appropinquō, appropinquāre, appropinquāvī, appropinquātum,**  
approach

**cōnfidō, cōnfidere, cōnfisus sum,** trust

**crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditum,** believe

**faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum, favor**

**ignōscō, ignōscere, ignōvī, ignōtum,** pardon, forgive

**imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātum,** command

**noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitum,** injure, harm

**occurrō, occurrere, occurri, occursum,** meet

**parcō, parcere, peperci, parsum,** spare

**pāreō, pārere, pārui, pāritum,** obey

**persuādeō, persuādere, persuāsi, persuāsum,** persuade

**resistō, resistere, restiti, resist**

**studeō, studere, studui,** be eager for, aim at, devote oneself to

216 Many verbs compounded with **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, sub, and super** are used with the dative case.

**Sabinus legiōnī praeest.**

Sabinus is in command of the legion.

**Succurrit illi Vorēnus et labōranti subvenit.**

Vorenius runs up to him and helps him in his distress.

217 A noun in the dative may express the purpose or intention of an action. (Dative of Purpose)

**Locum castris dēligit.**

He chooses a place for a camp.

218 The dative may denote the person (or thing) in whose interest or to whose advantage or disadvantage something is done. (Dative of Interest)

**Liberis cōsultat.**

He takes thought for his children.

**Nāvibus timet.**

He fears for his ships.

219 The dative of interest is often combined with the dative of purpose. (Double Dative)

**Militēs urbī praesidiō reliquit.**

He left soldiers as a guard for the city.



220 The dative is used to complete the meaning of many adjectives.

**Belgae proximī sunt Germānīs.**

The Belgians are nearest the Germans.

<b>amicus, -a, -um, friendly</b>	<b>pār, equal</b>
<b>inimicus, -a, -um, unfriendly,</b> hostile	<b>periculōsus, -a, -um, dangerous</b>
<b>fidēlis, faithful</b>	<b>proximus, -a, -um, next, nearest</b>
<b>finitimus, -a, -um, neighboring,</b> adjacent	<b>similis, like</b>
<b>nōtus, -a, -um, known</b>	<b>dissimilis, unlike</b>
<b>incognitus, -a, -um, unknown</b>	<b>ūtilis, useful</b>
	<b>inūtilis, useless</b>

221 With the passive periphrastic, the agent is expressed by the dative.

**Bellum nōbīs gerendum est in Italiā.**

(War must be waged by us in Italy.) We must wage war in Italy.

#### ACCUSATIVE

222 The direct object of a verb is in the accusative.

**Victōriam nūntiat.**

He announces the victory.

223 A predicate noun corresponding to the object is in the accusative. (Predicate Accusative)

**Cincinnātum dictātōrem dicunt.**

They name Cincinnatus dictator.

224 Many prepositions have their objects in the accusative. (See Section 5)

**Cōpiās trāns flūmen contrā hostēs dūcit.**

He leads the troops across the river against the enemy.

225 With names of cities, towns, small islands, **domus** (*home*), and **rūs** (*the country*), place to which is expressed by the accusative without a preposition.

**Lēgātī Rōmānī Carthāginem vēnērunt.**

Roman envoys came to Carthage.

226      Extent of space is expressed by the accusative without a preposition.

**Flūmen est lātum sēdecim pedēs.**  
The river is sixteen feet wide.

227      Time how long is expressed by the accusative without a preposition.

**Octō annōs imperium obtinuit.**  
He held command for eight years.

228      The subject of the infinitive, if separately expressed, is in the accusative.

**Rēgem agrōs vāstāre nōn erat aequum.**  
(For the king to lay waste the fields was not right.) It  
was not right for the king to lay waste the fields.  
**Partem prōvinciae vāstārī audiēbat.**  
He heard that part of the province was being laid waste.

#### ABLATIVE

229      The means or instrument by which something is done is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. (Ablative of Means). The ablative of the way by which and the ablative with **ūtor**, **use**, and **potior**, *take possession of*, are varieties of the ablative of means.

**Cotta fundā vulnerātur.**  
Cotta is wounded by a sling.  
**Hostēs proeliō superātī lēgātōs mīsērunt.**  
The enemy, conquered in battle (*literally*, by battle),  
sent envoys.

**Illā viā profectī sunt.**  
They set out by that road.  
**Gladiīs ūtuntur.**  
They use their swords.

230      *In company with* and *in conflict with* are expressed by the ablative with the preposition **cum**.

**Cum Gallō ambulat.**  
He is walking with the Gaul.  
**Cum Gallō pugnat.**  
He is fighting with the Gaul.

231 The ablative without a preposition is used to indicate in what respect a statement is true. (Ablative of Respect)

**Hic servus est ūnō pede claudus.**

This slave is lame in one foot.

232 The person, or group of persons, by whom an act is performed is called the agent. The agent is expressed by the ablative with **ab**.

**Oppidum ā militibus (ab exercitū) captum est.**

The town was taken by the soldiers (by the army).

233 Many prepositions have their objects in the ablative. (See Section 5)

**Sine legiōnibus in Galliā manēbat.**

He remained in Gaul without the legions.

234 With comparatives, the ablative may be used as an equivalent of **quam**, *than*, with a nominative or accusative. (Ablative of Comparison)

**Germānia est lātior Galliā.**

Germany is wider than Gaul.

**Ad insulam maiōrem Hiberniā vēnit.**

He came to an island larger than Ireland.

235 With comparatives, the ablative without a preposition is used to denote the measure or degree of difference. (Ablative of Measure of Difference)

**Turris est altior decem pedibus quam mūrus.**

(The tower is higher by ten feet than the wall.) The tower is ten feet higher than the wall.

236 The manner in which an action is performed is expressed by a noun in the ablative preceded by the preposition **cum**. If the noun is modified by an adjective, **cum** is usually omitted. (Ablative of Manner)

**Cum celeritāte vēnērunt.**

They came with speed.

**Summā celeritāte vēnērunt.**

They came with the utmost speed.

**237** A noun in the ablative modified by an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing. The Ablative of Description is regularly used if the descriptive phrase has to do with physical characteristics.

**Vir magnā sapientiā est.**

He is a man of great wisdom.

**Germānī erant ingentī magnitūdine corporum.**

The Germans were of enormous size of body.

**238** Place in which is expressed by the ablative with **in**. But nouns modified by **tōtus** (and sometimes by other adjectives), and **locō** and **locīs** may be used without **in**.

**In Italiā; tōtā Italiā; locō aequō; omnibus locīs.**

In Italy; throughout Italy; on level ground; in all places.

**239** Separation is usually expressed by the ablative with **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**. Some verbs, such as **liberō**, *free*, are regularly used without a preposition. Some verbs, such as **excēdō**, *withdraw*, are used either with or without a preposition.

**Hostēs ex silvīs veniunt.**

The enemy come out of the woods.

**Nōs periculō liberant.**

They free us from danger.

**Ex proeliō (or Proeliō) excēdunt.**

They withdraw from battle.

**240** With names of cities, towns, and small islands, **domus** (*home*), and **rūs** (*the country*), place from which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

**Rōmā iter faciunt.**

They are marching from Rome.

**241** Time when and time within which are expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

**Secundā hōrā castra oppugnāvērunt.**

At the second hour, they attacked the camp.

**Sex diēbus perveniet.**

He will arrive within six days.



242 The ablative is sometimes used to denote the cause of an action.

**Victōriā suā glōriantur.**

They boast of (because of) their victory.

243 An ablative absolute phrase, made up of a noun or pronoun together with a participle, noun, or adjective in agreement, may be used to express some idea of time, cause, condition, or concession connected with the main idea of a sentence.

**Oppidō incēnsō hostēs discessērunt.**

When the town had been burned, the enemy withdrew.

#### VOCATIVE

244 The vocative is similar to the nominative of address in English.

**Quid, serve, facis?**

Slave, what are you doing?

#### LOCATIVE

245 With names of cities, towns, and small islands, **domus** (*home*), and **rūs** (*the country*), place in which is expressed by the locative.

**Rōmae sunt multa templa.**

There are many temples in Rome.

#### PRONOUNS

246 Personal pronouns. The nominative case is used for emphasis or contrast. The genitive plural forms **nostrī** and **vestrī** are used as objective genitives, **nostrum** and **vestrum** as partitive genitives.

**Ego sum dux; ego imperō, tū pārēs.**

I am the leader; I command, you obey.

**Habētis ducem memorem vestrī.**

You have a commander mindful of you.

**Quis vestrum ibit mēcum?**

Who of you will go with me?

247 Reflexive pronouns. A reflexive may refer to the subject of its own clause (direct reflexive).

**Sē dēdit.**

He surrenders himself.

In a subordinate clause, the reflexive may refer to the subject of the main clause (indirect reflexive).

**Postulāvit ut sibi obsidēs darent.**

He demanded that they should give him hostages.

248 A relative pronoun connects a subordinate clause of which it is a part with the antecedent. In Latin, a relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; but its *case* is determined by its use in the clause in which it stands.

**Stellae [quās vidēmus] sunt clārae.**

The stars [that we see] are bright.

The relative pronoun may be used with the pronoun **is** as its antecedent.

**Dā mihi id quod habēs.**

Give me what (that which) you have.

The relative pronoun (co-ordinating relative) is used at the beginning of an independent sentence for closer connection with the preceding sentence.

**Nāvēs duodēvigintī ex superiōre portū solvērunt. Quae cum appropinquārent Britanniae, tempestās coorta est.**

Eighteen ships set sail from the upper harbor. As they were approaching Britain, a storm arose.

249 Demonstrative pronouns: **hic**, *this*; **ille**, *that*; **is**, *this* or *that* (not emphatic). **Hic . . . ille** may express *the latter . . . the former*. **Ille** may mark a change of subject.

**Fabius et Cicerō sunt lēgātī; hic in Morinīs hiemat, ille in Nerviiis.**

Fabius and Cicero are generals; the latter is wintering among the Morini, the former, among the Nervii.

**Caesar hostium cōpiās cōspicātus est. Illī ad flūmen prōgressī sunt.**

Caesar caught sight of the forces of the enemy. They (=the enemy) advanced to the river.



- 250 **Īdem** means *the same*; **īdem quī**, *the same as*.  
**Īdem lēgātus eandem legiōnem, quam antea, mīsit.**  
 The same general sent the same legion as (he had sent) before.
- 251 The emphatic pronoun **ipse** emphasizes nouns or pronouns of any person.  
**Lēgātus ipse haec dixit.**  
 The envoy himself said this.  
**Exercitus ā Caesare ipsō ductus est.**  
 The army was led by Caesar in person.
- 252 The interrogative pronouns are **uter**, *which of the two?* and **quis**, *who? which?* used of more than two.  
**Quis scit uter hōrum militum sit fortior?**  
 Who knows which of these (two) soldiers is the braver?
- 253 The indefinite pronoun **quis**, *anyone, somebody*, **quid**, *anything, something*, is used after **sī**, **nisi**, **nē**, **num**.  
**Sī quis quid scit, dicat.**  
 If anyone knows anything, let him speak.
- 254 **Aliquis**, *someone (or other)*, **aliquid**, *something*, is generally used in the singular to indicate a person or thing not defined in the mind of the speaker.  
**Aliquis mihi viam mōnstrābit.**  
 Someone will show me the way.
- 255 **Nōnnūllī** means *some* in the sense of *some few, some but not all*.  
**Nōnnūllī ex militibus terga vertērunt.**  
 Some (but not all) of the soldiers turned and fled.
- 256 The pronoun **quisquam**, *anyone*, **quidquam** (**quicquam**), *anything*, is used in negative sentences.  
**Nec quisquam audet resistere.**  
 Nor does anyone dare resist.
- 257 **Quīdam**, *a certain*, indicates a person or thing not named, but known to the speaker.  
**Quīdam mihi hoc dixit.**  
 A certain man (whom I know) told me this.

258 **Uterque**, *each of two*, is singular in number but is often best translated by the plural with *both*.

**Uterque cōsul vulnerātur.**

(Each consul is wounded.) Both consuls are wounded.

259 **Quisque** means *each (of several)*.

**Sibi quisque cōsulat.**

Let each man take thought for himself.

## ADJECTIVES

260 The possessive adjectives of the first and second persons are

**meus, mea, meum**, my

**noster, nostra, nostrum**, our

**tuus, tua, tuum**, your

**vester, vestra, vestrum**, your.

The reflexive possessive adjective of the third person is

**suus, sua, suum**, his, her, its, their.

261 Plural adjectives are freely used as nouns. The masculine denotes persons; the neuter denotes things.

**bonī**, good people, the good    **bona**, good things, property

**omnēs**, all people, everybody    **omnia**, all things, everything

262 **Summus**, *top of*, **medius**, *middle of*, **īmus**, *bottom of*, **omnis**, *all of*, **tōtus**, *the whole of*, **reliquus**, *the rest of*, are adjectives used in agreement with their nouns.

**Tōta cohors est in summō monte.**

The whole of the cohort is on top of the mountain.

## TEMPORAL CLAUSES

263 **Dum**, *while = within the period that*, is used with the present indicative even when referring to the past.

**Dum haec geruntur, impetus factus est.**

While this was going on, an attack was made.



264 **Dum, quoad, quamdiū**, *while = as long as*, are used with the indicative in any tense required by the meaning.

**Quoad potuit, restitit.**

As long as he could, he resisted.

**Dum vivet, erimus magnō in periculō.**

As long as he lives, we shall be in great danger.

265 **Ubi, ut, when, antequam, priusquam, before, postquam, after, simul atque, cum primum, as soon as, dum, quoad, donec, until**, referring to a single act in the past, are used with the perfect indicative.

**Hannibal, ubi respexit, vidit post se serpentem.**

When Hannibal looked back, he saw a serpent behind him.

**Mansi donec venit.**

I remained until he came.

266 **Cum, ubi, when**, referring to the future, are used with the future or the future perfect indicative.

**Ad Caesarem, cum in Galliā erit, veniemus.**

We shall come to Caesar when he is in Gaul.

**Ad Caesarem, cum in Galliam pervenerit, veniemus.**

We shall come to Caesar when he has arrived in Gaul.

267 **Simul atque, cum primum, as soon as, antequam, priusquam, before, dum, quoad, until**, referring to the future, are used with the future perfect indicative.

**Caesarem, simul atque pervenerit, videbimus.**

We shall see Caesar as soon as he arrives.

**Manete hic dum Caesar redierit.**

Remain here until Caesar returns.

268 **Cum, when**, referring to past time, in a clause describing the situation or circumstances under which the principal action takes place, is used with the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive. The imperfect is used when the subordinate action is contemporary with the main action; the pluperfect, when it is prior to the main action.

**Cum iter per Galliam faceret, ad Rhodanum pervenit.**

When he was marching through Gaul, he reached the Rhone.

**Cum iter per Galliam fēcisset, ad Rhodanum pervēnit.**

When he had marched through Gaul, he reached the Rhone.

**269 Antequam and priusquam, before,** are used with the present or imperfect subjunctive to denote something anticipated or prevented.

**Caesar pontem rumpī iussit priusquam Galli ad castra nostra pervenirent.**

Caesar ordered the bridge to be broken down before the Gauls should (*or, could*) reach our camp.

**270 Dum, until,** is used with the present or imperfect subjunctive to denote purpose or something expected or anticipated.

**Expectō dum veniat.**

I am waiting until he comes (*for him to come*).

#### CAUSAL AND CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

**271 Quod, quia, quoniam, because,** are used

- (a) with the indicative (in any tense), of a reason vouched for by the speaker.

**Quod rēx erat bonus, pārēbāmus.**

Because the king was good, we were obedient.

- (b) with the subjunctive (in any tense), of a quoted reason.

**Auxilium petēbant quod oppida oppugnārentur.**

They sought help because, as they said, their towns were being attacked.

**272 Cum, since, as,** is used with the subjunctive in any tense required by the meaning.

**Cum haec ita sint, redeāmus.**

Since these things are so, let us go back.

**Cum haec ita essent, rediimus.**

Since these things were so, we went back.

**273 Quamquam, etsi, although,** are used with the indicative in any tense required by the meaning.

**Quamquam vulnerātī erant, pugnābant.**

Although they had been wounded, they continued to fight.

274 **Cum**, *although*, is used with the subjunctive in any tense required by the meaning.

**Cum pars classis frācta sit, nāvēs solvere poterimus.**

Although part of the fleet has been wrecked, we shall be able to set sail.

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

275 A simple condition in present or past time takes the indicative in both protasis and apodosis.

**Sī adest, bene est.**

If he is present, it is well.

**Sī aderat, bene erat.**

If he was present, it was well.

276 A future more vivid condition takes the future or the future perfect indicative in the protasis, the future indicative in the apodosis.

**Sī aderit, omnia vidēbit.**

If he is (= will be) present, he will see everything.

**Sī Gallī obsidēs mīserint, Caesar pācem faciet.**

If the Gauls send hostages, Caesar will make peace.

277 A future less vivid condition takes the present subjunctive in both clauses.

**Sī Gallī obsidēs mittant, Caesar pācem faciat.**

If the Gauls should send (were to send) hostages, Caesar would make peace.

278 An untrue condition, in either protasis or apodosis, takes the imperfect subjunctive to refer to present time, the pluperfect subjunctive to refer to past time.

**Sī Hannibal adesset, tūtī essēmus.**

If Hannibal were here (now), we should be safe.

**Sī Hannibal adfuisset, tūtī fuissēmus.**

If Hannibal had been here, we should have been safe.

**Sī Hannibal auxilium tulisset, tūtī essēmus.**

If Hannibal had brought aid, we should be safe (now).



## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

### IN PRINCIPAL CLAUSES

279 The first person plural of the present subjunctive is used when one person urges others of his own group and includes himself. (Hortatory Subjunctive)

**Hic maneāmus.**

Let us remain here.

280 The present subjunctive is used to express a command in the third person. (Jussive Subjunctive)

**Mārcus hic maneat.**

Let Marcus remain here.

281 The present and imperfect subjunctive are used in deliberative questions. (Deliberative Subjunctive)

**Quid faciam?**

What am I to do?

**Quid facerent?**

What were they to do?

282 The present, imperfect, and pluperfect subjunctive are used in wishes. (Optative Subjunctive)

**Sīs victor.**

May you be victorious.

**Utinam dives essem.**

Would that I were rich.

**Utinam nē missus essem.**

Would that I had not been sent.

### IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

283 In an indirect question in primary sequence, the present subjunctive, the perfect subjunctive, and the future participle with **sim** may be used. In secondary sequence, the imperfect subjunctive, the pluperfect subjunctive, and the future participle with **essem** may be used.



**Dīc mihi quō ierīs.**

Tell me where you went.

**Mihi dixit quō itūrus esset.**

He told me where he would go.

284 In an indirect command in primary sequence, the present subjunctive is used; in secondary sequence, the imperfect subjunctive.

**Militibus imperat ut proelium committant.**

He orders the soldiers to begin battle.

**Militibus imperābat nē proelium committerent.**

He was ordering the soldiers not to begin battle.

285 In a clause of purpose in primary sequence, the present subjunctive is used; in secondary sequence, the imperfect subjunctive.

**Pugnāmus ut vincāmus.**

We fight to conquer (in order that we may conquer).

**Pugnāvimus nē vincerēmur.**

We fought so that we might not be conquered.

286 If the principal clause states that a certain person (or thing) is designated for a certain purpose, the relative pronoun may introduce the clause of purpose.

**Lēgātum mittit quī pācem petat.**

He is sending an envoy to seek peace (who is to seek peace).

287 In a clause of result, the present, imperfect, and perfect subjunctive may be used, the tense depending upon the sense.

**Tanta est virtūs nostra ut hostēs vincāmus.**

Such is our valor that we are defeating the enemy.

**Tam grave erat vulnus cōsulis ut mortuus sit.**

So serious was the consul's wound that he died.

288 In clauses after a verb of fearing in primary sequence, the present subjunctive is used; in secondary sequence, the imperfect subjunctive.

**Vereor nē arx capiātur.**

I fear that the citadel may be taken.

**Verēbar ut (nē nōn) arx caperētur.**

I feared that the citadel might not be taken.

289 For the subjunctive with **cum**, see Appendix, Sections 268, 272, 274.

290 For the subjunctive with **antequam** and **priusquam**, see Appendix, Section 269; with **dum**, Appendix, Section 270.

291 For the subjunctive in conditional sentences, see Appendix, Sections 277, 278.

292 For the subjunctive in subordinate clauses in indirect discourse, see Lesson 24.

### INFINITIVES

293 The infinitive may be used

- (a) as the subject of a form of **sum**.

**Labōrāre est bonum.**

(To work is good.) It is good to work.

- (b) to complete the meaning of another verb. (Complementary Infinitive)

**Redīre cōstituerat.**

He had decided to return.

- (c) in an indirect statement.

**Dīcō eum venīre.**

I say that he is coming.

- (d) as the historical infinitive. The infinitive is often used in historical narrative with the force of the imperfect indicative, especially when a series of actions is described. The subject is in the nominative.

**Titūrius trepidāre et concursāre cohortēsque dispōnere.**

Titurius lost his head, and ran up and down the line trying to get the cohorts into battle formation.

### PARTICIPLES

294 (a) A participle is a verbal adjective. As a verb, it has voice and tense, may be modified by an adverb, and may govern an object in the same case as the verb of which it is a part. As an adjective, the participle is declined, and

agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun or pronoun which it modifies.

- (b) The perfect participle passive of a regular verb is passive in meaning, and denotes time prior to that of the main verb.

**Oppidum captum incendētur.**

The town, if captured, will be burned.

- (c) The perfect participle of a deponent is active in meaning, and denotes time prior to that of the main verb.

**Mille passūs prōgressa, legiō castra posuit.**

After advancing a mile, the legion pitched camp.

- (d) The present participle of all verbs is active in meaning, and expresses an action going on at the same time as the action of the main verb.

**Eī quaerentī nihil respondēbō.**

(To him asking I shall give no reply.) If he asks, I shall give him no reply.

**Trānsire cōnāns, interfectus est.**

While trying to cross, he was slain.

- (e) The future participle of all verbs is active in meaning. It is most commonly used with forms of **sum** to denote intention or that which is about to happen.

**Cōpiae discessūrae sunt.**

The troops intend to depart.

**Cōpiae profectūrae sunt.**

The troops are about to set out.

## GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

295 (a) The gerund is a verbal noun, declined in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular.

- (b) The genitive is used with **causā**, adjectives, and nouns.

**Pugnandī causā conveniunt.**

They assemble for the purpose of fighting.

**Hae nātiōnēs sunt cupidae pugnandī.**

These tribes are fond of fighting.

**Nostrī finem sequendī nōn fēcērunt.**

Our men did not stop pursuing.

- (c) The accusative is found only with the preposition **ad**; it is used to express purpose; with some adjectives of fitness and readiness; and with **ūsui**.

**Ad persuādendum civibus vēnit.**

He came for the purpose of persuading the citizens.

**Nāvēs idōneās ad nāvigandum habet.**

He has ships suitable for sailing.

**Hī militēs sunt magnō ūsui ad explōrandum.**

These soldiers are of great use for reconnoitering.

- (d) The ablative is used to denote means, and with the preposition **in**.

**Legendō legere discimus.**

By reading we learn to read.

**Nostrī erant in metendō occupāti.**

Our men were busy reaping.

- (e) The gerund cannot be used as the subject or object of a verb, the infinitive being used instead.

**Vidēre est crēdere.**

Seeing is believing.

**Hīc manēre mālumus.**

We prefer remaining here.

296 (a) The gerundive is a passive participle, used in agreement with the noun or pronoun to which it belongs.

- (b) Latin generally avoids the use of a gerund governing a direct object in the accusative case, and prefers to use a gerundive construction. The direct object, with the gerundive in agreement, is put in the case required for the gerund.

**Nāvis parandae causā fabrōs dēligit** (in preference to, **nāvem parandī causā**).

He chooses workmen to prepare a ship.

**Nāvēs idōneās ad onera trānsportanda habet** (in preference to, **ad trānsportandum onera**).

He has ships suitable for transporting cargoes.

**Facultātem praedae faciendae nunc habēmus** (in preference to, **praedam faciendī**).

We now have a chance of getting booty.



- (c) With the genitive pronouns **meī, tuī, suī, nostrī, vestrī**, the gerundive ends in **-ndī**.

**In perpetuum suī liberandī facultās datur.**

A chance is given of freeing themselves forever.

## SUPINE

- 297 (a) The supine has two forms, an accusative ending in **-um**, and an ablative ending in **-ū**: **factum, factū**.

- (b) The accusative is used with verbs involving motion to express purpose.

**Pācem petītum vēnērunt.**

They came to seek peace.

- (c) The ablative is used as an ablative of respect with a few adjectives.

**Hoc est facile dictū.**

This is easy to say.

# INFLECTIONS

## DECLENSION OF NOUNS

298

### FIRST DECLENSION

<i>Nom.</i>	puella	puellae	Aenēās
<i>Gen.</i>	puellae	puellārum	Aenēae
<i>Dat.</i>	puellae	puellis	Aenēae
<i>Acc.</i>	puellam	puellās	Aenēān
<i>Abl.</i>	puellā	puellis	Aenēā

Nouns of first declension are feminine, except nouns denoting males (such as **agricola**, **nauta**, **Aenēās**), which are masculine.

299

### SECOND DECLENSION

	MASCULINE				NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i>	mūrus	puer	ager	vir	bellum
<i>Gen.</i>	mūrī	puerī	agrī	virī	bellī
<i>Dat.</i>	mūrō	puerō	agrō	virō	bellō
<i>Acc.</i>	mūrum	puerum	agrum	virum	bellum
<i>Abl.</i>	mūrō	puerō	agrō	virō	bellō
<i>Nom.</i>	mūrī	puerī	agrī	virī	bella
<i>Gen.</i>	mūrōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	bellōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	mūrīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	bellīs
<i>Acc.</i>	mūrōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	bella
<i>Abl.</i>	mūrīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	bellīs

The vocative singular of second declension masculine nouns in **-us** ends in **-e**: **mūre**. The vocative singular of **filius** and of proper names in **-ius** ends in **-ī**: **filī**, **Accī**.



## MASCULINE AND FEMININE

## NEUTER

<i>Nom.</i>	mīles	legiō	corpus	flūmen
<i>Gen.</i>	mīlitis	legiōnis	corporis	flūminis
<i>Dat.</i>	mīliti	legiōnī	corporī	flūminī
<i>Acc.</i>	mīlitem	legiōnem	corpus	flūmen
<i>Abl.</i>	mīlite	legiōne	corpore	flūmine
<i>Nom.</i>	mīlitēs	legiōnēs	corpora	flūmina
<i>Gen.</i>	mīlitum	legiōnum	corporum	flūminum
<i>Dat.</i>	mīlitibus	legiōnibus	corporibus	flūminibus
<i>Acc.</i>	mīlitēs	legiōnēs	corpora	flūmina
<i>Abl.</i>	mīlitibus	legiōnibus	corporibus	flūminibus

## MASCULINE AND FEMININE

<i>Nom.</i>	hostis	nāvis	turris	caedēs	mōns
<i>Gen.</i>	hostis	nāvis	turris	caedis	montis
<i>Dat.</i>	hostī	nāvī	turri	caedī	montī
<i>Acc.</i>	hostem	nāvem	turrim	caedem	montem
<i>Abl.</i>	hoste	nāve(-ī)	turri	caede	monte
<i>Nom.</i>	hostēs	nāvēs	turrēs	caedēs	montēs
<i>Gen.</i>	hostium	nāvium	turrium	caedium	montium
<i>Dat.</i>	hostibus	nāvibus	turribus	caedibus	montibus
<i>Acc.</i>	hostēs(-is)	nāvēs(-is)	turrēs(-is)	caedēs(-is)	montēs(-is)
<i>Abl.</i>	hostibus	nāvibus	turribus	caedibus	montibus

## NEUTER

<i>Nom.</i>	mare	animal
<i>Gen.</i>	maris	animālis
<i>Dat.</i>	marī	animālī
<i>Acc.</i>	mare	animal
<i>Abl.</i>	marī	animālī
<i>Nom.</i>	maria	animālia
<i>Gen.</i>		animālium
<i>Dat.</i>	maribus	animālibus
<i>Acc.</i>	maria	animālia
<i>Abl.</i>	maribus	animālibus

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>vīs, f.</i>	<i>bōs</i>	<i>Iuppiter</i>
<i>Gen.</i>		<i>bovis</i>	<i>Iovis</i>
<i>Dat.</i>		<i>bovī</i>	<i>Iovī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>vim</i>	<i>bovem</i>	<i>Iovem</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>vī</i>	<i>bove</i>	<i>Iove</i>

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>vīrēs</i>	<i>bovēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>vīrium</i>	<i>bovum, boum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>vīribus</i>	<i>bōbus, būbus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>vīrēs (-īs)</i>	<i>bovēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>vīribus</i>	<i>bōbus, būbus</i>

	MASCULINE	NEUTER	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>exercitus</i>	<i>cornū</i>	<i>domus</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>exercitūs</i>	<i>cornūs</i>	<i>domūs</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>exercitui</i>	<i>cornū</i>	<i>domui, domō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>exercitum</i>	<i>cornū</i>	<i>domum</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>exercitū</i>	<i>cornū</i>	<i>domō (domū, rarely)</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>exercitūs</i>	<i>cornua</i>	<i>domūs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>exercituum</i>	<i>cornuum</i>	<i>domuum, domōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>exercitibus</i>	<i>cornibus</i>	<i>domibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>exercitūs</i>	<i>cornua</i>	<i>domōs, domūs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>exercitibus</i>	<i>cornibus</i>	<i>domibus</i>

Fourth declension nouns in **-us** are masculine; in **-ū**, neuter. **Domus**, **manus**, and **quercus** are feminine.

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>diēi</i>	<i>reī</i>	<i>diērum</i>	<i>rērum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>diēi</i>	<i>reī</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rēbus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>diem</i>	<i>rem</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>diē</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rēbus</i>

Fifth declension nouns are feminine, except **diēs** and **meridiēs**, which are masculine.



## DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES

305

## FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	altus	alta	altum
<i>Gen.</i>	alti	altae	altī
<i>Dat.</i>	altō	altae	altō
<i>Acc.</i>	altum	altam	altum
<i>Abl.</i>	altō	altā	altō
<i>Nom.</i>	alti	altae	alta
<i>Gen.</i>	altōrum	altārum	altōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	altis	altis	altīs
<i>Acc.</i>	altōs	altās	alta
<i>Abl.</i>	altis	altis	altīs

The vocative singular of second declension masculine adjectives in **-us** ends in **-e**: **alte**.

ADJECTIVES IN **-er** WHICH KEEP THE **-e**

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	liber	libera	liberum
<i>Gen.</i>	liberī	liberae	liberī
<i>Dat.</i>	liberō	liberae	liberō
<i>Acc.</i>	liberum	liberam	liberum
<i>Abl.</i>	liberō	liberā	liberō
<i>Nom.</i>	liberī	liberae	libera
<i>Gen.</i>	liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
<i>Acc.</i>	liberōs	liberās	libera
<i>Abl.</i>	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs

ADJECTIVES IN **-er** WHICH DROP THE **-e**

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
<i>Gen.</i>	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
<i>Dat.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
<i>Acc.</i>	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
<i>Abl.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

<i>Nom.</i>	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
<i>Gen.</i>	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
<i>Abl.</i>	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

306	ūnus, ūna, ūnum <i>one</i>	uter, utra, utrum <i>which (of two)?</i>
-----	-------------------------------	---

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	uter	utra	utrum
<i>Gen.</i>	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	utrius	utrius	utrius
<i>Dat.</i>	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	utrī	utrī	utrī
<i>Acc.</i>	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	utrum	utram	utrum
<i>Abl.</i>	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	utrō	utrā	utrō

alius, alia, aliud <i>another</i>	alter, altera, alterum <i>the other (of two)</i>
--------------------------------------	---

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	alius	alia	aliud	alter	altera	alterum
<i>Gen.</i>	alius	alius	alius	alterius	alterius	alterius
<i>Dat.</i>	aliī	aliī	aliī	alterī	alterī	alterī
<i>Acc.</i>	alium	aliam	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
<i>Abl.</i>	aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

Ūllus, nūllus, sōlus, tōtus are declined like ūnus; neuter is declined like uter.

### 307 ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre	fortis	fortis	forte
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris	fortis	fortis	fortis
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	fortī	fortī	fortī
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	fortem	fortem	forte
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	fortī	fortī	fortī
<i>Nom.</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria	fortēs	fortēs	fortia
<i>Gen.</i>	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium	fortium	fortium	fortium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus	fortibus	fortibus	fortibus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrēs (-īs)	ācrēs (-īs)	ācria	fortēs (-īs)	fortēs (-īs)	fortia
<i>Abl.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus	fortibus	fortibus	fortibus

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	audāx	audāx	audāx
<i>Gen.</i>	audācis	audācis	audācis
<i>Dat.</i>	audācī	audācī	audācī
<i>Acc.</i>	audācem	audācem	audāx
<i>Abl.</i>	audācī	audācī	audācī
<i>Nom.</i>	audācēs	audācēs	audācia
<i>Gen.</i>	audācium	audācium	audācium
<i>Dat.</i>	audācibus	audācibus	audācibus
<i>Acc.</i>	audācēs (-īs)	audācēs (-īs)	audācia
<i>Abl.</i>	audācibus	audācibus	audācibus

308 A few adjectives of the third declension are declined with consonant stem endings, as **vetus**, **veteris**, *old*.

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	vetus	vetus
<i>Gen.</i>	veteris	veteris
<i>Dat.</i>	veterī	veterī
<i>Acc.</i>	veterem	vetus
<i>Abl.</i>	vetere	vetere
<i>Nom.</i>	veterēs	vetera
<i>Gen.</i>	veterum	veterum
<i>Dat.</i>	veteribus	veteribus
<i>Acc.</i>	veterēs	vetera
<i>Abl.</i>	veteribus	veteribus

309

#### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
altus, high	altior, higher	altissimus, highest
fortis, brave	fortior, braver	fortissimus, bravest
miser, wretched	miserior, more wretched	miserrimus, most wretched
pulcher, beautiful	pulchrior, more beautiful	pulcherrimus, most beautiful
celer, swift	celerior, swifter	celerrimus, swiftest



<b>ācer</b> , sharp	<b>ācrior</b> , sharper	<b>ācerrimus</b> , sharpest
<b>facilis</b> , easy	<b>facilior</b> , easier	<b>facillimus</b> , easiest
<b>difficilis</b> , difficult	<b>difficilior</b> , more difficult	<b>difficillimus</b> , most difficult
<b>similis</b> , like	<b>similior</b> , more like	<b>simillimus</b> , most like
<b>dissimilis</b> , unlike	<b>dissimilior</b> , more unlike	<b>dissimillimus</b> , most unlike
<b>bonus</b> , good	<b>melior</b> , better	<b>optimus</b> , best
<b>malus</b> , bad	<b>peior</b> , worse	<b>pessimus</b> , worst
<b>magnus</b> , great	<b>maior</b> , greater	<b>maximus</b> , greatest
<b>parvus</b> , small	<b>minor</b> , smaller	<b>minimus</b> , smallest
<b>multus</b> , much	<b>plūs</b> , more	<b>plūrimus</b> , most
<b>multī</b> , many	<b>plūrēs</b> , more	<b>plūrimī</b> , most
<b>exterus</b> , outside	<b>exterior</b> , outer	<b>extrēmus</b> , <b>extimus</b> , outermost
<b>inferus</b> , under	<b>inferior</b> , lower	<b>īfimus</b> , <b>īmus</b> , lowest
<b>posterus</b> , following	<b>posterior</b> , later	<b>postrēmus</b> , <b>postumus</b> , last
<b>superus</b> , upper	<b>superior</b> , higher	<b>suprēmus</b> , <b>summus</b> , highest
	<b>interior</b> , inner	<b>intimus</b> , inmost
	<b>ulterior</b> , farther	<b>ultimus</b> , farthest, last
	<b>prior</b> , former	<b>primus</b> , first
	<b>propior</b> , nearer	<b>proximus</b> , nearest, next
<b>novus</b> , new		<b>novissimus</b> , newest, last
<b>idōneus</b> , suitable	<b>magis idōneus</b> , more suitable	<b>maximē idōneus</b> , most suitable

310

# COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVES

	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>fortior</b>	<b>fortius</b>	<b>minor</b>	<b>minus</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>fortiōris</b>	<b>fortiōris</b>	<b>minōris</b>	<b>minōris</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>fortiōrī</b>	<b>fortiōrī</b>	<b>minōrī</b>	<b>minōrī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>fortiōrem</b>	<b>fortius</b>	<b>minōrem</b>	<b>minus</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>fortiōre</b>	<b>fortiōre</b>	<b>minōre</b>	<b>minōre</b>
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>fortiōrēs</b>	<b>fortiōra</b>	<b>minōrēs</b>	<b>minōra</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>fortiōrum</b>	<b>fortiōrum</b>	<b>minōrum</b>	<b>minōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>fortiōribus</b>	<b>fortiōribus</b>	<b>minōribus</b>	<b>minōribus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>fortiōrēs</b>	<b>fortiōra</b>	<b>minōrēs</b>	<b>minōra</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>fortiōribus</b>	<b>fortiōribus</b>	<b>minōribus</b>	<b>minōribus</b>



	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Gen.</i>	plūrium	plūrium
<i>Dat.</i>	plūribus	plūribus
<i>Acc.</i>	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Abl.</i>	plūribus	plūribus

311

# PRESENT PARTICIPLE ACTIVE

	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	portāns	portāns
<i>Gen.</i>	portantis	portantis
<i>Dat.</i>	portantī	portantī
<i>Acc.</i>	portantem	portāns
<i>Abl.</i>	portante	portante
<i>Nom.</i>	portantēs	portantia
<i>Gen.</i>	portantium	portantium
<i>Dat.</i>	portantibus	portantibus
<i>Acc.</i>	portantēs	portantia
<i>Abl.</i>	portantibus	portantibus

312

# COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lātē, widely	lātius, more widely	lātissimē, most widely
liberē, freely	liberius, more freely	liberrimē, most freely
aegrē, scarcely, with difficulty	aegrius, with greater difficulty	aegerrimē, with the greatest difficulty
fortiter, bravely	fortius, more bravely	fortissimē, most bravely
celeriter, swiftly	celerius, more swiftly	celerrimē, most swiftly
ācritē, fiercely	ācrius, more fiercely	ācerrimē, most fiercely
audācter, boldly	audācius, more boldly	audācissimē, most boldly
bene, well	melius, better	optimē, best, very well
male, badly, ill	peius, worse	pessimē, worst, very badly

<b>diū</b> , for a long time, long	<b>diūtius</b> , for a longer time, longer	<b>diūtissimē</b> , for the longest time, very long
<b>facile</b> , easily	<b>facilius</b> , more easily	<b>facillimē</b> , most easily
<b>magnopere</b> , greatly	<b>magis</b> , more	<b>maximē</b> , chiefly, especially
<b>multum</b> , much	<b>plūs</b> , more	<b>plūrimum</b> , most, very much
<b>parum</b> , too little	<b>minus</b> , less	<b>minimē</b> , least, very little
<b>prope</b> , near, nearly	<b>propius</b> , nearer	<b>proximē</b> , nearest, very near
<b>saepe</b> , often	<b>saepius</b> , more often	<b>saepissimē</b> , most often

### 313

### NUMERALS

CARDINAL NUMERALS		ORDINAL NUMERALS
I.	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um
II.	duo, -ae, -o	secundus
III.	trēs, tria	tertius
IV.	quattuor	quārtus
V.	quīnque	quīntus
VI.	sex	sextus
VII.	septem	septimus
VIII.	octō	octāvus
IX.	novem	nōnus
X.	decem	decimus
XI.	ūndecim	ūndecimus
XII.	duodecim	duodecimus
XIII.	tredecim	tertius decimus
XIV.	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
XV.	quīndecim	quīntus decimus
XVI.	sēdecim	sextus decimus
XVII.	septendecim	septimus decimus
XVIII.	duodēvigintī	duodēvicēsimus
XIX.	ūndēvigintī	ūndēvicēsimus
XX.	vīgintī	vīcēsimus
XXI.	vīgintī ūnus	vīcēsimus prīmus
XXVIII.	duodētrīgintā	duodētrīcēsimus
XXIX.	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētrīcēsimus
XXX.	trīgintā	trīcēsimus



XL.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus
L.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsīmus
LX.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus
LXX.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus
LXXX.	octōgintā	octōgēsīmus
XC.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus
C.	centum	centēsīmus
CI.	centum ūnus	centēsīmus prīmus
CC.	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsīmus
CCC.	trecentī, -ae, -a	trecentēsīmus
CCCC.	quadrīngentī, -ae, -a	quadrīngentēsīmus
D.	quīngentī, -ae, -a	quīngentēsīmus
DC.	sescentī, -ae, -a	sescentēsīmus
DCC.	septīngentī, -ae, -a	septīngentēsīmus
DCCC.	octīngentī, -ae, -a	octīngentēsīmus
DCCCC.	nōngentī, -ae, -a	nōngentēsīmus
M.	mille	millēsīmus
MM.	duo milia	bis millēsīmus

314

#### DECLENSION OF NUMERALS

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ūnus	ūna	ūnum
<i>Gen.</i>	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus
<i>Dat.</i>	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī
<i>Acc.</i>	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
<i>Abl.</i>	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō

The plural of **ūnus** is used occasionally in the sense of *alone*. It is declined like the plural of **altus**, -a, -um.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	duo	duae	duo
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
<i>Acc.</i>	duōs, duo	duās	duo
<i>Abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	trēs	tria
<i>Gen.</i>	trīum	trīum
<i>Dat.</i>	tribus	tribus
<i>Acc.</i>	trēs	tria
<i>Abl.</i>	tribus	tribus

*Milia*, *thousands*, is a neuter plural noun.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>mīlia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>mīlium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mīlibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mīlia</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mīlibus</i>

## DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS

315

### PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

	FIRST PERSON <i>ego, I</i>	SECOND PERSON <i>tū, you</i>	REFLEXIVE OF THE THIRD PERSON <i>suī, of himself, etc.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ego</i>	<i>tū</i>	
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>meī</i>	<i>tuī</i>	<i>suī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mihi</i>	<i>tibi</i>	<i>sibi</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mē</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>sē, sēsē</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mē</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>sē, sēsē</i>
<i>Voc.</i>		<i>tū</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>nōs</i>	<i>vōs</i>	
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>nostrum, nostrī</i>	<i>vestrum, vestrī</i>	<i>suī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>	<i>sibi</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>nōs</i>	<i>vōs</i>	<i>sē, sēsē</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>	<i>sē, sēsē</i>
<i>Voc.</i>		<i>vōs</i>	

316

### DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

	<i>hic, this</i>			<i>ille, that</i>		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illi</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>



*is, this, that; he, she, it*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id
<i>Gen.</i>	eius	eius	eius
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō
<i>Nom.</i>	eī, iī	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
<i>Acc.</i>	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

*idem, the same*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	idem	eadem	idem
<i>Gen.</i>	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
<i>Dat.</i>	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
<i>Acc.</i>	eundem	eandem	idem
<i>Abl.</i>	eōdem	eādem	eōdem
<i>Nom.</i>	eīdem	eaedem	eadem
<i>Gen.</i>	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>Dat.</i>	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
<i>Acc.</i>	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
<i>Abl.</i>	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

317

#### EMPHATIC PRONOUN

*ipse, self*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
<i>Gen.</i>	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
<i>Acc.</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
<i>Abl.</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

*quī, who, which, that*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

*quis? who?*

	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

*quī? what?*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

*quis, anyone*

	MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quis	quid	quī	quae	qua (quae)
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quid	quōs	quās	qua (quae)
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	qua (quae)	quod	quī	quae	qua (quae)
<i>Gen.</i>	cūius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	qua (quae)
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

323 Some of the important compounds of **quis** and **quī** are:

PRONOUNS			ADJECTIVES		
MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	
aliquis	aliquid	aliquī	aliqua	aliquod	
quisquam	quidquam				
quisque	quidque	quisque	quaeque	quodque	
quīdam <i>m.</i> , quaedam <i>f.</i>	quiddam	quīdam	quaedam	quoddam	

In the above compounds, only the pronominal or adjectival part is declined. A few additional points should be noted. **Aliquī** has **aliqua** in the feminine nominative singular and in the neuter nominative and accusative plural. **Quisquam** is not used in the plural. **Quisque** has **quaeque** in the feminine nominative singular and in the neuter nominative and accusative plural. **Quīdam** has **quaedam** in the feminine nominative singular and in the neuter nominative and accusative plural; **quendam**, **quandam** in the masculine and feminine accusative singular, and **quōrundam**, **quārundam** in the genitive plural, the *m* being assimilated to *n* before *d*.

## 324

## quīdam, one, a certain

<i>Nom.</i>	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam, quoddam
<i>Gen.</i>	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
<i>Dat.</i>	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
<i>Acc.</i>	quendam	quandam	quiddam, quoddam
<i>Abl.</i>	quōdam	quādam	quōdam
<i>Nom.</i>	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
<i>Gen.</i>	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
<i>Dat.</i>	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
<i>Acc.</i>	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
<i>Abl.</i>	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam



Nom.	nēmō
Gen.	nūllius
Dat.	nēminī or nūllī
Acc.	nēminem
Abl.	nūllō

## SUMMARY OF VERBS

326

## PRESENT INFINITIVE ACTIVE

1ST CONJ.	2ND CONJ.	3RD CONJ.	3RD CONJ. -iō	4TH CONJ.
portāre	movēre	dūcere	capere	audire

327

## PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

<i>I carry,</i> <i>I am carrying</i>	<i>I move,</i> <i>I am moving</i>	<i>I lead,</i> <i>I am leading</i>	<i>I catch,</i> <i>I am catching</i>	<i>I hear,</i> <i>I am hearing</i>
portō	moveō	dūcō	capiō	audiō
portās	movēs	dūcis	capis	audīs
portat	movet	dūcit	capit	audit
portāmus	movēmus	dūcimus	capimus	audīmus
portātis	movētis	dūcitis	capitis	audītis
portant	movent	dūcunt	capiunt	audiunt

328

## PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

<i>I am (being)</i> <i>carried</i>	<i>I am (being)</i> <i>moved</i>	<i>I am (being)</i> <i>led</i>	<i>I am (being)</i> <i>caught</i>	<i>I am (being)</i> <i>heard</i>
portor	moveor	dūcor	capior	audior
portāris	movēris	dūceris	caperis	audīris
portātur	movētur	dūcitur	capitur	audītur
portāmur	movēmur	dūcimur	capimur	audīmur
portāmini	movēmini	dūcimini	capimini	audīmini
portantur	moventur	dūcuntur	capiuntur	audiuntur

329

## IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

<i>I was</i> <i>carrying</i>	<i>I was</i> <i>moving</i>	<i>I was</i> <i>leading</i>	<i>I was</i> <i>catching</i>	<i>I was</i> <i>hearing</i>
portābam	movēbam	dūcēbam	capiēbam	audiēbam
portābās	movēbās	dūcēbās	capiēbās	audiēbās
portābat	movēbat	dūcēbat	capiēbat	audiēbat
portābāmus	movēbāmus	dūcēbāmus	capiēbāmus	audiēbāmus
portābātis	movēbātis	dūcēbātis	capiēbātis	audiēbātis
portābant	movēbant	dūcēbant	capiēbant	audiēbant



## 330

## IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

<i>I was being carried</i>	<i>I was being moved</i>	<i>I was being led</i>	<i>I was being caught</i>	<i>I was being heard</i>
portābar	movēbar	dūcēbar	capiēbar	audiēbar
portābāris	movēbāris	dūcēbāris	capiēbāris	audiēbāris
portābātur	movēbātur	dūcēbātur	capiēbātur	audiēbātur
portābāmur	movēbāmur	dūcēbāmur	capiēbāmur	audiēbāmur
portābāminī	movēbāminī	dūcēbāminī	capiēbāminī	audiēbāminī
portābantur	movēbantur	dūcēbantur	capiēbantur	audiēbantur

## 331

## FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE

<i>I shall carry</i>	<i>I shall move</i>	<i>I shall lead</i>	<i>I shall catch</i>	<i>I shall hear</i>
portābō	movēbō	dūcam	capiam	audiam
portābis	movēbis	dūcēs	capiēs	audiēs
portābit	movēbit	dūcet	capiet	audiet
portābimus	movēbimus	dūcēmus	capiēmus	audiēmus
portābitis	movēbitis	dūcētis	capiētis	audiētis
portābunt	movēbunt	dūcent	capiēt	audient

## 332

## FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE

<i>I shall be carried</i>	<i>I shall be moved</i>	<i>I shall be led</i>	<i>I shall be caught</i>	<i>I shall be heard</i>
portābor	movēbor	dūcar	capiar	audiar
portāberis	movēberis	dūcēris	capiēris	audiēris
portābitur	movēbitur	dūcētur	capiētur	audiētur
portābimur	movēbimur	dūcēmur	capiēmur	audiēmur
portābiminī	movēbiminī	dūcēminī	capiēminī	audiēminī
portābuntur	movēbuntur	dūcentur	capiēntur	audientur

## 333

## PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

<i>I have carried, I carried</i>	<i>I have moved, I moved</i>	<i>I have led, I led</i>	<i>I have caught, I caught</i>	<i>I have heard, I heard</i>
portāvī	mōvī	dūxī	cēpī	audīvī
portāvistī	mōvistī	dūxistī	cēpistī	audīvistī
portāvit	mōvit	dūxit	cēpit	audīvit
portāvimus	mōvimus	dūximus	cēpimus	audīvimus
portāvistis	mōvistis	dūxistis	cēpistis	audīvistis
portāvērunt	mōvērunt	dūxērunt	cēpērunt	audīvērunt
(portāvēre)	(mōvēre)	(dūxēre)	(cēpēre)	(audīvēre)

*I have been carried,  
I was carried*

portātus {  
sum  
es  
est

portāti {  
sumus  
estis  
sunt

*I have been moved,  
I was moved*

mōtus {  
sum  
es  
est

mōti {  
sumus  
estis  
sunt

*I have been led,  
I was led*

ductus {  
sum  
es  
est

ducti {  
sumus  
estis  
sunt

*I have been caught,  
I was caught*

captus {  
sum  
es  
est

capti {  
sumus  
estis  
sunt

*I have been heard,  
I was heard*

auditus {  
sum  
es  
est

auditi {  
sumus  
estis  
sunt

*I had carried*

portāveram  
portāverās  
portāverat

*I had moved*

mōveram  
mōverās  
mōverat

*I had led*

dūxeram  
dūxerās  
dūxerat

*I had caught*

cēperam  
cēperās  
cēperat

*I had heard*

audīveram  
audīverās  
audīverat

portāverāmus

mōverāmus

dūxerāmus

cēperāmus

audīverāmus

portāverātis

mōverātis

dūxerātis

cēperātis

audīverātis

portāverant

mōverant

dūxerant

cēperant

audīverant

*I had been carried*

portātus {  
eram  
erās  
erat

*I had been moved*

mōtus {  
eram  
erās  
erat

*I had been led*

ductus {  
eram  
erās  
erat

portāti {  
erāmus  
erātis  
erant

mōti {  
erāmus  
erātis  
erant

ducti {  
erāmus  
erātis  
erant

*I had been caught*

captus {  
eram  
erās  
erat

capti {  
erāmus  
erātis  
erant

*I had been heard*

auditus {  
eram  
erās  
erat

auditi {  
erāmus  
erātis  
erant

337

## FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

<i>I shall</i>	<i>I shall</i>	<i>I shall</i>	<i>I shall</i>	<i>I shall</i>
<i>have carried</i>	<i>have moved</i>	<i>have led</i>	<i>have caught</i>	<i>have heard</i>
portāverō	mōverō	dūxerō	cēperō	audiverō
portāveris	mōveris	dūxeris	cēperis	audiveris
portāverit	mōverit	dūxerit	cēperit	audiverit
portāverimus	mōverimus	dūxerimus	cēperimus	audiverimus
portāveritis	mōveritis	dūxeritis	cēperitis	audiveritis
portāverint	mōverint	dūxerint	cēperint	audiverint

338

## FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

<i>I shall have been</i>	<i>I shall have been</i>	<i>I shall have been</i>	
<i>carried</i>	<i>moved</i>	<i>led</i>	
portātus {	mōtus {	ductus {	
erō	erō	erō	
eris	eris	eris	
erit	erit	erit	
portātī {	mōtī {	ductī {	
erimus	erimus	erimus	
eritis	eritis	eritis	
erunt	erunt	erunt	
<i>I shall have been caught</i>		<i>I shall have been heard</i>	
captus {	captī {	audītus {	audītī {
erō	erimus	erō	erimus
eris	eritis	eris	eritis
erit	erunt	erit	erunt

339

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

portem	moveam	dūcam	capiam	audiam
portēs	moveās	dūcās	capiās	audiās
portet	moveat	dūcat	capiat	audiat
portēmus	moveāmus	dūcāmus	capiāmus	audiāmus
portētis	moveātis	dūcātis	capiātis	audiātis
portent	moveant	dūcant	capiant	audiant

340

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

porter	movear	dūcar	capiar	audiar
portēris	moveāris	dūcāris	capiāris	audiāris
portētur	moveātur	dūcātur	capiātur	audiātur
portēmur	moveāmur	dūcāmur	capiāmur	audiāmur
portēmini	moveāmini	dūcāmini	capiāmini	audiāmini
portentur	moveantur	dūcantur	capiantur	audiantur

341

## IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

portārem	movērem	dūcerem	caperem	audīrem
portārēs	movērēs	dūcerēs	caperēs	audīrēs
portāret	movēret	dūceret	caperet	audīret
portārēmus	movērēmus	dūcerēmus	caperēmus	audīrēmus
portārētis	movērētis	dūcerētis	caperētis	audīrētis
portārent	movērent	dūcerent	caperent	audīrent

342

## IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

portārer	movērer	dūcerer	caperer	audīrer
portārēris	movērēris	dūcerēris	caperēris	audīrēris
portārētur	movērētur	dūcerētur	caperētur	audīrētur
portārēmur	movērēmur	dūcerēmur	caperēmur	audīrēmur
portārēminī	movērēminī	dūcerēminī	caperēminī	audīrēminī
portārentur	movērentur	dūcerentur	caperentur	audīrentur

343

## PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

portāverim	mōverim	dūxerim	cēperim	audīverim
portāverīs	mōverīs	dūxerīs	cēperīs	audīverīs
portāverit	mōverit	dūxerit	cēperit	audīverit
portāverīmus	mōverīmus	dūxerīmus	cēperīmus	audīverīmus
portāverītis	mōverītis	dūxerītis	cēperītis	audīverītis
portāverint	mōverint	dūxerint	cēperint	audīverint

344

## PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

portātus	$\begin{cases} \text{sim} \\ \text{sīs} \\ \text{sit} \end{cases}$	mōtus	$\begin{cases} \text{sim} \\ \text{sīs} \\ \text{sit} \end{cases}$	ductus	$\begin{cases} \text{sim} \\ \text{sīs} \\ \text{sit} \end{cases}$
portātī	$\begin{cases} \text{sīmus} \\ \text{sītis} \\ \text{sint} \end{cases}$	mōtī	$\begin{cases} \text{sīmus} \\ \text{sītis} \\ \text{sint} \end{cases}$	ductī	$\begin{cases} \text{sīmus} \\ \text{sītis} \\ \text{sint} \end{cases}$
captus	$\begin{cases} \text{sim} \\ \text{sīs} \\ \text{sit} \end{cases}$	captī	$\begin{cases} \text{sīmus} \\ \text{sītis} \\ \text{sint} \end{cases}$	audītus	$\begin{cases} \text{sim} \\ \text{sīs} \\ \text{sit} \end{cases}$
				audītī	$\begin{cases} \text{sīmus} \\ \text{sītis} \\ \text{sint} \end{cases}$



345

## PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

portāvissem	mōvissem	dūxissem	cēpissem	audīvissem
portāvissēs	mōvissēs	dūxissēs	cēpissēs	audīvissēs
portāvisset	mōvisset	dūxisset	cēpisset	audīvisset
portāvissēmus	mōvissēmus	dūxissēmus	cēpissēmus	audīvissēmus
portāvissētis	mōvissētis	dūxissētis	cēpissētis	audīvissētis
portāvisSENT	mōvisSENT	dūxisSENT	cēpissENT	audīvisSENT

346

## PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

portātus	{ essem essēs esset
mōtus	{ essem essēs esset
ductus	{ essem essēs esset
portātī	{ essēmus essētis essent
mōtī	{ essēmus essētis essent
ductī	{ essēmus essētis essent
captus	{ essem essēs esset
captī	{ essēmus essētis essent
audītus	{ essem essēs esset
audītī	{ essēmus essētis essent

347

## PRESENT IMPERATIVE ACTIVE

<i>carry</i>	<i>move</i>	<i>lead</i>	<i>catch</i>	<i>hear</i>
portā	movē	dūc	cape	audī
portāte	movēte	dūcite	capite	audīte

The present imperative active of the third conjugation regularly ends in **-e** in the singular, such as **mitte**, *send*. A few verbs have lost the **-e**: **dīc**, **dūc**, **fac**, **fer**.

348

## PRESENT IMPERATIVE PASSIVE

<i>be carried</i>	<i>be moved</i>	<i>be led</i>	<i>be caught</i>	<i>be heard</i>
portāre	movēre	dūcere	capere	audire
portāminī	movēminī	dūciminī	capiminī	audiminī

349

## INFINITIVES

## ACTIVE

<i>Present</i>	portāre	movēre	dūcere	capere	audire
<i>Perfect</i>	portāvisse	mōvisse	dūxisse	cēpisse	audīvisse
<i>Future</i>	portātūrus	mōtūrus	ductūrus	captūrus	audītūrus
	esse	esse	esse	esse	esse

# PASSIVE

<i>Present</i>	portārī	movērī	dūcī	capi	audīrī
<i>Perfect</i>	portātus	mōtus	ductus	captus	audītus
	esse	esse	esse	esse	esse
<i>Future</i>	portātum	mōtum	ductum	captum	audītum
	īrī	īrī	īrī	īrī	īrī

350

# PARTICIPLES

## ACTIVE

<i>Present</i>	portāns	movēns	dūcēns	capiēns	audiēns
<i>Future</i>	portātūrus	mōtūrus	ductūrus	captūrus	audītūrus

## PASSIVE

<i>Perfect</i>	portātus	mōtus	ductus	captus	audītus
<i>Gerundive</i>	portandus	movendus	dūcendus	capiendus	audiendus

351

# GERUND

<i>Gen.</i>	portandī	movendī	dūcendī	capiendī	audiendī
<i>Dat.</i>	portandō	movendō	dūcendō	capiendō	audiendō
<i>Acc.</i>	portandum	movendum	dūcendum	capiendum	audiendum
<i>Abl.</i>	portandō	movendō	dūcendō	capiendō	audiendō

352

# SUPINE

<i>Acc.</i>	portātum	mōtum	ductum	captum	audītum
<i>Abl.</i>	portātū	mōtū	ductū	captū	audītū

353

# DEPONENT VERBS

cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum	<i>try</i>
vereor, verērī, veritus sum	<i>fear</i>
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum	<i>follow</i>
prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum	<i>advance</i>
partior, partīrī, partītus sum	<i>share</i>

354

# PRESENT INDICATIVE

<i>I try</i>	<i>I fear</i>	<i>I follow</i>	<i>I advance</i>	<i>I share</i>
cōnor	vereor	sequor	prōgredior	partior
cōnāris	verēris	sequeris	prōgrederis	partiris
cōnātur	verētur	sequitur	prōgreditur	partitur
cōnāmur	verēmur	sequimur	prōgredimur	partimur
cōnāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	prōgrediminī	partiminī
cōnantur	verentur	sequuntur	prōgrediuntur	partiuntur

<i>I was trying</i>	<i>I was fearing</i>	<i>I was following</i>	<i>I was advancing</i>	<i>I was sharing</i>
cōnābar	verēbar	sequēbar	prōgrediēbar	partiēbar
cōnābāris	verēbāris	sequēbāris	prōgrediēbāris	partiēbāris
cōnābātur	verēbātur	sequēbātur	prōgrediēbātur	partiēbātur
cōnābāmur	verēbāmur	sequēbāmur	prōgrediēbāmur	partiēbāmur
cōnābāminī	verēbāminī	sequēbāminī	prōgrediēbāminī	partiēbāminī
cōnābantur	verēbantur	sequēbantur	prōgrediēbantur	partiēbantur

<i>I shall try</i>	<i>I shall fear</i>	<i>I shall follow</i>	<i>I shall advance</i>	<i>I shall share</i>
cōnābor	verēbor	sequar	prōgrediar	partiar
cōnāberis	verēberis	sequēris	prōgrediēris	partiēris
cōnābitur	verēbitur	sequētur	prōgrediētur	partiētur
cōnābimur	verēbimur	sequēmur	prōgrediēmur	partiēmur
cōnābiminī	verēbiminī	sequēminī	prōgrediēminī	partiēminī
cōnābuntur	verēbuntur	sequentur	prōgredientur	partientur

<i>I have tried</i>	<i>I have feared</i>	<i>I have followed</i>
cōnātus { sum es est	veritus { sum es est	secūtus { sum es est
cōnātī { sumus estis sunt	veritī { sumus estis sunt	secūtī { sumus estis sunt
<i>I have advanced</i>	<i>I have shared</i>	
prōgressus { sum es est	partitus { sum es est	
prōgressī { sumus estis sunt	partitī { sumus estis sunt	

<i>I had tried</i>	<i>I had feared</i>	<i>I had followed</i>
cōnātus { eram erās erat	veritus { eram erās erat	secūtus { eram erās erat
cōnātī { erāmus erātis erant	veritī { erāmus erātis erant	secūtī { erāmus erātis erant



	<i>I had advanced</i>					<i>I had shared</i>				
prōgressus	{	eram	prōgressi	{	erāmus	partitus	{	eram	{	erāmus
		erās			erātis			erās		erātis
		erat			erant			erat		erant

359

# FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE

*I shall have tried*      *I shall have feared*      *I shall have followed*

cōnātus	{	erō	veritus	{	erō	secūtus	{	erō
	{	eris		{	eris		{	eris
	{	erit		{	erit		{	erit

cōnāti	{	erimus	veritī	{	erimus	secūtī	{	erimus
	{	eritis		{	eritis		{	eritis
	{	erunt		{	erunt		{	erunt

	<i>I shall have advanced</i>				<i>I shall have shared</i>				
prōgressus	{	erō	prōgressi	{	erimus	partitus	{	erō	erimus
	{	eris		{	eritis		{	eris	
	{	erit		{	erunt		{	erit	

360

# PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

cōner	verear	sequar
cōnēris	vereāris	sequāris
cōnētur	vereātur	sequātur
cōnēmur	vereāmur	sequāmur
cōnēmini	vereāmini	sequāmini
cōnentur	vereantur	sequantur

prōgrediar	partiar
prōgrediāris	partiāris
prōgrediātur	partiātur
prōgrediāmur	partiāmur
prōgrediāmini	partiāmini
prōgrediantur	partiantur

361

# IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

cōnārer	verērer	sequerer
cōnārēris	verērēris	sequerēris
cōnārētur	verērētur	sequerētur
cōnārēmur	verērēmur	sequerēmur
cōnārēmini	verērēmini	sequerēmini
cōnārentur	verērentur	sequerentur



prōgrederer	partirer
prōgrederēris	partirēris
prōgrederētur	partirētur
prōgrederēmur	partirēmur
prōgrederēmini	partirēmini
prōgrederentur	partirentur

362

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

cōnātus	$\begin{cases} \text{sim} \\ \text{sīs} \\ \text{sit} \end{cases}$	veritus	$\begin{cases} \text{sim} \\ \text{sīs} \\ \text{sit} \end{cases}$	secūtus	$\begin{cases} \text{sim} \\ \text{sīs} \\ \text{sit} \end{cases}$
cōnātī	$\begin{cases} \text{sīmus} \\ \text{sītis} \\ \text{sint} \end{cases}$	veritī	$\begin{cases} \text{sīmus} \\ \text{sītis} \\ \text{sint} \end{cases}$	secūtī	$\begin{cases} \text{sīmus} \\ \text{sītis} \\ \text{sint} \end{cases}$
	prōgressus	$\begin{cases} \text{sim} \\ \text{sīs} \\ \text{sit} \end{cases}$		partitus	$\begin{cases} \text{sim} \\ \text{sīs} \\ \text{sit} \end{cases}$
	prōgressī	$\begin{cases} \text{sīmus} \\ \text{sītis} \\ \text{sint} \end{cases}$		partitī	$\begin{cases} \text{sīmus} \\ \text{sītis} \\ \text{sint} \end{cases}$

363

PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

cōnātus	$\begin{cases} \text{essem} \\ \text{essēs} \\ \text{esset} \end{cases}$	veritus	$\begin{cases} \text{essem} \\ \text{essēs} \\ \text{esset} \end{cases}$	secūtus	$\begin{cases} \text{essem} \\ \text{essēs} \\ \text{esset} \end{cases}$
cōnātī	$\begin{cases} \text{essēmus} \\ \text{essētis} \\ \text{essent} \end{cases}$	veritī	$\begin{cases} \text{essēmus} \\ \text{essētis} \\ \text{essent} \end{cases}$	secūtī	$\begin{cases} \text{essēmus} \\ \text{essētis} \\ \text{essent} \end{cases}$
	prōgressus	$\begin{cases} \text{essem} \\ \text{essēs} \\ \text{esset} \end{cases}$		partitus	$\begin{cases} \text{essem} \\ \text{essēs} \\ \text{esset} \end{cases}$
	prōgressī	$\begin{cases} \text{essēmus} \\ \text{essētis} \\ \text{essent} \end{cases}$		partitī	$\begin{cases} \text{essēmus} \\ \text{essētis} \\ \text{essent} \end{cases}$

364

*Singular*  
*Plural*

## PRESENT IMPERATIVE

verēre  
verēminī

sequere  
sequiminī

partire  
partiminī

prōgredere  
prōgrediminī

365

*Pres.*  
*Perf.*  
*Fut.*

cōnārī  
cōnātus esse  
cōnātūrus esse

verērī  
veritus esse  
veritūrus esse

sequī  
secūtus esse  
secūtūrus esse

prōgredī  
prōgressus esse  
prōgressūrus  
esse

partīrī  
partitus esse  
partitūrus esse

## INFINITIVES

366

*Pres. Act.*  
*Perf. Act.*  
*Fut. Act.*  
*Gerundive*

cōnāns  
cōnātus  
cōnātūrus  
cōnandus

verēns  
veritus  
veritūrus  
verendus

sequēns  
secūtus  
secūtūrus  
sequendus

prōgrediēns  
prōgressus  
prōgressūrus  
prōgrediendus

partiēns  
partitus  
partitūrus  
partiendus

## PARTICIPLES

367

*Gen.*  
*Dat.*  
*Acc.*  
*Abl.*

cōnandī  
cōnandō  
cōnandum  
cōnandō

verendī  
verendō  
verendum  
verendō

sequendī  
sequendō  
sequendum  
sequendō

partiendī  
partiendō  
partiendum  
partiendō

## GERUND

368

*Acc.*  
*Abl.*

cōnātum  
cōnātū

veritum  
veritū

secūtum  
secūtū

prōgressum  
prōgressū

partitum  
partitū

## SUPINE



sum, esse, fui, be

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

*I am*

sum	sumus	sim	sīmus
es	estis	sīs	sītis
est	sunt	sit	sint

IMPERFECT

*I was*

eram	erāmus	essem	essēmus
erās	erātis	essēs	essētis
erat	erant	esset	essent

FUTURE

*I shall be*

erō	erimus
eris	eritis
erit	erunt

PERFECT

*I have been*

fui	fuimus	fuerim	fuerimus
fuisti	fuistis	fueris	fueritis
fuit	fuērunt(-ēre)	fuerit	fuerint

PLUPERFECT

*I had been*

fueram	fuerāmus	fuissem	fuissēmus
fuerās	fuerātis	fuissēs	fuissētis
fuerat	fuerant	fuisset	fuissent

FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have been*

fuerō	fuerimus
fueris	fueritis
fuerit	fuerint

IMPERATIVE

es, be      este, be

INFINITIVES

PARTICIPLE

Pres.	esse	
Perf.	fuisse	
Fut.	futūrus esse or fore	futūrus, -a, -um

possum, posse, potuī, *be able*

## INDICATIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

*I am able, I can*

possum	possumus	possim	possimus
potes	potestis	possis	possitis
potest	possunt	possit	possint

## IMPERFECT

*I was able, I could*

poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus
poterās	poterātis	possēs	possētis
poterat	poterant	posset	possent

## FUTURE

*I shall be able*

poterō	poterimus
poteris	poteritis
poterit	poterunt

## PERFECT

*I have been able*

potuī	potuimus	potuerim	potuerimus
potuistī	potuistis	potueris	potueritis
potuit	potuērunt (potuēre)	potuerit	potuerint

## PLUPERFECT

*I had been able*

potueram	potuerāmus	potuissem	potuissēmus
potuerās	potuerātis	potuissēs	potuissētis
potuerat	potuerant	potuisset	potuissent

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have been able*

potuerō	potuerimus
potueris	potueritis
potuerit	potuerint

## INFINITIVES

*Present posse**Perfect potuisse*

## PARTICIPLES

*Present potēns, potentis (used as adjective), powerful*



eō, īre, īi (īvī), itum, go

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

*I go*

eō	īmus	eam	eāmus
īs	ītis	eās	eātis
it	eunt	eat	eant

IMPERFECT

*I was going*

ībam	ībāmus	īrem	īrēmus
ībās	ībātis	īrēs	īrētis
ībat	ībant	īret	īrent

FUTURE

*I shall go*

ībō	ībimus
ībīs	ībitis
ībīt	ībunt

PERFECT

*I have gone*

īi	iimus	ierim	ierīmus
iistī	iistis	ierīs	ierītis
iit	iērunt (iēre)	ierit	ierint

PLUPERFECT

*I had gone*

ieram	ierāmus	iissem (issem)	iissēmus
ierās	ierātis	iissēs	iissētis
ierat	ierant	iisset	iissent

FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have gone*

ierō	ierimus
ieris	ieritis
ierit	ierint

IMPERATIVE

ī, go      īte, go

INFINITIVES  
*Pres.* ire  
*Perf.* iisse (isse)  
*Fut.* itūrus esse

PARTICIPLES  
*Pres. Act.* iēns (euntis)  
*Fut. Act.* itūrus  
*Gerundive* eundus

GERUND  
eundī, etc.

SUPINE  
itum

372 THE IRREGULAR VERBS VOLŌ, NŌLŌ, MĀLŌ

volō,	velle,	voluī,	<i>be willing</i>
nōlō,	nōlle,	nōluī,	<i>be unwilling</i>
mālō,	mālle,	māluī,	<i>prefer</i>

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

<i>I am</i> <i>willing</i>	<i>I am</i> <i>not willing</i>	<i>I prefer</i>			
volō	nōlō	mālō	velim	nōlim	mālim
vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs	velis	nōlis	mālis
vult	nōn vult	māvult	velit	nōlit	mālit
volumus	nōlumus	mālumus	velimus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis	velitis	nōlitis	mālitis
volunt	nōlunt	mālunt	velint	nōlint	mālint

IMPERFECT

<i>I was</i> <i>willing</i>	<i>I was not</i> <i>willing</i>	<i>I was</i> <i>preferring</i>			
volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam	vellem	nōllem	māllem
volēbās	nōlēbās	mālēbās	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
volēbat	nōlēbat	mālēbat	vellet	nōllet	māllet
volēbāmus	nōlēbāmus	mālēbāmus	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
volēbātis	nōlēbātis	mālēbātis	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
volēbant	nōlēbant	mālēbant	vellent	nōllent	māllent

FUTURE

<i>I shall</i> <i>be willing</i>	<i>I shall not</i> <i>be willing</i>	<i>I shall</i> <i>prefer</i>
volam	nōlam	mālam
volēs	nōlēs	mālēs
volet	nōlet	mālet
volēmus	nōlēmus	mālēmus
volētis	nōlētis	mālētis
volent	nōlent	mālent



PERFECT

<i>I have</i>	<i>I have</i>	<i>I have</i>			
<i>been</i>	<i>not been</i>	<i>preferred</i>			
<i>willing</i>	<i>willing</i>				
<b>voluī</b>	<b>nōluī</b>	<b>māluī</b>	<b>voluerim</b>	<b>nōluerim</b>	<b>māluerim</b>

PLUPERFECT

<i>I had</i>	<i>I had</i>	<i>I had</i>			
<i>been</i>	<i>not been</i>	<i>preferred</i>			
<i>willing</i>	<i>willing</i>				
<b>volueram</b>	<b>nōlueram</b>	<b>mālueram</b>	<b>voluissē</b>	<b>nōluissem</b>	<b>māluissem</b>

FUTURE PERFECT

<i>I shall</i>	<i>I shall not</i>	
<i>have been</i>	<i>have been</i>	<i>I shall have</i>
<i>willing</i>	<i>willing</i>	<i>preferred</i>
<b>voluerō</b>	<b>nōluerō</b>	<b>māluerō</b>

IMPERATIVE

*Singular* **nōlī**, *be unwilling, don't*  
*Plural* **nōlīte**, *be unwilling, don't*

INFINITIVES

<i>Present</i>	<b>velle</b>	<b>nōlle</b>	<b>mälle</b>
<i>Perfect</i>	<b>voluisse</b>	<b>nōluisse</b>	<b>māluisse</b>

PARTICIPLES

*Present* **volēns**, *willing*      **nōlēns**, *unwilling*

373

THE IRREGULAR VERB **FERŌ**

**ferō**, *ferre*, **tulī**, *lātum*, *bear*

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>I bear</i>	<i>I am borne</i>		
<b>ferō</b>	<b>feror</b>	<b>feram</b>	<b>ferar</b>
<b>fers</b>	<b>ferris</b>	<b>ferās</b>	<b>ferāris</b>
<b>fert</b>	<b>fertur</b>	<b>ferat</b>	<b>ferātur</b>
<b>ferimus</b>	<b>ferimur</b>	<b>ferāmus</b>	<b>ferāmur</b>
<b>fertis</b>	<b>ferimini</b>	<b>ferātis</b>	<b>ferāmini</b>
<b>ferunt</b>	<b>feruntur</b>	<b>ferant</b>	<b>ferantur</b>

# IMPERFECT

*I was bearing    I was being borne*

ferēbam	ferēbar	ferrem	ferrer
ferēbās	ferēbāris	ferrēs	ferrēris
ferēbat	ferēbātur	ferret	ferrētur
ferēbāmus	ferēbāmur	ferrēmus	ferrēmur
ferēbātis	ferēbāminī	ferrētis	ferrēminī
ferēbant	ferēbantur	ferrent	ferrentur

# FUTURE

*I shall bear    I shall be borne*

feram	ferar
ferēs	ferēris
feret	ferētur
ferēmus	ferēmur
ferētis	ferēminī
ferent	ferentur

# PERFECT

*I have borne    I have been borne*

tulī	lātus sum	tulerim	lātus sim
------	-----------	---------	-----------

# PLUPERFECT

*I had borne    I had been borne*

tuleram	lātus eram	tulisse	lātus essem
---------	------------	---------	-------------

# FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have borne    I shall have been borne*

tulerō	lātus erō
--------	-----------

# IMPERATIVE

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

fer	ferte	ferre	ferimini
-----	-------	-------	----------

# INFINITIVES

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	ferre	ferri
<i>Perf.</i>	tulisse	lātus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	lātūrus esse	lātum iri



	PARTICIPLES		GERUND
<i>Pres. Act.</i>	<b>ferēns</b>	<i>Gen.</i>	<b>ferendī</b>
<i>Perf. Pass.</i>	<b>lātus</b>	<i>Dat.</i>	<b>ferendō</b>
<i>Fut. Act.</i>	<b>lātūrus</b>	<i>Acc.</i>	<b>ferendum</b>
<i>Gerundive</i>	<b>ferendus</b>	<i>Abl.</i>	<b>ferendō</b>

	SUPINE		
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>lātum</b>	<i>Abl.</i>	<b>lātū</b>

374

# THE IRREGULAR VERB **FĪŌ**

**fīō, fierī, factus sum, be made, become**  
INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

*I become*

<b>fīō</b>	<b>(fīmus)</b>	<b>fīam</b>	<b>fīāmus</b>
<b>fīs</b>	<b>(fītis)</b>	<b>fīās</b>	<b>fīātis</b>
<b>fīt</b>	<b>fīunt</b>	<b>fīat</b>	<b>fīant</b>

## IMPERFECT

*I was becoming*

<b>fīēbam</b>	<b>fīēbāmus</b>	<b>fīerem</b>	<b>fīerēmus</b>
<b>fīēbās</b>	<b>fīēbātis</b>	<b>fīerēs</b>	<b>fīerētis</b>
<b>fīēbat</b>	<b>fīēbant</b>	<b>fīeret</b>	<b>fīerent</b>

## FUTURE

*I shall become*

<b>fīam</b>	<b>fīēmus</b>
<b>fīēs</b>	<b>fīētis</b>
<b>fīet</b>	<b>fīent</b>

## PERFECT

*I have become*

<b>factus sum</b>	<b>factus sim</b>
-------------------	-------------------

## PLUPERFECT

*I had become*

<b>factus eram</b>	<b>factus essem</b>
--------------------	---------------------

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have become*

<b>factus erō</b>
-------------------

# IMPERATIVE

## SINGULAR

**fī**, *become*

## PLURAL

**fīte**, *become*

## INFINITIVES

*Pres.* **fieri**

*Perf.* **factus esse**

## PARTICIPLES

*Perfect* **factus**

*Gerundive* **faciendus**

375

## DEFECTIVE VERBS

The most important of the defective verbs are the perfects **meminī**, *I remember*; **ōdī**, *I hate*; and **coepeī**, *I have begun*. Notice that **meminī** and **ōdī** have the meanings of presents. Their pluperfects and future perfects have the meanings of imperfects and futures.

## INDICATIVE

<i>Perf.</i>	<b>meminī</b>	<b>ōdī</b>	<b>coepeī</b>
<i>Plup.</i>	<b>memineram</b>	<b>ōderam</b>	<b>coeperam</b>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<b>meminerō</b>	<b>ōderō</b>	<b>coeperō</b>

## SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Perf.</i>	<b>meminerim</b>	<b>ōderim</b>	<b>coeperim</b>
<i>Plup.</i>	<b>meminissem</b>	<b>ōdissem</b>	<b>coepissem</b>

## IMPERATIVE

### SINGULAR

**mementō**

### PLURAL

**mementōte**

## INFINITIVE

<i>Perf.</i>	<b>meminisse</b>	<b>ōdisse</b>	<b>coepisse</b>
--------------	------------------	---------------	-----------------

376 **Aiō**, *I say*, has in common use only the present indicative, **aiō**, **ais**, **ait**, **aiunt**, and the imperfect, **aiēbam**, *etc.*

**Inquam**, *I say*, has in common use only the first and third persons singular of the present indicative, **inquam** and **inquit**.

## LATIN PHRASES CURRENTLY USED IN ENGLISH

<b>Anno Domini (A.D.)</b>	<b>De novo</b>
In the year of our Lord	Anew
<b>Ante meridiem (a.m.)</b>	<b>Deo volente</b>
Before noon	God willing; by God's will
<b>Artium Magister (A.M.)</b>	<b>Dis aliter visum</b>
Master of Arts	The gods willed otherwise
<b>Aurea mediocritas</b>	<b>Dramatis personae</b>
The golden mean	The characters in a play
<b>Ave atque vale</b>	<b>Dum vivimus, vivamus</b>
Hail and farewell	While we live, let us live
<b>Carpe diem</b>	<b>E pluribus unum</b>
Make use of the day	Out of many, one
<b>Casus belli</b>	<b>Esse quam videri</b>
A cause or occasion of war	To be rather than to seem
<b>Caveat emptor</b>	<b>Ex libris</b>
Let the buyer beware	From the books (of)
<b>Cedant arma togae</b>	<b>Facile princeps</b>
Let arms yield to the toga	Easily pre-eminent
<b>Ceteris paribus</b>	<b>Fiat iustitia</b>
Other things being equal	Let justice be done
<b>Cui bono?</b>	<b>Habeas corpus</b>
Who benefits by it?	You must have the body (a writ requiring the body of a person to be brought before the judge or into court)
<b>De gustibus non disputandum</b>	<b>Hodie mihi, cras tibi</b>
There is no disputing tastes	Mine today, yours tomorrow
<b>Dei gratia</b>	<b>Humanum est errare</b>
By the grace of God	To err is human
<b>De mortuis nil nisi bonum</b>	
Of the dead (say) nothing but good	



**In aeternum**

Forever

**In loco parentis**

In the place of a parent

**In medias res**

Into the midst of things

**Inter nos**

Between ourselves

**Ipsissima verba**

The very words

**Labor omnia vincit**

Labor conquers all things

**Magna cum laude**

With great distinction

**Magnum opus**

A great work

**Me iudice**

In my opinion

**Mens sana in corpore sano**

A sound mind in a sound body

**Mirabile dictu**

Wonderful to relate

**Modus operandi**

Manner of working

**Monumentum aere perennius**

A monument more lasting than  
brass

**Multum in parvo**

Much in little

**Ne plus ultra**

Perfection (nothing further)

**Nil desperandum**

Never despair

**Nisi Dominus, frustra**

Unless God be with us, all is in  
vain

**Non compos mentis**

Not of sound mind

**Non sequitur**

It does not follow

**Nota bene (N.B.)**

Note well

**Novus ordo**

A new order

**Ora et labora**

Pray and work

**O tempora! O mores!**

O the times! O the manners!

**Pax vobiscum**

Peace be with you

**Per capita**

For each person

**Per diem**

By the day

**Per se**

By itself; essentially

**Persona non grata**

A person who is not acceptable

**Post meridiem (p.m.)**

After noon

**Primus inter pares**

First among equals

**Pro bono publico**

For the public good

**Pro tempore (pro tem.)**

For the time being

**Proxime accessit**

He stood second (came nearest)

**Quid pro quo**

Something in return; an ex-  
change

**Quod erat demonstrandum**

(q.e.d.)

Which was to be proved

**Quot homines tot sententiae**

So many men so many minds



**Rara avis**

A rare bird; an extraordinary person or thing

**Requiescat in pace**

May he (she) rest in peace

**Sanctum sanctorum**

Holy of holies; a person's private room or study

**Satis superque**

Enough and more than enough

**Satis verborum**

No more need be said

**Semper fidelis**

Ever faithful

**Semper paratus**

Ever ready

**Sic transit gloria mundi**

So passes away earthly glory

**Si monumentum quaeris, circumspice**

If you seek his monument, look around you

**Sine die**

Without a day being appointed

**Sine qua non**

Something indispensable

**Sub iudice**

Before the judge; not decided

**Sub rosa**

Secretly

**Summum bonum**

The highest (or chief) good

**Tempora mutantur**

Times change

**Tempus fugit**

Time flies

**Terra firma**

Solid earth

**Uno animo**

With one mind; unanimously

**Vae victis**

Woe to the vanquished

**Verbum sat sapienti**

A word to the wise is sufficient

**Viva voce**

Orally

**Vox populi**

The voice of the people

# LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

1. The genitive and gender are not given of regular first declension nouns (*puella*) and of regular second declension nouns in *-us* (*mūrus*) and *-um* (*bellum*).

2. Many proper nouns are omitted when the nominative in Latin (*Asia*) is the same as the nominative in English (*Asia*).

3. Only the masculine nominative singular is given of first and second declension adjectives in *-us-a-um* (*altus*); and the masculine and neuter nominative singular of third declension adjectives in *-is-is-e* (*fortis*).

4. Regular verbs, including deponents, of the first conjugation are indicated by the numeral (1) following the present indicative: *portō* (1), *hortor* (1).

5. *Sum* is omitted in the perfect form of deponents.

6. Verbs of the fourth conjugation of the type *audiō*, *-īre*, *-īvi*, *-itum* are indicated by the numeral (4) following the present indicative: *audiō* (4).

## A

*ā*, *ab prep.* + *abl.* from, by  
*abdō*, *-ere*, *abdidī*, *abditum* hide  
*abeō*, *-īre*, *-iī*, *-itum* go away  
*abiciō*, *-ere*, *abiēcī*, *abiectum*  
     throw away  
*absēns*, *absentis* absent, at a  
     distance  
*absistō*, *-ere*, *abstitī* keep away  
     from; cease  
*abstineō*, *-ēre*, *-tinuī*, *-tentum*  
     keep aloof from; refrain  
*absum*, *abesse*, *āfuī* be absent,  
     be distant  
*absūmō*, *-ere*, *-sūmpsī*,  
     *-sūmptum* destroy

*ac conj.* and, and also  
*accēdō*, *-ere*, *accessī*, *accessum*  
     approach; be added to  
*accendō*, *-ere*, *accendī*,  
     *accēsum* fire, incite  
*accidō*, *-ere*, *accidī* happen  
*accidō*, *-ere*, *accidī*, *accisum* cut  
     into  
*accingō*, *-ere*, *-cīnxī*, *-cīnctum*  
     gird on  
*accipiō*, *-ere*, *accēpī*, *acceptum*  
     receive, accept; learn  
*acclivis*, *-e* sloping; steep  
*accola*, *-ae m.* one who dwells  
     near, a neighbor  
*accommodō* (1) adjust, fit on  
*accūrātē adv.* carefully

**acer, ācris, ācre** sharp, keen;  
 fierce  
**aciēs, aciēi** *f.* line of battle  
**acquiēscō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētum** rest,  
 die, sleep one's last sleep  
**ācritēr** *adv.* (**ācrius, ācerrimē**)  
 sharply, fiercely  
**āctuārius** fitted with oars  
**acūtus** sharpened, pointed  
**ad** *prep.* + *acc.* to, toward; near;  
*of time* up to, until; *with*  
*numerals* up to, about  
**adaequō** (1) equal; keep up with  
**addō, -ere, addidī, additum**  
 add; give; put  
**addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum**  
 lead to, bring to; influence  
**adeō, -īre, -iī, -itum** approach,  
 visit; attack  
**adeō** *adv.* so, so much, so very  
**adhaereō, -ēre, -haesi, -haesum**  
 cling to, stick to  
**adhibeō, -ēre, -hibuī, -hibitum**  
 summon; employ  
**adhortor** (1) encourage, incite  
**adhūc** *adv.* up to this time, still  
**adiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum** throw  
 to, hurl; add to, increase  
**adigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum** bring  
 to; drive; hurl  
**adimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēemptum** take  
 away, remove  
**adipīscor, adipīscī, adeptus** gain,  
 attain; win  
**aditus, -ūs, m.** approach; access  
**adiungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūctum**  
 join to, unite; add  
**adiūtōr, -ōris m.** helper, assistant  
**adiuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtum** help,  
 assist  
**administer, -trī m.** attendant;  
 priest

**administrō** (1) manage, perform  
**admīrātiō, -ōnis f.** wonder, ad-  
 miration  
**admīror** (1) wonder at; admire  
**admittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum**  
 admit; commit  
**admodum** *adv.* very much; very;  
*with numerals* fully  
**admoneō, -ēre, -monuī, -monitum** warn  
**admoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum**  
 move toward; bring; advance  
**adolēscō, -ere, adolēvī, adultum**  
 grow up  
**adoperiō, -īre, -uī, -tum** cover,  
 wrap  
**adorior, -īrī, -ortus** arise;  
 attack  
**assistō, -ere, -stitī** stand near  
**adstō, -āre, -stitī** stand near  
**adsuēfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum**  
 accustom, train  
**adsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum**  
 become accustomed  
**adsum, adesse, adfui** be present;  
 help  
**adsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum** receive, take;  
 employ  
**adulēscēns, -entis m.** young man  
**adūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ustum** burn  
**adventus, -ūs m.** arrival;  
 approach  
**adversus** *prep.* + *acc.* against;  
 opposite to; in reply to  
**adversus** *adj.* turned to *or*  
 against, opposite; unfavorable;  
**adversō flūmine** up the river;  
 in **adversum** *ōs* full in the face  
**advolō** (1) fly to *or* against; rush  
 on *or* at  
**aedēs, -is f.** temple

**aedificium** building  
**aedificō** (1) build  
**aeger, aegra, aegrum** sick  
**aegrē** *adv.* (*aegrius, aegerrimē*)  
 with difficulty  
**Aenēās, -ae** *m.* Aeneas, the hero  
 of the *Aeneid*  
**aequinocitium** the equinox  
**aequitās, -tātis** *f.* equality;  
 fairness  
**aequō** (1) make equal, equalize  
**aequor, -oris** *n.* the sea  
**aequus** fair, just; **aequus animus**  
 equanimity, composure;  
**ex aequō** equally  
**āēr, āeris** (*acc. āera*) *m.* air; mist  
**aes, aeris** *n.* copper; money;  
**aes aliēnum** debt  
**aestās, -tātis** *f.* summer  
**aestimātiō, -ōnis** *f.* valuation  
**aestimō** (1) value, estimate;  
 reckon  
**aestus, -ūs** *m.* heat; tide  
**aetās, -tātis** *f.* age  
**aethēr, -eris** *m.* air; sky  
**afferō** (*adferō*), **afferre, attulī,**  
**allātum** bring; bring word  
**afficiō, -ere, affēcī, affectum**  
 treat, affect  
**affictō** (1) damage greatly;  
 shatter  
**affligō, -ere, afflīxī, afflictum**  
 strike against; overthrow;  
 damage  
**Āfricus** the southwest wind  
**ager, agrī** *m.* field; land  
**agger, aggeris** *m.* mound,  
 rampart  
**aggredior, aggredī, aggressus**  
 attack  
**aggregō** (1) assemble; join,  
 attach

**agmen, agminis** *n.* army on the  
 march; column; **primum**  
**agmen** the van; **novissimum**  
**agmen** the rear  
**agnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum**  
 recognize  
**agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum** drive; do,  
 accomplish; mention;  
**grātiās agere** to thank;  
**agere cum** to treat with  
**agricola, -ae** *m.* farmer  
**aiō** *def.* say  
**āla** wing  
**alacer, -cris, -cre** lively; eager;  
 active  
**alacritās, -tātis** *f.* eagerness,  
 ardor  
**alcēs, -is** *f.* the elk  
**āles, ālitis** *m. and f.* bird  
**aliās** *adv.* at another place or  
 time; **aliās . . . aliās** at one  
 time . . . at another  
**alibī** *adv.* elsewhere  
**aliēnus** belonging to another;  
 unfavorable; **aes aliēnum**  
 debt; **aliēnō locō** on unfavor-  
 able ground  
**aliquamdiū** *adv.* for some time  
**aliquantus** some, considerable;  
*neut. as noun with partitive gen.*  
 a good deal  
**aliquī, -qua, -quod** *adj.* some  
**aliquis, -quid** someone, some-  
 thing; anyone, anything  
**aliquot indec.** some, several  
**aliter** *adv.* otherwise; **aliter . . .**  
 ac otherwise . . . than  
**alius, -a, -ud** other, another;  
**alius . . . alius** one . . . another;  
**aliī . . . aliī** some . . . others  
**alliciō, -ere, allexī, allectum**  
 attract, entice



- Alpēs, -ium** *f. pl.* the Alps  
**alter, -era, -erum** the other (of two); **alter . . . alter** the one . . . the other  
**altitūdō, -dīnis** *f.* height; depth  
**altus** high, tall; deep; *neut. as noun* the deep, the sea; **altē** *adv.* on high  
**amābilis, -e** lovable, amiable; attractive  
**amanter** *adv.* affectionately  
**ambactus** vassal  
**Ambiorix, -īgis** *m.* Ambiorix, *king of the Eburones*  
**ambō, -ae, -ō** both  
**ambulō** (1) walk  
**āmentum** strap, thong  
**amīcitia** friendship  
**amictus, -ūs** *m.* robe, garment  
**amīcus** friendly; *m. as noun* friend  
**āmittō, -ere, āmisī, āmissum** lose  
**amō** (1) love  
**amor, amōris** *m.* love  
**amphora** jar  
**amplē** *adv.* largely, fully; *comp.* **amplius** more, farther  
**amplector, -ī, amplexus** embrace  
**amplificō** (1) extend, enlarge  
**amplitūdō, -dīnis** *f.* size; wide extent  
**amplus** great, large; magnificent  
**an** *conj.* or, whether  
**anceps, ancipitis** two-headed; doubtful  
**ancora** anchor  
**angulus** corner  
**angustē** *adv.* closely; in close quarters  
**angustiae, -ārum** *f. pl.* narrowness; strait; defile  
**angustus** narrow; limited  
**anhēlitus, -ūs** *m.* panting, hard breathing  
**anima** breath; life; soul  
**animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum** notice, observe  
**animal, -ālis** *n.* animal  
**animus** mind; spirit, soul; courage  
**Aniō, Aniēnis** *m.* the Anio, *a tributary of the Tiber*  
**annus** year  
**ante** *prep.* + *acc.* before, in front of; *adv.* before, previously  
**anteā** *adv.* before  
**antecēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum** precede; surpass  
**antecursor, -ōris** *m.* forerunner; *pl.* vanguard  
**anteferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum** carry before; prefer  
**antequam** *conj.* before  
**antīquus** *adv.* from ancient times; long ago  
**antīquus** ancient  
**antrum** cave  
**aper, aprī** *m.* boar  
**apertē** *adv.* openly, manifestly  
**apertus** open, exposed; **ab latere** **apertō** on the unprotected flank  
**aperiō, -īre, aperuī, apertum** open, reveal, disclose  
**Apollō, -inis** *m.* Apollo  
**App.** *abbreviation for Appius*  
**appāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum** appear, be seen  
**appellō** (1) call, name  
**appellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum** bring to land  
**Appennīnus** *sing.* the Apennines

**appetō, -ere, -ivī, -itum** grasp at  
**applicō (1)** apply; **sē applicāre**  
 to lean  
**apportō (1)** bring  
**appropinquō (1)** approach  
**aptō (1)** fit, put on  
**aptus** fitted, suited  
**apud** *prep.* + *acc.* among; near;  
 at the house of  
**aqua** water  
**aquila** eagle; standard  
**aquilifer, -ferī m.** standard-  
 bearer  
**Aquitānus** *adj.* of Aquitania;  
*m. pl. as noun* the Aquitanians  
**āra** altar  
**arātor, -ōris m.** plowman  
**arbiter, -trī m.** umpire,  
 arbitrator  
**arbitrium** decision, judgment  
**arbitror (1)** think  
**arbor (arbōs), arboris f.** tree  
**arboreus** of a tree  
**arceō, -ēre, -uī** keep off; drive  
 away  
**arcessō, -ere, -ivī, -itum**  
 summon; invite  
**ārdeō, -ēre, ārsī, ārsum** burn;  
 be eager  
**arduus** towering; steep  
**arēna** sand; ground  
**argentum** silver  
**argilla** white clay  
**argūmentum** proof  
**āridus** dry; *neut. as noun* dry  
 land  
**arma, -ōrum n. pl.** arms; war  
**armāmenta, -ōrum n. pl.** imple-  
 ments, gear; tackle, rigging  
**armātus** armed; *m. pl. as noun*  
 armed men

**armō (1)** arm  
**arō (1)** plow  
**arripiō, -ere, -ipuī, -reptum**  
 snatch, seize, lay hold of  
**ars, artis f.** art; skill  
**articulus** joint  
**artificium** handicraft; trade  
**arvum** field; land  
**arx, arcis f.** citadel  
**ascendō, -ere, ascendī,**  
**ascēsum** mount, climb  
**ascēsus, -ūs m.** approach,  
 ascent  
**aspectus, -ūs m.** look;  
 appearance  
**asper, -era, -erum** rough; fierce  
**aspiciō, -ere, aspēxī, aspectum**  
 see; look upon  
**assiduus** continual, incessant  
**assistō, -ere, astitī** stand by or  
 near  
**at conj.** but, at least  
**āter, ātra, ātrum** black, dark  
**Athēnae, -ārum f. pl.** Athens  
**atque conj.** and, and also  
**Atrebās, -bātis m.** an Atreba-  
 tian; *pl.* the Atrebates  
**attingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum**  
 touch, border on; extend to  
**attollō, -ere** lift up  
**attribuō, -ere, -tribuī, -tribūtum**  
 assign, allot  
**auctor, -ōris m.** adviser; author  
**auctōritās, -tātis f.** influence,  
 authority  
**audācia** boldness, daring  
**audācter** *adv.* boldly  
**audāx, -ācis** bold, daring  
**audeō, audēre, ausus** sum dare;  
 venture  
**audiō (4)** hear

**auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum** take away, remove  
**augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum** make greater, increase; *in pass.* become greater, increase  
**auguror** (1) surmise, imagine  
**aura** breeze; sky  
**aureus** golden  
**aurīga, -ae m.** charioteer  
**auris, -is f.** ear  
**aurum** gold  
**aut conj.** or; **aut . . . aut** either . . . or  
**autem postpositive conj.** but, however, moreover  
**auxilior** (1) help, assist  
**auxilium** help, aid; **auxilium ferre** to bring aid, *with dat.*; **auxilia, -ōrum n. pl.** reinforcements  
**Avernus adj.** of Avernus  
**āvertō, -ere, āvertī, āversum** turn away, draw off  
**avidus** eager for  
**avis, avis f.** bird  
**avus** grandfather

## B

**Babylōn, -ōnis f.** Babylon  
**Babylōnius adj.** Babylonian  
**baculum** stick, staff  
**balteus** sword belt  
**barbarus adj.** native, uncivilized; *m. pl. as noun* natives  
**Belgae, -ārum m. pl.** the Belgae  
**Belgium** Belgium  
**bellicōsus** warlike  
**bellicus** military  
**bellum** war; **bellum inferre** to make war on, *with dat.*  
**bene adv.** (**melius, optimē**) well

**beneficium** well-doing, benefit, favor  
**benevolentia** good will, kindness  
**bibō, -ere, bibī** drink  
**bīdum** two days  
**bīnī, -ae, -a** two each; two at a time  
**bipartītō (bipertītō) adv.** in two parts  
**blanditia** flattery  
**bonus (melior, optimus)** good; kind; *as noun* **bonum** advantage; **bona, -ōrum** goods, property; **bonī, -ōrum** the good  
**bōs, bovis m. and f.** ox; cow; *pl.* cattle  
**bracchium** arm  
**brevis, -e** short; **brevī adv.** in a short time  
**Britannia** Britain  
**Britannī** Britons  
**brūma** the winter solstice  
**Brundisium** Brundisium (Brindisi), town in Southern Italy  
**bustum** mound; tomb  
**buxum** boxwood

## C

**C. abbreviation for Gāius**  
**cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsum** fall; be slain; die  
**caedēs, -is f.** murder; slaughter  
**caedō, -ere, cecidī, caesum** cut, cut down, slay  
**caelestis, -e** heavenly; *pl. as noun* the gods  
**caelum** sky, heaven  
**caeruleus** dark blue  
**Caesar, Caesaris m.** Caesar  
**caespes, caespitis m.** sod, turf

**calamitās, -tātis f.** misfortune, disaster; **calamitātem accipere** to suffer defeat  
**calcō (1)** trample, tread on  
**calidus** warm  
**cāligō, -inis f.** darkness  
**callidus** shrewd, clever  
**Calymnē, -ēs f.** Calymne, an island  
**campus** plain; level ground  
**canis, canis m. and f.** dog  
**Cannae, -ārum f. pl.** Cannae, a town in Apulia  
**Cantium** Kent  
**capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum** take, seize, capture; reach;  
**cōnsilium capere** to form a plan  
**Capitōlium** the Capitol, temple of Jupiter in Rome  
**capra** goat  
**captivus adj.** captive; *m. as noun* captive, prisoner  
**captō (1)** strive to catch  
**caput, capitis n.** head; capital;  
**capitis poena** capital punishment  
**carcer, -eris m.** prison; barrier  
**cardō, -inis m.** hinge  
**careō, -ēre, -uī** lack, miss  
**carmen, -inis n.** song  
**carpō, -ere, carpsī, carptum** pluck; find fault with; **viam carpere** to take one's way  
**carō, carnis f.** flesh, meat  
**carrus** cart  
**Carthāginiēnsis, -e** Carthaginian; *as noun* a Carthaginian  
**Carthāgō, -inis f.** Carthage;  
**Carthāgō Nova** New Carthage  
**cārus** dear  
**casa** cottage, hut

**cāseus** cheese  
**castellum** fort, stronghold  
**castra, -ōrum n. pl.** camp  
**cāsus, -ūs m.** accident; chance; misfortune; **cāsū** by chance  
**cauda** tail  
**causa** cause, reason; **causā** with *gen.* for the sake of  
**cautē adv.** cautiously  
**cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum** go, go away; retreat, withdraw; yield  
**celer, celeris, celere** swift  
**celeritās, -tātis f.** speed, swiftness  
**celeriter adv. (celerius, celerrimē)** quickly, swiftly  
**celsus** high  
**Celtae, -ārum m. pl.** the Celts  
**cēna** dinner  
**cēnō (1)** dine  
**cēseō, -ēre, cēnsuī, cēsum** think; decide  
**centum** one hundred  
**centuriō, -ōnis m.** centurion  
**cēra** wax  
**Cerberus** Cerberus, a dog guarding the entrance to the Underworld  
**Cerēs, Cereris f.** Ceres, the goddess of agriculture  
**cernō, -ere, crēvī, crētum** see, perceive  
**certāmen, -inis n.** fight, contest  
**certē adv.** certainly, surely  
**certō (1)** struggle; vie, rival  
**certus** sure, certain; true, proved; **certiōrem facere** to inform; **certior fieri** to be informed  
**cervix, -icis f.** neck; head  
**cervus** stag  
**cessō (1)** waste (of time)



**cēterī, -ae, -a** the rest of, the remaining, the other; *m. pl. as noun* the others, (all) the rest  
**Chaos, n. nom. and acc.** empty space  
**Charōn, -ontis m.** Charon, the ferryman of the Underworld  
**cibus** food  
**Cicerō, -ōnis m.** (a) Marcus Tullius Cicero, a Roman orator; (b) Quintus Tullius Cicero, his brother, one of Caesar's officers  
**cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cinctum** encircle, encompass  
**circā adv. and prep. + acc.** around, near  
**circiter adv.** about, near  
**circuitus, -ūs m.** circumference  
**circum prep. + acc.** around, about  
**circumcīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum** cut, cut around or off  
**circumclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum** encircle  
**circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum** surround, encompass  
**circumdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum** lead around  
**circumeō, -īre, -iī, -itum** go or march around; visit  
**circummittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum** send around  
**circumsistō, -ere, -stitī** stand around, surround  
**circumspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum** consider; examine; look for  
**circumvehō, -ere, -vēxī, -vectum** carry around; *pass.* ride around  
**circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum** surround

**citerior, -ius** nearer, hither;  
**Gallia Citerior** Hither Gaul, on the Italian side of the Alps  
**cito adv. (citius, citissimē)** quickly  
**citrā prep. + acc.** on this side of, nearer than  
**cīvilis, -e** civic, civil  
**cīvis, cīvis m. and f.** citizen  
**cīvitās, -tātis f.** citizenship; state  
**clādēs, clādīs f.** disaster, defeat  
**clam adv.** secretly  
**clāmitō (1)** cry out repeatedly, exclaim  
**clāmō (1)** cry out, shout  
**clāmor, -ōris m.** shout, din  
**clārus** clear, bright; famous; loud; **clārē adv.** clearly  
**classis, -is f.** fleet  
**claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum** shut in  
**clēmētia** humanity, kindness  
**cliēns, clientis m. and f.** client  
**clientēla** vassalage; clients  
**Cn. abbreviation for Gnaeus**  
**coāctus, -ūs m.** compulsion  
**coctilis, -e** baked; burned; built of burned bricks  
**coeō, -īre, -iī, -itum** be united; assemble  
**coepī, coepisse** began  
**coeptum** undertaking  
**coerceō, -ēre, -cuī, -citum** restrain, check  
**cōgitātiō, -ōnis f.** reflection, thought  
**cōgitō (1)** consider thoroughly, reflect, think; intend  
**cognātiō, -ōnis f.** family; clan  
**cognōscō, -ere, cognōvī, cognitum** learn; *in perfect tenses* know

**cōgō, -ere, cōēgī, cōactum**  
 compel, force; collect  
**cohors, cohortis f.** cohort  
**cohortor** (1) encourage, cheer  
**collaudō** (1) praise highly  
**collēga, -ae m.** colleague,  
 associate  
**colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum**  
 gather together  
**Collinus** Colline, *adj. applied to*  
*N.E. district in Rome*; **porta**  
**Collina** the Colline Gate  
**collis, -is m.** hill  
**collocō** (1) station  
**colloquium** parley, interview  
**colloquor, -ī, -locūtus** confer,  
 talk with  
**colō, -ere, coluī, cultum** culti-  
 vate; dwell in; honor, worship  
**colōnia** colony, settlement  
**color, -ōris m.** color  
**columna** column, pillar  
**coma** hair; leaves  
**comes, comitis m.** companion,  
 associate  
**comitia, -ōrum n. pl.** assembly;  
 elections  
**comitō** (1) accompany, follow  
**commeātus, -ūs m.** trip, voyage;  
 supplies, provisions; leave of  
 absence  
**commemorō** (1) remind one of;  
 mention  
**commendō** (1) entrust;  
 surrender  
**commeō** (1) go back and forth;  
 visit  
**comminus** *adv.* hand to hand; at  
 close quarters  
**committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum**  
 entrust, commit; **proelium**  
**committere** to join battle

**commodē** *adv.* readily, easily  
**commodum** convenience,  
 advantage  
**commodus** in full measure;  
 satisfactory; convenient  
**commoror** (1) wait, stop  
**commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum**  
 rouse, alarm  
**commūnicō** (1) share  
**commūniō** (4) fortify strongly  
**commūnis, -e** common, general;  
**commūnī cōnsiliō** by common  
 design  
**commūtātiō, -ōnis f.** change  
**commūtō** (1) change, exchange  
**comoedus** comedian; comic  
 actor  
**comparō** (1) prepare, get ready;  
 acquire  
**comparō** (1) compare  
**compellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum**  
 collect; assemble; force  
**comperiō, -īre, -perī, -pertum**  
 discover, ascertain  
**compēscō, -ere, -pēscuī** quench;  
 curb  
**complector, -ī, -plexus** embrace,  
 clasp  
**compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum** fill  
**complūrēs, -a** (*gen. pl.*  
**complūrium**) several, many  
**compōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum**  
 arrange; compose; heap up  
**comportō** (1) collect, bring  
**comprehendō, -ere, -hendī,**  
**-hēnsu** seize, arrest  
**comprobō** (1) approve  
**concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum**  
 depart; yield; permit  
**concidō, -ere, -cidī** fall, fall  
 down  
**conciliō** (1) win over

**concilium** council, gathering,  
 assembly  
**concitō** (1) stir up, rouse  
**conclāmō** (1) shout, call aloud  
**concurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursum**  
 run or rush together;  
 assemble; meet  
**conkursō** (1) run about  
**conkursus, -ūs m.** a gathering  
 round; collision; onset  
**condiciō, -ōnis f.** condition,  
 terms, terms of agreement;  
 state (*e.g., of slavery*)  
**condō, -ere, -didī, -ditum** build;  
 bury; bring to an end  
**condūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum**  
 lead together, assemble; hire  
**cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī,**  
**collātum** bring together  
**cōnfertus** dense, crowded  
 together  
**cōnfestim** *adv.* immediately  
**cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum**  
 complete, finish  
**cōnfidō, -ere, cōnfisus sum**  
 trust, rely on, *with dat.*  
**cōnfinium** neighborhood,  
 (common) boundary  
**cōnfirmō** (1) establish,  
 strengthen  
**cōnfiteor, -ērī, -fessus**  
 acknowledge; confess  
**cōnflagrō** (1) be on fire, burn  
**cōnflīctō** (1) strike together;  
*pass.* be distressed  
**cōnflīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctum**  
 contend, fight  
**congređior, -ī, -gressus** come  
 together; fight  
**coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum**  
 throw

**coniugium** marriage; union  
**coniūctim** *adv.* jointly  
**coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum**  
 join  
**coniūnx, coniugis m. and f.**  
 husband; wife  
**coniūrātiō, -ōnis f.** conspiracy,  
 plot  
**cōnor** (1) try, attempt  
**conquirō, -ere, -quīsivī,**  
**-quīsītum** search for, seek for  
**cōnscendō, -ere, -scendī,**  
**-scēsum** mount, ascend; go  
 on board  
**cōnscientia** consciousness,  
 knowledge  
**cōnscius** knowing, aware of;  
*as noun* a go-between  
**cōnscrībō, -ere, -scripsī,**  
**-scriptum** enroll, levy;  
**patrēs cōnscripti** senators  
**cōnsecrō** (1) dedicate, consecrate  
**cōnsector** (1) pursue  
**cōnsēnsus, -ūs m.** agreement,  
 accordance, consent  
**cōnsentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēsum**  
 agree, combine; plot together,  
 be in league with  
**cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus** pursue,  
 follow up, overtake  
**cōnservō** (1) save, keep safe  
**cōnsidō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum**  
 settle, take up position;  
 encamp; hold a meeting  
**cōnsilium** plan; advice, counsel;  
 council of war; **cōnsilium**  
**capere** to adopt a plan  
**cōnsimilis, -e** like, similar  
**cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī** halt, take  
 up position  
**cōnsōlor** (1) cheer, comfort

**cōnspectus**, -ūs *m.* sight  
**cōspiciō**, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum  
 see; catch sight of  
**cōspicor** (1) observe; catch  
 sight of  
**cōstantia** heroism; firmness  
**cōstituō**, -ere, -stitūī, -stitūtum  
 decide, determine; draw up;  
 establish  
**cōnstō**, -āre, -stitī stand firm;  
 depend on; **cōnstat** *impers.* it  
 is agreed  
**cōnsuēscō**, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum  
 become accustomed  
**cōnsuētūdō**, -dinis *f.* custom;  
 ex **cōnsuētūdine** according to  
 custom  
**cōnsul**, -sulis *m.* consul  
**cōnsulō**, -ere, -sulūī, -sultum  
 consult, *with acc.*; take thought  
 for, consult the interests of,  
*with dat.*  
**cōnsultō** (1) reflect, consider  
**cōnsultō** *adv.* deliberately, on  
 purpose  
**cōnsūmō**, -ere, -sūmpsī,  
 -sūmptum use up, spend  
**cōnsurgō**, -ere, -surrēxī,  
 -surrēctum arise, arise  
 together  
**contāgiō**, -ōnis *f.* contact  
**contemnō**, -ere, -temptī,  
 -temptum despise  
**contemplor** (1) survey  
**contemptiō**, -ōnis *f.* contempt,  
 disdain  
**contendō**, -ere, -tendī, -tentum  
 hasten; march; fight  
**contentiō**, -ōnis *f.* striving;  
 dispute  
**contentus** content, satisfied

**conterminus** neighboring; near  
**contiguus** adjoining  
**continēns**, -entis unbroken,  
 continuous; *as noun f.* main-  
 land, continent  
**continenter** *adv.* continually,  
 continuously  
**contineō**, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum  
 hold, keep, restrain, hem in;  
 sē **continēre** remain within  
**contingō**, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum  
 touch, reach; happen to  
**continuus** unbroken, continuous  
**cōntiō**, -ōnis *f.* assembly; mass  
 meeting  
**contrā** *prep. + acc.* against,  
 facing; *adv.* on the other hand  
**contrahō**, -ere, -trāxī, -tractum  
 collect; shorten, contract  
**contrārius** contrary, opposing  
**contrōversia** dispute, quarrel  
**contumēlia** insult; injury  
**convallis**, -is *f.* enclosed valley,  
 defile  
**conveniō**, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum  
 come together, assemble  
**conventus**, -ūs *m.* assembly;  
 court, assizes  
**convertō**, -ere, -vertī, -versum  
 turn, change  
**convocō** (1) call together,  
 summon  
**coorior**, **cooriri**, **coortus** arise  
**cōpia** supply, plenty; *pl.* troops,  
 forces  
**cor**, **cordis**, *n.* heart; **cordi esse**  
 to be dear  
**cōram** *adv.* face to face, in person  
**Corinthus**, -ī *f.* Corinth  
**cornū**, -ūs *n.* horn; wing  
 (*of an army*)



**corōna** crown; garland  
**corpus, corporis** *n.* body  
**corrigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum**  
 correct, improve  
**corrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum**  
 bribe, corrupt  
**Cōrus** the northwest wind  
**cotidiānus** *adj.* daily; **cotīdiē**  
*adv.* daily  
**crās** *adv.* tomorrow  
**crēber, crēbra, crēbrum**  
 frequent, numerous  
**crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditum**  
 believe; entrust  
**cremō** (1) burn  
**creō** (1) elect, choose; create  
**crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētum** grow  
**Crēta, -ae or Crētē, -ēs** *f.* Crete  
**cruciātus, -ūs** *m.* torture  
**crūdēlis, -e** cruel  
**cruentō** (1) stain with blood  
**cruentus** bloody  
**cruor, cruōris** *m.* blood; death  
**crūs, crūris** *n.* leg  
**cubīle, -is** *n.* bed, resting place;  
 lair  
**culpa** fault; guilt  
**culpō** (1) blame  
**cultūra** cultivation  
**cultus, -ūs** *m.* cultivation;  
 civilization, mode of life;  
 dress, attire  
**cum** *conj.* when, since, although;  
**cum . . . tum** both . . . and;  
**cum primum** as soon as  
**cum** *prep. + abl.* with  
**cunctātiō, -ōnis** *f.* hesitation,  
 delay  
**cunctor** (1) delay, hesitate  
**cūctus** all  
**cupidē** *adv.* eagerly

**cupiditās, -tātis** *f.* desire,  
 eagerness  
**Cupīdō, -inis** *m.* Cupid, the god  
 of love  
**cupīdō, -inis** *f.* desire, longing  
**cupīdus** eager, desirous  
**cupiō, -ere, -ivī, -ītum** desire,  
 wish  
**cūr?** *adv.* why?  
**cūra** care, anxiety  
**cūria** senate house  
**cūrō** (1) take care of, look after;  
 see to it  
**currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum** run  
**currus, -ūs** *m.* chariot  
**cursus, -ūs** *m.* course; speed;  
 race  
**curvāmen, -inis** *n.* bend, curve  
**custōdia** custody, guard  
**custōdiō** (4) guard  
**custōs, custōdis** *m.* guard,  
 watchman  
**Cytherēa** Cytherea, Lady of  
 Cythera, a name of Venus

## D

**Dācī, -ōrum** *m.* the Dacians,  
 who lived in Dacia on the  
 Danube  
**damnō** (1) sentence, condemn  
**damnōsus** destructive  
**Dānuvius** the Danube  
**dē** *prep. + abl.* from, down  
 from; about, concerning, of;  
 of time, just after the begin-  
 ning of  
**dea** goddess  
**dēbellō** (1) finish a war; subdue  
**dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī, dēbitum**  
 owe; ought

dēcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum  
depart; die  
decem ten  
dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum  
decide; vote  
decimus tenth  
dēclīnō (1) turn aside  
dēclivis, -e sloping, declining  
dēcētum decree, decision  
dēcūrrō, -ere, -currī, -cursum  
run down; pass  
dēcutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussum  
strike off; shake from  
dēdecus, dēdecoris *n.* dishonor,  
disgrace  
dēditiō, -ōnis *f.* surrender  
dēdō, -ere, dēdidī, dēditum  
surrender  
dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum  
withdraw; conduct; launch  
(ships)  
dēfatīgō (1) weary, exhaust  
dēfectiō, -ōnis *f.* desertion,  
revolt  
dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī,  
dēfēsum defend  
dēferō, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātum  
carry down; report  
dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum  
faint; fail; revolt  
dēfigō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum drive  
in; plant  
dēfleō, -flēre, -flēvī, -flētum  
weep over  
dēfugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitum  
flee from; shun  
dēfungor, -ī, dēfūctus die  
dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum throw  
down, dislodge; kill; unhorse  
deinceps *adv.* in turn;  
successively

deinde (dein) *adv.* then,  
afterwards  
dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum destroy,  
annihilate  
dēligō (1) bind, fasten, moor  
dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum  
choose  
dēlitēscō, -ere, -lituī be hidden,  
lurk  
Dēlos, Dēlī *f.* Delos, *an island*  
delphīnus a dolphin  
dēmetō, -ere, -messuī, -messum  
reap  
dēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum  
send down; lower; sē dēmit-  
tere to descend; dēmissus low  
dēmō, dēmere, dēmpsi,  
dēemptum take down, remove  
dēmōnstrō (1) point out  
Dēmōsthenēs, -is *m.*  
Demosthenes, *a Greek orator*  
dēmum *adv.* at length  
dēnique *adv.* at last; in short  
dēns, dentis *m.* tooth  
dēnsus thick, crowded  
dēnūntiō (1) announce, declare  
dēpellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum  
ward off  
dēpereō, -īre, -iī, -itum perish,  
be lost  
dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum  
lay down; give up  
dēprecor (1) implore, beg off  
dēprehendō, -ere, -prehendī,  
-prehēsum seize, capture  
dērigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum  
arrange, put in order  
dērogō (1) take away, withdraw  
dēsaeviō, -īre, -iī rage, rave  
dēscendō, -ere, -scendī,  
-scēsum descend

**dēserō, -ere, dēseruī, dēsertum**  
 desert, forsake; **dēsertus**  
 solitary  
**dēsertor, -ōris m.** deserter  
**dēsīderium** longing, ardent  
 desire; regret  
**dēsīderō** (1) miss; lose; wish for  
**dēsīdia** inactivity, idleness  
**dēsiliō, -īre, -siluī, -sultum** leap  
 down  
**dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum**  
 desist from  
**dēspērātiō, -ōnis f.** despair  
**dēspērō** (1) despair, lose heart,  
*with dē + abl.*  
**dēspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum**  
 despise; look down upon  
**dēstinō** (1) betroth; **dēstinātus**  
 betrothed  
**dēstringō, -ere, -strīnxī, -strictum**  
 unsheathe, draw  
**dēsum, deesse, dēfui** be want-  
 ing, be absent  
**dēterreō, -ēre, -terruī, -territum**  
 frighten off, prevent  
**dētrectō** (1) decline, refuse  
**dētrīmentum** harm, loss, disaster  
**dēturbō** (1) drive off, dislodge  
 deus god  
**dēvehō, -ere, -vēxī, -vectum**  
 carry away; bring  
**dēvoveō, -ēre, -vōvī, -vōtum**  
 consecrate; devote; curse  
**dexter, dextra, dextrum** right;  
 manus dextra right hand  
**dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum** say, tell,  
 speak; appoint; **iūs dīcere** to  
 administer justice  
**dictātor, -ōris m.** dictator  
**dictum** remark; command;  
**dictō audiēns** obedient

**diēs, diēi m.** day  
**differō, differre, distulī, dilātum**  
 scatter, spread; defer  
**difficilis, -e** difficult, hard  
**difficultās, -tātis f.** difficulty  
**diffidō, -ere, diffisus sum**  
 distrust  
**diffugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitum**  
 scatter in flight; flee in  
 different directions  
**diffundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum**  
 pour out, spread out  
**dignitās, -tātis f.** merit; rank;  
 grandeur  
**dignus** worthy  
**dīiudicō** (1) decide  
**diligēns, -entis** careful  
**diligenter adv.** carefully  
**diligentia** diligence, carefulness  
**diligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum** single  
 out; esteem highly; love  
**dīmicō** (1) fight, struggle  
**dimidius** half; *neut. as noun* the  
 half  
**dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum**  
 dismiss, let go; lose  
**dirimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēemptum**  
 break off, interrupt; separate  
**dīripiō, -ere, -ripiuī, -reptum**  
 plunder; tear asunder  
**Dīs, Dītis m.** Pluto, *god of the*  
*Underworld*  
**discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum**  
 depart, withdraw  
**discessus, -ūs m.** departure  
**disciplīna** training, instruction;  
 system  
**discō, -ere, didicī** learn  
**discrīmen, -inis n.** crisis; danger  
**dispār, -paris** unequal, ill  
 matched

dispergō, -ere, -spersī, -spersum  
 scatter  
 dispōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum  
 place apart; station; arrange  
 disputātiō, -ōnis *f.* argument,  
 discussion  
 disputō (1) discuss  
 dissēnsiō, -ōnis *f.* disagreement,  
 dissension  
 dissentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēsum  
 differ, disagree  
 dissipō (1) scatter, disperse  
 dissimilis, -e unlike  
 distribuō, -ere, -tribuī,  
 -tribūtum distribute, divide  
 diū *adv.* (diūtius, diūtissimē)  
 long, for a long time  
 diūtīnus long, of long duration  
 diūturnus lasting, long  
 dīvellō, -ere, -vellī, -vulsum  
 tear asunder  
 dīversus opposite; different;  
 remote  
 dīves, dīvitis rich  
 dividō, -ere, dīvisī, dīvisum  
 divide, separate  
 dīvinus sacred, divine  
 dīvitiae, -ārum *f. pl.* riches,  
 wealth  
 dō, dare, dedī, datum give;  
 manūs dare to yield; poenās  
 dare to pay the penalty  
 doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctum teach  
 doleō, -ēre, doluī, dolitum  
 grieve, suffer  
 dolor, -ōris *m.* grief, pain  
 domesticus domestic; of one's  
 own land  
 dominus master, lord  
 domus, -ūs *f.* house, home;  
 domī at home

dōnec *conj.* until  
 dōnō (1) give  
 dōnum gift, present  
 dormiō (4) sleep  
 dōs, dōtis *f.* dowry  
 Druidēs, -um *m.* the Druids  
 dubiē *adv.* doubtfully; haud  
 dubiē undoubtedly  
 dubitātiō, -ōnis *f.* doubt,  
 hesitation  
 dubitō (1) hesitate; doubt  
 dubium doubt  
 dubius uncertain; wavering  
 ducentī, -ae, -a two hundred  
 dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum lead;  
 consider  
 dulcis, -e sweet, agreeable  
 dum *conj.* while; as long as; until  
 Dumnorix, -īgis *m.* Dumnorix, a  
 Haeduan chieftain  
 duo, duae, duo two  
 duodecim twelve  
 duodētrīgintā twenty-eight  
 duodēvigintī eighteen  
 duplicō (1) double  
 dūritia hardship  
 dūrō (1) harden  
 dūrus hard, harsh  
 dux, ducis *m.* leader

## E

ē *prep.*, see ex  
 eā *adv.* by that way, there  
 ebur, eboris *n.* ivory; scabbard  
 ecce *interjection* see! look!  
 ēdiscō, -ere, ēdidicī learn  
 thoroughly, learn by heart  
 ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum lead  
 out; draw (*a sword*)  
 ēducō (1) rear, train, educate



**effēminō** (1) enfeeble, enervate  
**efferrō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum**  
 carry out; make known; raise;  
 elate  
**efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum** make,  
 accomplish  
**effugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitum** flee  
 from; escape  
**effundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum**  
 shake out, pour out  
**egeō, egēre, eguī** need, lack  
**egestās, -tātis f.** poverty  
**ego, meī I**  
**ēgredior, -ī, ēgressus** depart  
 from  
**ēgregiē adv.** excellently,  
 admirably  
**ēgregius** excellent, superior  
**ēgressus, -ūs m.** landing place  
**ēiciō, -ere, ēiēcī, ēiectum** drive  
 out, expel; **sē ēicere** rush out,  
 sally  
**ēlābor, -ī, ēlāpsus** slip away,  
 escape  
**elephantus** elephant  
**ēliciō, -ere, -uī, -itum** lure forth;  
 draw out  
**ēligō, -ere, ēlēgī, ēlēctum**  
 choose, pick out  
**ēmicō, -āre, -uī, -ātum** dart forth  
**ēmineō, -ēre, -uī** tower above  
**ēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum**  
 send out; let go  
**emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptum** buy  
**enim postpositive conj.** for  
**ēnsis, -is m.** sword  
**ēnūntiō** (1) report, disclose  
**eō, ire, iī, itum go**  
**eō adv.** to that place, there  
**eōdem adv.** to the same place  
**Ephesus, -ī, f.** Ephesus

**epistula** letter  
**epulae, -ārum f. pl.** feast,  
 banquet  
**eques, equitis m.** horseman; *pl.*  
 cavalry; knights  
**equester, -tris, -tre** of cavalry  
**equidem adv.** indeed  
**equitātus, -ūs m.** cavalry  
**equus** horse  
**ergā prep. + acc.** toward  
**ergō adv.** therefore  
**ērigō, -ere, ērēxī, ērēctum** lift,  
 raise  
**ēripiō, -ere, ēripiū, ēreptum**  
 snatch away from, rescue  
**ērogō** (1) pay out, expend  
**errō** (1) wander  
**error, -ōris m.** error, mistake  
**ērudīō** (4) teach; **ērudītus**  
 educated, learned  
**ērumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum**  
 break forth, sally  
**ēruptiō, -ōnis f.** sortie, sally  
**essedārius** charioteer  
**essedum** chariot  
**et conj.** and; **et . . . et**  
 both . . . and  
**etiam conj. and adv.** also; even;  
 yes  
**Etrūscī, -ōrum m.** Etruscans  
**etsī conj.** even if, although  
**Eumenides, -um f. pl.** the Furies  
**Eurydicē, -ēs f.** Eurydice  
**ēveniō, -īre, ēvēnī, ēventum**  
 turn out, result  
**ēventus, -ūs m.** issue, result  
**ēvigilō** (1) awaken  
**ēvocō** (1) call out, summon  
**ex, ē prep. + abl.** out from, from  
**exanimō** (1) exhaust, deprive of  
 breath

**exaudiō** (4) hear  
**excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum** go  
 out, retire  
**excellō, -ere** surpass  
**excelsus** high  
**excidium** destruction  
**excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum**  
 catch; receive; interrupt  
**excitō** (1) arouse, wake  
**exclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum**  
 shut off, hinder, prevent  
**excruciō** (1) torture, torment  
**excūsō** (1) excuse  
**excutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussum**  
 shake out; investigate  
**exemplum** example  
**exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum** go out,  
 leave  
**exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum** train,  
 practice  
**exercitātiō, -ōnis f.** exercise,  
 training  
**exercitus, -ūs m.** army  
**exhauriō, -īre, -hausī, -haustum**  
 empty; draw out  
**exhorrēscō, -ere, -horruī**  
 tremble greatly  
**exiguitās, -tātis f.** scantiness;  
 narrowness  
**exiguus** small, limited  
**existimātiō, -ōnis f.** judgment,  
 opinion  
**existimō** (1) think, believe;  
 decide  
**exitus, -ūs m.** exit, passage;  
 result  
**expallēscō, -ere, -palluī** turn  
 pale  
**expediō** (4) set free; arrange  
**expeditiō, -ōnis f.** campaign;  
 enterprise

**expeditus** free; without baggage;  
**legiō expedita** a legion in light  
 marching order  
**expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum**  
 drive out  
**experior, -īrī, -pertus** try;  
 endure  
**expiō** (1) atone for; avenge  
**explōrātor, -ōris m.** scout; spy  
**explōrō** (1) search out, spy out,  
 examine, reconnoiter  
**expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum**  
 place out, disembark, land;  
 draw up; explain  
**exprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum**  
 press out; express  
**exprōmō, -ere, -prōmpsi,**  
**-prōmptum** declare; disclose  
**expugnō** (1) storm, capture  
**exsiliō, -īre, -siluī** leap out  
**exsilium** exile  
**existō, -ere, -stitī** appear; ensue  
**expectātiō, -ōnis f.** expectation;  
 longing  
**expectō** (1) await; wait  
**exstinguō, -ere, -stinxī,**  
**-stinctum** quench; destroy  
**exstō, -stāre, -stitī** stand out;  
 extend above  
**exstruō, -ere, -struxī, -strūctum**  
 build up, construct  
**exsul, exsulis m. and f.** an exile  
**externus** foreign; *as noun* a  
 stranger  
**exterus** (exterior, **extrēmus,**  
**extimus**) outside; **extrēmī m.**  
*pl. as noun* the rear  
**extrā** *adv. and prep. + acc.*  
 outside of, beyond  
**extrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -tractum**  
 draw out

**extrēmus, extimus** *see* **exterus**  
**exuō, exuere, exuī, exūtum**  
despoil

## F

**faber, fabrī m.** workman  
**fabricō (1)** build, make,  
construct  
**fābula** story  
**faciēs, faciēī f.** face, figure;  
beauty  
**facile** *adv.* (**facilius, facillimē**)  
easily  
**facilis, -e** easy  
**facinus, -oris n.** deed; crime  
**faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum** make, do  
**factiō, -ōnis f.** party, faction  
**facultās, -tātis f.** power; oppor-  
tunity; **facultātem** dare to  
give an opportunity  
**fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsum** cheat,  
deceive  
**falsus** false  
**fāma** report, rumor  
**famēs, famis f.** hunger,  
starvation  
**familia** family  
**familiāris, -e** personal, private;  
*as noun* intimate friend  
**fās indec. n.** right; will of  
Heaven  
**fateor, -ērī, fassus** admit,  
acknowledge  
**fatīgō (1)** tire, weary  
**fātum** fate, destiny  
**faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum** favor  
**favor, -ōris m.** good will; favor  
**fēcundus** fruitful  
**fēliciter** *adv.* fortunately,  
successfully

**fēlix, fēlicis** happy, fortunate  
**fēmīna** female; woman  
**fenestra** window  
**fera** wild animal  
**ferē** *adv.* almost, nearly  
**ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum** bear,  
carry, endure; receive; tell,  
report; say; **graviter ferre** to  
be annoyed at  
**ferōciter** *adv.* fiercely  
**ferōx, ferōcis** bold, fierce  
**ferrāmentum** iron tool,  
implement  
**ferrum** iron; sword  
**fertilis, -e** fruitful, fertile  
**ferus** wild, fierce; *m. as noun*  
wild beast  
**fervefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum**  
heat, melt  
**fervēns, -entis** hot, glowing  
**fessus** wearied, worn out  
**festinō (1)** hasten  
**fēstīvus** lively  
**fēstus** gay, festive  
**fētus, -ūs m.** fruit; brood  
**fidēlis, -e** faithful, loyal  
**fidēs, fideī f.** faith, word of  
honor; allegiance; protection  
**figō, -ere, fixī, fixum** fix, fasten  
**figūra** shape, form  
**filia** daughter  
**filius** son  
**findō, -ere, fidī, fissum** cleave,  
split  
**finiō (4)** finish; limit  
**finis, -is m.** end; *pl.* boundaries,  
territory  
**finitimus** neighboring; *pl. as*  
*noun* neighbors  
**fiō, fierī, factus sum** be made, be  
done; become; happen

**firmiter** *adv.* firmly  
**firmō** (1) strengthen, encourage  
**firmus** strong, powerful  
**flamma** flame  
**flāvus** golden  
**flectō, -ere, flexī, flexum** bend,  
 turn  
**flētus, -ūs m.** weeping,  
 lamentation  
**flō** (1) blow  
**flōreō, -ēre, -uī** flourish, blossom  
**flōs, flōris m.** flower  
**flūctus, -ūs m.** wave  
**flūmen, -inis n.** river  
**fluvius** river  
**foedus, foederis n.** treaty  
**fōns, fontis m.** spring, fountain  
**fore = futūrus esse; see sum**  
**foris, -is f.** door, gate  
**fōrma** shape; beauty;  
 appearance  
**fōrmō** (1) compose, prepare  
**fōrmōsus** fair, beauteous  
**fors, fortis f.** chance; **forte** *abl.*  
*as adv.* by chance  
**fortasse** *adv.* perhaps  
**fortis, -e** brave  
**fortiter** *adv.* bravely  
**fortuītō** *adv.* by chance  
**fortūna** fortune, chance  
**forum** market place; Forum  
**fossa** trench, moat  
**fovea** pit  
**foveō, -ēre, fōvī, fōtum** warm;  
 cherish  
**fragor, -ōris m.** crashing, din;  
 roar of applause  
**frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum**  
 break; wreck  
**frāter, frātris m.** brother  
**fremitus, -ūs m.** uproar, din

**frequēns, -entis** crowded;  
 numerous  
**frigidus** cold, chilly  
**frīgus, -oris n.** cold; *pl.* **frīgora**  
 cold seasons  
**frōns, frontis f.** forehead; front  
**frūctus, -ūs m.** fruit; reward  
**frūmentārius** *adj.* of grain; **rēs**  
**frūmentāria** supply of grain  
**frūmentor** (1) forage, get grain  
**frūmentum** grain; *pl.* crops  
**frūstrā** *adv.* in vain  
**fuga** flight; rout; **in fugam dare**  
 to put to flight  
**fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitum** flee;  
 shun, forbear; **fugientēs, -ium**  
 the fugitives  
**fugō** (1) put to flight  
**fūmus** smoke  
**funda** sling  
**fūnebris, -e** *adj.* of a funeral;  
*neut. pl. as noun* funeral rites  
**fungor, -ī, fūnctus** discharge,  
*with abl.*  
**fūnis, -is m.** rope  
**fūnus, fūneris n.** funeral  
**fūror** (1) steal  
**fūrtum** theft  
**fūsilis, -e** liquid; molten  
**futūrus** *see sum*

## G

**Gallia** Gaul (*the country*)  
**Gallicus** Gallic  
**Gallus** Gallic; *m. as noun* a Gaul  
**Garumna** the Garonne River  
**gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus** *sum*  
 rejoice  
**gaudium** joy, delight  
**gelidus** cold



**geminus** twin, double  
**gemitus, -ūs m.** groan, lamentation  
**gemma** gem, jewel  
**genae, -ārum f. pl.** cheeks  
**genitor, -ōris m.** father  
**gēns, gentis f.** tribe, race; family  
**genus, generis n.** race, kind; family  
**Germānia** Germany  
**Germānus** German; *m. as noun* a German  
**gerō, -ere, gessi, gestum** wage, carry on; *in pass.* happen, take place, be done, occur  
**gestiō (4)** be eager  
**gladius** sword  
**glāns, glandis f.** acorn; bullet (*thrown from a sling*)  
**glōria** glory, reputation  
**gracilis, -e** slender  
**gradus, -ūs m.** step  
**Graecia** Greece  
**Graecus** Greek; *m. as noun* a Greek  
**grandō, -inis f.** hail  
**grātia** thanks, gratitude;  
**grātiām habēre** to be grateful;  
**grātiām referre** to return a favor; **grātiās agere** to thank  
**grātulātiō, -ōnis f.** congratulations; rejoicing  
**grātulor (1)** congratulate, *with dat.*  
**grātus** pleasing  
**gravis, -e** heavy; severe, serious  
**gravitās, -tātis f.** weight; power; dignity  
**graviter adv.** heavily; seriously;  
**graviter ferre** to be annoyed at  
**gravō (1)** weigh down, burden

**gubernāculum** helm  
**gubernātor, -ōris m.** pilot

## H

**habēō, -ēre, -uī, -itum** have;  
**ōrātiōnem habēre** to deliver a speech  
**habitō (1)** live, dwell  
**Haeduuus** Haeduan; *m. pl. as noun* the Haedui  
**haereō, -ēre, haesi, haesum** cling, stick  
**Hamilcar, -aris m.** Hamilcar, *father of Hannibal*  
**Hannibal, -alis m.** Hannibal  
**Hannō, -ōnis m.** Hanno, *a Carthaginian general*  
**harundō, -inis f.** reed; arrow; rod  
**haruspex, -icis m.** soothsayer  
**Hasdrubal, -alis m.** Hasdrubal  
*(1) son-in-law of Hamilcar;*  
*(2) brother of Hannibal*  
**haud adv.** not, by no means  
**haustus, -ūs m.** draft; breath;  
**haustus accipere** to drink deep  
**Helicē, -ēs f.** Helice, *the constellation of the Great Bear*  
**Helvētia** Helvetia (Switzerland)  
**Helvētius** Helvetian; *m. as noun* a Helvetian  
**herba** herb; blade; grass  
**Hercynia silva** the Hercynian forest  
**hērēditās, -tātis f.** inheritance  
**herī adv.** yesterday  
**hērōs, hērōis m.** hero  
**Hibērus** the Ebro River  
**hiberna, -ōrum n. pl.** winter quarters, winter camp

**Hibernia** Ireland  
**hīc** *adv.* here, in this place  
**hic, haec, hoc** this; he  
**hiemō** (1) pass the winter  
**hiems, hiemis** *f.* winter  
**hinc** *adv.* hence, from this place  
**Hippomenēs, -ae** *m.*  
 Hippomenes  
**Hipponēnsis colōnia** a colonial  
 town named Hippo  
**Hispania** Spain  
**Hispanus** Spanish; *m. as noun* a  
 Spaniard  
**hodiē** *adv.* today  
**homō, hominis** *m.* human being,  
 man; *pl.* people  
**honestus** honorable;  
 distinguished  
**honor (honōs), honōris** *m.* honor  
**hōra** hour  
**horridus** dreadful  
**hortor** (1) urge, encourage  
**hospes, hospitis** *m.* guest;  
 friend; host  
**hospitium** friendship,  
 hospitality  
**hostilis, -e** hostile  
**hostis, -is** *m. and f.* an enemy;  
*pl.* the enemy  
**hūc** *adv.* to this place, here  
**hūmānitās, -tātis** *f.* refinement,  
 culture  
**hūmānus** human; civilized,  
 refined  
**humilis, -e** humble; low  
**humilitās, -tātis** *f.* humility;  
 lowness

I

**iaceō, -ēre, iacuī** lie, lie down  
**iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactum** throw

**iactō** (1) toss  
**iactūra** loss, sacrifice  
**iactus, -ūs** *m.* throwing  
**iaculātor, -ōris** *m.* javelin  
 thrower  
**iaculum** dart, javelin  
**iam** *adv.* already, now, by this  
 time  
**iānua** door  
**ibi** *adv.* there  
**Īcarus** Icarus, son of *Daedalus*  
**ictus** smitten  
**īdem, eadem, idem** the same;  
 idem . . . quī the same . . . as  
**idōneus** suitable  
**Īdūs, Īduum** *f. pl.* the Ides  
**igitur** *conj.* therefore, accord-  
 ingly  
**ignārus** ignorant, not knowing  
**ignis, ignis** *m.* fire  
**ignōbilis, -e** ignoble; unknown  
**ignōrō** (1) not know, be ignorant  
 of  
**ignōscō, -ere, ignōvī, ignōtum**  
 pardon, forgive + *dat.*  
**ignōtus** unknown, unfamiliar  
**īlia, -ōrum** *n. pl.* bowels  
**illāc** *adv.* by that way  
**ille, illa, illud** that  
**illigō** (1) bind together  
**illō** *adv.* thither, there, to that  
 place  
**illūstris, -e** distinguished; noble  
**imbellis, -e** unwarlike  
**imber, imbris** *m.* rain; rainstorm  
**imbuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum** imbue,  
 affect  
**imitor** (1) represent, imitate  
**immanis, -e** monstrous, huge;  
 immoderate  
**immemor, -oris** unmindful

**immineō, -ēre** hang over;  
 threaten  
**immittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum**  
 send into, send against; **sē**  
**immittere** to rush  
**immōbilis, -e** immovable  
**immolō** (1) sacrifice  
**immortālis, -e** immortal  
**immortālitās, -tātis f.**  
 immortality  
**impedimentum** hindrance; *pl.*  
 baggage  
**impediō** (4) hinder; **impeditus**  
 burdened, encumbered; at a  
 disadvantage  
**impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum**  
 drive on; incite  
**impendō, -ere, -pendī, -pēsum**  
 spend  
**imperātor, -ōris m.** general;  
 commander in chief  
**imperātum** command, order  
**imperitus** inexperienced in,  
 ignorant of + *gen.*  
**imperium** command, rule;  
**summa imperī** the chief  
 command  
**imperō** (1) order, command;  
 demand  
**impetrō** (1) obtain a request  
**impetus, -ūs m.** attack  
**impius** wicked  
**impleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum** fill;  
 complete  
**implōrō** (1) entreat, implore  
**impōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum**  
 place on, mount  
**importō** (1) import  
**imprōvīsus** unexpected;  
**imprōvīsō** or **dē imprōvīsō**  
 unexpectedly

**imprūdēns, -entis** off one's  
 guard; thoughtless  
**imprudentia** ignorance;  
 indiscretion  
**impulsus, -ūs m.** instigation  
**īmus** lowest; bottom of; **īmum**  
 mare the bottom of the sea  
**in prep. + acc.** into; *prep. +*  
*abl.* in, on, upon  
**inamoenus** gloomy  
**inānis, -e** empty, vain  
**incēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum**  
 advance, proceed  
**incendium** fire  
**incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēsum**  
 burn  
**incertus** uncertain  
**incidō, -ere, -cidī** fall upon  
**incidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsum** cut  
 into  
**incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum**  
 begin  
**incitō** (1) spur on, excite, urge  
**incognitus** unknown  
**incola, -ae m.** inhabitant  
**incolō, -ere, -uī** live, dwell,  
 inhabit  
**incolumis, -e** safe, unharmed  
**incommodē adv.** inconveniently  
**incommodum** misfortune, harm;  
 defeat, loss, disaster; **incom-**  
**modum accipere** to suffer loss  
**incrēdibilis, -e** incredible;  
 extraordinary  
**incumbō, -ere, -cubūī, -cubitum**  
 exert oneself, make a spurt  
**incursiō, -ōnis f.** invasion; onset  
**inde adv.** from that place; then,  
 next  
**indīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictum**  
 appoint; proclaim; call

**indignor** (1) chafe, fret; be  
 angry; scorn  
**indignus** unworthy; innocent  
**indulgentia** favor  
**Indus** Indian; *m. pl. as noun*  
**Indī, -ōrum** Indians  
**indūtiae, -ārum f. pl.** truce  
**ineō, -īre, -iī, -itum** go into,  
 enter  
**iners, inertis** lazy, sluggish  
**inertia** laziness, inactivity  
**infāmia** dishonor; ill repute  
**infectus** unaccomplished; **pāce**  
**infectā** without making peace  
**infēlix, infēlicis** unhappy;  
 luckless  
**inferī, -ōrum m. pl.** those in the  
 Underworld  
**inferō, inferre, intulī, illātum**  
 bring against; cause, inflict  
**inferus** (inferior, infimus *or*  
 imus) under  
**infēstus** hostile, threatening  
**inficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum** stain  
**infinitus** endless, boundless  
**infirmus** weak, feeble  
**infā** *adv. and prep. + acc.*  
 below  
**ingenium** ability; nature;  
 character  
**ingēns, ingentis** huge  
**ingredior, ingredī, ingressus** go  
 into, enter, undertake  
**inhaereō, -ēre, -haesī, -haesum**  
 cling to  
**iniiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum** throw  
 in; inspire  
**inimicitia** enmity  
**inimicus** unfriendly, hostile;  
*m. as noun* enemy

**iniquus** unfair, unjust;  
 unfavorable  
**initium** beginning; (*of a country*)  
 borders  
**iniūria** injury, wrong,  
 wrongdoing  
**iniussū** (*in, "not" + iussū*)  
 without orders, without  
 authority; **iniussū Caesaris**  
 without Caesar's orders  
**innītor, -ī, innixus** lean upon  
**innocēns, -entis** innocent  
**innubus** unwedded  
**inopia** need, want, scarcity,  
 lack; poverty  
**inopināns, -antis** unaware, off  
 one's guard  
**inquam** I say; **inquis** you say;  
**inquit** he says  
**insciēns, -entis** ignorant  
**insequor, -ī, insecūtus** follow  
 up, pursue  
**insidiae, -ārum f. pl.** ambush,  
 trap; treachery  
**insiliō, -īre, -uī** leap on  
**insinuō** (1) penetrate  
**insistō, -ere, -stitī** stand firm;  
 follow, pursue  
**instar indec. n.** likeness; *used*  
*with gen. to mean* like  
**instīgō** (1) urge on, incite  
**instituō, -ere, -stitūī, -stitūtum**  
 draw up; train; build; begin;  
 establish  
**institutum** habit, custom  
**instō, -āre, -stitī** stand near;  
 press on  
**instrūmentum** tool; equipment  
**instruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum**  
 draw up  
**insuēfactus** trained, accustomed



<b>insuētus</b> unaccustomed	<b>intersum, -esse, -fuī</b> be between; be present at; <i>impers.</i> <b>interest</b> it concerns, it makes a differ- ence, it is important
<b>insula</b> island	<b>intervāllum</b> interval, distance
<b>integer, -gra, -grum</b> fresh, unimpaired; <b>dē integrō</b> anew	<b>intrā prep. + acc.</b> inside of, within
<b>intelligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum</b> understand, be aware, realize; perceive	<b>intrō</b> (1) enter, penetrate + <i>acc.</i>
<b>intendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum</b> turn, direct; stretch out, unfurl	<b>intrōdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum</b> lead into
<b>intentē adv.</b> intently	<b>introeō, -īre, -iī, -itum</b> enter
<b>inter prep. + acc.</b> between, among	<b>introitus, -ūs m.</b> entrance; approach
<b>intercēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum</b> go or come between; intervene	<b>intrōmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum</b> send in; let in
<b>intercipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum</b> interrupt; cut off; intercept	<b>intrōrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum</b> break in
<b>interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum</b> cut off	<b>intus adv.</b> within
<b>interdicō, -ere, -dixī, -dictum</b> prohibit, exclude	<b>inūsitātus</b> unusual, strange
<b>intereā adv.</b> meanwhile	<b>inūtilis, -e</b> useless
<b>intereō, -īre, -iī, -itum</b> perish, die	<b>inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum</b> come upon, find
<b>interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum</b> kill	<b>inventor, -ōris m.</b> inventor, author
<b>interim adv.</b> meanwhile	<b>inveterāscō, -ere, -veterāvī</b> grow old; become established
<b>interior</b> ( <i>super. intimus</i> ) inner; as <i>noun</i> <b>interiōrēs</b> the inhabi- tants of the interior	<b>invideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum</b> envy + <i>dat.</i>
<b>interitus, -ūs m.</b> destruction, death	<b>invidia</b> envy
<b>intermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum</b> intervene; let pass; interrupt	<b>invītō</b> (1) invite, summon; entice, allure, tempt
<b>interpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum</b> place between; <b>fidem inter- pōnere</b> to pledge one's word	<b>invītus</b> unwilling
<b>interpres, -pretis m.</b> interpreter	<b>invocō</b> (1) call upon, appeal to
<b>interpretor</b> (1) interpret, explain	<b>ipse, ipsa, ipsum</b> -self; very
<b>interrogō</b> (1) question, ask	<b>īra</b> anger, wrath
	<b>īrātus</b> angry, angry at + <i>dat.</i>
	<b>irritus</b> useless
	<b>irrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum</b> break into; storm
	<b>is, ea, id</b> he, she, it; that, this, the

**ita** so, in such a way; thus;  
**ita . . . ut** so . . . that  
**Ītalicus** Italian  
**Italus** an Italian  
**itaque conj.** therefore, and so  
**item adv.** also; likewise; in the  
     same manner  
**iter, itineris, n.** way, road;  
     march; **in itinere** on the  
     march; **iter facere** to march;  
     **iter mūnīre** to build a military  
     road  
**iterum adv.** again, a second time  
**iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum** order  
**iūcundē adv.** agreeably,  
     pleasantly  
**iūdex, iūdīcis m.** judge  
**iūdicium** judgment, opinion;  
     trial  
**iūdicō (1)** judge, decide  
**iugum** yoke; mountain ridge;  
     **sub iugum mittere** to send  
     under the yoke  
**iūmentum** beast of burden  
**iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūctum** join  
**Iūnō, Iūnōnis f.** Juno, sister and  
     wife of Jupiter and queen of the  
     gods  
**Iūnōnius adj.** of Juno  
**Iuppiter, Iovis m.** Jupiter, Jove  
**iūrō (1)** swear  
**iūs, iūris n.** right, law; power  
**iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī n.**  
     oath  
**iūstitia** justice  
**iūstus** right, lawful; (*with*  
     **fūnera**) appropriate  
**iuvenālīter adv.** in youthful  
     manner  
**iuvenis, -e** young; *m. as noun* a  
     young man

**iuventūs, -tūtis f.** age of youth;  
     the youth, young men  
**iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtum** help

## K

**Kal. = Kalendae, -ārum f. pl.**  
     the Calends, *first day of*  
     *Roman month*

## L

**L. abbreviation for Lūcius**  
**Labiēnus** Labienus, *one of*  
     *Caesar's generals*  
**lābor, -ī, lāpsus** slip, fall; **hāc**  
     **spē lāpsus** disappointed in  
     this hope  
**labor, -ōris m.** toil, hardship  
**labōrō (1)** toil, labor  
**labrum** lip, edge  
**lac, lactis n.** milk  
**lacertus** arm  
**laccessō, -ere, -īvī, -itum** harass,  
     attack  
**lacrima** tear  
**lacrimō (1)** weep  
**lacus, -ūs m.** lake  
**laedō, -ere, laesī, laesum** hurt,  
     damage  
**laetitia** joy  
**laetus** happy, joyful; **laetē adv.**  
     gladly  
**laevus** left (*on the left hand*)  
**lāna** wool  
**lancea** lance  
**languidus** weary  
**laniō (1)** tear, rend  
**lapis, lapidis m.** stone  
**largior, -īrī, -ītus** give freely;  
     bribe

lassus weary  
 lātē *adv.* widely; longē lātēque  
     far and wide  
 lateō, -ēre, latuī lie hidden  
 Latīnus Latin  
 lātītūdō, -inis *f.* width  
 latrō, -ōnis *m.* bandit, robber  
 latrōcinium robbery, brigandage  
 lātus broad, wide  
 latus, lateris *n.* side, flank; latus  
     apertum the exposed flank  
 laudō (1) praise  
 laus, laudis *f.* praise, glory  
 lea lioness  
 leaena lioness  
 Lebinthos, -ī, *f.* Lebinthos, *an*  
     island  
 lēgātiō, -ōnis *f.* embassy,  
     legation  
 lēgātus ambassador, envoy;  
     staff officer, general, officer  
 legiō, -ōnis *f.* legion  
 legiōnārius legionary  
 legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum pick,  
     gather, choose; read  
 lēnis, -e light, gentle  
 lēniter *adv.* gently, smoothly  
 leō, leōnis *m.* lion  
 lētum death, destruction  
 levis, -e light; slight  
 levō (1) lighten, relieve; raise  
 lēx, lēgis *f.* law  
 liber, librī *m.* book  
 liber, -era, -erum free; liberē  
     *adv.* freely  
 liberālis, -e generous  
 liberālitās, -tātis *f.* generosity  
 liberāliter *adv.* generously,  
     kindly  
 liberē *adv.* freely  
 liberī, -ōrum *m.* children

liberō (1) free, set free  
 libertās, -tātis *f.* freedom, liberty  
 libō (1) pour a libation; skim  
     over; taste  
 librō (1) poise, balance  
 licet, licēre, licuit *and* licitum est  
     it is permitted  
 lignātiō, -ōnis *f.* the getting of  
     wood  
 lignātor, -ōris *m.* woodcutter  
 lignum wood  
 limes, limitis *m.* course, path;  
     boundary  
 lingua tongue; language  
 liquidus liquid; flowing; clear;  
     pure  
 līs, lītis *f.* damages; lawsuit  
 littera letter of the alphabet; *pl.*  
     letters of the alphabet; dis-  
     patch, letter, epistle  
 lītus, litoris *n.* shore  
 locō (1) place, put  
 locuplētō (1) enrich  
 locus place; *pl.* loca, locōrum *n.*  
     district; climate; loca superi-  
     ōra higher ground; obsidum  
 locō as hostages  
 longē *adv.* far; by far; longē  
     lātēque far and wide  
 longinquus remote, distant  
 longitūdō, -inis *f.* length, extent  
 longus long, tall  
 loquor, loquī, locūtus speak  
 lucerna lamp  
 lūctus, -ūs *m.* grief, mourning  
 lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsum jest, play  
 lūdus game, play; school  
 Lugotorix, -igis *m.* Lugotorix, *a*  
     British chief  
 lūmen, -inis *n.* light; eye

**lūna** moon; *as proper name* The Moon (goddess)  
**lūsus, -ūs m.** play, sport  
**lūx, lūcis f.** light; day; **prīma lūx** dawn; **sub lūcem** just before dawn  
**lyristēs, -is m.** musician

## M

**M.** *abbreviation for Mārcus*  
**madeō, -ēre, -uī** drip, be moist  
**maereō, -ēre** be sorrowful, be sad  
**maeror, -ōris m.** sorrow  
**maestus** sad  
**magis** *see magnopere*  
**magister, -tri m.** master; **magister equitum** master of horse  
**magistrātus, -ūs m.** magistracy; magistrate  
**magnificus** splendid, magnificent  
**magnitūdō, -inis f.** greatness, extent; **magnitūdō corporis** stature  
**magnopere** *adv.* greatly; **magis** more; **maximē** most; especially  
**magnus (maior, maximus)** great, large; **magnis itineribus** by forced marches; **maiōrēs** ancestors; **maiōrēs nātū** elders  
**Maharbal, -alis m.** Maharbal, a Carthaginian officer  
**maior** *see magnus*  
**male (peius, pessimē)** *adv.* badly  
**mālō, mälle, mālūī** prefer  
**mālum** apple  
**malum** evil, misfortune  
**malus (peior, pessimus)** bad  
**mālus, -ī f.** apple tree  
**mandātum** command, order

**mandō (1)** commit, entrust; order, command  
**māne** *adv.* in the morning, early  
**maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum** stay, remain  
**manifestus** clear, plain  
**mānsuēfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum** tame  
**manus, -ūs f.** hand; a band (*of troops*); **manūs dare** to yield  
**mare, maris n.** sea  
**margō, -inis m.** margin, edge  
**maritimus** of the sea, maritime  
**marītus** husband  
**marmoreus** *adj.* marble  
**Mārs, Mārtis m.** Mars, god of war  
**mās, maris** *adj.* male; *as noun* a male  
**Massilia** Massilia, now Marseilles  
**māter, mātris f.** mother  
**māteria** timber, wood; trees  
**mātrimōnium** marriage; in **mātrimōnium dūcere** to marry  
**Matrona** the Marne River  
**mātrōna** married woman, wife  
**mātrōnālis, -e** womanly  
**mātūrus** ripe; early  
**maximē** *see magnopere*  
**maximus** *see magnus*  
**medeor, -ērī** cure, remedy  
**medicus** doctor  
**mediocris, -e** moderate, ordinary  
**Mediōlānum** Milan  
**mediterrāneus** inland  
**meditor (1)** think of, ponder; take thought  
**medius** mid-, middle of  
**Megarēius** *adj.* descended from Megareus



**Megareus** Megareus, *father of Hippomenes*  
**mel, mellis** *n.* honey  
**melior** *see* bonus  
**melius** *see* bene  
**membrum** limb  
**meminī, meminisse** remember  
**memor, memoris** mindful of + *gen.*  
**memorābilis, -e** memorable  
**memoria** memory; **memoriam** *dēpōnere* to forget + *gen.*; *memoriam retinēre* to remember + *gen.*  
**mēns, mentis** *f.* mind, heart  
**mēnsis, mēnsis** *m.* month  
**mēnsor, -ōris** *m.* surveyor  
**mēnsūra** measurement  
**mentior, -īrī, -itus** lie, tell a lie  
**mercātor, -ōris** *m.* trader, merchant  
**mercātūra** trade  
**Mercurius** Mercury  
**mereō, -ēre, meruī, meritum** deserve, merit  
**mereor, merērī, meritus** deserve, earn  
**mergō, -ere, mersī, mersum** immerse; *pass.* dive  
**meridiānus** *adj.* of noon  
**meridiēs, -diēi** *m.* noon, midday  
**meritum** merit, kindness  
**mēta** goal; end; turning point  
**metō, -ere, messuī, messum** reap  
**metuō, -ere, -uī** fear  
**metus, -ūs** *m.* fear; **metū** *territāre* to terrify  
**meus** my, mine  
**migrō** (1) migrate  
**mīles, mīlitis** *m.* soldier  
**mīlitia** military service

**mīlle indecl. adj.** one thousand (*pl. mīlia, mīlium neut. noun*);  
**mīlle passūs** one mile; **duo mīlia passuum** two miles  
**Minerva** Minerva, *goddess of wisdom*  
**minimē** *adv.* by no means, not at all; *see* **parum**  
**minimus** *see* **parvus**  
**minor** *see* **parvus**  
**Mīnōs, Mīnōis** *m.* Minos, *king of Crete*  
**minuō, -ere, minuī, minūtum** lessen; *contrōversiās minuere* to settle disputes  
**minus** *see* **parum**  
**mīrābilis, -e** wonderful  
**mīrāculum** wonder, marvel  
**mīror** (1) wonder, wonder at  
**mīrus** wonderful; **mīrum in modum** in a surprising manner  
**misceō, -ēre, miscuī, mixtum** mix, mingle  
**miser, -era, -erum** wretched  
**miserābilis, -e** helpless, pitiable  
**miserandus** pitiable, hapless  
**miser cordia** pity; sympathy  
**miseror** (1) bewail, deplore  
**missū** *abl. sing. only* a sending; **missū Caesaris** sent by Caesar  
**mītis, -e** gentle, mild  
**mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum** send; throw  
**mōbilitās, -tātis** *f.* speed  
**moderor** (1) control, manage  
**modicus** moderate, small  
**modo** *adv.* only; even; recently  
**modus** measure; manner; size; **quem ad modum** how  
**moenia, -ium** *n. pl.* fortifications; walls  
**molliō** (4) soften

mollis, -e soft, tender  
 Mona Mona (*Isle of Man*)  
 moneō, -ēre, monuī, monitum  
     warn; advise  
 monitus, -ūs *m.* advice  
 mōns, montis *m.* mountain  
 mōnstrō (1) show, point out  
 mōnstrum monster; portent  
 monumentum memorial  
 mora delay  
 morbus disease  
 morior, morī, mortuus sum  
     (*ful. part. moritūrus*) die  
 moror (1) delay  
 mōrōsus ill-tempered  
 mors, mortis *f.* death  
 morsus, -ūs *m.* bite; fangs  
 mortālis, -e mortal  
 mōrus, -ī *f.* mulberry tree  
 mōs, mōris *m.* manner, habit,  
     custom; suō mōre after the  
     manner of their nation  
 Mosa the Meuse River  
 mōtus, -ūs *m.* motion,  
     movement; revolt, uprising  
 moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum move  
 mox *adv.* soon, presently  
 mūcrō, -ōnis *m.* point; sword  
 mulier, -eris *f.* woman  
 multitudō, -inis *f.* great number,  
     multitude, crowd; the common  
     people, the populace  
 multō *adv.* much, by much  
 multum (plūs, plūrimum) *adv.*  
     much  
 multus (plūs, plūrimus) much;  
     *pl.* many  
 mundus universe, world  
 mūniceps, -cipis *m.* fellow  
     townsman  
 mūniō (4) fortify; build  
 mūnitiō, -ōnis *f.* fortification

mūnus, mūneris *n.* duty, service;  
     gift  
 murmur, -uris *n.* whispering;  
     roar  
 mūrus wall  
 Mūsa a Muse  
 mūtō (1) change, turn  
 mūtus silent, speechless

## N

Nāis, Nāidis *f.* Naiad, water  
     nymph  
 nam *conj.* for  
 namque *conj.* for  
 nanciscor, -ī, nactus obtain, get  
 nārrō (1) tell, narrate  
 nāscor, -ī, nātus be born  
 nātālis, -e pertaining to birth;  
     diēs nātālis birthday  
 nātiō, -ōnis *f.* tribe, nation  
 natō (1) swim  
 nātūra nature; shape  
 nātus *part. of nāscor* born; as  
     *noun* nātus son, nāta daughter  
 nauta, -ae *m.* sailor  
 nāvālis, -e naval  
 nāvigātiō, -ōnis *f.* sailing; voyage  
 nāvigium boat  
 nāvigō (1) sail  
 nāvis, -is *f.* ship; nāvis longa  
     warship; nāvis onerāria  
     transport; nāvem (nāvēs)  
     cōnscendere to go on board;  
     nāvem (nāvēs) solvere to  
     set sail  
 nē that... not; in order that  
     ... not, lest; *after verb of*  
     *fearing* that; nē... quidem  
     not even  
 -ne introduces a question;  
     whether

<b>nebula</b> mist, fog	<b>nōbilis</b> , -e noble; <i>as noun</i> a noble
<b>nec</b> <i>see neque</i>	<b>nōbilitās</b> , -tātis <i>f.</i> nobility; noble
<b>necdum</b> <i>adv.</i> not yet	birth
<b>necessāriō</b> <i>adv.</i> unavoidably	<b>nocēns</b> , -entis harmful, guilty
<b>necesse</b> <i>indec. adj.</i> necessary;	<b>noceō</b> , -ēre, <b>nocuī</b> , <b>nocitum</b>
unavoidable	injure
<b>necessitās</b> , -tātis <i>f.</i> necessity,	<b>noctū</b> <i>adv.</i> by night
need	<b>nocturnus</b> <i>adj.</i> at night, of night,
<b>necō</b> (1) kill	nightly
<b>neglegō</b> , -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum	<b>nōdus</b> knot, joint
disregard, neglect	<b>nōlō</b> , <b>nōlle</b> , <b>nōluī</b> be unwilling,
<b>negō</b> (1) deny, say . . . not;	not wish
refuse	<b>nōmen</b> , -inis <i>n.</i> name; reputa-
<b>negōtium</b> concern, business,	tion; account
affair; <b>nihil negōtī</b> no difficulty	<b>nōminō</b> (1) name; call by name
<b>nēmō</b> , <b>nūllius</b> <i>m.</i> no one, nobody	<b>nōn</b> <i>adv.</i> not, no
<b>Neptūnius</b> <i>adj.</i> of Neptune	<b>nōnāgintā</b> ninety
<b>nēquāquam</b> <i>adv.</i> in no way, by	<b>nōndum</b> <i>adv.</i> not yet
no means	<b>nōnne</b> <i>interr. particle</i> inviting an
<b>neque</b> ( <b>nec</b> ) <i>conj.</i> nor, and not;	<i>affirmative answer</i>
but not; <b>neque . . . neque</b>	<b>nōnnūllī</b> , -ae, -a some
neither . . . nor	<b>nōnnumquam</b> <i>adv.</i> sometimes
<b>nervus</b> string ( <i>of instrument</i> )	<b>nōnus</b> ninth
<b>nesciō</b> (4) not know, be ignorant	<b>nōscō</b> , -ere, <b>nōvī</b> , <b>nōtum</b> become
of	acquainted with, learn; <i>perf.</i>
<b>neuter</b> , -tra, -trum neither	know
<b>nēve</b> ( <b>neu</b> ) <i>conj.</i> and not, nor	<b>noster</b> , -tra, -trum <i>our; m. pl. as</i>
<b>nex</b> , <b>necis</b> <i>f.</i> death; execution	<i>noun</i> our men, our troops
<b>nīdus</b> nest	<b>notārius</b> secretary
<b>nihil</b> ( <b>nīl</b> ) <i>indec. neut.</i> nothing	<b>nōtitia</b> knowledge; acquaintance
<b>nihilō</b> <i>adv. with comparatives</i> by	<b>notō</b> (1) mark
nothing, no; <b>nihilō minus</b> and	<b>nōtus</b> known
<b>nihilō sētius</b> nevertheless	<b>novem</b> nine
<b>nimbus</b> thundercloud; rainstorm	<b>novō</b> (1) change; make new
<b>nimius</b> excessive; headstrong	<b>novus</b> new, strange; recent; <b>rēs</b>
<b>nisi</b> <i>conj.</i> unless, if not, except	<b>novae</b> <i>f. pl.</i> change of govern-
<b>nitidus</b> bright, shining	ment, revolution; <b>novissimus</b>
<b>nītor</b> , <b>nīti</b> , <b>nīxus</b> or <b>nīsus</b> strive	latest; last
<b>nivālis</b> , -e snowy	<b>nox</b> , <b>noctis</b> <i>f.</i> night; <b>media nox</b>
<b>niveus</b> snowy	midnight; <b>sub noctem</b> at
<b>nix</b> , <b>nivis</b> <i>f.</i> snow	nightfall

noxia crime, offense  
 nūbēs, -is *f.* cloud  
 nūdō (1) strip, expose  
 nūdus naked  
 nūllus no, none  
 num *interr. particle* inviting a  
     *negative answer*; if, whether  
 nūmen, -inis *n.* divinity; divine  
     will  
 numerus number; account;  
     estimation  
 Numidae, -ārum *m. pl.*  
     Numidians  
 numquam *adv.* never  
 nunc *adv.* now  
 nūntiō (1) announce  
 nūntius messenger; message  
 nūpta bride; wife  
 nūptiae, -ārum *f. pl.* marriage  
 nurus, -ūs *f.* daughter-in-law;  
     woman  
 nūtus, -ūs *m.* nod; *ad* nūtum at  
     one's command

O

ob *prep.* + *acc.* on account of  
 obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum throw  
     against; place in front; expose  
 oblinō, -ere, -lēvī, -litum defile,  
     besmear  
 obliquus sideways  
 oblītus forgetful of + *gen.*  
 obscurus dark; unknown;  
     disguised  
 observō (1) observe; regard;  
     comply with, obey  
 obses, obsidis *m. and f.* hostage  
 obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum  
     besiege; blockade  
 obsidiō, -ōnis *f.* siege; blockade

obstinātē *adv.* firmly, resolutely  
 obstipēscō, -ere, -stipui be  
     amazed  
 obstruō, -ere, -struxī, -strūctum  
     block up, barricade  
 obtemperō (1) obey + *dat.*  
 obtestor (1) call to witness,  
     entreat  
 obtineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentum  
     hold, possess; acquire  
 obtrectātiō, -ōnis *f.* detraction,  
     disparagement  
 obviam *adv.* in the way of;  
     toward, against; *obviam ire* to  
     go to meet + *dat.*  
 occāsiō, -ōnis *f.* opportunity  
 occāsus, -ūs *m.* setting; *occāsus*  
     sōlis sunset; the west  
 occidō, -ere, occidī, occāsum  
     fall; set (*of sun*); perish;  
     occidēns sōl the west  
 occidō, -ere, occidī, occisum kill;  
     cut down  
 occultō (1) hide; keep secret  
 occultus covered, concealed;  
     secret  
 occupātus in + *abl.* busy in or  
     with  
 occupō (1) seize; occupy; keep  
     busy  
 occurrō, -ere, -curri, -cursum  
     run to meet, meet + *dat.*  
 Ōceanus the Ocean  
 octāvus eighth  
 octingenti, -ae, -a eight hundred  
 octō eight  
 octōdecim eighteen  
 octōgintā eighty  
 oculus eye  
 ōdī, ōdisse hate  
 odium hatred, hate



**odōrātus** fragrant  
**offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum**  
 offer, present; *sē offerre* to  
 confront  
**officium** duty, service  
**oleum** oil, olive oil  
**ōlim** *adv.* formerly; of old  
**ōmen, ōminis** *n.* omen, portent  
**omittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum** let  
 slip; lose touch with  
**omnīnō** *adv.* altogether; *with*  
*negatives* at all; *with numerals*  
 in all, only  
**omnis, -e** all, all of  
**Onchēstius** *adj.* of Onchestus, a  
 city in Boeotia  
**onerārius** fitted for burdens;  
*nāvis onerāria* transport  
**onerō** (1) load; burden  
**onus, oneris** *n.* load, burden;  
 weight  
**opācus** shady  
**opera** work; **operam dare** to pay  
 heed; take pains  
**opifex, opificis** *m. and f.*  
 craftsman  
**opīniō, -ōnis** *f.* opinion; belief;  
 impression  
**oportet, oportēre, oportuit** *im-*  
*pers.* it is necessary, one must  
**oppidum** town  
**opportūnē** *adv.* opportunely, at  
 the right time  
**opportūnus** fit, opportune,  
 favorable  
**opprimō, -ere, oppressī,**  
 oppressum oppress; overpower  
**oppugnātiō, -ōnis** *f.* attack,  
 assault  
**oppugnō** (1) attack, assault  
 (ops), **opis** *f.* help, aid; *pl.* re-  
 sources, wealth, treasures

**optimē** *see bene*  
**optimus** *see bonus*  
**optō** (1) wish, wish for  
**opulentus** rich, wealthy  
**opus, operis** *n.* work, task;  
*nātūrā et opere* by nature and  
 art  
**opus** *indec. noun* need, necessity;  
*opus est* there is need + *abl.*  
**opusculum** a little work  
**ōra** shore, coast  
**ōrāculum** oracle  
**ōrātiō, -ōnis** *f.* speech; **ōrātiōnem**  
*habēre* to deliver a speech  
**ōrātor, -ōris** *m.* orator  
**orbis, orbis** *m.* ring, circle; **orbis**  
*terrae or terrārum* the world  
**Orcus** Orcus, the abode of the  
 dead, the Underworld  
**Orcynia** Orcynia, *same as*  
*Hercynia silva*  
**ōrdō, ōrdinis** *m.* row, rank  
**Oriēns, Orientis** *m.* the East  
**Ōriōn, Ōrionis** *m.* Orion, a  
*constellation*  
**orior, orirī, ortus** arise, rise;  
*oriēns sōl* sunrise, the east  
**ōrnātus** adorned  
**ōrō** (1) beg, pray  
**Orpheus** Orpheus, *the famous*  
*musician*  
**ōs, ōris** *n.* mouth; face  
**ōsculum** kiss  
**ostendō, -ere, ostendī, ostentum**  
*or ostēnsu* show  
**ostentō** (1) show, point out  
**ōstium** mouth, entrance

P

**P.** *abbreviation for Pūblius*  
**pābulātor, -ōris** *m.* forager  
**pābulor** (1) forage

**pacīscor, -ī, pactus** agree upon;  
**pactus** settled, fixed  
**pācō** (1) **pacify; pācātus**  
 peaceful  
**pactum** bargain, compact  
**Padus** the Po River in northern  
*Italy*  
**paene** *adv.* nearly, almost  
**pāgus** village; district  
**palam** *adv.* openly, publicly  
**pallidus** pale  
**palma** palm, prize  
**palūs, palūdis** *f.* marsh  
**pānis, pānis** *m.* bread  
**pār, paris** equal; **pār atque** the  
 same as  
**parcō, -ere, pepercī or parsī,**  
**parsum** spare + *dat.*  
**parcus** sparing  
**parēns, parentis** *m. and f.* parent  
**pāreō, -ēre, pārui, pāritum**  
 obey + *dat.*  
**pariēs, parietis** *m.* wall (of a  
*house*)  
**pariō, parere, peperī, partum**  
 acquire, win  
**pariter** *adv.* equally, alike; side  
 by side  
**parō** (1) prepare; **parātus** ready,  
 prepared  
**Paros, -ī** *f.* Paros, an island  
**pars, partis** *f.* part; direction;  
 side  
**partim** *adv.* partly; **partim . . .**  
**partim** some . . . others  
**parum** (minus, minimē) *adv.*  
 little; too little  
**parvulus** small, insignificant  
**parvus** (minor, minimus) small;  
 young  
**passus, -ūs** *m.* pace; **mille passūs**  
 one mile

**pāstor, -ōris** *m.* shepherd  
**pateō, -ēre, -ui** lie open; extend  
**pater, patris** *m.* father; **pater**  
**familiae** head of a family;  
**patrēs cōscriptī** senators  
**paternus** *adj.* of a father  
**patientia** endurance, patience  
**patior, patī, passus** allow; suffer,  
 endure  
**patria** fatherland, country; home  
**patrius** *adj.* of a father  
**patrōnus** patron  
**paucī, -ae, -a** few  
**paucitās, -tātis** *f.* small number  
**paulātim** *adv.* gradually  
**paulisper** *adv.* for a little while  
**paulō** *adv.* a little, slightly  
**paulum** *adv.* a little, a short  
 distance, somewhat  
**pauper, pauperis** poor; as *noun*  
 poor man  
**pavidus** frightened, anxious  
**pāx, pācis** *f.* peace  
**pectus, pectoris** *n.* breast; heart  
**pecūnia** money  
**pecus, pecoris** *n.* cattle, herd  
**pedes, peditis** *m.* foot soldier; *pl.*  
 infantry  
**pedester, -tris, -tre** on foot, of  
 the infantry; **pedestrēs cōpiae**  
 infantry forces  
**peditātus, -ūs** *m.* infantry  
**peior** see **malus**  
**peius** see **male**  
**pelagus, -ī** *n.* the open sea  
**pellis, -is** *f.* hide, skin  
**pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum** drive;  
 defeat; strike  
**pendeō, -ēre, pependī** hang  
**pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsu**  
 weigh; pay; **poenās pendere**  
 to suffer punishment

**penna** feather  
**per** *prep.* + *acc.* through; by  
**peragō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum** lead through, complete  
**peragrō** (1) pass through, travel through  
**percipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum** feel; hear; catch, take hold on; learn; gain, obtain  
**percontātiō, -ōnis f.** inquiring, inquiry  
**percurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursum** run over  
**percutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussum** thrust through, pierce; strike; slay  
**perdiscō, -ere, -didicī** learn thoroughly  
**perdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum** destroy, ruin  
**perducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum** lead through; bring over  
**peregrīnus** wandering; foreign; *m. as noun* a foreigner  
**perendinus** *adj.* after tomorrow  
**pereō, -īre, -iī, -itum** perish  
**perequitō** (1) ride through or around  
**perexiguus** very small  
**perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātum** bear through; endure; report  
**perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum** complete, accomplish, bring to an end  
**perfrigidus** very cold  
**perfuga, -ae m.** deserter  
**perfugiō, -ere, -fūgī** flee; take refuge  
**periculōsus** dangerous

**periculum (perīclum)** danger, **magnō cum periculō** at great risk; **periculum facere** to run a risk, to make an attempt  
**perimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptum** kill, destroy  
**perītus** experienced, skilled + *gen.*  
**perlegō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum** read through; read  
**permaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsūm** remain  
**permātūrēscō, -ere, -mātūrui** become thoroughly ripe  
**permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum** entrust  
**permoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum** arouse, incite; influence  
**perōdī, perōdisse, perōsus** sum hate utterly  
**perpauci, -ae, -a** very few  
**perpetuus** uninterrupted, continual; **in perpetuum** forever  
**perplexē** *adv.* obscurely  
**perrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum** break through  
**Persae, -ārum m.** Persians  
**perscribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptum** write out; report; describe  
**Persephonē, -ēs f.** Persephone, Proserpina  
**persequor, -ī, -secūtus** follow, pursue  
**persevērō** (1) persevere, persist, continue  
**perspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum** see through, perceive, learn  
**persuadeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsūm** persuade

perterreō, -ēre, -terruī, -territum  
     terrify  
 pertinācia obstinacy,  
     stubbornness  
 pertineō, -ēre, -tinuī extend;  
     concern  
 perturbātiō, -ōnis *f.* disorder,  
     confusion  
 perturbō (1) disturb greatly,  
     confuse, throw into disorder;  
     alarm  
 perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum  
     reach, come to, arrive at  
 pēs, pedis *m.* foot; pedem  
     referre to retreat  
 pessimē *see* male  
 pessimus *see* malus  
 petō, -ere, petivī, petītum seek;  
     make for  
 philosophus philosopher  
 pietās, pietātis *f.* devotion,  
     loyalty  
 pīlum heavy javelin, pike; pīlum  
     mittere to hurl a javelin  
 Pīsaie, -ārum *f. pl.* Pisa, a city of  
     Etruria  
 piscis, -is *m.* fish  
 piscor (1) fish  
 placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum please +  
     *dat.*; *impers.* placet it pleases,  
     it seems good, it is decided  
 placidus peaceful, mild  
 plācō (1) appease  
 plangor, -ōris *m.* lamentation;  
     blows of grief  
 plānus even, level, flat  
 plausus, -ūs *m.* applause  
 plēbs, plēbis *or* plēbēs, plēbēi *f.*  
     the common people  
 plēnus full

plērique, plēraeque, plēraque  
     very many; *as noun* a great  
     many  
 plērumque mostly; very often  
 plūma feather  
 plumbum lead; plumbum album  
     tin  
 plūrēs *see* multus  
 plūrimum *see* multum  
 plūrimus *see* multus  
 plūs *see* multus *and* multum  
 Plūtō, -ōnis *m.* Pluto, ruler of the  
     Underworld  
 pōculum cup  
 poena penalty, punishment;  
     poenās dare to pay the penalty  
 Poenus, -a, -um Carthaginian;  
     Poenus a Carthaginian  
 poēticus poetic  
 pollex, pollicis *m.* thumb  
 pollicitātiō, -ōnis *f.* promise  
 polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus promise  
 pōmum fruit, apple  
 pondus, ponderis *n.* weight  
 pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum put,  
     place  
 pōns, pontis *m.* bridge  
 pontus sea; ocean  
 populor (1) devastate, ravage  
 populus people, nation  
 porrigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum  
     stretch out, extend  
 porrō *adv.* farther on; further-  
     more  
 porta gate  
 porticus, -ūs *f.* colonnade;  
     portico  
 portō (1) carry  
 portus, -ūs *m.* harbor, port  
 poscō, -ere, poposci demand



<b>possessiō, -ōnis f.</b> possession; occupation	<b>praecō, -ōnis m.</b> herald
<b>possideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum</b> hold, possess	<b>praeda</b> plunder
<b>possum, posse, potuī</b> can, be able	<b>praedicō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictum</b> foretell, predict
<b>post</b> <i>prep.</i> + <i>acc.</i> after; <i>adv.</i> later, afterward	<b>praedicō</b> (1) declare, report, announce
<b>postea</b> <i>adv.</i> afterward	<b>praedium</b> estate
<b>posteaquam</b> <i>conj.</i> afterward	<b>praedor</b> (1) plunder, rob, carry off
<b>posterior</b> <i>see</i> <b>posterus</b>	<b>praefectus</b> officer, captain
<b>posterus</b> ( <b>posterior, postrēmus</b> <i>or</i> <b>postumus</b> ) following	<b>praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum</b> prefer
<b>postpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum</b> postpone; disregard	<b>praefficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum</b> put in charge of + <i>acc. and dat.</i>
<b>postquam</b> <i>conj.</i> after	<b>praefigō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum</b> fix <i>or</i> set in front
<b>postrēmō</b> <i>adv.</i> finally, at last	<b>praegredior, -ī, -gressus</b> precede, go before
<b>postrēmus, postumus</b> <i>see</i> <b>posterus</b>	<b>praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum</b> send in advance
<b>postridiē</b> <i>adv.</i> the next day	<b>praemium</b> reward
<b>postulō</b> (1) demand	<b>praeparō</b> (1) provide, prepare beforehand
<b>potēns, -entis</b> powerful	<b>praesēns, praesentis</b> present, at hand
<b>potenter</b> <i>adv.</i> powerfully	<b>praesentia</b> presence; the present moment; in <b>praesentiā</b> for the present
<b>potentia</b> power; authority	<b>praesentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsu</b> foresee
<b>potestās, -tātis f.</b> power; oppor- tunity; <b>potestātem facere</b> to grant permission, to give an opportunity	<b>praesertim</b> <i>adv.</i> especially
<b>potior, potirī, potitus</b> gain posses- sion of, obtain + <i>abl.</i>	<b>praesidium</b> garrison
<b>praecēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum</b> go before; surpass	<b>praestāns, -antis</b> surpassing, distinguished
<b>praeceps, -cipitis</b> headlong	<b>praestō</b> <i>adv.</i> at hand; <b>praestō</b> <b>esse</b> to meet + <i>dat.</i>
<b>praeceptor, -ōris m.</b> teacher, instructor	<b>praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stitum</b> <i>or</i> <b>stātum</b> be superior to; surpass; do, perform; <b>praestat</b> it is better
<b>praeceptum</b> instruction, command	<b>praesum, -esse, -fuī</b> be in com- mand of + <i>dat.</i>
<b>praecipio, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum</b> anticipate; order, give instructions	
<b>praecipitō</b> (1) throw headlong	
<b>praecūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum</b> block up; close	

**praeter** *prep.* + *acc.* past;  
 beyond; except  
**praetereā** *adv.* besides  
**praetereō, -īre, -iī, -itum** *pass;*  
 outstrip; escape  
**praetextātus** *adj.* wearing the  
 toga of youth  
**praetor, -ōris** *m.* praetor  
**precēs, -um** *f. pl.* prayers,  
 entreaties  
**precor** (1) pray; implore, entreat  
**premō, -ere, pressī, pressum**  
 press; harass; **graviter premi**  
 to be hard pressed  
**prēndō, -ere, prēndī, prēnsum**  
 seize; grasp  
**pretiōsus** valuable, precious  
**pretium** price, reward  
**prīdiē** *adv.* on the day before  
**prīma lūx, prīmae lūcis** *f.* dawn,  
 daybreak  
**prīmō** *adv.* at first, in the first  
 place  
**prīmum** *adv.* first, in the first  
 place; **quam prīmum** as soon  
 as possible  
**prīmus** first; **in prīmīs** especially;  
**prīmum vēr** the beginning of  
 spring  
**prīnceps, -cipis** first; *m. as noun*  
 leader, chief man, chief  
**prīncipātus, -ūs** *m.* leadership  
**prior, priōris** former; **priōrēs,**  
**-um** *m. pl.* our fathers  
**prīscus** former, ancient  
**prīstinus** former, previous  
**prius** *adv.* before, formerly; first  
**prīvātīm** *adv.* in private,  
 privately  
**prīvātus** private, personal; *m. as*  
*noun* private citizen; person  
**priusquam** *conj.* before

**prō** *prep.* + *abl.* before, in front  
 of; for, in behalf of; in place of;  
 in return for  
**probō** (1) approve; prove  
**prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum**  
 advance, proceed  
**procella** gale; onset; violence  
**procul** *adv.* at a distance  
**prōcumbō, -ere, -cubui,**  
**-cubitum** lean forward; lie  
 down; sink down  
**prōcūrō** (1) attend to; take care  
 of  
**prōcurrō, -ere, -curri, -cursum**  
 rush forward; charge  
**procus** suitor  
**prōdeō, -īre, -iī, -itum** go  
 forward; advance  
**prōdigium** omen, portent  
**prōditor, -ōris** *m.* traitor  
**prōdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum** hand  
 down, betray  
**prōdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum**  
 lead out; prolong  
**proelior** (1) fight  
**proelium** battle; **proelium**  
 committere to join battle;  
**proelium facere** to fight a  
 battle  
**profectiō, -ōnis** *f.* setting out,  
 departure  
**proficīscor, -ī, profectus** set out;  
 depart  
**profiteor, -ērī, professus** admit;  
 declare  
**profugiō, -ere, -fūgī** flee, flee  
 from  
**prōgnātus** born; descended  
**prōgredior, -ī, -gressus** advance,  
 proceed  
**prohibeō, -ēre, -hibui, -hibitum**  
 prevent; protect

**prōiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum**  
 throw, throw forward; **sē**  
**prōicere** to jump  
**proinde** *adv.* hence, therefore  
**prōlābor, -ī, -lāpsus** fall forward,  
 fall down  
**prōlēs, -is** *f.* child, offspring; race  
**prōmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum**  
 let go forward; let grow (*of the*  
*hair*); promise  
**prōmunturium** promontory, spur  
**pronepōs, -nepōtis** *m.* great-  
 grandson  
**prōnūntiō** (1) announce, report  
**prōnus** leaning forward, flat  
**prope, propius** *prep. + acc.*  
 near, nearer; **prope** *adv.*  
 nearly, almost; **propius** *adv.*  
 nearer, almost  
**prōpellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum**  
 dislodge, drive off  
**properātus** rapid, quick  
**properō** (1) hasten  
**propinquitās, -tātis** *f.* nearness;  
 relationship  
**propinquus** near, near at hand;  
*m. as noun* relative  
**propior, -ius** *adj.* nearer;  
**proximus** nearest, next  
**prōpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum**  
 put forward; relate  
**proprius** one's own  
**propter** *prep. + acc.* on account  
 of  
**propterea** *adv.* on this account;  
**propterea quod** because  
**prōpugnō** (1) defend; attack  
**prōpulsō** (1) repel; ward off  
**prōsequor, -ī, -secūtus** pursue  
**Prōserpina** Proserpina, *daughter*  
*of Ceres and Jupiter*

**prōspectus, -ūs** *m.* view; sight  
**prōsperus** fortunate, favorable  
**prōspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum**  
 look out; watch; provide for  
**prōtegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctum**  
 cover; protect, defend  
**prōtinus** *adv.* immediately  
**prōvehō, -ere, -vēxī, -vectum**  
 carry forward  
**prōveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum**  
 come forth, yield (*of grain*)  
**prōvideō, -ēre, -vidī, -vīsum**  
 foresee; provide for  
**prōvincia** province; **Prōvincia**  
 The Province (*southern Gaul*)  
**prōvinciālēs, -ium** *m. pl.*  
 provincials  
**prōvolō** (1) rush forth; rush out  
**proximē** *adv.* last; recently; most  
 recently  
**proximus** nearest, next; previous  
**prūdēns, -entis** wise, foreseeing  
**prūdenter** *adv.* wisely  
**prūdētia** prudence, good sense  
**pruinōsus** frosty  
**Prūsias, -ae** *m.* Prusias, *king of*  
*Bithynia*  
**Psychē, -ēs** *f.* Psyche  
**pūbēs, pūberis** *adj.* grown up; *pl.*  
*as noun* adults  
**pūblicē** *adv.* publicly  
**pūblicus** of the state; public;  
**rēs pūblica** the state  
**pudicē** *adv.* modestly  
**pudor, -ōris** *m.* shame; modesty  
**puella** girl  
**puellāris, -e** girlish; youthful  
**puer, puerī** *m.* boy  
**puerilis, -e** boyish, childish  
**pugillārēs, -ium** *m. pl.* writing  
 tablets

pugna battle  
 pugnō (1) fight  
 pulcher, -chra, -chrum beautiful;  
 pulchrē *adv.* beautifully  
 pulchritūdō, -inis *f.* beauty  
 pullus dark-colored  
 pulsō (1) beat, strike upon  
 pulvis, pulveris *m.* dust; cloud of  
 dust  
 Pūnicus Carthaginian  
 pūniō (4) punish  
 putō (1) think, believe  
 Pŷrēnaeus *adj.* of the Pyrenees;  
 Pŷrēnaei Montēs the  
 Pyrenees Mountains  
 pyxis, pyxidis *f.* box

## Q

Q. *abbreviation for Quīntus*  
 quā *adv.* where; by which route  
 quā dē causā for what reason,  
 why  
 quadrāgintā forty  
 quadringentī, -ae, -a four  
 hundred  
 quaerō, -ere, quaesivī,  
 quaesitum ask, enquire; seek  
 quaestiō, -ōnis *f.* inquiry,  
 investigation  
 quaestor, -ōris *m.* quaestor,  
 paymaster  
 quaestus, -ūs *m.* gain,  
 acquisition  
 quālis, -e *adj.* of what sort  
 quam *adv.* how; as  
 quamdiū *conj.* as long as, while  
 quam ob rem why  
 quamquam *conj.* although  
 quamvis *adv.* even though  
 quandō *adv.* when

quantus how great; quantō . . .  
 tantō the . . . the; quantum  
 how much  
 quantusvis, quantavis,  
 quantumvis however great  
 quārē *adv.* why  
 quārtus fourth  
 quasi *conj.* as if  
 quatiō, quater, quassum shake;  
 brandish  
 quattuor four  
 quattuordecim fourteen  
 -que *enclitic conj.* and  
 queror, -ī, questus complain  
 quī, qua (quae), quod *indef. adj.*  
 any  
 quī, quae, quod *rel. pron.* who,  
 which, that  
 quī, quae, quod *interr. adj.* what?  
 which?  
 quia *conj.* because  
 quibus dē causis for what  
 reasons  
 quicumque, quaecumque,  
 quodcumque *indef. relative*  
*pron. and adj.* whoever,  
 whatever  
 quid *interr. adv.* why?  
 quīdam, quaedam, quiddam  
 (*pron.*) or quoddam (*adj.*)  
*indef.* a certain, a certain one  
 quidem *adv.* at least; nē . . .  
 quidem not . . . even  
 quiēs, quiētis *f.* rest, repose;  
 sleep  
 quiētus peaceful, calm  
 quīndecim fifteen  
 quīngentī, -ae, -a five hundred  
 quīnquāgintā fifty  
 quīnque five  
 quīntus fifth



**quippe** *conj.* doubtless, indeed  
**quis? quid?** *interr. pron.* who?  
 what?  
**quis, quid,** *indef. pron.* anyone,  
 anything, someone, something  
**quispiam, quaequam, quodpiam**  
 anyone, any  
**quisquam, quidquam**  
 (*quicquam*) *indef. pron.*  
 anyone, anything  
**quisque, quidque** *indef. pron.*  
 each one, each  
**quisquis, quidquid** *indef. pron.*  
 whoever, whatever  
**quō** *adv.* whither, to which place;  
**quō** *conj.* with a comparative in  
 order that  
**quoad** *conj.* as long as; until  
**quod** *conj.* because, as to the fact  
 that, the fact that; **quod sī** but  
 if  
**quōminus** *conj.* so that . . . not  
**quōmodo** *adv.* how, in what  
 manner  
**quoniam** *conj.* since, because  
**quoque** also, too  
**quot** *indec. adj.* how many  
**quotannis** *adv.* yearly, annually  
**quotiēns** *adv.* how often; as often  
 as

## R

**radius** ray  
**rādix, rādīcis** *f.* root; **rādīcēs**  
 montis foot of the mountain  
**rāmus** branch  
**rapidus** swift; consuming  
**rapīna** act of robbery; kidnaping  
**rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptum** seize,  
 seize and carry off  
**rārō** *adv.* seldom

**rārus** far apart; in scattered  
 bands  
**ratio, -ōnis** *f.* method; plan;  
 account; financial affairs  
**ratis, ratis** *f.* raft; boat  
**rebelliō, -ōnis** *f.* renewal of war  
**recēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum** go  
 back, retire  
**recēns, -entis** recent, late; fresh,  
 vigorous  
**receptus, -ūs** *m.* retreat; shelter  
**recidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsū** fall  
 back; return  
**recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum**  
 take back, draw back; receive;  
 welcome; **sē recipere** to  
 retreat, retire; recover  
**recitō** (1) read aloud  
**reclīnō** (1) lean back, recline  
**recondō, -ere, -didī, -ditum**  
 conceal; bring to a close  
**rēctē** *adv.* rightly  
**rēctus** straight; proper  
**recuperō** (1) recover, regain  
**recūsō** (1) refuse; reject; object  
 (to)  
**reddō, -ere, reddidī, redditum**  
 give back, restore  
**redeō, redīre, rediī, reditum**  
 return  
**redigō, -ere, redēgī, redāctum**  
 bring back; bring under,  
 reduce  
**reditus, -ūs** *m.* return  
**redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum**  
 lead back, bring back, with-  
 draw  
**referō, referre, rettulī, relātum**  
 carry back; bring back news,  
 report; refer; **sē referre** to go  
 back, return

**reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum**  
 repair, restore  
**refugiō, -ere, -fūgī** flee back; flee  
 for safety; retreat  
**rēgia** palace  
**rēgina** queen  
**regiō, -ōnis f.** district, region  
**rēgius** royal  
**rēgnō (1)** rule, reign  
**rēgnum** kingdom; royal power  
**regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum** rule,  
 control  
**reiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum** throw  
 back, hurl back  
**relābor, -ī, relāpsus** sink back  
**relēgō (1)** send away; remove  
**religiō, -ōnis f.** religion; rites;  
 religious scruples  
**relinquō, -ere, reliquī, relictum**  
 leave, leave behind, abandon  
**reliquus** remaining, the rest of;  
**reliquī, -ōrum** the others, the  
 rest  
**remaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsus**  
 remain  
**rēmigium** oars; wings  
**rēmigō (1)** row  
**remigrō (1)** move back, return  
**remissus** mild  
**remittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum**  
 send back; cease to use  
**remoror (1)** detain; delay  
**removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum**  
 move back, remove, withdraw  
**rēmus** oar  
**renidēns, -entis** shining,  
 beaming  
**renūntiō (1)** bring back word;  
 report  
**reor, rērī, ratus sum** think  
**repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum**  
 drive back

**repente** *adv.* suddenly  
**repentīnus** sudden  
**reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum**  
 find; ascertain  
**repetō, -ere, -īvī, -itum** seek  
 again  
**repōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum**  
 put back  
**reportō (1)** bring back, carry  
 back  
**reposcō, -ere** demand back, ask  
 for  
**reprehendō, -ere, reprehendī,**  
**reprehensum** seize; blame  
**requiēscō, -ere, requiēvī** rest; be  
 dead  
**requirō, -ere, requisīvī,**  
**requisitum** seek  
**rēs, rei f.** thing; affair; **rēs**  
**frumentāria** supply of grain;  
**rēs militāris** the art of war;  
**rēs novae** change of govern-  
 ment, revolution; **rēs pūblica**  
 the state, the commonwealth,  
 the government  
**rescindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissum**  
 tear down  
**reservō (1)** reserve, keep back  
**resistō, -ere, restitī** resist + *dat.*  
**resonō (1)** resound  
**respiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectrum**  
 look back; look at  
**respondeō, -ēre, -spondī,**  
**-spōnsum** answer, reply  
**respōnsum** answer, reply  
**restituō, -ere, -stitūī, -stitūtum**  
 restore, rebuild  
**restō, restāre, restitī** be left,  
 remain  
**rēte, rētis n.** net  
**retexō, -ere, retexuī, retextum**  
 unweave, unravel

**retineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum**  
 hold back, restrain; retain  
**retrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -tractum**  
 drag back, bring back  
**retrō** *adv.* back, backwards  
**revertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum**  
 turn back, return  
**revertor, -ī, reversus** return  
**revocō (1)** recall  
**revolvō, -ere, -volvī, -volūtum**  
 roll back; *pass.* fall back, sink  
 back  
**rēx, rēgis** *m.* king  
**Rhēnus** the Rhine River  
**Rhodanus** the Rhone River  
**Rhodopēius** *adj.* Thracian  
**riectus, -ūs** *m.* jaws; maw  
**rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsum** laugh;  
 laugh at  
**rīma** crack  
**rīpa** bank (*of a river*)  
**rīvus** small stream  
**rogō (1)** ask, ask for  
**rogus** funeral pyre  
**Rōma** Rome  
**Rōmānus** Roman; *m. as noun*  
 a Roman  
**rota** wheel  
**rūmor, -ōris** *m.* rumor; report  
**rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptum** break;  
 break down  
**rūpēs, rūpis** *f.* rock, crag  
**rūrsus** *adv.* again, in turn  
**rūs, rūris** *n.* the country

## S

**Sabīnī, -ōrum** *m. pl.* the Sabines,  
 a people near Rome  
**sacer, sacra, sacrum** sacred  
**sacrificium** sacrifice  
**sacrificō (1)** sacrifice

**saeculum** age; generation  
**saepe (saepius, saepissimē)** *adv.*  
 often  
**saeviō, -īre, saevīi, saevitum**  
 rage; be furious  
**saevus** cruel  
**sagitta** arrow  
**sagulum** military cloak  
**Saguntīnī, -ōrum** *m. pl.* the  
 people of Saguntum  
**salūs, salūtis** *f.* health; safety;  
 well-wishing, greeting;  
**salūtem fugā petere** to seek  
 safety in flight  
**salūtō (1)** greet, salute  
**salvus** well; safe  
**Samos, -ī** *f.* Samos, an island  
**sānctus** sacred; established  
**sānē** *adv.* yes, of course, certainly  
**sanguis, sanguinis** *m.* blood  
**sānus** sound; sensible  
**sapiēns, sapientis** wise  
**sapientia** wisdom  
**sapiō, sapere, sapivī** be wise;  
 understand  
**sarcīna** pack; *pl.* soldiers' packs,  
 baggage carried by individual  
 soldiers  
**sat or satis** *adv. and indec. noun*  
 enough, sufficient  
**satisfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum**  
 make amends; ask pardon  
**satisfactiō, -ōnis** *f.* satisfaction;  
 excuse, apology  
**saucius** wounded  
**saxum** rock, stone  
**scālae, -ārum** *f. pl.* scaling  
 ladder  
**scapha** small boat  
**scelerātus** wicked; *m. as noun*  
 criminal  
**scelus, sceleris** *n.* crime

**Schoenēia** Atalanta, daughter of  
*Schoeneus*  
**scindō, -ere, scidī, scissum**  
 split; destroy  
**sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum** know  
**Scīpiō, -ōnis m.** Scipio  
**scribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptum**  
 write  
**scūtum** shield  
**secundus** second; favorable  
**sēcūrus** free from care  
**sed conj.** but  
**sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum** sit  
**sēdēs, sēdis f.** seat; abode  
**Semīramis, -is f.** Semiramis,  
*queen of Babylon*  
**sēmita** path, bypath  
**semper adv.** always  
**senātor, -ōris m.** senator  
**senātus, -ūs m.** senate  
**senex, senis m.** old man  
**sententia** opinion  
**sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsu** feel,  
 perceive  
**sēparō (1)** separate, divide  
**sepeliō, -īre, sepelivī, sepultum**  
 bury  
**septem** seven  
**September, -bris, -bre adj.** of  
 September  
**septentrionēs, -um m. pl.** the  
 seven stars of the Great Bear,  
 the North  
**septimus** seventh  
**septingentī, -ae, -a** seven hundred  
**septuāgēsīmus** seventieth  
**septuāgintā** seventy  
**sepulcrum** tomb, grave  
**Sēquana** the Seine River  
**sequor, -ī, secūtus** follow; **fidem**  
**sequī** to seek the protection  
**sēriō adv.** seriously

**sermō, -ōnis m.** speech;  
 conversation  
**sērō adv.** late; too late; *comp.*  
**sērius**  
**serō, serere, sēvī, satum** plant,  
 sow  
**serpēns, -entis m. and f.** snake,  
 serpent  
**serpō, -ere, serpsī, serptum**  
 creep, crawl  
**servīlis, -e** of or like a slave,  
 servile  
**serviō, -īre, -iī, -ītum** be a slave;  
 serve  
**servitūs, -tūtis f.** slavery  
**servō (1)** preserve, keep safe  
**servus** slave  
**sescentī, -ae, -a** six hundred  
**sētius adv.** less, otherwise;  
**nihilō sētius** nevertheless  
**seu see sive**  
**sēvocō (1)** call apart  
**sex** six  
**sexāgintā** sixty  
**sextus** sixth  
**sī conj.** if  
**sīc adv.** so, thus, in this manner  
**siccitās, -tātis f.** dryness,  
 drought  
**siccō (1)** dry up  
**siccus** dry  
**Sicilia** Sicily  
**sīcut, sīcutī adv.** just as, just as if  
**sīdus, sīderis n.** star  
**significātiō, -ōnis f.** signal,  
 indication  
**significō (1)** show, indicate  
**signum** sign; military standard,  
 ensign; signal  
**silēns, -entis** silent  
**silentium** silence  
**silva** forest, woods



<b>similis</b> , -e like	<b>solvō</b> , -ere, solvī, solūtum set free, release; <i>with or without</i>
<b>simul</b> <i>adv.</i> at the same time	<b>nāvem</b> (nāvēs) to set sail
<b>simulācrum</b> image, statue	<b>somnium</b> dream
<b>simulātiō</b> , -ōnis <i>f.</i> pretense	<b>somnus</b> sleep
<b>simul atque</b> (ac) <i>conj.</i> as soon as	<b>Sōpater</b> , -trī <i>m.</i> Sopater
<b>simultās</b> , -tātis <i>f.</i> jealousy, rivalry	<b>soror</b> , sorōris <i>f.</i> sister
<b>sīn</b> <i>conj.</i> if; but if	<b>sors</b> , sortis <i>f.</i> lot; chance; oracle
<b>sine</b> <i>prep.</i> + <i>abl.</i> without	<b>spatium</b> space, distance
<b>singillatim</b> <i>adv.</i> singly, one by one	<b>speciēs</b> , speciēī <i>f.</i> sight, appearance
<b>singulāris</b> , -e single; remarkable	<b>spectāculum</b> show; spectators' seats
<b>singulī</b> , -ae, -a single; separate; in annōs singulōs annually	<b>spectātor</b> , -ōris <i>m.</i> spectator, watcher
<b>sinister</b> , -tra, -trum left; sub	<b>spectō</b> (1) face; look at; lie toward
<b>sinistrā</b> on the left	<b>speculātor</b> , -ōris <i>m.</i> scout, spy
<b>sinistrōrsus</b> <i>adv.</i> to the left	<b>speculātōrius</b> <i>adj.</i> scouting, spying
<b>sinus</b> , -ūs <i>m.</i> fold; coil	<b>spēlunca</b> cave
<b>sitis</b> , sitis <i>f.</i> thirst; drought	<b>spērō</b> (1) hope, hope for
<b>situs</b> , -ūs <i>m.</i> site, location	<b>spēs</b> , speī <i>f.</i> hope
<b>sive</b> or <i>seu</i> <i>conj.</i> or if; <b>sive</b> . . .	<b>spīritus</b> , -ūs <i>m.</i> life
<b>sive</b> , <i>seu</i> . . . <i>seu</i> whether . . . or	<b>spīrō</b> (1) breathe
<b>socius</b> ally; comrade	<b>spoliō</b> (1) strip, despoil
<b>sōl</b> , sōlis <i>m.</i> the sun; as <i>proper noun</i> the Sun (god); <b>occāsus</b>	<b>sponte meā</b> of my own accord
<b>sōlis</b> sunset; the west;	<b>spūmō</b> (1) froth, foam
<b>occidēns</b> sōl the west;	<b>stabilitās</b> , -tātis <i>f.</i> steadiness
<b>oriēns</b> sōl the east	<b>statim</b> <i>adv.</i> immediately, at once
<b>soleō</b> , solēre, solitus sum be accustomed	<b>statiō</b> , -ōnis <i>f.</i> guard, outpost
<b>solidus</b> solid	<b>statua</b> statue
<b>sōlitūdō</b> , -dinis <i>f.</i> solitude; lonely place	<b>statuō</b> , statuere, statuī, statūtum determine; consider
<b>solitus</b> customary, usual	<b>status</b> fixed; particular
<b>sollicitō</b> (1) stir, incite	<b>status</b> , -ūs <i>m.</i> position
<b>sollicitūdō</b> , -dinis <i>f.</i> care, anxiety	<b>stella</b> star
<b>sollicitus</b> anxious; suppliant	<b>stilla</b> drop
<b>solum</b> earth, ground	<b>stilus</b> pencil
<b>sōlus</b> alone, only; <b>solum</b> <i>adv.</i> only	<b>stipendium</b> tribute, tax
	<b>stīva</b> plow handle

**stō, stāre, steti, statum** stand;  
 abide by  
**stomachus** stomach  
**strāmentum** straw, thatch  
**strēnuus** quick, vigorous;  
**strēnuē** *adv.* actively, briskly  
**strepitus, -ūs** *m.* din, noise  
**stringō, -ere, strinxī, strictum**  
 draw; touch; graze  
**studeō, -ēre, studui** be eager for;  
 apply oneself; study  
**studiōsē** *adv.* eagerly, zealously  
**studiōsus** devoted; learned;  
 studious  
**studium** eagerness, zeal  
**stultus** foolish  
**Styx, Stygis** *f.* the Styx, a river of  
 the Underworld  
**suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsum**  
 advise + *dat.*  
**suāvitās, -tātis** *f.* sweetness,  
 attractiveness  
**sub** *prep.*; + *acc.* under, beneath;  
 up against; immediately after;  
 (*of time*) just before; + *abl.*  
 under, beneath; at the foot of;  
 close under  
**subdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum**  
 draw up; withdraw; **nāvēs**  
**subdūcere** to beach  
**subductiō, -ōnis** *f.* beaching  
**subeō, -īre, -ii, -itum** go under;  
 approach; enter  
**subiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum**  
 throw from under; place  
 below; expose to  
**subiectus** lying near or at the  
 foot of; adjacent  
**subigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum**  
 subdue, overcome  
**subitō** *adv.* suddenly

**sublātus** elated  
**sublevō** (1) support; assist;  
 lighten  
**subministrō** (1) give, supply  
**submittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum**  
 send to the help of  
**submoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum**  
 drive away; dislodge  
**subruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum**  
 undermine; overthrow  
**subsequor, -ī, -secūtus** follow  
 closely, follow  
**subsidiū** help, reserves;  
 auxiliary forces  
**subsistō, -ere, -stitī** halt; make  
 a stand  
**subsum, subesse, subfui** be  
 under; be near  
**subveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum**  
 come to help; aid  
**succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum**  
 advance; succeed; take the  
 place of  
**succendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēsum**  
 set on fire  
**succidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsum** cut  
 down  
**succurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursum**  
 aid, help  
**sudis, sudis** *f.* stake  
**sufficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum**  
 suffice, be adequate  
**suffrāgium** vote  
**suffugium** shelter, place of  
 refuge  
**suī, sibi, sē (sēsē), sē (sēsē)**  
 himself, herself, itself, one's  
 self, themselves  
**sum, esse, fui** (*fut. part.* **futūrus**;  
*fut. inf.* **futūrus esse** or **fore**)  
 be; exist

**summa** sum, sum total; general management, direction;  
**summa imperī** supreme command  
**summus** highest; top of; greatest, chief, most important;  
**summus mōns** the top of the mountain  
**sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum** take; assume  
**sūmptuōsus** expensive  
**sūmptus, -ūs m.** cost, expense  
**super prep.** + *acc.* above, over; in addition to  
**superbus** proud  
**superior** *see* **superus**  
**superō** (1) conquer; surpass  
**supersum, -esse, -fuī** remain, survive  
**superus** (**superior, suprēmus** or **summus**) above, upper, higher  
**supplēmentum** reinforcements  
**suppleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētum** fill up  
**supplicium** punishment  
**suprā adv.** above; before, formerly; *prep.* + *acc.* above, over; beyond, more than  
**suprēmus** last; highest; *see* **superus**  
**surgō, -ere, surrēxī, surrēctum** rise  
**suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum** undertake  
**suspectus** mistrusted, suspected  
**suspiciō, -ōnis f.** suspicion, distrust  
**suspīcor** (1) suspect, distrust  
**sustentō** (1) sustain; hold out  
**sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum** endure, withstand; support; check

**suus refl. adj.** of or belonging to himself, herself, itself, themselves; his own, their own, etc.; his, her, its, their; **sua n. pl.** as *noun* his property, their possessions, etc.; **suī m. pl.** as *noun* his men, their men, their friends, etc.

## T

**T.** abbreviation for **Titus**  
**taberna** shop  
**tābēscō, -ere, tābuī** melt  
**taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum** be silent  
**taeda** marriage torch; marriage  
**Taenarius** Spartan  
**tālis, -e** such  
**tālus** ankle; heel  
**tam adv.** so (*with adjs. and advs.*);  
**tam . . . quam** as much . . . as, as . . . as  
**tamen adv.** however, nevertheless  
**Tamesis, -is m.** the Thames River  
**tametsī conj.** although, even if  
**tamquam adv.** as if, just as  
**tandem adv.** finally, at length  
**tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctum** touch  
**tantulus** so small  
**tantum adv.** so much; only  
**tantus** so great, so large;  
**quantō . . . tantō** the . . . the  
**tardus** slow; **tardē adv.** slowly  
**taurus** bull  
**tēctum** dwelling  
**tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum** cover, hide  
**tellūs, tellūris f.** land, earth, soil  
**tēlum** javelin; weapon  
**temerārius** rash, reckless

**temerē** *adv.* without good reason; rashly  
**temeritās, -tātis** *f.* rashness, indiscretion  
**tēmō, tēmōnis** *m.* pole (*of a chariot*)  
**temperō** (1) restrain, control  
**temperātus** mild (*of climate*)  
**tempestās, -tātis** *f.* storm; weather  
**templum** temple  
**temptō** (1) try, test  
**tempus, temporis** *n.* time;  
**tempus annī** time of year, season  
**tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentum** or **tēnsūm** stretch; make for  
**tenebrae, -ārum** *f. pl.* darkness  
**teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentum** hold  
**tener, tenera, tenerum** delicate  
**tenuis, -e** thin, slight, delicate  
**tepeō, -ēre** be warm  
**ter** *adv.* three times  
**tergum** back; **ā tergō** from or in the rear; **post tergum** in the rear; **terga vertere** to turn and flee  
**terminus** boundary  
**terō, terere, trivī, tritum** rub, wear; waste (*time*)  
**terra** earth, land, country; **terrā marique** by land and sea  
**terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum** frighten, terrify  
**terribilis, -e** terrible, awful  
**territō** (1) terrify  
**terror, terrōris** *m.* panic; terror  
**tertius** third  
**testimōnium** evidence, proof  
**testis, testis** *m. and f.* witness  
**testor** (1) call to witness; bear witness to

**testūdō, -inis** *f.* tortoise; shed, shelter  
**Thisbē, -ēs** *f.* Thisbe  
**Tiberis, -is** *m.* the Tiber River  
**timeō, -ēre, timuī** fear, be afraid, be fearful  
**timidus** afraid, fearful; **timidē** *adv.* fearfully, cowardly  
**timor, timōris** *m.* fear  
**tingō, -ere, tīnxī, tinctum** stain, dip  
**titulus** title, fame, honor  
**toga** toga  
**togātus** *adj.* wearing the toga; unarmed  
**tolerō** (1) endure, hold out; appease  
**tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum** lift; raise; take away, remove;  
**sublātus** elated  
**tormentum** engine; torture  
**torreō, -ēre, torruī, tostum** scorch; burn  
**tot indec.** *adj.* so many  
**totiēns (totiēs)** *adv.* so often  
**tōtus** whole, whole of, entire, all  
**tractō** (1) handle, touch  
**trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum** hand over; give up, surrender  
**trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum** lead across, take over  
**trāgula** javelin, dart  
**trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum** drag, draw  
**trāciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum** hurl across; transfix  
**trāiectus, -ūs** *m.* crossing, passage  
**trāmes, trāmitis** *m.* bypath  
**trānō** (1) swim across  
**tranquillitās, -tātis** *f.* calmness  
**trāns** *prep.* + *acc.* across



**trāscendō, -ere, -scendī,**  
 -scēsum climb over; cross;  
 board  
**trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum** go across,  
 cross  
**trānsferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum**  
 carry over  
**trānsfigō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum**  
 pierce through  
**trānsgridior, -ī, -gressus** go  
 across, cross  
**trānsmarīnus** *adj.* across the sea  
**trānsmīssus, -ūs** *m.* passage  
**trānsportō** (1) carry across,  
 transport  
**Trasumennus** Lake Trasimene  
*in Etruria*  
**trecentī, -ae, -a** three hundred  
**tremebundus** quivering,  
 trembling  
**tremō, -ere, tremuī** tremble  
**tremor, tremōris** *m.* trembling;  
 quaking  
**tremulus** quivering; flexible  
**trepidō** (1) hurry about in alarm;  
 be in confusion; tremble  
**trepidus** trembling; alarmed  
**trēs, tria** three  
**tribūnus** tribune  
**tribuō, -ere, tribuī, tribūtum**  
 award, give  
**tribus, -ūs** *f.* tribe  
**tribūtum** tax, tribute  
**trīcēsīmus** thirtieth  
**trīduum** three days  
**triennium** three years  
**trīgintā** thirty  
**trīnī, -ae, -a** three each; three  
**tripertītō** *adv.* in three parts  
**trīstis, -e** sad, dejected  
**trucidō** (1) slaughter

**truncō** (1) mutilate  
**tū, tuī** you, thou  
**tuba** trumpet, clarion  
**tueor, tuērī, tūtus sum** protect,  
 guard  
**tum** *adv.* then; **cum . . . tum**  
 both . . . and, not only . . . but  
 also  
**tumidus** swollen; elated  
**tumultus, -ūs** *m.* confusion,  
 tumult  
**tumulus** mound  
**tunc** *adv.* then  
**turba** crowd  
**turbō** (1) throw into confusion  
**turma** squadron  
**turpis, -e** ugly, base, disgraceful,  
 dishonorable  
**turris, turris** *f.* tower  
**tūs, tūris** *n.* incense  
**Tūscī, -ōrum** *m. pl.* Tuscans,  
 Etruscans  
**Tūsculanum** Pliny's estate near  
 Tusculum  
**tūtus** safe, secure; **tūtō** *adv.* safely  
**tuus, tua, tuum** your (*referring to*  
*one person*)

## U

**ūber, ūberis** rich, fertile  
**ubi** *adv.* where; when  
**ubique** *adv.* everywhere  
**ulcīscor, -ī, ultus** avenge; take  
 vengeance on  
**ūllus** any  
**ulterior** farther; **ultimus** last;  
 farthest  
**ultrā** *adv. and prep. + acc.*  
 beyond, more than, besides  
**ultrō** *adv.* besides; moreover;  
**ultrō citrōque** back and forth

ululātus, -ūs *m.* yell; war cry  
 umbra shade  
 umerus shoulder; arm  
 umquam *adv.* ever, at any time  
 ūnā *adv.* together; along with  
 unda wave; water  
 unde *adv.* whence  
 ūndecimus eleventh  
 undique *adv.* from all sides, on  
     all sides  
 unguentum ointment, perfume  
 ūniversus *adj.* all together; in a  
     body; whole  
 ūnus one, only  
 urbs, urbis *f.* city  
 urna urn, vessel  
 ūrus wild ox  
 usquam *adv.* anywhere  
 usque *adv.* as far as; up to  
 ūsus, ūsūs *m.* use; experience;  
     need; ūsuī esse to be of serv-  
     ice; ūsus est there is need  
 ut (utī) *with indic.* as, just as;  
     when; whenever; *with subj.*  
     that, so that; in order that;  
     *after verbs of fearing* that not  
 uter, utra, utrum which (of two)?  
 uterque, utraque, utrumque  
     each (of two)  
 ūtilis, -e useful  
 utinam *in wishes* O that! would  
     that!  
 ūtor, ūtī, ūsus use + *abl.*  
 utrimque *adv.* on both sides  
 uxor, uxōris *f.* wife

# V

vacuus empty  
 vadum ford, shallow  
 vāgīna sheath, scabbard

vagor (1) wander  
 vagus wandering, drifting  
 valdē *adv.* yes  
 valeō, -ēre, valui be strong; be  
     well; plūrimum valēre to be  
     very powerful; valē, valēte  
     farewell!  
 valētūdō, -inis *f.* health; poor  
     health  
 validus strong  
 vallēs, vallis *f.* valley  
 vāllum wall, rampart  
 varietās, -tātis *f.* variety  
 varius changing, various  
 vāstitās, -tātis *f.* devastation  
 vāstō (1) lay waste, devastate,  
     ravage, destroy  
 vāstus vast, huge  
 vātēs, vātis *m.* bard; seer  
 -ve *enclitic* or; -ve . . . -ve either  
     . . . or  
 vectīgal, -ālis *n.* tax, tribute  
 vectōrius *adj.* for carrying;  
     vectōria nāvis transport  
 vehemēns, -entis violent,  
     vigorous  
 vehiculum carriage  
 vehō, -ere, vēxī, vectum carry,  
     bring  
 vel *conj.* or, or if you will, or at  
     least; vel . . . vel either . . . or  
 vėlāmen, -inis *n.* robe, garment  
 vėlōcītās, -tātis *f.* speed,  
     swiftness  
 vėlōciter *adv.* quickly  
 vėlōx, vėlōcis swift  
 velut (velutī) *adv.* just as;  
     velut sī just as if  
 vėlātiō, -ōnis *f.* hunting  
 vėlātor, -ōris *m.* hunter  
 venēnum poison

<b>Veneticus</b> <i>adj.</i> of the Veneti, a tribe in northwestern Gaul	<b>viciēs</b> <i>adv.</i> twenty times
<b>venia</b> pardon; favor	<b>vicinia</b> proximity
<b>veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum</b> come	<b>vicinus</b> near, neighboring, in the vicinity
<b>vēnor</b> (1) hunt	<b>victima</b> victim
<b>ventitō</b> (1) keep coming; visit	<b>victor, victōris</b> <i>m.</i> victor; <i>as adj.</i> victorious
<b>ventus</b> wind	<b>victōria</b> victory
<b>Venus, Veneris</b> <i>f.</i> Venus; Love	<b>victrix, victricis</b> victorious
<b>vēr, vēris</b> <i>n.</i> spring; <b>primum vēr</b> the beginning of spring	<b>victus, -ūs</b> <i>m.</i> manner of life; food
<b>verbum</b> word	<b>vicus</b> village
<b>verēcundia</b> modesty, reserve	<b>videō, -ēre, vidī, vīsum</b> see; see to; <i>pass.</i> seem
<b>vereor, -ērī, veritus</b> fear	<b>vigilia</b> watch
<b>vergō, -ere</b> look toward; slope	<b>vigintī</b> twenty
<b>vērō</b> <i>adv.</i> truly; yes	<b>vigor, vigōris</b> <i>m.</i> force, vigor
<b>versō</b> (1) turn; <i>pass.</i> engage in	<b>villa</b> villa; farmhouse
<b>versus, -ūs</b> <i>m.</i> turning; verse, line	<b>vincō, -ere, vicī, victum</b> conquer, defeat
<b>vertō, -ere, vertī, versum</b> turn; <b>terga vertere</b> to turn and flee	<b>vinculum</b> fether, chain
<b>vērus</b> true	<b>vīnum</b> wine
<b>verūtum</b> dart, javelin	<b>violentia</b> violence; fury
<b>vesper, vesperī</b> <i>m.</i> evening; <b>sub vesperum</b> toward evening	<b>violentus</b> harsh, violent
<b>vester, -tra, -trum</b> your, yours ( <i>referring to more than one person</i> )	<b>violō</b> (1) injure; lay waste
<b>vēstīgium</b> track, footprint	<b>vīpera</b> snake
<b>vestiō</b> (4) clothe, cover	<b>vir, virī</b> <i>m.</i> man; husband
<b>vestis, vestis</b> <i>f.</i> clothing, clothes	<b>virginālis, -e</b> maidenly
<b>veterānus</b> old, veteran	<b>virgō, virginis</b> <i>f.</i> maiden
<b>vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitum</b> forbid	<b>virtūs, virtūtis</b> <i>f.</i> valor; merit
<b>vetus, veteris</b> old	<b>vīs</b> <i>f.</i> strength, force; <i>pl.</i> <b>vīrēs, vīrium</b> strength, vigor; <b>vim facere</b> to use force
<b>vetustās, -tātis</b> <i>f.</i> old age	<b>viscus, vīsceris</b> <i>n.</i> flesh; bowels
<b>vexō</b> (1) attack, disturb	<b>vīsō, -ere, vīsī, vīsum</b> visit; go to see
<b>via</b> way, road, street; <b>Via Appia</b> the Appian Way	<b>vīta</b> life
<b>vibrō</b> (1) brandish, flourish	<b>vitium</b> fault, deceit
<b>vicēnī, -ae, -a</b> twenty each, twenty	<b>vītō</b> (1) avoid
	<b>vitrum</b> woad; blue dye
	<b>vivō, -ere, vixī, victum</b> live

**vīvus** alive; *as noun* a living person  
**vix** *adv.* hardly, with difficulty, scarcely  
**vixdum** *adv.* scarcely yet, hardly then  
**vocō** (1) call, summon  
**volātus, -ūs** *m.* flying, flight  
**volō** (1) fly  
**volō, velle, voluī** wish, be willing  
**volūbilis, -e** rolling  
**voluntārius** *adj.* willing; *m. pl. as noun* volunteers  
**voluntās, -tātis** *f.* will, wish; loyalty

**vōs, vestrum and vestrī** you  
**vōtum** vow, prayer  
**voeō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtum** vow  
**vōx, vōcis** *f.* voice  
**vulgō** *adv.* commonly; everywhere  
**vulgus, vulgī** *n.* the common people; crowd  
**vulnerō** (1) wound  
**vulnus, vulneris** *n.* wound  
**vultus, -ūs** *m.* looks; countenance

## Z

**Zephyrus Zephyr,** the West Wind



# ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

Note: Regular verbs of the first conjugation (*portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum*) are indicated by the numeral (1).

## A

- able, be *possum, posse, potuī*  
 about (= *concerning*) *dē prep. + abl.*; (= *around*) *circum prep. + acc.*; *adv. circiter*  
 above *super prep. + acc.*; *adv. suprā*  
 absent, be *absum, abesse, āfui*  
 accord, of my own accord *meā sponte*  
 accordingly *itaque; igitur, post-positive conj.*  
 account, on account of *ob, propter preps. + acc.*  
 accustomed, be *soleō, -ēre, solitus sum; perfect tenses of cōsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum*  
 across *trāns prep. + acc.*  
 adopt a plan, to *cōsiliū capere; cōsiliū inīre*  
 advance *prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum; prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum; adeō, adīre, adīi, aditum*  
 advice *cōsiliū, -ī, n.*  
 advise *moneō, -ēre, monuī, monitum + acc.; suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsum + dat.*  
 advocate *auctor, -ōris m.*  
 Aequi *Aequī, -ōrum m.*  
 affair *negōtium, -ī n.*; *rēs, rei f.*  
 afraid, be afraid of *timeō, -ēre, timuī; vereor, verērī, veritus sum*  
 after *post prep. + acc.*; *adv. post; conj. postquam*  
 afterward *postea adv.*  
 against *contrā prep. + acc.*  
 agreeable *dulcis, -is, -e*  
 aid *auxilium, -ī n.*; *verb iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtum*; bring aid, give aid *auxilium ferō*  
 Alexander *Alexander, -drī m.*  
 all (= *every*) *omnis, -is, -e*; (= *the whole of*) *tōtus, -a, -um*; in all (*with numerals*) *omnīnō*  
 allow *patior, patī, passus sum*  
 ally *socius, -ī m.*  
 almost *ferē, prope adv.*  
 alone *sōlus, -a, -um*  
 along with *ūnā cum*  
 Alps *Alpēs, -ium f.*  
 already *iam*  
 also *quoque; etiam*  
 altar *āra, -ae f.*  
 although *quamquam; etsī; cum*  
 always *semper*  
 ambassador *lēgātus, -ī m.*

ambush *insidiae*, -*ārum* *f.*  
among *apud*; *inter*; *preps.* + *acc.*  
amount *cōpia*, -*ae* *f.*  
anchor *ancora*, -*ae* *f.*  
and *et*; -*que*; *atque*, *ac*; and also, and further *atque*, *ac*; and not *neque*, *nec*; and so *itaque*  
angry *irātus*, -*a*, -*um*; angry at *irātus* + *dat.*  
announce *nūntiō* (1)  
another *alius*, *alia*, *aliud*; another's *aliēnus*, -*a*, -*um*  
any *adj.* *ūllus*, -*a*, -*um*; *quī*, *qua*, *quod*; *aliquī*, *aliqua*, *aliquod*  
anyone *quis*; *aliquis*  
anything *quid*; *aliquid*  
approach *adventus*, -*ūs* *m.*; *verb* *adeō*, *adīre*, *adii*, *aditum*; *accēdō*, -*ere*, -*cessi*, -*cessum* + *ad* + *acc.*; *appropinquō* (1) + *dat.*  
approve *probō* (1)  
arise *orior*, *oriri*, *ortus* *sum*; *coerior*, -*oriri*, -*ortus* *sum*  
arm *verb* *armō* (1)  
arms *arma*, -*ōrum* *n.*; to take up arms *arma capere*; to lay down arms *arma dēpōnere*  
army *exercitus*, -*ūs* *m.*  
around *circum* *prep.* + *acc.*  
array, in close array *cōnfertus*, -*a*, -*um*  
arrival *adventus*, -*ūs* *m.*  
arrive (at) *pervenio*, -*ire*, -*vēni*, -*ventum* (*ad* or *in* + *acc.*)  
arrow *sagitta*, -*ae* *f.*  
art of war *rēs militāris*, *rei militāris* *f.*

as (= *since*) *cum*; (= *when*) *cum*; (= *while*) *dum*; (*in* clause of comparison) *ut*  
Asia *Asia*, -*ae* *f.*  
ask (= *inquire*) *quaerō*, -*ere*, *quaesivī*, *quaesitum*; *rogō* (1); (= *request*) *petō*, -*ere*, *petivī*, *petitum*; *rogō* (1); (= *beg*) *ōrō* (1)  
as long as *dum*, *quoad*, *quamdiū*  
assemble (= *come together*) *conveniō*, -*ire*, -*vēni*, -*ventum*  
as soon as *simul* *ac*, *simul* *atque*, *cum* *primum*  
as soon as possible *quam* *primum*  
assist: *see* *help*  
assistance *auxilium*, -*i* *n.*  
at hand, be *adsum*, *adesse*, *adfui*  
Athens *Athēnae*, -*ārum* *f.*  
at once *statim*; *cōnfestim*  
attack *impetus*, -*ūs* *m.*; *oppugnātiō*, -*ōnis* *f.*; *verb* *adorior*, *adoriri*, *adortus* *sum*; *aggredior*, *aggredi*, *aggressus* *sum*; *oppugnō* (1); *impetum* *faciō* + *in* + *acc.*  
attempt *cōnor*, *cōnāri*, *cōnātus* *sum*; *temptō* (1)  
attention, to pay *operam* *dare* + *dat.*  
avert *āvertō*, -*ere*, *āverti*, *āversum*  
away, be *absum*, *abesse*, *āfui*

## B

bad *malus*, -*a*, -*um*; badly *male*  
baggage *impedimenta*, -*ōrum* *n.*  
band (*of* *soldiers*) *manus*, -*ūs* *f.*  
bank (*of* *a* *river*) *ripa*, -*ae* *f.*

battle *proelium*, -ī *n.*; battle  
 array *aciēs*, *aciēī f.*; to fight a  
 battle *proelium facere*  
 be *sum*, *esse*, *fui*  
 be absent *absum*, *abesse*, *āfui*  
 be accustomed *cōsuēvī*, -*isse*  
 be afraid *timeō*, -*ēre*, *timui*;  
*vereor*, *verēri*, *veritus sum*  
 be at hand, be near, be present  
*adsum*, *adesse*, *adfui*  
 be aware *intellegō*, -*ere*, -*lēxi*,  
 -*lēctum*  
 be away *absum*, *abesse*, *āfui*  
 be done *fiō*, *fieri*, *factus sum*  
 be in command *praesum*, *prae-*  
*esse*, *praefui* + *dat.*  
 be lacking, wanting *dēsum*,  
*deesse*, *dēfui*  
 be made *fiō*, *fieri*, *factus sum*  
 be present *adsum*, *adesse*, *adfui*  
 be unwilling *nōlō*, *nōlle*, *nōlui*  
 bear *portō* (1); *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*,  
*lātum*  
 beautiful *pulcher*, -*chra*, -*chrom*  
 because *quod*  
 because of *ob*, *propter preps.* +  
*acc.*  
 become *fiō*, *fieri*, *factus sum*  
 before *ante prep.* + *acc.*; *conj.*  
*antequam*, *priusquam*  
 beg *orō* (1)  
 begin *incipiō*, -*ere*, -*cēpī*, -*cep-*  
*tum*; began *coepī*, *coepisse*  
 beginning *initium*, -ī *n.*  
 behalf: in behalf of *prō prep.* +  
*abl.*  
 behind *post prep.* + *acc.*  
 behold *ecce*  
 believe *crēdō*, -*ere*, *crēdidī*,  
*crēditum* + *dat.*

belonging to another *aliēnus*,  
 -*a*, -*um*  
 beset *premō*, -*ere*, *pressī*,  
*pressum*  
 besiege *obsideō*, -*ēre*, -*sēdī*,  
 -*sessum*  
 best *optimus*, -*a*, -*um*; *adv.*  
*optimē*  
 betake oneself *sē recipere*  
 betray *prōdō*, -*ere*, -*didī*, -*ditum*  
 between *inter prep.* + *acc.*  
 beyond *praeter prep.* + *acc.*  
 black *niger*, *nigra*, *nigrum*; *āter*,  
*ātra*, *ātrum*  
 board: go on board ship *nāvēs*  
*cōnscendere*  
 boat *nāvigium*, -ī *n.*  
 body *corpus*, *corporis*, *n.*  
 bold *audāx* (*gen. audācis*)  
 boldly *audācter*  
 both *uterque*, *utraque*,  
*utrumque*  
 both . . . and *et . . . et*  
 bottom of *īmus*, -*a*, -*um*  
 boy *puer*, *puerī m.*  
 brave *fortis*, -*is*, -*e*  
 bravely *fortiter*  
 break *rumpō*, -*ere*, *rūpī*, *ruptum*  
 bride *spōnsa*, -*ae f.*  
 bridge *pōns*, *pontis m.*  
 bring (= *carry*) *portō* (1); *ferō*,  
*ferre*, *tulī*, *lātum*; bring aid  
*auxilium ferō* + *dat.*; bring  
 back *referō*, *referre*, *rettulī*,  
*relātum*; bring into *īferō*;  
 bring together *cōnferō*; (= *lead to*)  
*addūcō*, -*ere*, -*dūxī*,  
 -*ductum*  
 bring word *afferō*, *afferre*,  
*attulī*, *allātum*

Britain *Britannia*, -ae *f.*; Briton  
*Britannus*, -ī *m.*  
 Brundisium *Brundisium*, -ī *n.*  
 build *aedificō* (1); *efficiō*, -ere,  
 -fēcī, -fectum; *instituō*, -ere,  
 -stitui, -stitutum; *mūniō*, -īre,  
 -īvī, -itum  
 building *aedificium*, -ī *n.*  
 burn *incendō*, -ere, -cendī,  
 -cēsum  
 busy *occupātus*, -a, -um  
 but *sed*; *at*; *autem* (*postposi-*  
*tive*); but not *nec*, *neque*  
 buy *emō*, *emere*, *ēmī*, *emptum*

## C

Caesar *Caesar*, *Caesaris m.*  
 call *vocō* (1); call back *revocō*  
 (1); call by name *appellō* (1);  
 call together *convocō* (1)  
 camp *castra*, -ōrum *n.*  
 can *possum*, *posse*, *potui*  
 capture *capiō*, -ere, *cēpī*, *captum*  
 care *cūra*, -ae *f.*; *diligentia*, -ae *f.*  
 careful *diligēns* (*gen. diligēntis*)  
 carry *portō* (1); *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*,  
*lātum*; carry across, *trāns-*  
*portō* (1); carry back *reportō*  
 (1); *referō*, *referre*, *rettulī*,  
*relātum*; carry down *dēferō*,  
*dēferre*, *dētulī*, *dēlātum*; carry  
 off *rapiō*, -ere, *rapuī*, *raptum*;  
 carry on *gerō*, -ere, *gessi*,  
*gestum*; carry over *trānsportō*  
 (1)  
 cart *carrus*, -ī *m.*  
 Carthaginian *adj. Carthāginiēn-*  
*sis*, -is, -e; Carthaginians  
*Poenī*, -ōrum *m.*

catch *capiō*, -ere, *cēpī*, *captum*;  
 catch sight of *cōnspiciō*, -ere,  
 -spēxī, -spectum  
 cattle *bovēs*, *bovum m. and f. pl.*  
 cause *causa*, -ae *f.*  
 cavalry *equitēs*, *equitum m. pl.*;  
*equitātus*, -ūs *m.*  
 cease *dēsistō*, -ere, *dēstitī*,  
*dēstitum*  
 centurion *centuriō*, -ōnis *m.*  
 Ceres *Cerēs*, *Cereris f.*  
 certain, a *quidam*  
 certainly *certē*  
 charge, to *impetum facere*  
 chariot *currus*, -ūs *m.*  
 Charon *Charōn*, *Charontis m.*  
 chief *prīnceps*, *prīncipis m.*  
 children *liberī*, -ōrum *m.*  
 choose *dēligō*, -ere, -lēgī, -lēc-  
 tum; *legō*, -ere, *lēgī*, *lēctum*  
 Cimbri *Cimbri*, -ōrum *m.*  
 citizen *cīvis*, *cīvis m. and f.*  
 city *urbs*, *urbis f.*  
 client *cliēns*, *clientis* (*gen. pl.*  
*clientium*) *m. and f.*  
 climb *ascendō*, -ere, *ascendī*,  
*ascēsum*  
 close *claudō*, -ere, *clausī*,  
*clausum*  
 clothes, clothing *vestis*, *vestis*  
 (*gen. pl. vestium*) *f.*  
 cohort *cohors*, *cohortis* (*gen. pl.*  
*cohortium*) *f.*  
 collect *cōgō*, -ere, *coēgī*, *coāc-*  
 tum; *cōnferō*, -ferre, *contulī*,  
*collātum*; *comportō* (1)  
 column (*of a building*) *columna*,  
 -ae *f.*  
 column (*of soldiers*) *agmen*, *ag-*  
*minis n.*



combatants pugnantes, -ium *m.*  
 come veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum;  
 come back revertor, revertī,  
 reversus sum; come to ac-  
 cēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum;  
 perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum;  
 come together conveniō, -īre,  
 -vēnī, -ventum; come upon  
 inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum  
 commander, commander in chief  
 imperātor, -ōris *m.*  
 commons, common people plēbs,  
 plēbis *f.*  
 compact cōnfertus, -a, -um  
 compel cōgō, -ere, cōēgī,  
 cōāctum  
 complete cōficiō, -ere, -fēcī,  
 -fectum; efficiō, -ere, -fēcī,  
 -fectum  
 concerning dē *prep.* + *abl.*  
 confer with, to agere cum +  
*abl.*; agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum  
 conference colloquium, -ī *n.*;  
 hold a conference colloquor,  
 -loquī, -locūtus sum  
 confidence fidūcia, -ae *f.*  
 conquer superō (1); vincō, -ere,  
 vīcī, victum  
 consent: by common consent  
 cōmūnī cōnsiliō  
 construct instituō, -ere, -stituī,  
 -stitūtum; efficiō, -ere, -fēcī,  
 -fectum  
 consul cōsul, cōsulis *m.*  
 consult cōsulō, -ere, -sulūī,  
 -sultum  
 contempt, hold in: *see* despise  
 Corinth Corinthus, -ī *f.*  
 country terra, -ae *f.*; (= *native*  
*land*) patria, -ae *f.*  
 courage virtūs, virtūtis *f.*; ani-  
 mus, -ī *m.*

course cursus, -ūs *m.*  
 cross, cross over transeō, -īre,  
 -iī, -itum  
 crowd multitudō, -dinis *f.*; turba,  
 -ae *f.*  
 cry clāmor, -ōris *m.*  
 cruel crūdēlis, -is, -e; cruelly  
 crūdēliter  
 crush opprimō, -ere, -pressī,  
 -pressum  
 cry out clāmō (1)  
 Cupid Cupidō, -inis *m.*  
 custom mōs, mōris *m.*; cōnsuē-  
 tūdō, -tūdinis *f.*  
 cut down caedō, -ere, cecidī,  
 caesum; occidō, -ere, occidī,  
 occisum

## D

daily cotidiē  
 danger periculum, -ī *n.*  
 dare audeō, audēre, ausus sum  
 daughter filia, -ae *f.*  
 dawn prima lūx, primae lūcis *f.*;  
 just before dawn sub lūcem  
 day diēs, diēi *m.*; daybreak  
 prima lūx; every day cotidiē  
 dear cārus, -a, -um  
 death mors, mortis *f.*  
 deceive fallō, -ere, fefellī,  
 falsum  
 decide cōstituō, -ere, -uī,  
 -ūtum; iūdicō (1); statuō,  
 -ere, -uī, -ūtum  
 deep altus, -a, -um  
 defeat vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum;  
 pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum;  
 superō (1)  
 defend dēfendō, -ere, -fendī,  
 -fēnsūm; tueor, tuērī, tūtus or  
 tuitus sum

delay *mora*, -ae *f.*; *verb moror*,  
*morārī*, *morātus sum*  
 deliver a speech, to *ōrātiōnem*  
*habēre*  
 demand *postulō* (1); *poscō*, -ere,  
*poposci*  
 depart *discēdō*, -ere, -cessī,  
 -cessum; *abeō*, -īre, -iī, -itum;  
*exeō*, -īre, -iī, -itum; *ēgredior*,  
*ēgredi*, *ēgressus sum*  
 depth *altitudō*, -dinis *f.*  
 descend, to *sē dēmittere*  
 desire *cupiditās*, -tātis *f.*  
 desirous *cupidus*, -a, -um  
 despair *dēspērō* (1)  
 despise *dēspiciō*, -ere, -spēxī,  
 -spectum; *contemnō*, -ere,  
 -tempſī, -temptum  
 destroy *dēleō*, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum  
 determine *cōstituō*, -ere, -uī,  
 -ūtum; *statuō*, -ere, -uī, -ūtum  
 dictator *dictātor*, -ōris *m.*  
 die *morior*, *mori*, *mortuus sum*;  
*fut. part. moritūrus*  
 difficult *difficilis*, -is, -e  
 difficulty *difficultās*, -tātis *f.*  
 direction *pars*, *partis f.*  
 discuss *cōsultō* (1)  
 disembark *nāvē ēgredior*,  
*ēgredi*, *ēgressus sum*  
 dispatch *litterae*, -ārum *f.*  
 disregard *neglegō*, -ere, -lēxī,  
 -lēctum  
 distance, in the *procul*  
 district *loca*, *locōrum n. pl.*;  
*regiō*, -ōnis *f.*  
 do *faciō*, -ere, *fēcī*, *factum*; *agō*,  
 -ere, *ēgī*, *āctum*; be done *fiō*,  
*fieri*, *factus sum*  
 dog *canis*, *canis m. (gen. pl.*  
*canum)*  
 down from *dē prep. + abl.*

*draft-animal iūmentum*, -ī *n.*  
 draw near *accēdō*, -ere, -cessī,  
 -cessum  
 draw up *instruō*, -ere, -strūxī,  
 -strūctum; draw up line of  
 battle, to *aciem instruere*  
 drive out *expellō*, -ere, *expulī*,  
*expulsum*  
 duty *officiūm*, -ī *n.*

## E

each *quisque*; *uterque*  
 eager *cupidus*, -a, -um  
 eagerness *studium*, -ī *n.*; *cupidi-*  
*tās*, -tātis *f.*  
 eagle *aquila*, -ae *f.*  
 earth *terra*, -ae *f.*  
 easily *facile*  
 easy *facilis*, -is, -e  
 eighty *octōgintā*  
 either . . . or *aut . . . aut*  
 elephant *elephantus*, -ī *m.*  
 encamp *cōnsidō*, -ere, -sēdī,  
 -sessum  
 encourage *cōfirmō* (1); *hortor*,  
*hortārī*, *hortātus sum*; *cohor-*  
*tor*, -hortārī, -hortātus *sum*  
 end *fīnis*, -is *m. (gen. pl. finium)*;  
*verb cōnficiō*, -ere, -fēcī, -fec-  
 tum; *finem faciō*, -ere, *fēcī*,  
*factum*  
 endure *patior*, *patī*, *passus sum*  
 enemy *hostis*, *hostis m. (gen. pl.*  
*hostium)*; the enemy *hostēs*,  
*hostium m. pl.*  
 enlarge *augeō*, -ēre, *auxī*, *auctum*  
 enough *satis*  
 enroll *cōnscribō*, -ere, -scripsī,  
 -scriptum  
 enter *ineō*, -īre, -iī, -itum; *in-*  
*gredior*, *ingredi*, *ingressus*  
*sum*; *intrō* (1)

entreaties *precēs, precum f.*  
 entrust *committō, -ere, -misi, -missum; permittō, -ere, -misi, -missum*  
 envoy *lēgātus, -ī m.*  
 envy *invidēō, -ēre, -vidi, -vīsum*  
 escape *effugiō, -ere, effūgi*  
 establish *cōfirmō (1)*  
 Europe *Eurōpa, -ae f.*  
 even *etiam*  
 evening *vesper, vesperī m.*  
     toward evening *sub vesperum*  
 ever *umquam*  
 every *omnis, -is, -e; everybody, everyone omnēs, omnium m.; everything omnia n.*  
 every day *cotidiē*  
 evil *malus, -a, -um*  
 except *praeter prep. + acc.*  
 extent *magnitūdō, -dinis f.*  
 eye *oculus, -ī m.*

## F

face *faciēs, -ēī f.*  
 fair *pulcher, -chra, -chrum*  
 faithful *fidēlis, -is, -e*  
 fall *cadō, -ere, cecidi, cāsum; fall back (= retreat) pedem referō, referre, rettuli, relātum; fall in battle cadō; occidō, -ere, occidi, occāsum*  
 false *falsus, -a, -um*  
 far *longē; far and wide longē lātēque*  
 farm *ager, agrī m.*  
 farmer *agricola, -ae m.*  
 farther *adj. ulterior, -ius*  
 father *pater, patris m.*  
 favor *faveō, -ēre, fāvi, fautum + dat.*

fear *timor, -ōris m.; verb timeō, -ēre, timui; vereor, verēri, veritus sum*  
 few *pauci, -ae, -a*  
 field *ager, agrī m.*  
 fierce *ācer, ācris, ācre; ferōx (gen. ferōcis)*  
 fiercely *ācritur*  
 fight *pugnō (1); contendō, -ere, -tendi, -tentum; fight a battle, to proelium facere*  
 fill *compleō, -ēre, -plēvi, -plētum*  
 find *inveniō, -ire, -veni, -ventum; reperiō, -ire, repperi, repertum*  
 find out *cognōscō, -ere, cognōvi, cognitum*  
 fire *ignis, ignis m.*  
 five *quīnque*  
 flank *latus, lateris n.; on the flank ā latere*  
 flee *fugiō, -ere, fūgi, fugitum*  
 fleet *classis, classis f. (gen. pl. classium)*  
 flight *fuga, -ae f.; put to flight fugō (1)*  
 flower *flōs, flōris m.*  
 fly *volō (1)*  
 follow *sequor, sequi, secutus sum; follow up persequor; insequor*  
 food *cibus, -ī m.*  
 foot *pēs, pedis m.*  
 foot soldier *pedes, peditis m.*  
 for *nam; enim (postpositive)*  
 for (= in behalf of) *prō prep. + abl.*  
 forbid *vetō, -āre, vetui, vetitum*  
 force (= compel) *cōgō, -ere, coēgi, coactum*  
 forced march *magnum iter n.*

forces *cōpiae*, -ārum *f.*  
 foresight *prūdētia*, -ae *f.*  
 forest *silva*, -ae *f.*  
 forgetful *oblītus*, -a, -um  
 formerly *ōlim*  
 fortification *mūnitiō*, -ōnis *f.*;  
   fortifications *moenia*, *moen-*  
   *ium n.*  
 fortify *mūniō*, -īre, -īvī, -ītum  
 fortune *fortūna*, -ae *f.*  
 forum *forum*, -ī *n.*  
 founder *conditor*, -tōris *m.*  
 fourth *quārtus*, -a, -um  
 free, set free *liberō* (1)  
 freedom *libertās*, -tātis *f.*  
 freely *liberē*  
 fresh *integer*, -gra, -grum  
 friend *amicus*, -ī *m.*; friendly  
   *amicus*, -a, -um  
 friendship *amicitia*, -ae *f.*  
 frighten *terreō*, -ēre, *terruī*,  
   *territum*; frighten thoroughly  
   *perterreō*  
 from *ā*, *ab*; *dē*; *ē*, *ex* *preps.* +  
   *abl.*  
 front, in front of *ante* *prep.* +  
   *acc.*; *prō* *prep.* + *abl.*  
 fugitives *fugientēs*, -ium *m.*  
 full *plēnus*, -a, -um

## G

Gabii *Gabii*, -ōrum *m.*  
 garrison *praesidium*, -ī *n.*  
 gate *porta*, -ae *f.*  
 Gaul (*the country*) *Gallia*, -ae *f.*;  
   (*the inhabitant of Gaul*) *Gallus*,  
   -ī *m.*; *adj.* *Gallus*, -a, -um  
 German *Germānus*, -ī *m.*; *adj.*  
   *Germānus*, -a, -um  
 girl *puella*, -ae *f.*

give *dō*, *dare*, *dedī*, *datum*; give  
   back *reddō*, -ere, *reddidī*,  
   *redditum*; give up *dēdō*,  
   -ere, *dēdidī*, *dēditum*; *trādō*,  
   -ere, *trādidī*, *trāditum*  
 glad *laetus*, -a, -um; gladly *laetē*  
 go *eō*, *īre*, *iī*, *itum*; go across  
   *trānseō*; go away *abeō*; go  
   back *redeō*; *sē referre*; go  
   forth *exeō*; go into *ineō*; go  
   on board ship *nāvem cōn-*  
   *scendere*; go out *exeō*; *excē-*  
   *dō*, -ere, -cessī, -cessum;  
   *ēgredior*, *ēgredī*, *ēgressus*  
   *sum*; go to *adeō*  
 god *deus*, *dei m.*; goddess *dea*  
 gold *aurum*, -ī *n.*  
 golden *aureus*, -a, -um  
 good *bonus*, -a, -um  
 governor *praetor*, -ōris *m.*  
 grain *frūmentum*, -ī *n.*  
 grandeur *dignitās*, -tātis *f.*  
 great *magnus*, -a, -um; *comp.*  
   *maior*, *maius*; *superl.* *maxi-*  
   *mus*, -a, -um  
 great, so *tantus*, -a, -um  
 Greece *Graecia*, -ae *f.*  
 Greek *adj.* *Graecus*, -a, -um; a  
   Greek *Graecus*, -ī *m.*  
 greet *salūtō* (1)  
 grief *dolor*, *dolōris m.*; *lūctus*,  
   -ūs *m.*  
 grieve *doleō*, -ēre, *doluī*, *dolitur*  
 grove *nemus*, -oris *n.*  
 guard *custōs*, *custōdis m.*; (= *protecting force*) *praesidium*;  
   *verb servō* (1); *custōdiō*, -īre,  
   -īvī, -ītum  
 guard: off one's guard *inopināns*  
   (*gen. inopinantis*)  
 guide *dux*, *ducis m.*



## H

had rather (= *prefer*) *mālō*,  
*mālle*, *māluī*  
 hail *salūtō* (1)  
 hand *manus*, -ūs *f.*  
 hand over *trādō*, -ere, *trādidī*,  
*trāditum*  
 handsome *pulcher*, -chra, -chrum  
 Hannibal *Hannibal*, -balis *m.*  
 happen *accidō*, -ere, *accidī*; *fiō*,  
*fieri*, *factus sum*  
 happy *laetus*, -a, -um  
 harbor *portus*, -ūs *m.*  
 hard *difficilis*, -is, -e  
 hardship *labor*, *labōris m.*  
 harm *noceō*, -ēre, *nocuī*, *nocitum*  
 + *dat.*  
 harsh *dūrus*, -a, -um  
 Hasdrubal *Hasdrubal*, -balis *m.*  
 hate *ōdī*, *ōdisse*  
 have *habeō*, -ēre, *habuī*, *habitu-*  
*tum*; have in mind *cōgitō* (1)  
 head *caput*, *capitis n.*  
 hear *audiō*, -īre, -īvī, -ītum  
 heaven *caelum*, -ī *n.*  
 heavy *gravis*, -is, -e  
 heights, higher ground *loca su-*  
*periōra*, *locōrum superiōrum*  
*n. pl.*  
 help *auxilium*, -ī *n.*; *verb iuvō*,  
*-āre*, *iūvī*, *iūtum*; to give help  
*auxilium ferre*  
 Helvetian *Helvētius*, -a, -um;  
 Helvetians, Helvetii *Helvētīi*,  
*-ōrum m.*  
 here *hīc*; (= *hither*) *hūc*  
 hesitate *dubitō* (1)  
 hide *abdō*, -ere, *abdidī*, *abditum*  
 high *altus*, -a, -um

higher ground *loca superiōra*,  
*locōrum superiōrum n. pl.*  
 hill *collis*, -is *m.*  
 hinder *impediō*, -īre, -īvī, -ītum  
 hold *teneō*, -ēre, *tenuī*; *obtimeō*,  
*-ēre*, *obtinuī*, *obtentum*;  
*habeō*, -ēre, *habuī*, *habitus*;  
 hold in contempt *contemnō*,  
*-ere*, -temp*sī*, -temptum  
 home *domus*, -ūs *f.*  
 honor *honor*, *honōris m.*  
 hope *spēs*, *speī f.*; *verb spēō* (1)  
 horseman *eques*, *equitis m.*  
 hostage *obses*, *obsidis m.*  
 hostile *inimicus*, -a, -um  
 hour *hōra*, -ae *f.*  
 house *domus*, -ūs *f.*  
 how (= *in what manner*)  
*quōmodo*  
 how great, how large *quantus*,  
-i, -um  
 how many *quot (indeclinable)*  
 hunger *famēs*, *famis f.*  
 hurl *coniciō*, -ere, *coniēcī*, *con-*  
*iectum*; *mittō*, -ere, *mīsī*,  
*missum*  
 hurry *properō* (1); *contendō*,  
-i, -tendī, -tentum  
 husband *vir*, *virī m.*; *marī-*  
*tus*, -ī *m.*

## I

if *sī*; (= *whether*) *num*; if not *nisi*  
 immense *ingēns (gen. ingentis)*  
 in *in prep.* + *abl.*; in behalf of  
*prō* + *abl.*; in front of *prō* +  
*abl.*; *ante* + *acc.*; in that place  
*ibi*; in this way *ita*  
 incite *excitō* (1)

increase *trans.* augeō, -ēre, auxī,  
auctum; *intrans.* augeor,  
augērī, auctus sum  
incredible incrēdibilis, -is, -e  
inexperienced imperītus, -a, -um  
+ *gen.*  
infantry peditēs, peditum *m.*;  
peditātus, -ūs *m.*  
influence auctōritās, -tātis *f.*;  
grātia, -ae *f.*  
inform, to certiōrem facere  
inhabitant incola, -ae *m.*  
injure noceō, -ēre, nocuī, noci-  
tum + *dat.*  
inquire quaerō, quaerere,  
quaesivī, quaesitum  
intend cōgitō (1)  
into in *prep.* + *acc.*  
invite vocō (1)  
island īnsula, -ae *f.*  
Italian Italus, -ī *m.*; Italy Italia,  
-ae *f.*

## J

jar amphora, -ae *f.*  
join battle, to proelium commit-  
tere  
journey iter, itineris *n.*

## K

keen ācer, ācris, ācre  
keep silent taceō, -ēre, tacuī,  
tacitum  
kill interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fec-  
tum; necō (1); occidō, -ere,  
occidī, occisum  
kind genus, generis *n.*  
kind deed beneficium, -ī *n.*

kindly benignē  
king rēx, rēgis *m.*  
kingdom rēgnum, -ī *n.*  
know sciō, scīre, scīvī, scitum;  
cognōvī (*in perfect tenses*); not  
know nesciō, nescīre, nescīvī,  
nescitum

## L

lacking, be dēsum, deesse, dēfui  
lake lacus, ūs *m.*  
lamp lucerna, -ae *f.*  
land ager, agrī *m.*; terra, -ae *f.*  
large magnus, -a, -um; so large  
tantus, -a, -um  
last ultimus, -a, -um  
later, *adv.* postea  
law lēx, lēgis *f.*  
lay down dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī,  
-positum  
lay waste vāstō (1)  
lead dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum;  
lead across trādūcō; lead back  
redūcō; lead off dēdūcō; lead  
out ēdūcō; lead to addūcō  
leader dux, ducis *m.*  
leap down dēsiliō, -īre, -siluī,  
-sultum  
learn cognōscō, -ere, cognōvī,  
cognitum  
leave, leave behind relinquō,  
-ere, reliquī, relictum  
leave (= *depart*) discēdō, -ere,  
-cessī, -cessum; exeō, -īre,  
-iī, -itum; ēgredior, ēgredi,  
ēgressus sum  
left (= *on the left hand*) sinister,  
-tra, -trum; on the left ab  
sinistrā parte

legion **legiō**, **legiōnis** *f.*; legion in  
 light marching order **legiō**  
**expedita**  
 length, at **tandem**  
 liberality **liberālitās**, **-tātis** *f.*  
 liberty **libertās**, **-tātis** *f.*  
 lictor **lictor**, **-ōris** *m.*  
 light **lūx**, **lūcis** *f.*; *adj.* **levis**, **-is**,  
**-e**; in light marching order  
**expeditus**, **-a**, **-um**  
 like **similis**, **-is**, **-e**  
 little **parvus**, **-a**, **-um**; a little  
 (way) **paulum**; a little *with*  
*comparatives* **paulō**  
 live **vīvō**, **-ere**, **vīxī**, **vīctum**;  
 (= *dwel*) **habitō** (1)  
 load **onus**, **oneris** *n.*  
 long **longus**, **-a**, **-um**; for a long  
 time **diū**  
 lose **āmittō**, **-ere**, **āmīsī**, **āmissum**  
 loud: in a loud voice **magnā vōce**

## M

magistrate **magistrātus**, **-ūs** *m.*  
 magnificent **amplus**, **-a**, **-um**  
 maiden **virgō**, **virginis** *f.*  
 make **faciō**, **-ere**, **fēcī**, **factum**;  
 make an end, to **finem** (+  
*gen.*) **facere**; make war on, to  
**bellum inferre** + *dat.*  
 man **vir**, **virī** *m.*; **homō**, **hominis**  
*m.*; young man **adulēscēns**,  
**-entis** *m.*  
 manage **administrō** (1)  
 manner **modus**, **-ī** *m.*  
 many **multi**, **-ae**, **-a**; very many  
**plūrimī**, **-ae**, **-a**; how many  
 quot; so many **tot**  
 march **iter**, **itineris** *n.*; forced  
 march **iter magnum**; on the  
 march in **itinere**; *verb* **iter**  
**facere**

market place **forum**, **-ī** *n.*  
 married woman **mātrōna**, **-ae** *f.*  
 marsh **palūs**, **palūdis** *f.*  
 master **magister**, **-trī** *m.*; master  
 of horse **magister equitum**  
 matron **mātrōna**, **-ae** *f.*  
 matter **rēs**, **reī** *f.*  
 means **modus**, **-ī** *m.*  
 meanwhile **intereā**; **interim**  
 meet **occurrō**, **-ere**, **occurri**, **oc-**  
**cursum** + *dat.*  
 mention **dēmōnstrō** (1)  
 messenger **nūntius**, **-ī** *m.*  
 middle, in the midst of **medius**,  
**-a**, **-um**  
 midnight **media nox**, **mediae**  
**noctis** *f.*  
 mile **mille passūs**; miles **mīlia**  
**passuum**  
 mind: have in mind **cōgitō** (1)  
 mindful **memor** (*gen.* **memoris**)  
 + *gen.*

mine **meus**, **mea**, **meum**  
 missile **tēlum**, **-ī** *n.*  
 money **pecūnia**, **-ae** *f.*  
 moreover **autem** (*postpositive*);  
**praeterea**  
 mother **māter**, **mātris** *f.*  
 mountain **mōns**, **montis** *m.*  
 mouth **ōs**, **ōris** *n.*  
 move **moveō**, **-ēre**, **mōvī**, **mōtum**;  
 move back **removeō**  
 much **multus**, **-a**, **-um**; by much  
*with comparative* **multō**; *adv.*  
**multum**  
 must: *see* Sections 189-192  
 my **meus**, **mea**, **meum**

## N

name **nōmen**, **nōminis** *n.*  
 name (= *appoint*) **dīcō**, **-ere**,  
**dīxī**, **dictum**

native barbarus, -ī *m.*  
 naval nāvālis, -is, -e  
 near prope, apud *preps.* + *acc.*  
 nearest proximus, -a, -um  
 neighboring finitimus, -a, -um  
 neighbors finitimī, -ōrum *m.*  
 neither *adj.* neuter, neutra, neutrum; neither . . . nor neque . . . neque  
 Nervii Nervii, -ōrum *m.*  
 never numquam  
 nevertheless tamen  
 new novus, -a, -um  
 night nox, noctis *f.*; by night noctū; at nightfall sub noctem  
 no *adj.* nūllus, -a, -um  
 noble nōbilis, -is, -e  
 noon merīdiēs, -diēi *m.*  
 no one nēmō (*gen.* nūllius), *m.*  
 nor nec, neque  
 not nōn; not even nē . . . quidem; not only . . . but also nōn solum . . . sed etiam; not yet nōndum  
 nothing nihil (*indeclinable*), *n.*  
 notice animadvertō, -ere, -verti, -versum  
 number numerus, -ī *m.*  
 numerous crēber, crēbra, crēbrum

○

obey pāreō, -ēre, pārui, pāritum + *dat.*  
 obtain adipīscor, adipīscī, adeptus sum; nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus sum; obtain possession of potior, potīrī, potītus sum + *abl.*  
 occupied occupātus, -a, -um + *in* + *abl.*

of (= about, concerning) dē + *abl.*  
 off one's guard inopināns (*gen.* inopinantis)  
 often saepe; so often totiēs (totiēns)  
 on in *prep.* + *abl.*; on account of ob, propter *preps.* + *acc.*; on all sides undique; on this side of citrā *prep.* + *acc.*  
 once, at statim  
 one ūnus, -a, -um; one . . . another alius . . . alius; the one . . . the other alter . . . alter  
 only ūnus, -a, -um; solum, -a, -um; *adv.* modo; with numerals omnīnō  
 open aperiō, -īre, aperui, apertum  
 opinion sententia, -ae *f.*  
 opportunity facultās, -tātis *f.*; occasiō, occasiōnis, *f.*; give an opportunity facultātem dare, potestātem facere  
 or aut; or at least vel  
 orator ōrātor, ōrātōris *m.*  
 order imperō (1) + *dat.*; iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum + *acc.*; without Caesar's orders in-iussū Caesaris  
 other alius, alia, aliud; the other (*of two*) alter, altera, alterum; the others ceterī, -ae, -a; reliquī, -ae, -a; of others *adj.* aliēnus, -a, -um  
 ought dēbeō, -ēre, dēbui, dēbitum; see Sections 189-191  
 our noster, nostra, nostrum; our men nostrī, -ōrum *m.*  
 out of ē, ex *prep.* + *abl.*  
 outer exterior, exterius  
 over super *prep.* + *acc.*; (= across) trāns *prep.* + *acc.*



P

palace *rēgia*, -ae f.  
 panic terror, *terrōris m.*  
 parent *parēns*, *parentis m. and f.*  
 part *pars*, *partis f.*  
 Parthian Parthus, -a, -um; the  
   Parthians *Parthī*, -ōrum m.  
 pass over *superō* (1)  
 path *via*, -ae f.  
 pay attention to, pay heed to  
   *operam dō*, dare, *dedī*, *datum*  
 peace *pāx*, *pācis f.*  
 penalty *poena*, -ae f.; to pay the  
   penalty *poenās dare*  
 people *populus*, -ī m.; common  
   people *plēbs*, *plēbis f.*  
 perceive *cōspiciō*, -ere, -*spēxī*,  
   -*spectum*; *intellegō*, -ere, -*lēxī*,  
   -*lēctum*; *sentiō*, -īre, *sēnsī*,  
   *sēnsus*; *videō*, -ēre, *vīdī*,  
   *vīsum*  
 peril *periculum*, -ī n.  
 perish *pereō*, -īre, -īi, -*itum*  
 permit *patior*, *patī*, *passus sum*;  
   it is permitted, permission is  
   granted, one has permission  
   *licet*, *licēre*, *licuit and licitum*  
   *est*  
 persuade *persuādeō*, -ēre, -*suāsī*,  
   -*suāsum + dat.*  
 pitch (a camp) *pōnō*, -ere, *posuī*,  
   *positum*  
 pity *miser cordia*, -ae f.  
 place *locus*, -ī m.; pl. *loca*, -ōrum  
   *n.*; verb *collocō* (1); *pōnō*, -ere,  
   *posuī*, *positum*; in that place  
   *ibi*  
 plan *cōsiliū*, -ī n.  
 plenty *cōpia*, -ae f.  
 plunder *praeda*, -ae f.

point out *mōnstrō* (1); *dēmōn-*  
*strō* (1); *ostendō*, -ere, *ostendī*,  
   *ostentum or ostēsum*  
 poor pauper (*gen. pauperis*);  
   (= wretched) miser, -era,  
   -erum  
 possess *obtineō*, -ēre, -*tinuī*,  
   -*tentum*  
 possession: obtain possession of  
   *potior*, *potīrī*, *potitus sum +*  
   *abl.*  
 possessions *neut. pl. of meus*,  
   *tuus*, *noster*, *vester*, *suus*  
 post *dispōnō*, -ere, -*posuī*,  
   -*positum*  
 power *potestās*, -*tātis f.*  
 powerful *potēns* (*gen. potentis*)  
 praetor *praetor*, *praetōris m.*  
 praise *laus*, *laudis f.*; verb  
   *laudō* (1)  
 pray *orō* (1); *precor*, *precārī*,  
   *precātus sum*  
 prefer *mālō*, *mālle*, *mālui*  
 prepare *parō* (1)  
 present *dōnum*, -ī n.; *adj. prae-*  
   *sēns* (*gen. praesentis*); be  
   present *adsum*, *adesse*, *adfui*  
 presently *mox*  
 prevent *prohibeō*, -ēre, -*hibuī*,  
   -*hibitum*  
 previous superior, *superius*  
 prisoner *captīvus*, -ī m.  
 procure *parō* (1)  
 promise *polliceor*, *pollicērī*, *polli-*  
   *citus sum*; *prōmittō*, -ere,  
   -*mīsī*, -*missum*  
 property *bona*, -ōrum *n. pl.*; *rēs*,  
   *rei f.*  
 province *prōvincia*, -ae f.  
 provisions *rēs frūmentāria*, *rei*  
   *frūmentāriae f.*

Psyche Psýchē, -ēs *f.*  
 public públicus, -a, -um  
 punish pūniō, -īre, -ivī, -itum;  
 ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum  
 put in charge or command of  
 praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum  
 put to flight fugō (1)

## Q

quantity cōpia, -ae *f.*  
 queen rēgina, -ae *f.*  
 quickly celeriter; brevī

## R

raise tollō, -ere, sustulī,  
 sublātum  
 rampart vāllum, -ī *n.*  
 rank ōrdō, ōrdinis *m.*  
 rapidly celeriter  
 rather, had mālō, mälle, mālui  
 reach perveniō, -īre, -vēnī,  
 -ventum *with ad or in + acc.*  
 read legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum  
 ready parātus, -a, -um  
 realize intellegō, -ere, -lēxī,  
 -lēctum  
 rear tergum, -ī *n.*; (= *rear guard*)  
 novissimum agmen; in the  
 rear ā tergō; post tergum  
 reason causa, -ae *f.*; for many  
 reasons multis dē causīs; for  
 what reason quā dē causā; for  
 what reasons quibus dē causīs  
 receive accipiō, -ere, -cēpī,  
 -ceptum  
 reconnoiter explōrō (1)  
 recover, to, *intrans.* sē recipere  
 refuse nōlō, nōlle, nōlui  
 reign rēgnō (1)  
 reinforcements auxilia, -ōrum *n.*

rejoice gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus  
 sum  
 relatives propinquī, -ōrum *m.*  
 remain maneō, -ēre, mānsī,  
 mānsūm  
 remember memoriā (+ *gen.*)  
 retineō, -ēre, retinui, reten-  
 tum; meminī, meminisse  
 remove auferō, auferre, abstulī,  
 ablātum; removeō, -ēre,  
 -mōvī, -mōtum; tollō, -ere,  
 sustulī, sublātum  
 repair reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum  
 reply respondeō, -ēre, -spondī,  
 -spōnsum  
 report dēferō, dēferre, dētulī,  
 dēlātum; perferō, -ferre, -tulī,  
 -lātum; referō, referre, rettulī,  
 relātum  
 request petō, -ere, petivī, petitum  
 rescue ēripiō, -ere, ēripui, ērep-  
 tum  
 resist resistō, -ere, restitī + *dat.*  
 resolve statuō, -ere, statui,  
 statūtum  
 rest: the rest of reliquus, -a, -um;  
 the rest cēterī, -ae, -a;  
 reliquī, -ae, -a  
 restore reddō, -ere, reddidī, red-  
 ditum; restituō, -ere, -stitui,  
 -stitūtum; reficiō, -ere, -fēcī,  
 -fectum  
 retire, retreat pedem referō, re-  
 ferre, rettulī, relātum; recipiō,  
 -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum *with re-*  
*flexive*  
 return redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum;  
 revertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum  
 (*perfect tenses*); revertor, re-  
 vertī, reversus sum (*present,*  
*imperfect, and future tenses*)

revenue vectigal, -gālis *n.*  
 revolt dēficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectum  
 revolution novae rēs, novārum  
   rērum *f. pl.*  
 reward praemium, -ī *n.*  
 Rhine Rhēnus, -ī *m.*  
 rich dīves (*gen. divitis*)  
 right (= *on the right hand*)  
   dexter, dextra, dextrum; *on*  
   the right ā dextrā parte  
 right up to usque ad + *acc.*  
 rise orior, orīrī, ortus sum  
 river flūmen, flūminis *n.*  
 Roman Rōmānus, -ī *m.*; *adj.*  
   Rōmānus, -a, -um  
 Rome Rōma, -ae *f.*  
 rouse concitō (1)  
 ruin perdō, -ere, -didi, -ditum  
 run currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum;  
   run away effugiō, -ere, effūgī;  
   run together concurrō, -ere,  
   concurrī, concursum  
 rush concurrō, -ere, concurrī,  
   concursum

## S

Sabines Sabīnī, -ōrum *m.*  
 sacred sacer, sacra, sacrum  
 sacrifice sacrificō (1)  
 sad trīstis, -is, -e; maestus, -a,  
   -um  
 safe incolumis, -is, -e; tūtus, -a,  
   -um  
 safety salūs, salūtis *f.*  
 sail nāvigō (1); set sail nāvem  
   solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum  
 sailor nauta, -ae *m.*  
 same idem, eadem, idem; same  
   ... as idem ... quī  
 save servō (1)

say dīcō, -ere, dixī, dictum;  
   say ... not negō (1)  
 scarcely vix; aegrē  
 scarcity inopia, -ae *f.*  
 Scipio Scīpiō, Scīpiōnis *m.*  
 scout explōrātor, -tōris *m.*  
 sea mare, maris *n.*  
 season tempus (*temporis n.*) annī  
 secretly clam  
 see videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum; cōn-  
   spiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum  
 seek quaerō, -ere, quaesivī,  
   quaesitum; petō, -ere, petivī,  
   petitum  
 seem videor, vidērī, vīsus sum  
 seize occupō (1)  
 senate senātus, -ūs *m.*  
 senate house cūria, -ae *f.*  
 senator senātor, -tōris *m.*; sena-  
   tors patrēs cōscriptī, patrum  
   cōscriptōrum *m.*  
 send mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum;  
   send away dīmittō; send back  
   remittō; send out ēmittō; send  
   under the yoke sub iugum  
   mittō  
 separate dīvidō, -ere, -visī,  
   -vīsum  
 serious gravis, -is, -e; seriously  
   graviter  
 serpent serpēns, -entis *m. and f.*  
 service ūsus, ūsūs *m.*; be of serv-  
   ice ūsuī esse  
 set free liberō (1)  
 set out proficiscor, -ī, profectus  
   sum  
 set sail nāvem solvō, -ere, solvī,  
   solūtum  
 seven septem  
 several complūrēs, -plūra  
   (*gen. pl. complūrium*)

severely *graviter*  
 sharp *ācer, ācris, ācre*  
 shatter *frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum*  
 shield *scūtum, -ī n.*  
 ship *nāvis, -is f.*; go on board  
   ship *nāvem cōnscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēsum*  
 shoot *mittō, -ere, misī, missum*  
 shop *taberna, -ae f.*  
 shore *lītus, litoris n.*; *ōra, -ae f.*  
 short *brevis, -is, -e*  
 should: *see* Section 189  
 shout *clāmor, clāmōris m.*  
 show *spectāculum, -ī n.*; *verb*  
   *mōnstrō (1); ostendō, -ere, ostendī, ostentum or ostēsum*  
 Sicily *Sicilia, -ae f.*  
 side *latus, lateris n.*; on all sides  
   *ex omnibus partibus*; on one  
   side *ūnā ex parte*; on this side  
   of *citrā prep. + acc.*  
 siege *obsidiō, -ōnis f.*  
 sight *cōspectus, -ūs m.*; catch  
   sight of *cōspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum*; come into sight in  
   *cōspectum veniō*  
 signal *signum, -ī n.*; signal for  
   battle *signum proeliī*  
 silent, be, keep silent *taceō, -ēre, tacuī, tacitum*  
 silver *argentum, -ī n.*  
 since *cum*  
 sister *soror, sorōris f.*  
 six *sex*  
 sixteen *sēdecim*  
 skilled, skillful *perītus, -a, -um*  
 sky *caelum, -ī n.*  
 slave *servus, -ī m.*  
 slay *interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fec-tum; necō (1)*

sleep *dormiō, -īre, dormīvī, dormītum*  
 smoke *fūmus, -ī m.*  
 so *tam, sīc, ita*; so great, so large  
   *tantus, -a, -um*; so many *tot, indec.*; so often *totiēs (totiēns)*  
 Socrates *Sōcratēs, -is m.*  
 soldier *mīles, mīlitis m.*  
 some *nōnnūllī, -ae, -a*; someone  
   *aliquis; quis; something aliquid; quid; some . . . others aliī . . . aliī*  
 son *filius, -ī m.*  
 soon *mox*; as soon as *simul ac, simul atque, cum primum*  
 sort, what sort of *quālis, -is -e*  
 Spaniard *Hispānus, -ī m.*;  
   Spanish *Hispanus, -a, -um*  
 spare *parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsum + dat.*  
 speak *loquor, loquī, locūtus sum*  
 spear *hasta, -ae f.*  
 speech *ōrātiō, -ōnis f.*; to deliver  
   a speech *ōrātiōnem habēre*  
 speed *celeritās, -tātis f.*  
 spirit *animus, -ī m.*  
 spot *locus, -ī m.*  
 staff officer *lēgātus, -ī m.*  
 stand *stō, stāre, steti, statum*  
 standard *signum, -ī n.*  
 state *civitās, -tātis f.*; *rēs pública, reī publicae f.*  
 station *collocō (1)*  
 statue *statua, -ae f.*  
 stay *maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mān-sum; moror, morārī, morātus sum*  
 stick *haereō, -ēre, haesī, haesum*  
 storm *tempestās, -tātis f.*  
 story *fābula, -ae f.*  
 street *via, viae f.*



strength *virēs, virium f.*  
 strengthen *cōfirmō (1)*  
 strive *nītor, nīti, nīxus or nīsus*  
     *sum*  
 strong *fīrmus, -a, -um; validus,*  
     *-a, -um*  
 struggle *certāmen, -minis n.*  
 such *tālis, -is, -e; such great*  
     *tantus, -a, -um; such (= so*  
     *great) tantus*  
 suddenly *subitō*  
 sufficient *satis*  
 suitable *idōneus, -a, -um; aptus,*  
     *-a, -um*  
 suited *aptus, -a, -um*  
 Sulla *Sulla, -ae m.*  
 summer *aestās, -tātis f.*  
 sun *sōl, sōlis m.*  
 sunset *occāsus (-ūs m.) sōlis*  
 supply *cōpia, -ae f.; supply of*  
     *grain rēs frūmentāria, rei frū-*  
     *mentāriae f.*  
 surely *certē*  
 surpass *superō (1); praestō, -āre,*  
     *-stiti, -stitum or -stātum*  
 surrender *dēditō, -ōnis f.; verb*  
     *trans. dēdō, -ere, dēdidi, dēdi-*  
     *tum; trādō, -ere, trādidī,*  
     *trāditum; intrans. mē dēdō*  
 surround *circumveniō, -īre,*  
     *-vēnī, -ventum*  
 suspect *suspīcor, -ārī, suspicātus*  
     *sum*  
 swear *iūrō (1)*  
 swift *celer, -eris, -ere*  
 swiftly *celeriter adv.*  
 Switzerland *terra Helvētia f.*  
 sword *gladius, -ī m.*

T

take *capiō, -ere, cēpi, captum;*  
     take away *tollō, -ere, sustulī,*  
     *sublātum; auferō, auferre, abs-*  
     *tulī, ablātum; take place*  
     *geror, gerī; take up arms, to*  
     *arma capere*  
 Tanaquil *Tanaquil, -ilis f.*  
 task *opus, operis n.*  
 tear *lacrima, -ae f.*  
 tell (*a story*) *nārrō (1)*  
 temple *templum, -ī n.*  
 ten *decem*  
 tenth *decimus, -a, -um*  
 terrify *terreō, -ēre, terruī, terri-*  
     *tum; perterreō*  
 territory, territories *fīnēs, finium*  
     *m. pl.*  
 than *quam*  
 that *ille, illa, illud; is, ea, id*  
 then *tum; deinde; inde*  
 there *ibi; (= thither) eō*  
 therefore *itaque; igitur (postposi-*  
     *tive); ergō*  
 thereupon *deinde*  
 think *arbitror, -ārī, arbitrātus*  
     *sum; exīstimō (1); (= judge)*  
     *iūdicō (1); (= reflect) cōgitō (1)*  
 third *tertius, -a, -um*  
 this *hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id*  
 three *trēs, trēs, tria*  
 three hundred *trecentī, -ae, -a*  
 through *per + acc.*  
 throw *iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactum;*  
     *coniciō, -ere, coniecī, coniec-*  
     *tum; throw away abiciō, -ere,*  
     *abiēcī, abiectum; throw down*  
     *dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum*  
 Tiber *Tiberis, -is m.*

time *tempus, temporis n.*; for a long time *diū*  
 today *hodiē*  
 toil labor, *labōris m.*  
 tomorrow *crās*  
 too *quoque*  
 top of *summus, -a, -um*  
 touch *tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctum*  
 toward *ad + acc.*  
 tower *turris, turris f.*  
 town *oppidum, -i n.*  
 trader *mercātor, -ōris m.*  
 train *exerceō, -ēre, -cui, -citum*  
 transport *trānsportō (1)*  
 trap *insidiae, -ārum f. pl.*  
 treat with, to *agere (agō, agere, ēgī, āctum) cum + abl.*  
 treaty *foedus, foederis n.*  
 trench *fossa, -ae f.*  
 tribe *gēns, gentis f.*; *nātiō, nātiōnis f.*  
 troops *cōpiae, -ārum f.*  
 true *vērus, -a, -um*  
 trust *cōfidō, -ere, cōnfisus sum + dat.*  
 trustworthy *fidēlis, -is, -e*  
 try *cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum; temptō (1)*  
 turn *vertō, -ere, vertī, versum; convertō; turn away āvertō; turn back revertō (chiefly in perfect tenses); revertor, revertī, reversus sum (chiefly in present, imperfect, and future tenses); turn and flee, to terga vertere*  
 twelve *duodecim*  
 twenty *vigintī*  
 two *duo, duae, duo*  
 type genus, *generis n.*

## U

under *sub + acc. and abl.*  
 unexpectedly *imprōvisō*  
 unfavorable *aliēnus, -a, -um*  
 unfriendly *inimicus, -a, -um*  
 unless *nisi*  
 unlike *dissimilis, -is, -e*  
 unmindful *immemor + gen.*  
 unskilled *imperitus, -a, -um*  
 unwilling, be *nōlō, nolle, nōlui*  
 urge *hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum; cohortor; suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsum + dat.*  
 use *utor, ūtī, ūsus sum + abl.*  
 useful *utilis, -is, -e*  
 useless *inutilis, -is, -e*  
 utmost *summus, -a, -um*

## V

valley *vallēs, vallis f.*  
 valor *virtūs, virtūtis f.*  
 van, vanguard *primum agmen, primī agminis n.*  
 venture *audeō, -ēre, ausus sum*  
 Venus *Venus, Veneris f.*  
 Verres *Verrēs, Verris m.*  
 victory *victōria, -ae f.*; to win a victory *victōriam reportāre*  
 vigor *vīrēs, vīrium f. pl.*  
 vigorous *ācer, ācris, ācre*  
 voice *vōx, vōcis f.*; in a loud voice *magnā vōce*

## W

wage *gerō, -ere, gessi, gestum*  
 wait *maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūm; moror, morārī, morātus sum*

walk *ambulō* (1)  
 wall *mūrus*, -ī *m.*; (*of a camp*)  
*vāllum*, -ī *n.*; (*city walls*)  
*moenia*, *moenium n. pl.*  
 wander *errō* (1); *vagor*, *vagārī*,  
*vagātus sum*  
 war *bellum*, -ī *n.*; art of war *rēs*  
*militāris*, *rei militāris f.*; to  
 make war on *bellum inferre* +  
*dat.*  
 warn *moneō*, -ēre, *monuī*,  
*monitum*  
 waste: lay waste *vāstō* (1)  
 watch *vigilia*, -ae *f.*; *verb*  
*spectō* (1)  
 water *aqua*, -ae *f.*  
 way (= *road*) *iter*, *itineris n.*;  
*via*, *viae f.*; (= *manner*)  
*modus*, -ī *m.*; *ratio*, *rationis f.*;  
 in this way *sic*, *ita*  
 wealth *dīvitiae*, -ārum *f. pl.*  
 weary *dēfessus*, -a, -um  
 weather *tempestās*, -tātis *f.*  
 weep *lacrimō* (1)  
 weigh (*anchor*) *tollō*, -ere, *sus-*  
*tulī*, *sublātum*  
 welcome *accipiō*, -ere, -cēpī,  
 -ceptum  
 well *bene*  
 what sort of *quālis*, -is, -e  
 when *ubi*, *cum*; *interr.* *quandō*  
 whence *unde*  
 where (= *in what place*) *ubi*;  
 (= *to what place*) *quō*  
 whether (*in indirect question*)  
*num*  
 which (*of two*) *uter*, *utra*, *utrum*  
 while *dum*  
 who (*rel. pron.*) *quī*, *quae*, *quod*;  
 (*interr. pron.*) *quis*, *quid*  
 whole *tōtus*, -a, -um

why *cūr*, *quam ob rem*  
 wide *lātus*, -a, -um  
 wife *uxor*, *uxōris f.*; *coniūnx*,  
*coniugis f.*  
 willing, be *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*  
 wind *ventus*, -ī *m.*  
 wine *vīnum*, -ī *n.*  
 wing (*of an army*) *cornū*, *cornūs n.*  
 winter *hiems*, *hiemis f.*  
 winter camp, winter quarters  
*hīberna*, -ōrum *n.*  
 wish *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*; *cupiō*,  
 -ere, *cupivī*, *cupitum*  
 with *cum* + *abl.*  
 withdraw (= *go away*) *discēdō*,  
 -ere, -cessī, -cessum; *excēdō*;  
 (= *lead away*) *dēducō*, -ere,  
 -dūxī, -ductum; *removeō*,  
 -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum  
 within *intrā* + *acc.*  
 without *sine* + *abl.*; without  
 orders of *iniussū* + *gen.*  
 withstand *sustineō*, -ēre, *sus-*  
*tinuī*, *sustentum*  
 woman *fēmina*, -ae *f.*; *mulier*,  
*mulieris f.*; married woman  
*mātrōna*, -ae *f.*  
 wonder, wonder at *mīror*, *mīrārī*,  
*mīrātus sum*  
 wood *silva*, -ae *f.*  
 word *verbum*, -ī *n.*; bring word  
*afferō*, *afferre*, *attulī*, *allātum*  
 work *opus*, *operis n.*; *verb*  
*labōrō* (1)  
 wound *vulnus*, *vulneris n.*; *verb*  
*vulnerō* (1)  
 wretched *miser*, *misera*,  
*miserum*  
 write *scribō*, -ere, *scripsī*,  
*scriptum*  
 wrong, wrongdoing *iniūria*, -ae *f.*

# Y

year **annus**, **-ī m.**

yet (= *however*) **tamen**; not yet  
**nōdum**

yield **cēdō**, **-ere**, **cessī**, **cessum**

yoke **iugum**, **-ī n.**

young man **adulēscēns**, **adulē-**  
**centis** (*gen. pl. adulēscēntium*)  
*m.*; **iuvenis**, **iuvenis** (*gen. pl.*  
**iuvenum**) *m.*

your (*of one person*) **tuus**, **tua**,  
**tuum**; (*of more than one per-*  
*son*) **vester**, **vestra**, **vestrum**

youth: *see* young man



# Index

## Lessons in Latin Grammar

Numbers 1 to 195 refer to sections of the Grammar (Lessons 1-26); numbers 196 to 376 refer to sections of the Appendix; *fn.* indicates footnote.

- ablative case
  - absolute, 60, 243
  - accompaniment, 230
  - agent, 232
  - cause, 242
  - comparison, 234
  - description, 164, 237
  - manner, 179, 236
  - means, 229
  - measure of difference, 235
  - motion from, with names of towns, 240
  - place in which, 238
  - respect, 231
  - separation, 136, 239
  - time when, 40 (b), 241
  - time within which, 40 (c), 241
  - way by which, 229
  - with *potior* and *ūtor*, 229
  - with prepositions, 5, 233
- accidit ut*, 148
- accompaniment, 230
- accusative case
  - direct object, 222
  - duration of time, 40 (a), 227
  - extent of space, 41, 226
  - motion to, with names of towns, 225
  - predicate, 30, 223
  - subject of infinitive, 66, 67, 69, 228
  - time how long, 40 (a), 227
  - with prepositions, 5, 224
- active periphrastic, 59 (c, i)
- adjectives
  - agreement of, 28, 201, 202
  - comparison, 26, 309; of *-er* adjectives, 26; of *-ilis* adjectives, 26; of irregular adjectives, 26
  - consonant stems, third declension, 308
  - dative with, 220
  - declension: of comparatives, 310; of first and second declension, 305; of third declension, 307; of nine irregular, 306
  - genitive with, 85, 212
  - indefinite *quī*, 124, 125, 322
  - interrogative, 54, 320
  - irregular, nine, 306
  - numerals, cardinal and ordinal, 313
  - possessive, 50, 260
  - used as nouns, 261
- adverbs
  - comparison, 36, 312
  - formation, 35
  - of place, 135
- aegrē*, comparison of, 100
- agent
  - ablative, 232
  - dative, 190, 221
- agreement
  - of adjectives, 28, 201-202

- of noun in apposition, 203
- of participles, 59, 201-202
- of relative pronoun, 51, 248
- of verb, 196-200
- aiō**, 376
- aliquis**, 174, 254
- alius**, 174, 306
- alter**, 174, 306
- animal**, declension of, 301
- antequam**, 18 (a), 161, 162, 265, 267, 269
- anticipatory clauses, 162
- apodosis, 169
- apposition, 203
- augeō**, 94

**bōs**, declension of 127, 302

- cardinal numerals, 313
- case: *see* nominative, genitive, etc.
- causā**, 149, 183, 184, 213
- causal clauses, 18 (c), 271, 272
- certiōrem facere**, 27
- cēteri**, 28, 174
- chemical symbols, 101
- classification of tenses, 103
- collocō**, 132
- commands
  - direct, 10 (b)
  - indirect, 104, 284
  - negative, 10 (c)
- comparative adjectives, declension of, 310
- comparison
  - of adjectives, 26, 309
  - of adverbs, 36, 312
- complementary infinitive, 68, 97, 104, 131, 293 (b)
- concessive clauses, 18 (c), 273, 274

- conditional sentences
  - apodosis defined, 169
  - future, 169 B, 276, 277
  - protasis defined, 169
  - simple, 169 A, 275
  - untrue, 169 C, 278
- coordinating relative, 51, 248
- cum**
  - accompaniment, 230
  - enclitic, 48
  - conjunction, syntax of, 154, 155, 156, 266, 268, 272, 274
- cum primum** clauses, 18 (a), 161, 265, 267

- dative case
  - agent, 190, 221
  - double, 219
  - indirect object, 214
  - interest, 131, 218
  - possession, 4
  - purpose, 217
  - with adjectives, 220
  - with compound verbs, 216
  - with special verbs, 215
- declensions
  - of adjectives: comparatives, 310; first and second declension, 305; third declension, 307; nine irregular, 306
  - of nouns: first, 298; second, 299; third, 300, 301; fourth, 303; fifth, 304
- defective verbs, 375
- demonstrative pronouns
  - hic**, 52, 249, 316
  - idem**, 53, 250, 316
  - ille**, 52, 249, 316
  - is**, 52, 249, 316
- deponent verbs, 12, 353-368
- derivatives: *see* word study

derivatives of

**cadō** and **caedō**, 172

**capiō**, 57

**cēdō**, 72

**faciō**, 57

**ferō**, 120

gerundive, 187

description

ablative of, 164, 237

genitive of, 164, 209

**dēsum**, 176

**diēs**, declension of, 304

direct commands, 10 (b)

direct questions, 19 (a-d), 109

discourse, indirect, 178

**domus**, 42; declension of, 303

**dōnec** clauses, 265

**dum** clauses, 18 (b), 161, 162,  
163, 263, 264, 265, 267, 270

**dummodo**, 163

**duo**, declension of, 314

duty, how expressed, 189

**ego**, declension of, 315

emphatic pronoun, 53, 251, 317

enclitic, 19 (d), 48, 110

**eō** and compounds, 17 (c), 130,  
371

**etsī** clauses, 273

**ex**, equal to partitive, 92

**exercitus**, declension of, 303

expressions of place: *see* place

expressions of time: *see* time

extent of space, 41, 226

fearing, constructions with verbs  
of, 131, 288

**ferō**, 114, 373; and compounds,  
115

**fiō**, 146, 374

**fit ut**, 148

future participle active, 59 (c)

future perfect, use of, 18, 161

genitive case

of description, 164, 209

objective, 85, 211

partitive, 38, 92, 207, 208

possessive, 206

subjective, 85, 210

with adjectives, 85, 212

with **causā**, 149, 213; with  
**grātiā**, 213

gerund, 183, 184, 295

gerundive, 184, 296

**grātiā**, 213

**hic** (pronoun), 52, 316

historical infinitive, 293 (d)

hoping, promising, swearing,

construction with verbs of, 69

**hostis**, declension of, 301

i-stem nouns, 301

**īdem**, 53, 250, 316

**ille**, 52, 249, 316

imperative, 10 (b), 347, 348, 364

impersonal passive, 193

**īmus**, 28, 262

**in-**, prefix, 152

indefinite adjective **quī**, 124,  
125, 322

indefinite pronoun **quis**, 123,  
124, 125, 253, 321

indirect command or request,  
104, 284

indirect discourse, 178

indirect object, 214

indirect question, 110, 283

indirect statement, 69

infinitive

accusative and, 69

active forms, 65

- as direct object of verb, 67
- as subject of verb, 66, 293 (a)
- complementary, 68, 97, 104, 131, 293 (b)
- deponent forms, 65
- future passive, 69
- historical, 293 (d)
- in indirect statements, 69, 293 (c)
- passive forms, 65
- time expressed by, 69
- with verbs of fearing, 131
- "inform," 27
- inquam**, 376
- interest, dative of, 131, 218
- interrogative adjectives, 54, 320
- interrogative particles, 19 (d)
- interrogative pronouns, 54, 252, 319
- interrogative words, 19 (c)
- ipse**, 53, 251, 317
- irregular adjectives, nine, 306
- is**, 52, 249, 316
- ita**, 147
- iubeō**, 104
- Iuppiter**, declension of, 302
- iūrō**, 69
- 
- lentus**, suffix, 95
- liberō**, ablative with, 136
- licet**, 116
- locative case, 2 (c), 42 (c), 133, 245
- 
- mālō**, 97, 98, 372
- manner, ablative of, 179, 236
- mare**, declension of, 301
- means, ablative of, 229
- measure of difference, ablative of, 235
- medius**, 28, 262
- 
- meminī**, 117
- meus**, 50, 260
- mille, milia**, 39
- minor**, declension of, 310
- modal verbs, 68
- modo**, 163
- mōns**, declension of, 301
- moods,
  - conditional, summary of, 169
  - imperative, 10 (b), 347, 364
  - indicative, 74
  - subjunctive: *see* subjunctive mood
- motion to and from, with names of towns, 42, 225, 240
- 
- nāvis**, declension of, 301
- ne**, in indirect question, 110
- ne**, sign of a question, 19 (d)
- nē**
  - after verbs of fearing, 131
  - in clauses of purpose, 122, 125
  - in indirect commands, 104
  - in wishes, 84, 91
  - with hortatory subjunctive, 76
  - with jussive subjunctive, 77
  - with optative subjunctive, 84, 91
- necesse est**, 192
- necessity, how expressed, 189
- negative command, 10 (c)
- negō**, 69
- nēmō**, 174, 325
- neuter**, 174
- nihil**, 174
- nōlō**, 97, 98, 372
- nominative case
  - as subject, 204
  - predicate, 205
- nōnne**, 19 (d)
- nōnnūlli**, 174, 255

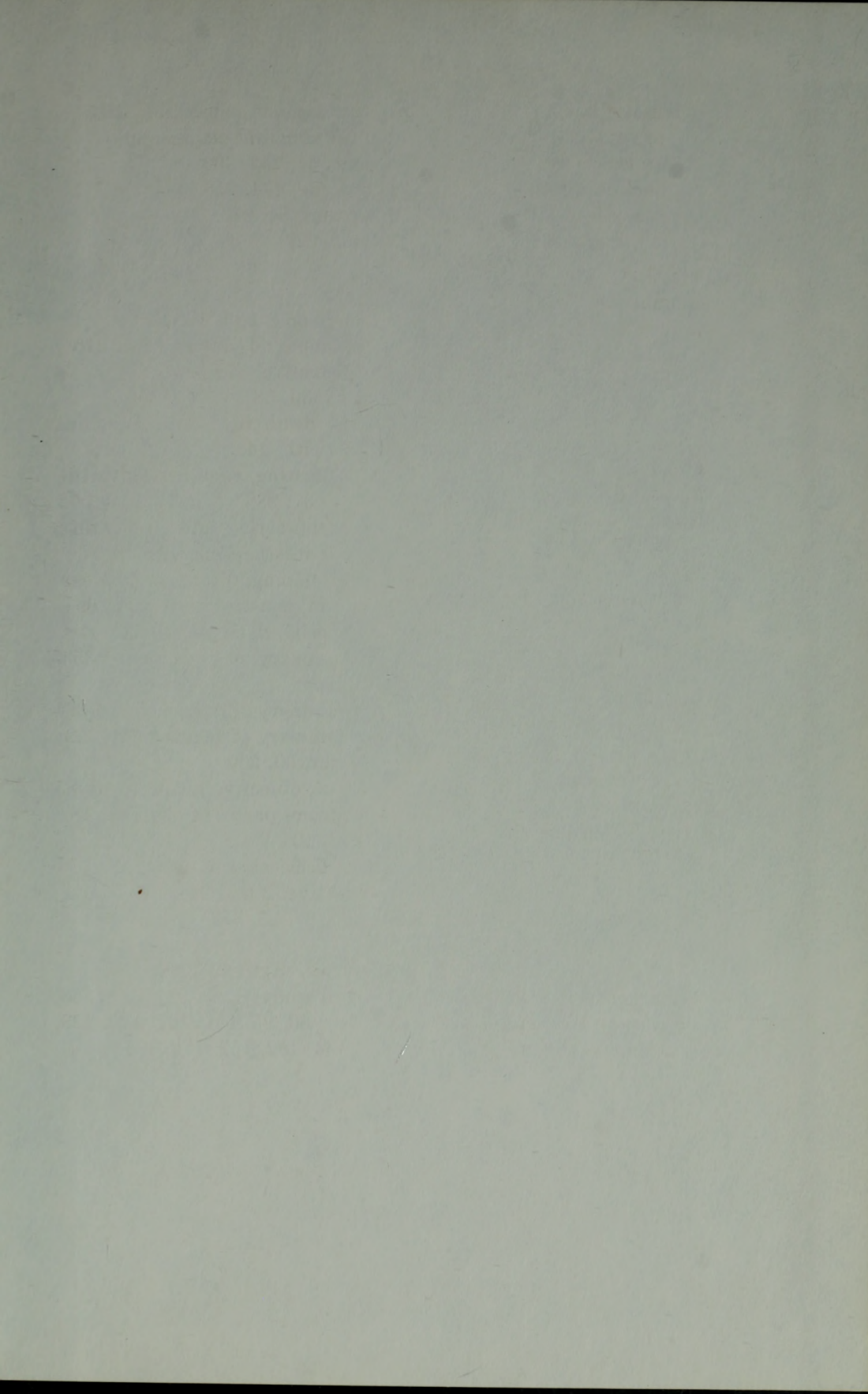


- noster**, 50, 260  
**nostrī**, objective genitive, 48, 85  
**nostrum**, partitive genitive, 48  
**nouns**  
     adjectives used as, 261  
     in apposition, 203  
     i-stem, 301  
     participles used as, 59  
**nūllus**, 174  
**num**  
     in direct question, 19 (d)  
     in indirect question, 110  
**numerals**  
     cardinals, 313  
     mille, mīlia, 39  
     ordinals, 313  
  
**object**, indirect, 214  
**obligation**, how expressed, 189  
**ōdī**, 117, 375  
**omnis**, 28, 262  
**oportet**, 191  
**ordinal numerals**, 313  
  
**participles**  
     agreement of, 201-202  
     definition of, 59  
     equivalents for, 59  
     future active, 59 (c)  
     of deponents, 59  
     perfect passive, 59 (b)  
     present active, 59 (a), 311  
     used as nouns, 59  
**particles**, interrogative, 19 (d)  
**passive**, impersonal, 193  
**passive periphrastic**, 189  
**perfect with force of present**, 117  
**permission**, 116  
**personal pronouns**, 48, 246, 315  
**place**, expressions of, 42, 132, 134, 238, 240, 245  
**plūrēs**, 310  
  
**polliceor**, 69  
**pōnō**, 132  
**possessives**, 50, 260  
**possum**, 130, 370  
**postquam** clauses, 18 (a), 88 *fn.* 1, 161, 265  
**potior**, 229  
**predicate accusative**, 30, 223  
**predicate nominative**, 205  
**prepositions**  
     with ablative, 5, 233  
     with accusative, 5, 224  
**primary and secondary tenses**, 103  
**priusquam** clauses, 18 (a), 161, 162, 265, 267, 269  
**prohibeō**, with infinitive, 67  
**prōmittō**, 69  
**pronouns**  
     coordinating relative, 51, 248  
     demonstrative, 52, 53, 249, 250, 316  
     emphatic, 53, 251, 317  
     īdem, 53, 316  
     indefinite, 123, 124, 125, 253  
     interrogative, 54, 252, 319  
     personal, 48, 246, 315  
     reflexive, 49, 247, 315  
     relative, 51, 248, 318  
**protasis**, 169  
**proviso clauses**, 163  
**purpose**  
     clauses of, 122, 125, 285, 286  
     dative of, 217  
     expressed by future participle, 59 (c ii)  
     expressed by gerund, 183  
     relative clause of, 122, 286  
  
**quam** with superlative, 37  
**quamdiū** clauses, 161, 264

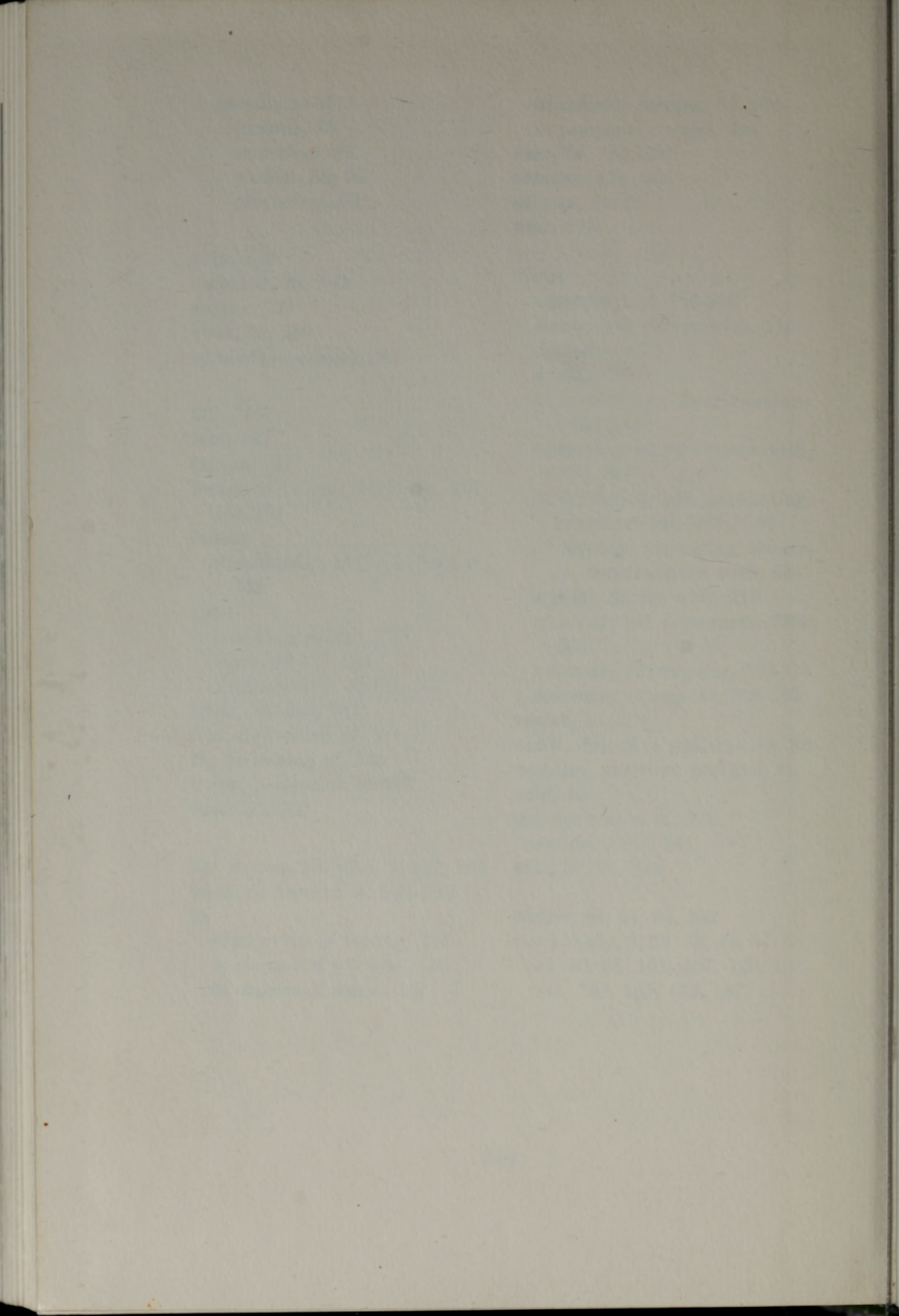
- quamquam** clauses, 18 (c), 273
- questions  
     answers to, 19  
     deliberative, 83, 281  
     direct, 19 (a-d), 109  
     indirect, 110, 283  
     with **-ne**, **nōne**, **num**, 19 (d)
- quī**, interrogative adjective, 54, 320
- quī**, relative pronoun, 51, 248
- quia** clauses, 271
- quīdam**, 92, 174, 257, 324
- quis**, indefinite pronoun, 123, 124, 125, 253, 321
- quis**, interrogative pronoun, 54, 252, 319
- quisquam**, 174, 256
- quisque**, 174, 259
- quō**, in clause of purpose, 182  
     *fn.* 2
- quoad** clauses, 161, 264, 265, 267
- quod** clauses, 18 (c), 271
- quoniam** clauses, 271
- reflexive pronouns, 49, 247, 315
- relative clause of purpose, 122, 286
- relative, coordinating, 51, 248
- relative pronoun, 51, 248, 318
- reliquus**, 28, 174, 262
- respect, ablative of, 231
- result, clauses of, 147, 287
- rūs**, 42
- satis**, 92, 208
- secondary tenses, 103
- semi-deponent verbs, 13
- separation, ablative of, 136, 239
- sequence of tenses, 103
- sic**, 147
- similis**, 182 *fn.* 3, 220
- simul atque** clauses, 18 (a), 161, 265, 267
- space, extent of, 41, 226
- spērō**, 69
- statement, indirect, 69
- subjunctive mood, 75  
     in a principal clause or independent sentence  
         deliberative questions, 83, 281  
         hortatory, 76, 279  
         jussive, 77, 280  
         optative, 84, 91, 282  
         potential, 98  
     in a subordinate clause  
         anticipatory clauses, 162  
         causal clauses, 155, 271 (b)  
         characteristic clauses, 157  
         concessive clauses, 156, 274  
         indirect command or request, 104, 284  
         indirect question, 110, 283  
         proviso clauses, 163  
         purpose clauses, 122, 125, 285, 286  
         result clauses, 147, 287  
         subordinate clauses in indirect discourse, 178  
         temporal clauses, 268, 269, 270  
         with **cum**, 154, 155, 156, 268, 272, 274  
         with verbs and expressions of doubt, 141  
         with verbs of fearing, 131, 288  
         with verbs of hindering and preventing, 140  
     in conditional sentences, 169, 277, 278

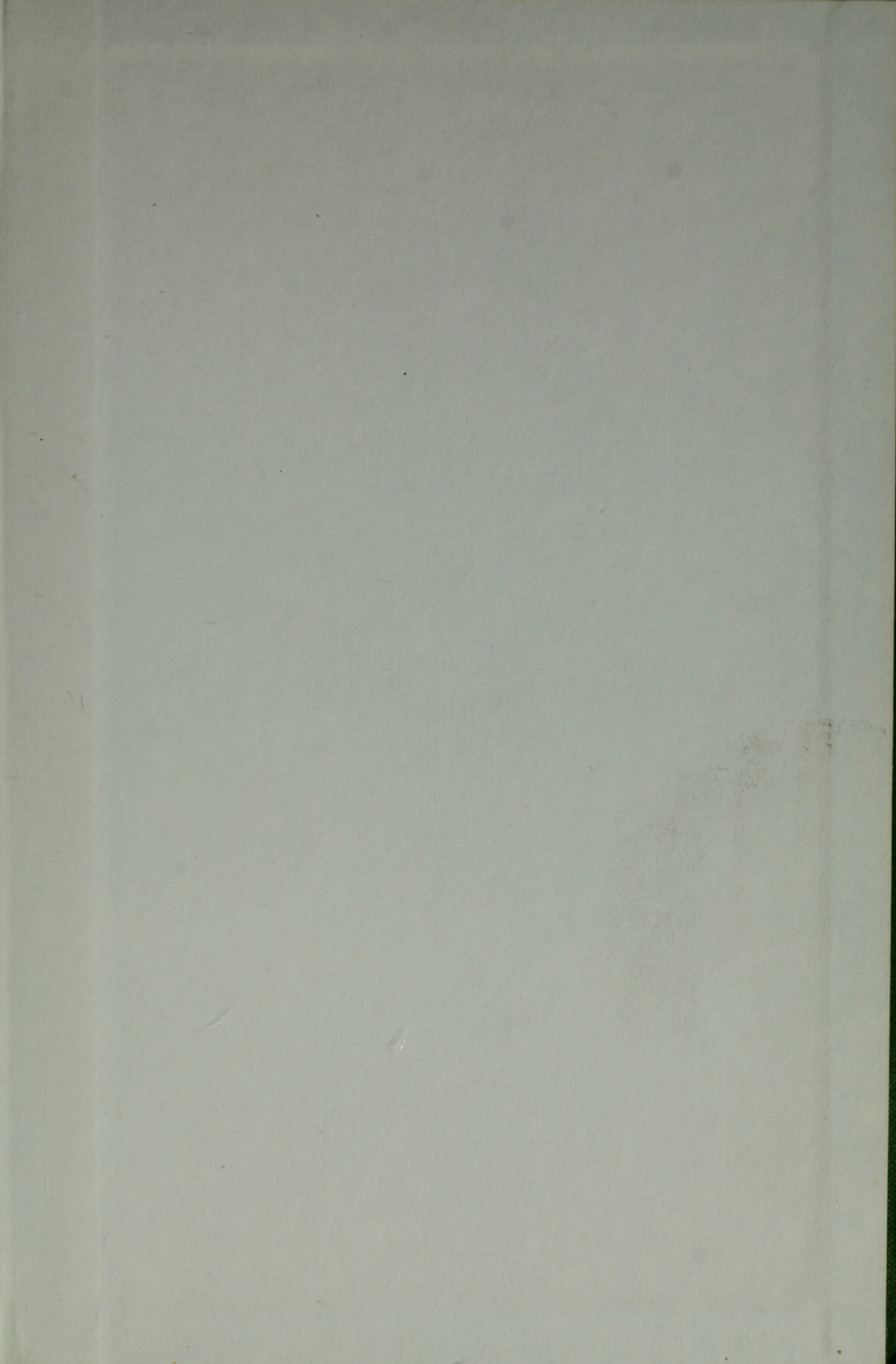
- paradigms of
  - present, 75
  - imperfect, 82
  - perfect, 89, 90
  - pluperfect, 90
- sum, 369
- summus, 28, 262
- supine, 297
- suus, 50, 260
- symbols, chemical, 101
- tālis, 147
- tam, 147
- tantus, 147
- temporal clauses, 18 (a, b), 161, 263-270
- tenses
  - classification and sequence of, 103
- time
  - how long, 40 (a), 227
  - when, 40 (b), 241
  - within which, 40 (c), 241
- tōtus, 28, 238, 262
- trēs, declension of, 314
- tū, declension of, 315
- turris, declension of, 301
- tuus, 50, 260
- ubi clauses, 18 (a), 161, 265, 266
- ūnus, declension of, 306, 314
- ut
  - after verbs of fearing, 131
  - in clauses of purpose, 122
  - in clauses of result, 147
  - in indirect commands, 104
  - in temporal clauses, 265
- uter, 54, 252, 306
- uterque, 174, 258
- utinam, 84, 91
- ūtor, 229
- verbs
  - agreement of, 196-200
  - compound, dative with, 216
  - defective, 375
  - modal, 68
  - of doubting, constructions with, 141
  - of fearing, constructions with, 131, 288
  - of hindering and preventing, constructions with, 140
  - of hoping, promising, swearing, constructions with, 69
  - special, dative with, 215
  - summary of deponents, 353-368
  - summary of irregular, 369-374
  - summary of regular, 326-352
- vester, 50, 260
- vestrī, objective genitive, 48, 85
- vestrum, partitive genitive, 48
- vetō, 104
- vīs, declension of, 302
- vocative, 2 (b), 244
- volō, 97, 98, 372
- wishes, 84, 91, 98, 282
- word study, 8, 23, 33, 45, 57, 63, 72, 80, 95, 101, 107, 120, 128, 144, 152, 167, 172, 187











CHARLES E. MERRILL PUBLISHING CO.

A BELL & HOWELL COMPANY

 BELL & HOWELL

6259